

The minitoc package*

Jean-Pierre F. Drucbert
<mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>

8th June 2006

*This document corresponds to minitoc v45, dated 2006/06/08.

Summary

Table of Contents	4
List of Figures	16
List of Tables	17
I User's Manual	18
1 The <code>minitoc</code> package	20
2 Frequently Asked Questions	51
3 Memento	72
4 Messages	80
5 Jargon	126
6 Installation	155
7 Postface	159
Acknowledgments	167
II Implementation	169
8 Commented code of <code>minitoc.sty</code>	171
9 Commented code of <code>mtcoeff.sty</code>	335
10 Commented code of <code>mtcmess.sty</code>	348
11 Patch for the <code>memoir</code> class	349
12 The <code>minitoc</code> language definition (<code>.mld</code>) and object (<code>.mlo</code>) files	351

<i>SUMMARY</i>	3
III Complements	440
Bibliography	442
Changes History	459
Index	484

Table of Contents

Table of Contents	4
List of Figures	16
List of Tables	17
I User's Manual	18
1 The minitoc package	20
1.1 Introduction	21
1.1.1 Important restrictions	22
1.1.2 Version	22
1.2 License	22
1.3 About this document	23
1.4 How to use the minitoc package	24
1.4.1 Loading the package and creating the mini-tables	24
1.4.2 Preparing the mini-tables	24
1.4.3 Placing the mini-tables	26
1.4.4 Starred chapters, parts and sections	30
1.5 Typesetting of the mini-tables	31
1.5.1 Chapter-level mini-tables	31
1.5.2 Titles for chapter-level mini-tables	33
1.5.3 Part-level mini-tables	35
1.5.4 Titles for part-level mini-tables	35
1.5.5 Section-level mini-tables	35
1.5.6 Titles for section-level mini-tables	36
1.5.7 Position of the titles	36
1.5.7.1 For mini-tables at the part level	36
1.5.7.2 For mini-tables at the chapter level	36
1.5.7.3 For mini-tables at the section level	36
1.5.7.4 Summary of the positionning of titles	37
1.5.8 Line spacing in the mini-tables	37
1.5.9 Simplified commands for fonts	38
1.5.10 Simplified command for mini-table titles	38
1.5.11 Simplified command for mini-table depths	39
1.5.12 Languages for the titles	39
1.5.13 Altering the layout of the mini-tables	39

1.6	Special Features	41
1.6.1	Horizontal Rules	41
1.6.2	Page Numbers, Leaders	42
1.6.3	Features for parttocs and other mini-tables	42
1.6.3.1	Remark about page styles	44
1.6.4	The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)	44
1.6.4.1	Before version #23 (1994/11/08)	44
1.6.4.2	Since version #23 (1994/11/08)	45
1.6.5	Special Entries for TOC, LOF, LOT, Bibliography and Index	45
1.7	The <code>notoc</code> option	46
1.8	The <code>listfiles</code> and <code>nolistfiles</code> options	47
1.9	The <code>hints</code> option	47
1.10	Usage with MS-DOS	49
1.11	Why several \LaTeX runs are required ?	50
1.12	The <code>mtcoff</code> package	50
2	Frequently Asked Questions	51
2.0	Introduction	52
2.1	How to avoid a page break near the rules before and after the mini-table ?	52
2.2	How about implementing others layouts for a mini-table ?	53
2.3	Two consecutive backslashes in a contents line make an error . . .	53
2.4	Reordering chapters makes havoc	53
2.5	Extensions for the names of auxiliary files	54
2.6	Playing with the chapter number	54
2.7	Supported document classes	54
2.8	Compatibility with \LaTeX versions	54
2.9	Other mini-tables	55
2.10	Why so many auxiliary files ?	55
2.11	How to do mini-tables at levels other than chapter ?	56
2.12	Incompatibility with \LaTeX 2.09	56
2.13	Documents resetting the chapter number at each part	57
2.14	The mini-tables have too much spaced lines	57
2.15	The <code>secttocs</code> are wrong	57
2.16	How to remove the lines of dots ?	57
2.17	How to use the <code>hyperref</code> package with <code>minitoc</code> ?	57
2.18	Problem while upgrading <code>minitoc</code>	58
2.19	A local table of contents for the set of appendices	58
2.20	Use with the <code>appendix</code> package	58
2.21	Use with the <code>tocloft</code> package	59
2.22	Use with the <code>memoir</code> class	60
2.23	There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths . . .	61
2.24	Compatibility with the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ document classes	61
2.25	How to hide some entries from the main table of contents . . .	61
2.26	How to define your own <code>.mld</code> file ?	64
2.27	Use with the <code>abstract</code> package	65
2.28	Use with the <code>sectsty</code> package	65
2.29	Strange alignment in the <code>minitocs</code>	65
2.30	Some useful precautions with starred sectioning commands . .	66

2.31	Use with packages for captions	67
2.32	Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir	67
2.33	Use with the varsects package	67
2.34	Initial font settings	67
2.35	Use with the KOMA-Script classes	69
2.36	Use with the jura class or the alphanum package	69
2.37	Use of the .mld files with the babel package	69
2.38	Use with the fncychap package	70
2.39	Use with the quotchap package	70
2.40	Use with the romannum package	70
2.41	Use with the sfheaders package	70
2.42	Use with the alnumsec package	70
2.43	Use with the captcont package	71
2.44	Vertical space (gap) before and after parttocs, partlofs, and partlots titles	71
3	Memento	72
4	Messages	80
4.1	Messages from the minitoc package	81
4.1.1	Informative messages	81
4.1.1.1	Informative messages for hints	89
4.1.2	Warning messages	92
4.1.2.1	Warning messages for hints	96
4.1.3	Error messages	112
4.2	Messages from the mtcoff package	123
4.2.1	Warning messages	123
4.3	Message from the mtcpatchmem package	125
5	Jargon	126
6	Installation	155
7	Postface	159
7.1	The origins	160
7.2	New design in 1993	160
7.3	Developments in 1994	160
7.4	No developments in 1995	161
7.5	Developments en 1996	161
7.6	Developments in 1997	161
7.7	Developments in 1998	161
7.8	Developments in 1999	162
7.9	Developments in 2000	162
7.10	Developments in 2001	162
7.11	Developments in 2002	162
7.12	Developments in 2003	163
7.13	Developments in 2004	163
7.14	Developments in 2005	163
7.15	Developments in 2006	165

Acknowledgments	167
------------------------	------------

II Implementation	169
--------------------------	------------

8 Commented code of <code>minitoc.sty</code>	171
8.1 Introduction	174
8.2 Identification code	175
8.3 A file descriptor to write	175
8.4 Indentation and skip	175
8.5 Tests and flags	176
8.5.1 Flags for the <code>hints</code> option	176
8.5.2 Use of section-level mini-lists of floats	177
8.5.3 Presence of some packages and classes	177
8.5.4 Presence or absence of some sectionning commands	178
8.5.5 Flags to check to see if some commands are used	179
8.5.6 Check if the document has exactly 2 parts	180
8.6 Preparation for the <code>notoccite</code> option	180
8.7 Preparation for the <code>tight</code> and <code>k-tight</code> options	181
8.8 Preparation to work with <code>hyperref</code>	181
8.9 Checking the presence of some packages	182
8.9.1 Check if the <code>sectsty</code> package is loaded, and when	182
8.9.2 Check if the <code>varsects</code> package is loaded, and when	182
8.9.3 Check if the <code>fncychap</code> package is loaded, and when	182
8.9.4 Check if the <code>quotchap</code> package is loaded, and when	182
8.9.5 Check if the <code>romannum</code> package is loaded, and when	183
8.9.6 Check if the <code>sfheaders</code> package is loaded, and when	183
8.9.7 Check if the <code>alnumsec</code> package is loaded, and when	183
8.9.8 Check if the <code>captcont</code> package is loaded, and when	183
8.9.9 Check if the <code>caption</code> package is loaded, and when	184
8.9.10 Check if the <code>caption2</code> package is loaded, and when	184
8.9.11 Check if the <code>ccaption</code> package is loaded, and when	184
8.9.12 Check if the <code>mcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	184
8.10 Is the <code>memoir</code> class loaded ?	185
8.11 Testing the emptiness of a file	185
8.12 Internal macros to decrement <code>minitoc</code> counters	187
8.13 Patching the <code>\part</code> command	187
8.14 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part	188
8.15 Section level macros	188
8.16 Corrections for numbering	189
8.17 Patching the <code>\section</code> command	189
8.18 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section	189
8.19 Chapter level macros	190
8.20 Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command	190
8.21 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter	190
8.22 Miscellaneous declarations	191
8.23 Autoconfiguration of extensions	192
8.24 Detecting obsolete versions of \LaTeX	193
8.25 A macro to make a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers	193

8.26	Default values for the page-number customization macros . . .	194
8.27	“Features” for the mini-tables	196
8.28	Fake tables of contents	199
8.29	Depth counters for minilofs and minilots	199
8.30	Chapter level commands	200
8.31	Starred parts, chapters or sections	200
8.32	Font commands for the mini-tables	201
8.33	Internal commands to position the mini-table titles	202
8.34	The mtc@verse environment	203
8.35	The \minitoc, \minilof, and \minilot commands	203
8.35.1	The \minitoc command	203
8.35.2	The \minilof command	206
8.35.3	The \minilot command	209
8.36	Patching the \chapter command, continued	212
8.37	The \addstarred... commands	213
8.38	TOC entries without leaders	213
8.39	Mini-tables with or without leaders	214
8.40	The \dominitoc command and its siblings	215
8.40.1	Analysis and splitting of the TOC file	218
8.41	Mini-lists of figures	222
8.41.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file	222
8.42	Mini-lists of tables	224
8.42.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file	225
8.43	Macro to write a contents line	227
8.44	Depth counters for partlofs and partlots	228
8.45	Part level commands	229
8.46	Fonts for the parttocs	229
8.47	Default titles for part-level mini-tables	230
8.48	The ptc@verse environment	232
8.49	The part level mini-tables : \parttoc, \partlof, and \partlot	233
8.49.1	The \parttoc command	233
8.49.2	The \partlof command	236
8.49.3	The \partlot command	239
8.50	Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs	241
8.51	Patching the \part command, continued	242
8.52	The \doparttoc command and its siblings	242
8.52.1	Processing macros for the parttocs	244
8.52.2	Processing macros for the partlofs	248
8.52.3	Processing macros for the partlots	250
8.53	Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots	253
8.54	Section-level commands	253
8.55	Fonts commands for secttocs and co.	254
8.56	Internal macros for title positioning	254
8.57	The stc@verse environment	255
8.58	The \secttoc, \sectlof, and \sectlot commands	255
8.58.1	The \secttoc command	255
8.58.2	The \sectlof command	258
8.58.3	The \sectlot command	261

8.59	Auxiliary internal commands, section level	263
8.60	Patching the <code>\section</code> command (continued)	264
8.61	The <code>\dosecttoc</code> command and siblings	265
8.62	End of section-level commands	274
8.63	The <code>\mtcprepare</code> command	275
8.64	Necessary <code>\l@...</code> commands	275
8.65	The horizontal rules and their default values	276
8.66	The <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	276
8.66.1	Keywords for the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	277
8.66.2	The <code>\mtcsetfont</code> command	278
8.66.3	The <code>\mtcsettitlefont</code> command	282
8.66.4	The <code>\mtcsettitle</code> command	284
8.66.5	The <code>\mtcsetformat</code> command	285
8.66.6	The <code>\mtcsetpagenumbers</code> command	289
8.66.7	The <code>\mtcsetrules</code> command	291
8.66.8	The <code>\mtcsetfeature</code> command	293
8.66.9	The <code>\mtcsetdepth</code> command	296
8.67	The <code>mtchideinmaintoc</code> environment and siblings	297
8.68	Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC	299
8.69	Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC	301
8.70	The <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code> command	302
8.71	The <code>\mtcloadmlo</code> internal command	302
8.72	The “coffee breaks”	303
8.73	Initialization of counters	303
8.74	Declarations for simple options	303
8.74.1	Options <code>tight</code> and <code>loose</code> , <code>k-tight</code> and <code>k-loose</code>	304
8.74.2	Options <code>checkfiles</code> and <code>nocheckfiles</code>	304
8.74.3	Options <code>dotted</code> and <code>undotted</code>	304
8.74.4	Option <code>notoccite</code>	304
8.74.5	Option <code>shorttext</code>	304
8.75	The <code>insection</code> option	305
8.76	The <code>listfiles</code> and <code>nolistfiles</code> options	305
8.77	Language options	305
8.78	The <code>hints</code> option	309
8.78.1	First part : <code>\mtc@hints@begindoc</code>	309
8.78.1.1	Hint about the <code>alphanum</code> package	309
8.78.1.2	Hint about the <code>appendix</code> package	310
8.78.1.3	Hint about the <code>tocbibind</code> package	310
8.78.1.4	Hint about the KOMA-Script classes	310
8.78.1.5	Hint about the <code>tocloft</code> package	311
8.78.1.6	Hint about the <code>titletoc</code> package	311
8.78.1.7	Hint about the <code>placeins</code> package	311
8.78.1.8	Hint about the <code>memoir</code> class	312
8.78.1.9	Hint about the <code>amsart</code> and <code>amsproc</code> classes	313
8.78.1.10	Hint about the <code>amsbook</code> class	313
8.78.1.11	Hint about the <code>abstract</code> package	313
8.78.1.12	Hint about the <code>jura</code> class	314
8.78.1.13	Hint about the alteration of the sectioning commands	314
8.78.1.13.1	Alteration of <code>\part</code>	314

8.78.1.13.2	Alteration of <code>\chapter</code>	315
8.78.1.13.3	Alteration of <code>\section</code>	315
8.78.1.14	Hint about the coherence of the calling sequences of some commands	315
8.78.2	Final part: <code>\mtc@hints@enddoc</code>	316
8.78.2.1	Hint about <code>\sect-lof lot</code> and the <code>insection</code> option	317
8.78.2.2	Final part of the coherence tests	317
8.78.2.3	Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)	319
8.78.2.4	Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)	321
8.78.2.5	Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions	323
8.78.2.6	Final part of the hint about the <code>sectsty</code> package	324
8.78.2.7	Final part of the hint about the <code>varsects</code> package	324
8.78.2.8	Final part of the hint about the <code>fncychap</code> package	324
8.78.2.9	Final part of the hint about the <code>quotchap</code> package	325
8.78.2.10	Final part of the hint about the <code>romannum</code> package	325
8.78.2.11	Final part of the hint about the <code>sfheaders</code> package	325
8.78.2.12	Final part of the hint about the <code>alnumsec</code> package	326
8.78.2.13	Final part of the hint about the <code>captcont</code> package	326
8.78.2.14	Final part of the hint about the <code>caption</code> package	326
8.78.2.15	Final part of the hint about the <code>caption2</code> package	327
8.78.2.16	Final part of the hint about the <code>ccaption</code> package	327
8.78.2.17	Final part of the hint about the <code>mcaption</code> package	327
8.78.2.18	Check if empty mini-tables have been detected	328
8.78.2.19	Check if obsolete commands have been used	329
8.78.2.20	Check if some hints have been written	330
8.79	Processing of options	331
8.79.1	Processing the <code>insection</code> option	331
8.79.2	Processing the <code>notoccite</code> option	331
8.79.3	Processing the <code>listfiles</code> option	332
8.79.4	Processing the <code>hints</code> option	333
8.79.5	Saving the sectionning commands	333
8.80	The <code>fminitoc.dtx</code> file	334
9	Commented code of <code>mtcoeff.sty</code>	335
9.1	Why <code>mtcoeff.sty</code> ?	336
9.2	Identification of the package	336
9.3	Faking counters and dimensions	337
9.4	Faking simple user commands	337
9.5	Faking user commands with one optional argument	338
9.6	Disabling the internal commands	339
9.7	Disabling the font commands	339
9.8	Disabling the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	340
9.9	Disabling the new <code>\l@...</code> commands	341
9.10	Ignore the obsolete commands	341
9.11	Disabling the <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code> command	341

9.12	Disabling the <code>\mtcloadmlo</code> command	341
9.13	Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules	342
9.14	Disabling the commands for the page numbers	342
9.15	Disabling the mini-table features commands	343
9.16	Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands	344
9.17	Caution for some commands	344
9.18	Disabling commands for “coffee”	345
9.19	Disabling the <code>mtchideinmain...</code> environments	345
9.20	Inhibition of the <code>\mtc@saveXXXdepth</code> and <code>\mtc@restoreXXXdepth</code> commands	346
9.21	Disabling the <code>\mtcfixglossary</code> command	346
9.22	Disabling the <code>\mtcfixindex</code> command	346
9.23	Disabling the <code>\addstarred...</code> commands	346
10	Commented code of <code>mtcmess.sty</code>	348
11	Patch for the <code>memoir</code> class	349
12	The <code>minitoc</code> language definition (<code>.mld</code>) and object (<code>.mlo</code>) files	351
12.1	“Acadian” language : <code>acadian.mld</code>	355
12.2	“Acadien” language : <code>acadien.mld</code>	356
12.3	“Afrikaan” language : <code>afrikaan.mld</code>	356
12.4	“Afrikaans” language : <code>afrikaans.mld</code>	356
12.5	“Albanian” language : <code>albanian.mld</code>	357
12.6	“American” language : <code>american.mld</code>	357
12.7	“Arab” language : <code>arab.mld</code>	357
12.8	“Arab2” language : <code>arab2.mld</code>	358
12.9	“Arabic” language : <code>arabic.mld</code>	358
12.10	“Armenian” language : <code>armenian.mld</code>	359
12.11	“Australian” language : <code>australian.mld</code>	359
12.12	“Austrian” language : <code>austrian.mld</code>	359
12.13	“Bahasa” language : <code>bahasa.mld</code>	360
12.14	“Bahasai” language : <code>bahasai.mld</code>	360
12.15	“Bahasam” language : <code>bahasam.mld</code>	361
12.16	“Bangla” language : <code>bangla.mld</code>	361
12.17	“Basque” language : <code>basque.mld</code>	362
12.18	“Bicig” language : <code>bicig.mld</code>	362
12.19	“Bicig2” language : <code>bicig2.mld</code>	363
12.20	“Bicig3” language : <code>bicig3.mld</code>	363
12.21	“Bithe” language : <code>bithe.mld</code>	364
12.22	“Brazil” language : <code>brazil.mld</code>	365
12.23	“Brazilian” language : <code>brazilian.mld</code>	365
12.24	“Breton” language : <code>breton.mld</code>	365
12.25	“British” language : <code>british.mld</code>	366
12.26	“Bulgarian” language : <code>bulgarian.mld</code>	366
12.27	“Bulgarianb” language : <code>bulgarianb.mld</code>	367
12.28	“Buryat” language : <code>buryat.mld</code>	368
12.29	“Buryat2” language : <code>buryat2.mld</code>	368
12.30	“Canadian” language : <code>canadian.mld</code>	369
12.31	“Canadien” language : <code>canadien.mld</code>	369

12.32	“Castillan” language : <code>castillan.mld</code>	369
12.33	“Castillian” language : <code>castillian.mld</code>	370
12.34	“Catalan” language : <code>catalan.mld</code>	370
12.35	“Chinese1” language : <code>chinese1.mld</code> and <code>chinese1.mlo</code>	370
12.36	“Chinese2” language : <code>chinese2.mld</code> and <code>chinese2.mlo</code>	371
12.37	“Croatian” language : <code>croatian.mld</code>	371
12.38	“Czech” language : <code>czech.mld</code>	372
12.39	“Danish” language : <code>danish.mld</code>	372
12.40	“Dutch” language : <code>dutch.mld</code>	373
12.41	“English” language : <code>english.mld</code>	373
12.42	“English1” language : <code>english1.mld</code>	374
12.43	“English2” language : <code>english2.mld</code>	375
12.44	“Esperant” language : <code>esperant.mld</code>	375
12.45	“Esperanto” language : <code>esperanto.mld</code>	376
12.46	“Estonian” language : <code>estonian.mld</code>	376
12.47	“Ethiopia” language : <code>ethiopia.mld</code>	377
12.48	“Ethiopian” language : <code>ethiopian.mld</code>	377
12.49	“Ethiopian2” language : <code>ethiopian2.mld</code>	378
12.50	“Farsi1” language : <code>farsi1.mld</code> and <code>farsi1.mlo</code>	378
12.51	“Farsi2” language : <code>farsi2.mld</code> and <code>farsi2.mlo</code>	379
12.52	“Finnish” language : <code>finnish.mld</code>	379
12.53	“Finnish2” language : <code>finnish2.mld</code>	380
12.54	“Francais” language : <code>francais.mld</code>	380
12.55	“French” language : <code>french.mld</code>	380
12.56	“French1” language : <code>french1.mld</code>	381
12.57	“French2” language : <code>french2.mld</code>	382
12.58	“Frenchb” language : <code>frenchb.mld</code>	382
12.59	“Frenchle” language : <code>frenchle.mld</code>	383
12.60	“Frenchpro” language : <code>frenchpro.mld</code>	383
12.61	“Galician” language : <code>galician.mld</code>	383
12.62	“German” language : <code>german.mld</code>	384
12.63	“Germanb” language : <code>germanb.mld</code>	384
12.64	“Germanb2” language : <code>germanb2.mld</code>	385
12.65	“Greek” language : <code>greek.mld</code>	385
12.66	“Greek-mono” language : <code>greek-mono.mld</code>	386
12.67	“Greek-polydemo” language : <code>greek-polydemo.mld</code>	387
12.68	“Greek-polykatha” language : <code>greek-polykatha.mld</code>	388
12.69	“Guarani” language : <code>guarani.mld</code>	389
12.70	“Hangul1” language : <code>hangul1.mld</code> and <code>hangul1.mlo</code>	389
12.71	“Hangul2” language : <code>hangul2.mld</code> and <code>hangul2.mlo</code>	390
12.72	“Hangul3” language : <code>hangul3.mld</code> and <code>hangul3.mlo</code>	390
12.73	“Hangul4” language : <code>hangul4.mld</code> and <code>hangul4.mlo</code>	391
12.74	“Hangul-u8” language : <code>hangul-u8.mld</code> and <code>hangul-u8.mlo</code>	392
12.75	“Hanja1” language : <code>hanja1.mld</code> and <code>hanja1.mlo</code>	392
12.76	“Hanja2” language : <code>hanja2.mld</code> and <code>hanja2.mlo</code>	393
12.77	“Hanja-u8” language : <code>hanja-u8.mld</code> and <code>hanja-u8.mlo</code>	393
12.78	“Hebrew” language : <code>hebrew.mld</code>	394
12.79	“Hebrew2” language : <code>hebrew2.mld</code>	394
12.80	“Hungarian” language : <code>hungarian.mld</code>	395

12.81	“Icelandic” language : icelandic.mld	396
12.82	“Indon” language : indon.mld	396
12.83	“Indonesian” language : indonesian.mld	396
12.84	“Interlingua” language : interlingua.mld	397
12.85	“Irish” language : irish.mld	397
12.86	“Italian” language : italian.mld	398
12.87	“Italian2” language : italian2.mld	398
12.88	“Japanese” language : japanese.mld and japanese.mlo	399
12.89	“Japanese2” language : japanese2.mld and japanese2.mlo	399
12.90	“Japanese3” language : japanese3.mld and japanese3.mlo	400
12.91	“Japanese4” language : japanese4.mld and japanese4.mlo	400
12.92	“Japanese5” language : japanese5.mld and japanese.mlo	401
12.93	“Kannada” language : kannada.mld	401
12.94	“Khalka” language : khalkha.mld	402
12.95	“Latin” language : latin.mld	402
12.96	“Latin2” language : latin2.mld	403
12.97	“Latvian” language : latvian.mld	403
12.98	“Letton” language : letton.mld	404
12.99	“Lithuanian” language : lithuanian.mld	404
12.100	“Lowersorbian” language : lowersorbian.mld	405
12.101	“Lsorbian” language : lsorbian.mld	405
12.102	“Magyar” language : magyar.mld	406
12.103	“Magyar2” language : magyar2.mld	406
12.104	“Magyar3” language : magyar.mld	407
12.105	“Malay” language : malay.mld	407
12.106	“Malayalam-keli” language : malayalam-keli.mld	407
12.107	“Malayalam-omega” language : malayalam-omega.mld and malayalam-omega.mlo	408
12.108	“Malayalam-rachana” language : malayalam-rachana.mld	408
12.109	“Malayalam-rachana2” language : malayalam-rachana2.mld	409
12.110	“Manju” language : manju.mld	410
12.111	“Meyalu” language : meyalu.mld	410
12.112	“Mongol” language : mongol.mld	410
12.113	“Naustrian” language : naustrian.mld	411
12.114	“Newzealand” language : newzealand.mld	411
12.115	“Ngerman” language : ngerman.mld	411
12.116	“Ngermanb” language : ngermanb.mld	411
12.117	“Ngermanb2” language : ngermanb2.mld	412
12.118	“Norsk” language : norsk.mld	413
12.119	“Norsk2” language : norsk2.mld	413
12.120	“Nynorsk” language : nynorsk.mld	414
12.121	“Nynorsk2” language : nynorsk2.mld	414
12.122	“Polish” language : polish.mld	415
12.123	“Polish2” language : polish2.mld	415
12.124	“Polski” language : polski.mld	416
12.125	“Portuges” language : portuges.mld	416
12.126	“Portuguese” language : portuguese.mld	417
12.127	“Romanian” language : romanian.mld	417
12.128	“Romanian2” language : romanian2.mld	418

12.129	“Romanian3” language : <code>romanian3.mld</code>	418
12.130	“Russian” language : <code>russian.mld</code>	419
12.131	“Russian2m” language : <code>russian2m.mld</code>	419
12.132	“Russian2o” language : <code>russian2o.mld</code>	420
12.133	“Russianb” language : <code>russianb.mld</code>	421
12.134	“Russianc” language : <code>russianc.mld</code>	422
12.135	“Russian-cca” language : <code>russian-cca.mld</code> and <code>russian-cca.mlo</code>	423
12.136	“Russian-cca1” language : <code>russian-cca1.mld</code> and <code>russian-cca1.mlo</code>	423
12.137	“Russian-lh” language : <code>russian-lh.mld</code> and <code>russian-lh.mlo</code>	424
12.138	“Russian-lhcyralt” language : <code>russian-lhcyralt.mld</code> and <code>russian-lhcyralt.mlo</code>	424
12.139	“Russian-lhcyrkoi” language : <code>russian-lhcyrkoi.mld</code> and <code>russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo</code>	425
12.140	“Russian-lhcyrwin” language : <code>russian-lhcyrwin.mld</code> and <code>russian-lhcyrwin.mlo</code>	425
12.141	“Samin” language : <code>samin.mld</code>	426
12.142	“Scottish” language : <code>scottish.mld</code>	426
12.143	“Serbian” language : <code>serbian.mld</code>	427
12.144	“Serbianc” language : <code>serbianc.mld</code>	427
12.145	“Slovak” language : <code>slovak.mld</code>	428
12.146	“Slovene” language : <code>slovene.mld</code>	428
12.147	“Spanish” language : <code>spanish.mld</code>	429
12.148	“Spanish2” language : <code>spanish2.mld</code>	430
12.149	“Spanish3” language : <code>spanish3.mld</code>	430
12.150	“Spanish4” language : <code>spanish4.mld</code>	431
12.151	“Swedish” language : <code>swedish.mld</code>	431
12.152	“Swedish2” language : <code>swedish2.mld</code>	432
12.153	“Thai” language : <code>thai.mld</code> and <code>thai.mlo</code>	432
12.154	“Turkish” language : <code>turkish.mld</code>	433
12.155	“Uighur” language : <code>uighur.mld</code>	433
12.156	“Uighur2” language : <code>uighur2.mld</code>	433
12.157	“Uighur3” language : <code>uighur3.mld</code>	434
12.158	“UKenglish” language : <code>UKenglish.mld</code>	434
12.159	“Ukraineb” language : <code>ukraineb.mld</code>	434
12.160	“Ukrainian” language : <code>ukrainian.mld</code>	434
12.161	“Uppersorbian” language : <code>uppersorbian.mld</code>	435
12.162	“USenglish” language : <code>USenglish.mld</code>	436
12.163	“Usorbian” language : <code>usorbian.mld</code>	436
12.164	“Vietnam” language : <code>vietnam.mld</code>	436
12.165	“Vietnamese” language : <code>vietnamese.mld</code>	437
12.166	“Welsh” language : <code>welsh.mld</code>	437
12.167	“Xalx” language : <code>xalx.mld</code>	438
12.168	“Xalx2” language : <code>xalx2.mld</code>	438
12.169	“Xalx3” language : <code>xalx3.mld</code>	439

<i>TABLE OF CONTENTS</i>	15
III Complements	440
Bibliography	442
Changes History	459
Index	484

List of Figures

1.1	Float barriers with the <code>section</code> option	28
1.2	Float barriers with the <code>above</code> option	28
1.3	Float barriers with the <code>below</code> option	28
1.4	Float barriers with the <code>above</code> and <code>below</code> options	28
1.5	Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry	40
2.1	Three compilations for <code>mini toC</code>	53
8.1	Hack to detect the limitation to short extensions.	192

List of Tables

1.1	Commands for a <code>minitoc</code>	25
1.2	Commands for a <code>secttoc</code>	26
1.3	Commands for a <code>parttoc</code>	29
1.4	Commands to add an entry in the table of contents for a starred part, chapter, or section.	31
1.5	Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands.	32
1.6	Fonts for the mini-table entries.	33
1.7	Available languages	34
1.8	Horizontal rules	41
1.9	Page numbers	41
1.10	Features for <code>parttoc</code> -s and other mini-tables	43
1.11	Extensions of the auxiliary files	49
3.1	Package options	72
3.2	General commands	73
3.3	Commands : part level	74
3.4	Commands : chapter level	75
3.5	Commands : section level	76
3.6	Commands for horizontal rules	77
3.7	Commands for page numbers	77
3.8	Specific commands for <code>parttocs</code> and other mini-tables features	78
3.9	Preparation and insertion commands	78
3.10	Adjustment commands	79
3.11	Obsolete commands	79
5.1	Category codes	132
5.2	Encoding schemes implemented in CJK	133
5.3	Document classes	134
5.4	Depths for sectionning commands	135
5.5	Most common font encodings	145
5.6	Most common font families	146
5.7	Most common font series	146
5.8	Most common font shapes	146
5.9	The five font parameters for some fonts	146
5.10	Author commands for fonts	147
6.1	List of files (<code>minitoc.1</code>)	156

Part I

User's Manual

Contents of the First Part

1	The minitoc package	20
2	Frequently Asked Questions	51
3	Memento	72
4	Messages	80
5	Jargon	126
6	Installation	155
7	Postface	159
	Acknowledgments	167

Chapter 1

The minitoc package

Contents

1.1	Introduction	21
1.1.1	Important restrictions	22
1.1.2	Version	22
1.2	License	22
1.3	About this document	23
1.4	How to use the minitoc package	24
1.4.1	Loading the package and creating the mini-tables	24
1.4.2	Preparing the mini-tables	24
1.4.3	Placing the mini-tables	26
1.4.4	Starred chapters, parts and sections	30
1.5	Typesetting of the mini-tables	31
1.5.1	Chapter-level mini-tables	31
1.5.2	Titles for chapter-level mini-tables	33
1.5.3	Part-level mini-tables	35
1.5.4	Titles for part-level mini-tables	35
1.5.5	Section-level mini-tables	35
1.5.6	Titles for section-level mini-tables	36
1.5.7	Position of the titles	36
1.5.7.1	For mini-tables at the part level	36
1.5.7.2	For mini-tables at the chapter level	36
1.5.7.3	For mini-tables at the section level	36
1.5.7.4	Summary of the positioning of titles	37
1.5.8	Line spacing in the mini-tables	37
1.5.9	Simplified commands for fonts	38
1.5.10	Simplified command for mini-table titles	38
1.5.11	Simplified command for mini-table depths	39
1.5.12	Languages for the titles	39
1.5.13	Altering the layout of the mini-tables	39
1.6	Special Features	41
1.6.1	Horizontal Rules	41
1.6.2	Page Numbers, Leaders	42
1.6.3	Features for parttocs and other mini-tables	42
1.6.3.1	Remark about page styles	44

1.6.4	The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)	44
1.6.4.1	Before version #23 (1994/11/08)	44
1.6.4.2	Since version #23 (1994/11/08)	45
1.6.5	Special Entries for TOC, LOF, LOT, Bibliography and Index	45
1.7	The notoccite option	46
1.8	The listfiles and nolistfiles options	47
1.9	The hints option	47
1.10	Usage with MS-DOS	49
1.11	Why several L ^A T _E X runs are required?	50
1.12	The mtcoff package	50

Figures

1.1	Float barriers with the section option	28
1.2	Float barriers with the above option	28
1.3	Float barriers with the below option	28
1.4	Float barriers with the above and below options	28
1.5	Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry	40

Tables

1.1	Commands for a minitoc	25
1.2	Commands for a secttoc	26
1.3	Commands for a parttoc	29
1.4	Commands to add an entry in the table of contents for a starred part , chapter , or section .	31
1.5	Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands.	32
1.6	Fonts for the mini-table entries.	33
1.7	Available languages	34
1.8	Horizontal rules	41
1.9	Page numbers	41
1.10	Features for parttoc -s and other mini-tables	43
1.11	Extensions of the auxiliary files	49

1.1 Introduction

The **minitoc** package, initially written by Nigel WARD and Dan JURAFSKY, has been almost completely redesigned by Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT (ONERA/Centre de Toulouse). A summary of the evolution of this package is given in the chapter 7 on page 159. This package creates a mini-table of contents (a “minitoc”¹) at the beginning of each chapter of a document. It is also possible to have a mini-list of figures (a “minilof”) and a mini-list of tables (a “minilot”). The document class should of course define chapters (classes like **book** or **report**) or sections (classes like **article**²). Thus, this package

¹ The **minitoc** package introduces its own jargon, explained in this document. It should not be too difficult, however, to learn and use; it will be used here, of course.

² As the standard **proc** class loads the standard **article** class, this class will be just considered as a variant of the **article** class.

should not be used with document classes without standard sectionning commands (like `letter`). When the document class defines a “part” sectionning level (i.e., classes like `book`, `report` and `article`), you can create a “partial” table of contents (a “parttoc”) at the beginning of each part of a document. It is also possible to have a partial list of figures (a “partlof”) and a partial list of tables (a “partlot”). When the document class has no `\chapter` command but has a `\section` command, you may use section level tables of contents (“secttocs”) at the beginning of each section; and you can also have section level lists of figures (“sectlofs”) or of tables (“sectlots”).

All these tables (“minitocs”, “partlots”, “sectlofs”, etc.) are collectively referenced as “mini-tables” (or sometimes “mini-lists”).

1.1.1 Important restrictions



Note: you cannot use chapter level and section level mini-tables in the same document. This restriction is intended to avoid documents with full of local tables of contents, lists of figures and tables at every sectionning level.



Note: the commands relative to the part level are defined only if the document class defines `\part`. The commands relative to the section level are defined only if the document class defines `\section` but does not define `\chapter`.

1.1.2 Version

The current version of this package is #45. You will find a resumed history of the package in the “Postface” chapter (chapter 7 on page 159) and a more detailed history in “Changes History”, page 459.

1.2 License

This package must be distributed and/or may be modified under the conditions of the **LaTeX Project Public License**, either version 1.3 of this license or (as convenient) any later version. The latest version of this license is in

<http://www.latex-project.org/lppl.txt>

and version 1.3 or later is part of all distributions of LaTeX version 2003/12/01 or later.

But please don’t bother me about hacked versions; they will not be supported. However, suggestions for corrections and improvements are welcome.

1.3 About this document

This document is rather thick, but please, do not be afraid: you do not need to read every page. The most useful chapters are in the first part (“User’s Manual”, page 19): the chapter “The minitoc package”, page 20, describes the essential commands to use the package; the chapter “Frequently Asked Questions”, page 51, may be useful to solve some specific problems; the “Memento” chapter, page 72, is a set of tables to be used as a remainder of the commands of this package; the “Messages” chapter, page 80, is certainly boring, but it should be searched if you get some warning or error messages from the minitoc package, because it explains them and also the informative messages; the “Jargon” chapter, page 126, attempts to explain most of the technical terms used here; the “Installation” chapter, page 155, describes all the files included in the distribution of the package; the “Postface” chapter, page 159, gives an abbreviated history of the package.

The second part, “Implementation”, page 170, is much more technical; you can read it if you are interested in the details of the coding of the package. The chapter “The minitoc language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files”, page 351, may be useful if you are interested by some language.

The third part, “Complements”, page 441, contains a bibliography, a detailed history of the package, an and index.

For this document, I have used:

- a short table of contents (summary), with the `\shorttoc` command from my `shorttoc` package [89], displaying only parts and chapters;
- a main table of contents (`\tableofcontents`), with a maximum depth (6);
- a main list of figures (`\listoffigures`) and a main list of tables (`\listoftables`);
- for each part, a table of contents displaying only the chapters (`\parttoc` with `parttocdepth` equal to 1);
- for each chapter, a complete table of contents (`\minitoc` with `minitocdepth` equal to 6);
- for each chapter, a list of figures (`\minilof`) and a list of tables (`\minilot`) when useful;
- customized parameters for the layout of the mini-tables.

As the PDF version of the documentation uses hyperlinks, these tables should help you to navigate in the document.

1.4 How to use the minitoc package

1.4.1 Loading the package and creating the mini-tables

`\usepackage` To use the minitoc package, you must introduce a command:
`\minitoc`
`\chapter` `\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}`

in the preamble of the document³. The mini-table of contents will be in the chapter, after the `\chapter` command, at the point of the `\minitoc` command. The `\minitoc` command may occur *almost anywhere*⁴ inside a chapter.

Of course, it is better to put it at the beginning of the chapter, eventually after some introductory material. But you can also decide to put it at the end of the chapter. You should use the same conventions in all chapters. If you want to add the mini-table of contents for a chapter, you must use the sequence given in table 1.1 on the following page.

For each mini-table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form `<document>.mtc<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute chapter number. “Absolute” means that this number is unique, and always increasing from the first chapter⁵. The suffix is `.mlf<N>` for mini-lists of figures and is `.mlt<N>` for mini-lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.10 on page 49 and section 2.5 on page 54). There are similar commands for mini-tables at the part or section level, depending of the document class.

1.4.2 Preparing the mini-tables

`\dominitoc` The commands⁶ `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof`, and `\dominilot` (for mini-tables at
`\dominilof` the chapter level), take respectively the `<document>.toc`, `<document>.lof`, and
`\dominilot` `<document>.lot` files, and cut slices from them to create the `<document>.mtc<N>`,
`<document>.mlf<N>`, and `<document>.mlt<N>` files.

³ This command must be placed *after* any modification done on the sectionning commands; if you modify sectionning commands after loading the minitoc package, this one might not work properly.

⁴ “Almost anywhere” means “in a normal place”, like between two paragraphs of normal text, or in a (wide enough) minipage, but not in a too strange position (like a marginal note or a footnote). Even a multicolumn or a floating environment can be used, but with care. But note that a minitoc can be rather long, if the chapter is complex and if you ask for details with a high value for minitocdepth.

⁵ The concept of an “absolute” counter for the mini-tables has solved some obscure problems, and also made obsolete some commands, like `\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, and `\firstsectionis`.

⁶ The code of these `\do...` commands is directly derived from that of the `xr` package [78], by David CARLISLE, with his permission.

Table 1.1: Commands for a minitoc

\documentclass[...]{book}		
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}		
...		
\setlength{\mtcindent}{24pt}	default	
\setlength{\mtcskipamount}{\bigskipamount}	default	
...		
\setcounter{minitocdepth}{2}	default	
\renewcommand{\mtcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
or:		
\mtcsetdepth{minitoc}{2}		default
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{*}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
...		
\begin{document}		
...		
\dominitoc		
\dominilof		
\dominilot		
\tableofcontents	or \faketableofcontents	
\listoffigures	or \fakelistoffigures	
\listoftables	or \fakelistoftables	
...		
\chapter{...}		
\minitoc	if you want one	
\mtcskip		
\minilof	if you want one	
\mtcskip		
\minilot	if you want one	
...		

\dosecttoc	The commands \dosecttoc, \dosectlof, and \dosectlot (for mini-tables at the section level) and \doparttoc, \dopartlof, and \dopartlot (for mini-tables at the part level) are analog.
\dosectlof	
\dosectlot	
\doparttoc	The \mtcprepare command invokes (and replaces) all these preparation commands when they are available with the document class and if the adequate contents file exists.
\dopartlof	
\dopartlot	
\mtcprepare	This command accepts also an optional argument to set the default position of the title for all the mini-tables.
\tableofcontents	
\listoffigures	
\listoftables	To obtain a satisfactory result (i.e., non empty), please note that all these commands must <i>imperatively be put before</i> any command analog to the \tableofcontents, \listoffigures, and \listoftables commands, or their \fake... siblings.

It is also *strongly* recommended to put these commands *before* any sectionning command producing an entry in the table of contents (for the \do...toc commands), and *before* any \caption-like command producing an entry in the list of figure (for the \do...lof commands) or in the list of tables (for the \do...lot) commands; else disorder in the mini-tables may result.



Table 1.2: Commands for a secttoc

\documentclass[...]{article}		
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}		
...		
\setlength{\stcindent}{24pt}	default	
...		
\setcounter{secttocdepth}{2}	default	
\renewcommand{\stcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\renewcommand{\stcSSfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
or:		
\mtcsetdepth{secttoc}{2}		default
\mtcsetfont{secttoc}{*}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{secttoc}{subsection}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
...		
\begin{document}		
...		
\dosecttoc		
\dosectlof		
\dosectlot		
\tableofcontents	or \faketableofcontents	
\listoffigures	or \fakelistoffigures	
\listoftables	or \fakelistoftables	
...		
\section{...}		
\secttoc	if you want one	
\sectlof	if you want one	
\sectlot	if you want one	
...		

1.4.3 Placing the mini-tables

`\mtcskip` The `\mtcskip` command may be used to add a vertical skip between two mini-tables.
`\mtcskipamount` Its height is `\mtcskipamount` (equal to `\bigskipamount` by default). `\mtcskip` elim-
`\bigskipamount` inates any immediate previous vertical skip, to not accumulate vertical space when a
mini-table is empty and skipped by the `checkfiles` option.

`\secttoc` The section-level table of contents will be in the section, after the `\section` command,
`\section` at the point of the `\secttoc` command. The `\secttoc` command may occur *almost*
anywhere inside a section. Of course, it is better to put it at the beginning of the section,
or after some short introductory material. You should use the same conventions in all
sections. If you want to add the section-level table of contents for a section, you must use
the sequence given in Table 1.2.

For each section-level table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name
of the form `<document>.stc<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute section number. The suf-
fix is `.slf<N>` for section-level lists of figures and is `.slt<N>` for section-level lists of
tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see
section 1.10 on page 49 and section 2.5 on page 54).

`\usepackage`
`\FloatBarrier`



As floats (figures and tables) could drift⁷ somewhere outside the printing area of the text of the section, the sectlofs and sectlots can be rather strange. In order to have a better behaviour of these mini-tables, it may be useful to add the `insection` option in the `\usepackage` command:

```
\usepackage[insection]{minitoc}
```

if you want more coherent sectlofs and sectlots. Sometimes, it might be necessary to use the `\FloatBarrier` command of this package to correctly place the figure or table and have a correct mini-table. The `insection` option loads the `placeins` package [8] with its `verbose` and `section` options. The options `above` or `below` options should not be used, because they allow floats to drift above or below a `\FloatBarrier` (or a section limit): the barrier becomes “porous” upwards⁸ (\uparrow) or downwards (\downarrow), or both (\Updownarrow). The `section` option makes a more “watertight” barrier (\equiv). This is illustrated by the four figures 1.1 to 1.4 on the following page.

The `placeins` package, by Donald ARSENAU, is available on CTAN archives; the file `placeins.sty` contains its own documentation, with a copy in `placeins.txt`. You need a version whose date is at least 2005/04/18.

Since version #45, this option also loads the `flafter` package (described in [132] and [152, page 286]) to force a float to appear *after* its reference. The `above` and `below` options of the `placeins` package are no more used, because they allowed the floats to move out of the section. In all cases, it is *strongly* recommended to verify the position of the floats and, if necessary, to look at the messages of the `placeins` package in the `.log` file. The placement of floats is a very complex problem, so some manual intervention may be necessary, like the use of the `float` package [141] or, better, of the `floatrow` package [128].



If you want to add the partial table of contents for a part, you must use the sequence given in Table 1.3 on page 29. For each partial table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form `<document>.ptc<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute part number. The suffix is `.plf<N>` for partial lists of figures and is `.plt<N>` for partial lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.10 on page 49 and section 2.5 on page 54).



Note: the user is responsible of asking or not asking a mini-table (mini-toc, -lof or -lot) for some chapter. Asking a `minilof` for a chapter without any figure would result in an empty and ugly mini-list of figures (i.e., the title and two horizontal rules). He is also responsible of requiring or not requiring a partial toc (lof or lot) for some part. Asking a `partlof` for a part without any figure would result in an empty and ugly part list of figures (i.e., the title alone on a page). Analogous remarks apply to section-level mini-tables (`secttoc`, `sectlof`, and `sectlot`) and to the part-level mini-tables (`parttoc`, `partlof`, and `partlot`).

⁷ A float is like a ship in harbor. There is a place in the text which is the anchor location. The figure or “ship” can float around to various places relative to the anchor, but always downstream or downwind. A float with bad placement parameters is like a ship that slips its anchor and eventually crashes on the rocks at the end of a chapter. Donald ARSENAU

⁸ But a float can not drift upwards beyond the top of the current page.

Command	Action
\section	× × × × × × × × × × <i>Forbidden Area</i> × × × × × × × × × ×
	=====
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
	Float inserted here
\section	<i>Allowed Area</i>
	=====
	× × × × × × × × × × <i>Forbidden Area</i> × × × × × × × × × ×

Figure 1.1: Float barriers with the section option

Command	Action
\section	<i>Allowed Area</i>
	↑ ↑
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
	Float inserted here
\section	<i>Allowed Area</i>
	=====
	× × × × × × × × × × <i>Forbidden Area</i> × × × × × × × × × ×

Figure 1.2: Float barriers with the above option

Command	Action
\section	× × × × × × × × × × <i>Forbidden Area</i> × × × × × × × × × ×
	=====
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
	Float inserted here
\section	<i>Allowed Area</i>
	↓ ↓
	<i>Allowed Area</i>

Figure 1.3: Float barriers with the below option

Command	Action
\section	<i>Allowed Area</i>
	↕ ↕
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
	Float inserted here
\section	<i>Allowed Area</i>
	↕ ↕
	<i>Allowed Area</i>

Figure 1.4: Float barriers with the above and below options

Table 1.3: Commands for a parttoc

\documentclass[...]{book}		
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}		
...		
\setlength{\ptcindent}{0pt}	default	
...		
\setcounter{parttocdepth}{2}	default	
\renewcommand{\ptcfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\renewcommand{\ptcCfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
\renewcommand{\ptcSfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
or:		
\mtcsetdepth{parttoc}{2}		default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{section}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
...		
\begin{document}		
...		
\doparttoc		
\dopartlof		
\dopartlot		
\tableofcontents	or \faketableofcontents	
\listoffigures	or \fakelistoffigures	
\listoftables	or \fakelistoftables	
...		
\part{...}		
\parttoc	if you want one	
\partlof	if you want one	
\partlot	if you want one	
...		

But since version #35, empty mini-tables are just ignored and this problem should disappear in normal circumstances. Nevertheless, it is recommended to put no `\minitoc` command in a chapter without sections and no `\minilof` or `\minilot` command in a chapter without figures or tables. The `checkfiles` (see section 1.4.3 on page 26) package option (default) skips empty mini-tables (with a note in the `.log` file); the `nocheckfiles` package option restores the old behaviour (empty mini-tables are displayed).

By default, the mini-tables and partial tables of contents contain only references higher and to sections and subsections. The counters `parttocdepth`, `minitocdepth` and `secttocdepth`, similar to `tocdepth`, allow the user to modify this behaviour. Mini or partial lists of figures or tables are not affected by the value of these counters, but if there are depth counters for these lists (`lofdepth` and `lotdepth`), as done by the `subfig` package [83] from Steven Douglas COCHRAN, new depth counters are created if necessary, with obvious names like `partlofdepth`, `partlotdepth`, `minilofdepth`, `minilotdepth`, `sectlofdepth`, and `sectlotdepth`.

1.4.4 Starred chapters, parts and sections

`\addstarredpart` **NOTE:** if using `\chapter*` and a
`\addstarredchapter`
`\addstarredsection` `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}`



command to add something in the table of contents, the numbering of the minitoc auxiliary files would be altered. To avoid that problem, a first method is to say:

```

\addstarredpart{...}
\addstarredchapter{...}
\addstarredsection{...}

```

These commands apply only for the level of a part-, mini- or sect-toc; for lower levels, use, as usual:

`\addcontentsline` `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}`

for example, to add a section-level entry in the global toc and in the minitoc of a starred chapter:

```

\chapter*{Title of chapter}
\addstarredchapter{Title of chapter}
\minitoc
\section*{First section}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{First section}
\section*{Second section}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{Second section}

```

`\adjustptc` There is sometimes a problem with mini-tables when you use `\chapter*` (or
`\adjustmtc` `\section*`): the minitocs appear in the wrong chapter. You can add a `\adjustmtc`
`\adjuststc` (or `\adjuststc` or `\adjustptc`) command at the end of the starred chapter (or
section or part) to increment the corresponding counter. Do not use commands like
`\stepcounter{mtc}` or `\addtocounter{mtc}{...}` (which should work, but it is
cheating), because the `mtc` package (see section 1.12 on page 50) knows what
to do about `\adjustmtc` (and others), but can do nothing about `\stepcounter`
or `\addtocounter`, as they are a standard basic commands of \LaTeX , not minitoc
specific commands. Syntax:

```

\adjustptc[n]
\adjustmtc[n]
\adjuststc[n]

```

where n is the increment (default: 1).

Table 1.4: Commands to add an entry in the table of contents for a starred part, chapter, or section.

Level	With title
part	<code>\mtcaddpart[⟨title⟩]</code>
chapter	<code>\mtcaddchapter[⟨title⟩]</code>
section	<code>\mtcaddsection[⟨title⟩]</code>

`\decrementptc` There are similar commands to *decrement* or *increment* by 1 these counters: `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, `\decrementstc`, `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`, and `\incrementstc`; the same remarks as above apply. These commands have no argument.

`\mtcaddpart` A more clever way to solve this problem is to use commands similar to:
`\mtcaddchapter`
`\mtcaddsection` `\mtcaddchapter[⟨title⟩]`



This command adds an entry in the table of contents (and adjusts the counter, because it calls `\adjustmtc`). The table 1.4 summarizes these commands, that you put *after* `\chapter*`, etc. If the optional argument is omitted or empty or blank, no entry will be visible in the table of contents nor in the minitocs. If the optional argument is something invisible (like `~`, `\space` or `\quad`), the result will be strange but still logically correct. See also section 2.30 on page 66 for the problems with `\mtcaddpart`.

1.5 Typesetting of the mini-tables

The mini-tables are typeset in a verse-like environment, and can be split over pages.

1.5.1 Chapter-level mini-tables

`\mtcfont` The mini-table of contents is typeset in the `\mtcfont` font, which is `\small\rmfamily` by default. In fact, the font `\mtcfont` is selected at the beginning of a minitoc, `\mtcSfont` minilof or minilot. More selective choices are made with the following fonts. `\mtcSSfont` Section entries are typeset in the `\mtcSfont` font, which is `\small\bfseries` by default. For subsections, subsubsections, paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands `\mtcSPfont` `\mtcSSfont`, `\mtcSSSfont`, `\mtcPfont` and `\mtcSPfont` are available (by default, `\mlffont` `\small\rmfamily`) to enable the use of various fonts. Mini lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts `\mlffont` and `\mltfont`, which are `\small\rmfamily` by default. `\mlfSfont` There are also `\mlfSfont` and `\mltSfont` for sub-figures and sub-tables entries. `\mltSfont` Tables 1.5 on the following page and 1.6 on page 33 summarize these many commands⁹.

⁹ Thanks to Stefan ULRICH, who contributed these tables initially.

Table 1.5: Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands.

Command	Font default setting	Title string default setting	Title font default setting
For the <code>\part...</code> commands:			
<code>\parttoc</code>	<code>\ptcfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\ptctitle</code> Table of Contents [†]	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
<code>\partlof</code>	<code>\plffont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code> <code>\plfSfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\plftitle</code> List of Figures [†]	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
<code>\partlot</code>	<code>\pltfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code> <code>\pltSfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\plttitle</code> List of Tables [†]	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
For the <code>\mini...</code> commands:			
<code>\minitoc</code>	<code>\mtcfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mtctitle</code> Contents [†]	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
<code>\minilof</code>	<code>\mlffont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\mlfSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mlftitle</code> Figures [†]	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
<code>\minilot</code>	<code>\mltfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\mltSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mltttitle</code> Tables [†]	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
For the <code>\sect...</code> commands:			
<code>\secttoc</code>	<code>\stcfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\stctitle</code> Contents [†]	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
<code>\sectlof</code>	<code>\slffont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\slfSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\slftitle</code> Figures [†]	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
<code>\sectlot</code>	<code>\sltfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\sltSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\sltttitle</code> Tables [†]	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>

*for document classes with `\chapter` level (e.g., `book`, `report`).

**for document classes with no `\chapter` level (e.g., `article`).

[†]default for english; changed by the language definition files or `\renewcommand`.

All these fonts use `\rmfamily`, `\upshape`, and `\mdseries` by default.



Note that the default choice of fonts is certainly not perfect and hence is not definitive. A symptom of this imperfection is the presence of poor alignments in the mini-tables, if bold and non-bold fonts are mixed¹⁰ (the true length of 1em is not the same for the fonts). This can eventually be adjusted by changing some fonts.

¹⁰This appears, e.g., if you are using the Computer Modern Roman (CMR) fonts [114]. The symptom disappears if you do not use bold CMR fonts or if you use the TX fonts (txfonts package [177]), by example, like in this document. See also section 2.29 on page 65.

Table 1.6: Fonts for the mini-table entries.

Level	Font	default setting
For the <code>\parttoc</code> entries:		
Chapter*	<code>\ptcCfont*</code>	<code>\normalsize\bfseries*</code>
Section	<code>\ptcSfont</code>	<code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\bfseries**</code>
Subsection	<code>\ptcSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)</i>
Subsubsection	<code>\ptcSSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)</i>
Paragraph	<code>\ptcPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)</i>
Subparagraph	<code>\ptcSPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)</i>
For the <code>\minitoc</code> entries:*		
Section	<code>\mtcSfont</code>	<code>\small\bfseries</code>
Subsection	<code>\mtcSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)</i>
Subsubsection	<code>\mtcSSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)</i>
Paragraph	<code>\mtcPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)</i>
Subparagraph	<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)</i>
For the <code>\secttoc</code> entries:**		
Subsection	<code>\stcSSfont</code>	<code>\normalsize\bfseries</code>
Subsubsection	<code>\stcSSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\stcfont</code>)</i>
Paragraph	<code>\stcPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\stcfont</code>)</i>
Subparagraph	<code>\stcSPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\stcfont</code>)</i>

*for document classes with `\chapter` level (e.g., book, report).
**for document classes with no `\chapter` level (e.g., article).

1.5.2 Titles for chapter-level mini-tables

<code>\mtifont</code>	Titles are typeset in the <code>\mtifont</code> (<code>\large\bfseries</code> by default) font and the text
<code>\mtctitle</code>	strings of the titles are defined by <code>\mtctitle</code> , <code>\mlftitle</code> and <code>\mltttitle</code> , which are
<code>\mlftitle</code>	the strings “Contents”, “Figures” and “Tables” by default. These title commands should
<code>\mltttitle</code>	be redefined by <code>\renewcommand</code> or <code>\mtcsettitle</code> for languages other than english.
<code>\mtcsettitle</code>	
<code>\mtcselectlanguage</code>	The language option files like <code>french.mld</code> and <code>english.mld</code> (the suffix <code>.mld</code> means “minitoc language definition (file)”) (and many others, see the list in table 1.7 on the next page and section 1.5.12 on page 39) are available. You can easily prepare a similar file for a preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 64). You can change the language of these titles by using the <code>\mtcselectlanguage{language}</code> macro.

Table 1.7: Available languages

1. afrikaan (afrikaans)	27. english (american, australian, british, canadian, newzealand, UKenglish, USenglish)	48. greek- polykatha ^{c,e}	77. magyar2	104. russian-lh ^{c,g,h}
2. albanian		49. guarani ^h	78. magyar3	105. russian- lhcyralt ^{c,g,h}
3. arab (arabic) ^{a,c}		50. hangul1 ^{c,d,g}	79. malayalam- keli ^c	106. russian- lhcyrkoi ^{c,g,h}
4. arab2 ^{a,c}		51. hangul2 ^{c,d,g}	80. malayalam- omega ^{c,e,g,h}	107. russian- lhcyrwin ^{c,g,h}
5. armenian ^c		52. hangul3 ^{c,d,g}	81. malayalam- rachana ^c	108. samin
6. bahasai (bahasa, indon, indonesian) ^c	28. english1	53. hangul4 ^{c,d,g}	82. malayalam- rachana2 ^c	109. scottish
7. bahasam (malay, meyalu) ^c	29. english2	54. hangul- u8 ^{c,e,f,g,h}	83. mongol ^c	110. serbian
8. bangla ^c	30. esperant (esperanto)	55. hanja1 ^{c,d,g}	84. ngermanb (ngerman, naustrian)	111. serbianc ^c
9. basque	31. estonian	56. hanja2 ^{c,d,g}	85. ngermanb2	112. slovak
10. bicig (uighur) ^{c,i}	32. ethiopia (ethiopian) ^c	57. hanja-u8 ^{c,e,f,g,h}	86. norsk	113. slovene
11. bicig2 (uighur2) ^{c,i}	33. ethiopian2 ^{c,e,h}	58. hebrew ^{c,h}	87. norsk2	114. spanish (castillan, castillian)
12. bicig3 (uighur3) ^{c,i}	34. farsi1 ^{c,f,g}	59. hebrew2 ^{c,h}	88. nynorsk	115. spanish2
13. bithe (manju) ^c	35. farsi2 ^{c,f,g}	60. icelandic ^f	89. nynorsk2	116. spanish3 ^{e,f}
14. brazil (brazilian)	36. finnish	61. interlingua	90. polish	117. spanish4
15. breton	37. finnish2	62. irish	91. polish2 ^{c,e}	118. swedish
16. bulgarian ^c	38. french (frenchb, frenchle, frenchpro, francais, acadien, canadien)	63. italian	92. polski ^c	119. swedish2
17. bulgarianb ^c		64. italian2	93. portuguese (portuges)	120. thai ^{c,d,f,g}
18. buryat ^c	39. french1	65. japanese ^{c,d,g}	94. romanian	121. turkish
19. buryat2 ^c	40. french2	66. japanese2 ^{c,d,g}	95. romanian2	122. ukrainian (ukraineb) ^{b,c}
20. catalan	41. galician	67. japanese3 ^{c,d,g}	96. romanian3	123. uppersorbian (usorbian)
21. chinese1 ^{c,g}	42. german (austrian)	68. japanese4 ^{c,d,g}	97. russian ^{b,c}	124. vietnam (vietnamese) ^{c,d}
22. chinese2 ^{c,g}	43. germanb	69. japanese5 ^{c,d,g}	98. russianb ^{b,c}	125. welsh
23. croatian	44. germanb2	70. kannada ^c	99. russianc ^{b,c}	126. xalx (khalkha) ^c
24. czech	45. greek ^c	71. latin	100. russian2m ^{c,e}	127. xalx2 ^c
25. danish	46. greek-mono ^{c,e}	72. latin2	101. russian2o ^{c,e}	128. xalx3 ^c
26. dutch	47. greek- polydemo ^{c,e}	73. latvian (letton) ^e	102. russian-cca ^{c,g,h}	
		74. lithuanian	103. russian- cca1 ^{c,g,h}	
		75. lowersorbian (lsorbian)		
		76. magyar (hungarian)		

The languages in parentheses are aliases of a main language and their .mld files will load the .mld file of that main language.

^a The arab(ic) and arab2 languages require the use of the ArabTeX package [124, 125].

^b The russian language is not yet supported by the babel system [29, 30], but russianb [129] is supported if you use babel-3.6 or a higher version; russianc is an extra. Look also at other .mld files for russian.

^c Some languages may require specific fonts.

^d Requires the CJK package [137, 138].

^e Requires Lambda, the version of L^AT_EX for Omega.

^f Requires a 8-bits input encoding.

^g Uses also a .mlo file.

^h Requires a specific input encoding.

ⁱ The bicig language is also known as uighur.

1.5.3 Part-level mini-tables

`\ptcfont` The partial table of contents is typeset in the `\ptcfont` font, which is defined as `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. In fact, the font `\ptcfont` is selected at the beginning of a `parttoc`, `partlof` or `partlot`. More selective choices are made with the following fonts. Chapter entries are typeset in the `\ptcCfont` font, which is `\normalsize\bfseries` by default. Section entries are typeset in the `\ptcSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. For subsections, subsubsections, paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands `\ptcSSfont`, `\ptcSSSfont`, `\ptcPfont`, and `\ptcSPfont` are available (by default, `\normalsize\rmfamily`) if you want to use various fonts. Partial lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts `\plfSfont` and `\pltSfont` for sub-figures and sub-tables entries.

1.5.4 Titles for part-level mini-tables

`\ptifont` Titles are typeset in the `\ptifont` (`\LARGE\bfseries` by default) font and the text strings of the titles are defined by `\ptctitle`, `\plftitle` and `\plttitle`, which are the strings “Table of Contents”, “List of Figures” and “List of Tables” by default. `\plftitle` These title commands should be redefined by `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsettitle` for languages other than english. The language definition files like `french.mld` and `english.mld` (and many others; for a complete list, see table 1.7 on the preceding page) are available. Read also section 1.5.12 on page 39. You can easily prepare a similar file for a preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 64). You can change the language of these titles by using the `\mtcselectlanguage{language}` macro.

1.5.5 Section-level mini-tables

`\stcfont` The section-level table of contents is typeset in the `\stcfont` font, which is defined as `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. In fact, the font `\stcfont` is selected at the beginning of a `secttoc`, `sectlof` or `sectlot`. More selective choices are made with the following fonts. Subsection entries are typeset in the `\stcSSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\bfseries` by default. Subsubsection entries are typeset in the `\stcSSSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. For paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands `\stcPfont` and `\stcSPfont` are available (by default, `\normalsize\rmfamily`) if you want to use various fonts. Section-level lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts `\slfSfont` and `\sltSfont` for sub-figures and sub-tables entries.

1.5.6 Titles for section-level mini-tables

`\stifont` Titles are typeset in the `\stifont` (`\normalsize\bfseries` by default) font and the text strings of the titles are defined by `\stctitle`, `\slftitle` and `\sltttitle`, which are the strings “Contents”, “Figures” and “Tables” by default. These title commands should be redefined by `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsettitle` for languages other than english. The language option files like `french.mld` and `english.mld` (and also many others, as listed in table 1.7 on page 34 and explained in section 1.5.12 on page 39) are available. You can easily prepare a similar file for your preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 64). You can change the language of these titles by using the `\mtcselectlanguage{language}` macro.

1.5.7 Position of the titles

1.5.7.1 For mini-tables at the part level

`\doparttoc` By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands `\doparttoc`, `\dopartlof` and `\dopartlot` accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding title: `[l]` for left (default), `[c]` for center, `[r]` for right, or `[e]` (or `[n]`) for empty (no title). The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for only one `parttoc` (or `partlof` or `partlot`), just use such an optional argument with the command `\parttoc` (or `\partlof` or `\partlot`).

1.5.7.2 For mini-tables at the chapter level

`\dominitoc` By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof` and `\dominilot` accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding title: `[l]` for left (default), `[c]` for center, `[r]` for right, or `[e]` (or `[n]`) for “empty” (“no” title). The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for only one `minitoc` (or `minilof` or `minilot`), just use such an optional argument with the command `\minitoc` (or `\minilof` or `\minilot`).

1.5.7.3 For mini-tables at the section level

`\dosecttoc` By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands `\dosecttoc`, `\dosectlof` and `\dosectlot` accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding title: `[l]` for left (default), `[c]` for center, `[r]` for right, or `[e]` (or `[n]`) for empty (no title). The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for only one `secttoc` (or `sectlof` or `sectlot`), just use such an optional argument with the command `\secttoc` (or `\sectlof` or `\sectlot`).

1.5.7.4 Summary of the positioning of titles

`\doparttoc` To summarize: by default, all titles are on the left. However, each one of the following
`\dopartlof` preparation commands:
`\dopartlot`
`\dominitoc` `\doparttoc`, `\dopartlof`, `\dopartlot`,
`\dominilof` `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof`, `\dominilot`,
`\dominilot` `\dosecttoc`, `\dosectlof`, `\dosectlot`,
`\dosecttoc` `\mtcprepare`
`\dosectlof`
`\dosectlot` accepts an optional argument to change the positioning of the title: [l] for left (default),
`\mtcprepare` [c] for center, [r] for right, [e] or [n] for empty (no title), for all the corresponding
mini-tables (for all mini-tables in the case of `\mtcprepare`).

`\parttoc` The following insertion commands:
`\partlof`
`\partlot` `\parttoc`, `\partlof`, `\partlot`,
`\minitoc` `\minitoc`, `\minilof`, `\minilot`,
`\minilof` `\secttoc`, `\sectlof`, `\sectlot`
`\minilot`
`\secttoc` accept the same optional arguments, but these options change the positioning only for
`\sectlof` the title of the current mini-table.
`\sectlot`

1.5.8 Line spacing in the mini-tables

`\iftightmtc` With the commands `\tightmtctrue` (or the `tight` package option) and
`\tightmtctrue` `\tightmtcfalse` (or the `loose` package option, which is the default), the mini-tables
`\tightmtcfalse` will have less (tight) or more (loose) space between contents lines.

But with the KOMA-Script classes [157] (`scrartcl`, `scrbook` and `scrreprt`), it may sometimes be necessary to use the following options or commands, because we need to set `\parskip` to zero in place of `\parsep` to tighten the mini-table. The efficiency of the following options depends of the options given to these KOMA-Script classes (`parindent` option, `parskip` option and variants).

`\ifktightmtc` For the KOMA-Script classes, with the commands `\ktightmtctrue` (or the `k-tight`
`\ktightmtctrue` package option) and `\ktightmtcfalse` (or the `k-loose` package option, which is the
`\ktightmtcfalse` default), the mini-tables will have less (tight) or more (loose) space between contents
lines.

1.5.9 Simplified commands for fonts

`\mtcsetfont` To simplify the redefinition of the fonts for mini-tables, there are two useful commands:
`\mtcsettitlefont`

```
\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{sectionning-level}{commands}
\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{commands}
```

By example,

```
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{subsection}%
    {\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}

\mtcsetfont{minilof}{subfigure}%
    {\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

will redefine `\mtcSSfont` and `\mlfSfont` with the given font commands.

Note that `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{...}` allows also to redefine `\ptcfont`, etc.

Moreover,

```
\mtcsettitlefont{parttoc}{\Large\rmfamily\itshape\mdseries}
```

will redefine `\pti font` (for titles in the parttocs, partlofs and partlofs) with the given font commands.

1.5.10 Simplified command for mini-table titles

`\mtcsettitle` To simplify the redefinition of the titles for mini-tables, the `\mtcsettitle` command is also available:

```
\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{title string}
```

By example,

```
\mtcsettitle{minitoc}{Description of contents}
```

will redefine `\mtctitle` with the given string. This command checks that you redefine a title for a mini-table type available in your document class.

1.5.11 Simplified command for mini-table depths

`\mtcsetdepth` To simplify the redefinition of the depths for mini-tables, the `\mtcsetdepth` command is also available:

```
\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}
```

By example,

```
\mtcsetdepth{minitoc}{4}
```

will set the counter `minitocdepth` with the given value. This command checks that you set a depth for a mini-table type available in your document class (and that it is possible to change its depth).

1.5.12 Languages for the titles

Most of the strings defined in the language option files (`.mld`) were taken from the superb `babel` package [29, 30] of Johannes BRAAMS, some were adapted, others were made available by gentle users or taken from specific packages, like `ArabTeX` [124, 125], `ArmTeX` (armenian) [87], `BangTeX` (bangla) [162], `ethiop` [22], `guarani` [25], `Malayalam` [3, 4], `MonTeX` (mongol) [84, 86], `CJK` (chinese, corean-hangûl/hanja, japanese, thai) [137, 138], `PLaTeX` [161, 191] (polish), `SLaTeX` [146] (swedish), `FarsiTeX` (farsi or iranian), or `vietnam.sty` — `latvian` (letton), `greek-mono`, `greek-polydemo`, `greek-polykatha`, `polish2`, `russian2m`, `russian2o` and `spanish3` need `Lambda`, i.e., the Omega version of `LATeX`, (see [121]), or even found by searching on the Web (`bulgarianb.mld` for upper cyrillic bulgarian, `japanese.mld` for japanese, `serbianc.mld` for cyrillic serbian). Other languages are welcome. See table 1.7 on page 34.



But for some oriental languages¹¹, the sources of the titles use some exotic encodings which are difficult to manipulate in a `.dtx` file, hence the `.mld` file is then just a wrapper which loads a special file, nicknamed a `.mlo` file¹², not generated by the `.dtx` file in the current version of `minitoc` package, but via `filecontents` environments in the `minitoc.ins` file, and playing with the “catcode” of the “delete” character.

1.5.13 Altering the layout of the mini-tables

The layout of a mini-table is described in the figure 1.5 on the next page (this figure is adapted from [194]), which defines some internal commands (these are not *dimensions*, but `LATeX` commands, created by `\newcommand`, modifiable via `\renewcommand`).

¹¹Mainly for chinese, farsi, hangûl (korean), hanja (korean), japanese, malayalam-omega, thai and some variants of russian.

¹²The extension `.mlo` means *minitoc language object*.

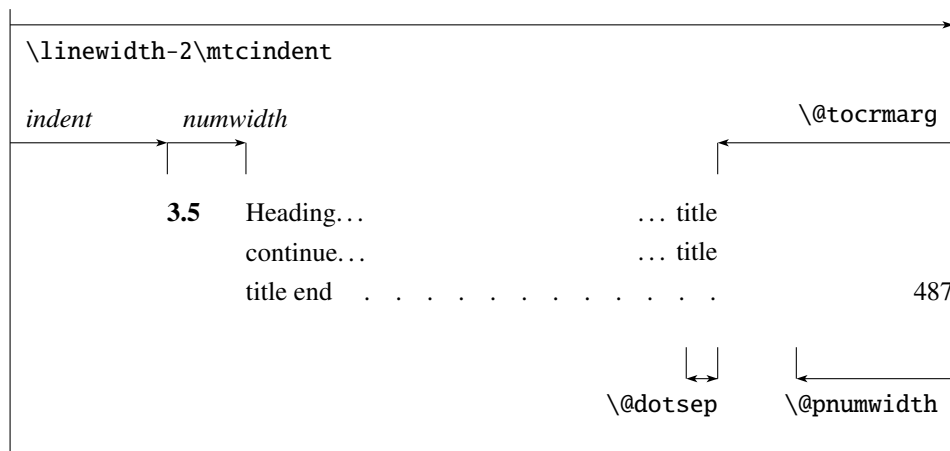


Figure 1.5: Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry

- `\@dotsep`, which is the separation between the dots in the dotted line. It is a pure number expressing *math units*; 18 math units make 1em (one quad), which is about the width of a “m” in the current font. As the real size of 1em is font dependent, the separation between the dots may vary if you use different fonts for different types of entries in the mini-tables.
- `\@pnumwidth`, is the width of the space reserved for the page number. It is a \LaTeX command containing the representation of a length (e.g., 1.55em).
- `\@tocrmarg`, is the distance (margin) between the right border of the table and the end of the dotted line. It should be larger than `\@pnumwidth`, and can be a rubber length (i.e., contains some glue, like 2.55em plus 1fil); if you specify the “... plus 1fil” portion, the text of the entry will be ragged on right; it is useful if you have long entries, and it can avoid most hyphenations.

`\mtcsetformat` As these commands are internal (their names contain the “@” character) and must have a local effect only on specific mini-tables, you should alter them indirectly via the `\mtcsetformat` command:

```
\mtcsetformat{mini-table}{parameter}{value}
```

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof` or `sectlot` keywords; *parameter* is one of the `dotinterval` (for `\@dotsep`), `pagenumwidth` (for `\@pnumwidth`), or `tocrightmargin` (for `\@tocrmarg`) keywords; so:

```
\mtcsetformat{partlof}{tocrightmargin}{2.55em plus 1fil}
```

will set the right margin to 2.55em plus 1fil in the lists of tables at the part level. The elasticity (plus 1fil) is useful if the table captions are long.

Table 1.8: Horizontal rules

				defaults for		
	rules in		no rules in	book	report	article
<code>\ptcrule</code>	parttocs	<code>\noptcrule</code>	parttocs	N	N	Y
<code>\plfrule</code>	partlofs	<code>\noplfrule</code>	partlofs	N	N	Y
<code>\pltrule</code>	partlots	<code>\nopltrule</code>	partlots	N	N	Y
<code>\mtcrule</code>	minitocs	<code>\nomtcrule</code>	minitocs	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\mlfrule</code>	minilofs	<code>\nomlfrule</code>	minilofs	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\mltrule</code>	minilots	<code>\nomltrule</code>	minilots	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\stcrule</code>	secttocs	<code>\nostcrule</code>	secttocs	(NA)	(NA)	Y
<code>\slfrule</code>	sectlofs	<code>\noslfrule</code>	sectlofs	(NA)	(NA)	Y
<code>\sltrule</code>	sectlots	<code>\nosltrule</code>	sectlots	(NA)	(NA)	Y

(NA) = not available.

Table 1.9: Page numbers

Type	Page numbers (Default)	No page numbers
parttoc	<code>\ptcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noptcpagenumbers</code>
minitoc	<code>\mtcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomtcpagenumbers</code>
secttoc	<code>\stcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nostcpagenumbers</code>
partlof	<code>\plfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noplfpagenumbers</code>
minilof	<code>\mlfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomlfpagenumbers</code>
sectlof	<code>\slfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noslfpagenumbers</code>
partlot	<code>\pltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nopltpagenumbers</code>
minilot	<code>\mltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomltpagenumbers</code>
sectlot	<code>\sltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nosltpagenumbers</code>

Note that the `tocrightmargin` (for `\@tocrmarg`) parameter should obviously be greater than the `pagewidth` parameter (this appears in the figure 1.5 on the preceding page).

If the `dotinterval` parameter (for `\@dotsep`) is large enough (try 450, then increase or decrease), the dots of leaders will be so much spread out that they will disappear.

1.6 Special Features

1.6.1 Horizontal Rules

`\mtcsetrules` By default, most of mini-tables have horizontal rules after their titles and at their ends. The exception is the “parttoc” in a book- or report-like document (i.e., when `\chapter` is defined). To activate or deactivate these rules, the commands of the table 1.8 are available. But you can also use the following command, which is simpler:

```
\mtcsetrules{mini-table|*}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot` keywords; if the first argument is a star (*), all mini-tables are affected; the keywords `on` and `off` have the following synonyms¹³:

- `on`, `ON`, `yes`, `YES`, `y`, `Y`, `true`, `TRUE`, `t`, `T`, `vrai`, `VRAI`, `v`, `V`, `oui`, `OUI`, `o`, `O`, and `1`;
- `off`, `OFF`, `no`, `NO`, `n`, `N`, `false`, `FALSE`, `faux`, `FAUX`, `f`, `F`, `non`, `NON`, and `0`.

1.6.2 Page Numbers, Leaders

`\mtcsetpagenumbers` By default, the page numbers are listed in each `minitoc`, `minilof`, etc. Some authors want only the section titles (with the section numbers), but without page numbers. Hence the obvious declarations of table 1.9 on the preceding page are available. But you can also use the following command:

```
\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table|*}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot` keywords; the keywords `on` and `off` have the following synonyms¹³:

- `on`, `ON`, `yes`, `YES`, `y`, `Y`, `true`, `TRUE`, `t`, `T`, `vrai`, `VRAI`, `v`, `V`, `oui`, `OUI`, `o`, `O`, and `1`;
- `off`, `OFF`, `no`, `NO`, `n`, `N`, `false`, `FALSE`, `faux`, `FAUX`, `f`, `F`, `non`, `NON` and `0`.

If the first argument is a star (*), all mini-tables are affected.

In the mini-tables, they are leaders of dots between the section titles and the page numbers. The `undotted` package option removes these dots. The `dotted` package option is the default. See also section 1.5.13 on page 39.

1.6.3 Features for parttocs and other mini-tables

By default, a `parttoc` (or a `partlof` or a `partlot`), in a `book-` or `report-`class document, is preceded and followed by a `\cleardoublepage` (which acts like `\clearpage` in a one-side document), and has a page style of `empty`. Since version #32, you can modify this behaviour by redefining the commands of table 1.10 on the following page, whose meaning is obvious. A feature defined as `\empty` does nothing.

¹³ `0` and `o` are the letter O, `0` is the zero digit.

Table 1.10: Features for parttoc-s and other mini-tables

Type	Command	Default
parttoc	<code>\beforeparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
parttoc	<code>\afterparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
parttoc	<code>\thispageparttocstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>
partlof	<code>\beforepartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
partlof	<code>\afterpartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
partlof	<code>\thispagepartlofstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>
partlot	<code>\beforepartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
partlot	<code>\afterpartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
partlot	<code>\thispagepartlotstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>
minitoc	<code>\beforeminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minitoc	<code>\afterminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minitoc	<code>\thispageminitocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilof	<code>\beforeminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilof	<code>\afterminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilof	<code>\thispageminilofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilot	<code>\beforeminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilot	<code>\afterminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilot	<code>\thispageminilotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
secttoc	<code>\beforesecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>
secttoc	<code>\aftersecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>
secttoc	<code>\thispagesecttocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlof	<code>\beforesectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlof	<code>\aftersectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlof	<code>\thispagesectlofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlot	<code>\beforesectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlot	<code>\aftersectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlot	<code>\thispagesectlotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
<hr/>		
<code>\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before after pagestyle}{command}</code>		
Modifies the features for a mini-table.		
<hr/>		

`\mtcsetfeature` The command:

`\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{keyword}{commands}`

allows you to redefine any of these commands. *mini-table* is one of the mini-table names: `parttoc...` `sectlot`. *keyword* is one of the followings: `before`, `after`

or `pagestyle`. *commands* is either a sequence of commands like `\clearpage`, `\cleardoublepage`, `\thispagestyle{...}`, etc., either `\empty` (does nothing).

1.6.3.1 Remark about page styles¹⁴



The default commands for part-level mini-tables page styles are defined as being `\thispagestyle{empty}`, because in document classes defining the `\chapter` command, the part-level mini-tables are on their own pages. If the document is printed recto-verso, the first page is recto. Usually, these pages are not numbered and have no header and no footer. This behaviour comes from the default definitions of the commands of table 1.10 on the page before. If you want an other behaviour, you can change these definitions. Note that, by default, only the *first* page of these mini-tables are in the `empty` page style. You can set the style of this first page by using `\thispagestyle` and set the style of the following pages by using `\pagestyle`, but you must not forget to reset the normal style after the mini-table. Look at this short example¹⁵:

```
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{before}%
  {\cleardoublepage}
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{thispagestyle}%
  {\thispagestyle{empty}\pagestyle{myheadings}}
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{after}%
  {\cleardoublepage\pagestyle{headings}}
```

where we add a `\cleardoublepage` before each `parttoc`, then we set the `empty` page style for the first page of the `parttocs`, the `myheadings` page style for the following pages of the `parttocs`, and set `headings` page style for the pages after the mini-table, after a `\cleardoublepage`.

1.6.4 The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)

Some documents do not begin with chapter number one, but with chapter number zero (or even a weirder number).

1.6.4.1 Before version #23 (1994/11/08)

`\firstpartis`
`\firstchapteris`
`\firstsectionis`

To make the `minitoc` package work with such documents, you must insert the command:

```
\firstchapteris{<N>}
```

¹⁴This remark is taken and adapted from a draft of the second edition of the JMPL [12], by Benjamin BAYART, where he comments the `minitoc` package.

¹⁵This example shows that the third argument can be a *sequence* of commands: we set the style of the current page and the style of the following pages.

before the `\dominitoc` and analogous commands. $\langle N \rangle$ is the number of the first chapter. This command *does not* modify the numbering of chapters, you must use a `\addtocounter{chapter}{-1}` command to get a first chapter numbered 0. The `\firstpartis` and `\firstsectionis` commands are similar for parts and sections with a non standard numbering.

1.6.4.2 Since version #23 (1994/11/08)



These commands are now obsolete, as this problem has been solved (via the “absolute” numbering of the mini-table auxiliary files). Thus now they just produce harmless warnings.

1.6.5 Special Entries for TOC, LOF, LOT, Bibliography and Index



If you want to add entries in the Table of Contents for objects like the Table of Contents itself, the List of Figures, the List of Tables, the Bibliography or the Index, you should use the `tocbibind` package [197] by Peter R. WILSON (this package is available from the CTAN archives).

`\dominitoc` But these entries are considered as chapters (or sections in an article class document) when the `.toc` file is scanned to prepare the minitocs (the `\dominitoc` phase).

Note that the same problems appear if you use one of the `scrbook`, `scrreprt` or `scrartcl.cls` KOMA-Script classes [157] with some options (`liststotoc`, `liststotocnumbered`, `bibtotoc`, `bibtotocnumbered`, and `idxtotoc`). The solutions are the same.

`\mtcaddchapter` So you must add an `\mtcaddchapter` command, *without argument*, after each of the
`\tableofcontents` involved commands `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures`, and `\listoftables`.
`\listoffigures`
`\listoftables`

`\adjustmtc` For the bibliography, you should add a `\adjustmtc` command after the `\bibliography`
`\bibliography` command.

`\printindex` For the glossary, it is a bit more complicated, you should add the following commands
`\addcontentsline` just after the `\printglossary` command:

```
\mtcaddchapter
\mtcfixglossary
    \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
    \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
    \mtcaddchapter
```

But this can be done by:

```
\mtcfixglossary[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the glossary entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. It is *recommended* that you check the result and, if necessary, you adjust the optional argument.



<pre>\printindex \addcontentsline \mtcaddchapter \mtcfixindex</pre>	<p>For the index, it is like for the glossary, you should add the following commands just after the <code>\printindex</code> command:</p> <pre> \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{} \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{} \mtcaddchapter </pre>
---	---

But this can be done by:

```
\mtcfixindex[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the index entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. It is *recommended* that you check the result and, if necessary, you adjust the optional argument.



Of course, in documents where the TOC, LOF, LOT, bibliography and/or glossary (or index) are processed as starred sections, you must modify these additions to use section level commands.

And proceed with extreme care, tracking in the `.log` file the insertion of `.mtc<N>` files (and siblings). They are some examples in the `add.tex` and `addsec.tex` files distributed with `minitoc`. The `addsec.tex` example shows how much that problem is difficult.

1.7 The notoccite option

`\cite` This option loads the `notoccite` package [7] (by Donald ARSENEAU). It avoids problems with `\cite` commands in sectioning commands or captions: if you then run `LaTeX` using the `unsrt` (unsorted) style, or a similar style, these citations get numbered starting from the page in the table of contents where is the parasite citation,

not the number they should have in the main text. The `notoccite` package prevents this. As `minitoc` prints TOCs, it is subject to the same problem. See also <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=bibtocorder>.

1.8 The `listfiles` and `nolistfiles` options

The `listfiles` package option creates a list of the `minitoc` auxiliary files into the file `<document>.maf`. This feature can help you to remove these auxiliary files which are no more necessary after the \LaTeX run. Under Unix or Linux, you can use something like:

```
cat document.maf | xargs -i -t \rm {}
```

The `nolistfiles` package option is the default (no list).

1.9 The `hints` option

This package option detects some actions and the loading of some packages and classes known as interacting with `minitoc`, and also some frequent misuses and errors. This list of interacting packages and classes is, of course, not closed. If a known package is loaded, this option writes some hints in the `.log` file and emits a warning. The hints written in the `.log` file may suggest you to consult the present document or the `minitoc.bug` file. *Your advice about this option will be welcome.* This option is activated by default, but you can inhibit it via the `nohints` option. The following problems and potential problems are currently detected:



- `\part`
 - `\@part`
 - `\@spart`
 - `\@part`
 - `\chapter`
 - `\@chapter`
 - `\schapter`
 - `\@schapter`
 - `\section`
 - `\@sect`
 - `\@ssect`
- Alteration of some of the following commands¹⁶: `\part`, `\@part`, `\@spart`, `\chapter`, `\@chapter`, `\schapter`, `\section`, `\@sect`, and `\@ssect`. Note that the `hyperref` (see section 2.17 on page 57) package alters these commands at `\begin{document}`, hence this problem might be reported if you use this package, but these alterations seem harmless. Note that the `hyperref` must be loaded *before* `minitoc`.
- Presence of the following packages or classes, which need some precautions: `amsbook` (class), `memoir` (class), `appendix`, `placeins` (beware to its options and its release date (2005/04/18 at least)), `scrbook` (class), `scrreprt` (class), `scrartcl` (class), `tocbibind`, and `tocloft`.

¹⁶The commands containing the “@” character in their names are internal commands of \LaTeX , of a package or of a class; they are sometimes altered by another packages; reconsider then the loading order of the packages.

- Presence of the following packages or classes, which are unfortunately incompatible with the minitoc package: `amsart` (class), `amsproc` (class), `alphanum`, `jura` (class), `titlesec`, and `titletoc`¹⁷.
- | | |
|--|---|
| <code>\parttoc</code>
<code>\doparttoc</code>
<code>\sectlot</code>
<code>\dosectlot</code> | • Usage of <code>\parttoc</code> without calling <code>\doparttoc</code> , ... , usage of <code>\sectlot</code> without calling <code>\dosectlot</code> . Or the reverse. |
| <code>\tableofcontents</code>
<code>\listoftables</code> | • Usage of <code>\parttoc</code> without calling <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> , ... , usage of <code>\sectlot</code> without calling <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> . |
| <code>\sectlof</code>
<code>\sectlot</code> | • Usage of <code>\sectlof</code> and/or <code>\sectlot</code> without using the <code>insection</code> package option of <code>minitoc</code> (or the <code>placeins</code> package without its <code>section</code> option). |
- If you are using short extensions (because of your operating system or the `shorttext` package option, see section 1.10 on the next page) and go beyond the limit of 99 parts, chapters or sections, the `hints` package option displays a warning.
- | | |
|---|--|
| <code>abstract</code>
<code>\mtcaddchapter</code>
<code>\mtcaddsection</code> | • If the <code>abstract</code> package [195] (by Peter R. WILSON), is used with its <code>addtotoc</code> option, a “Abstract” entry is added to the table of contents, as a starred chapter if the document class defines <code>\chapter</code> , else as a starred section. This is detected and you should add a <code>\mtcaddchapter[]</code> or a <code>\mtcaddsection[]</code> command after your <code>abstract</code> environment. |
|---|--|
- If the `sectsty` package [147] (by Rowland McDONNELL) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `varsects` package [180] (by Daniel TAUPIN[†]) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `fncychap` package [140] (by Ulf A. LINDGREN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `quotchap` package [184] (by Karsten TINNEFELD) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `romannum` package [202] (by Peter R. WILSON) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `sfheaders` package [142] (by Maurizio LORETI) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `alnumsec` package [122] (by Frank KÜSTER) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `captcont` package [82] (by Steven Douglas COCHRAN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If one of the `caption` [178], `caption2`¹⁸ [179], (both written by Axel SOMMERFELDT), `ccaption` [199] (written by Peter R. WILSON), or `mcaption` [108] (written by Stephan HENNIG), packages is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.

¹⁷The `titlesec` package redefines the sectionning commands in a way completely alien to the standard \LaTeX way; hence `minitoc` and `titlesec-titletoc` are fundamentally incompatible, and it is very sad.

¹⁸This package is obsolete; now use the `caption` package.

Table 1.11: Extensions of the auxiliary files

mini-table	long extensions (UNIX, etc.)	short extensions (MS-DOS, etc.)
parttoc	.ptc $\langle N \rangle$.P $\langle N \rangle$
partlof	.plf $\langle N \rangle$.G $\langle N \rangle$
partlot	.plt $\langle N \rangle$.U $\langle N \rangle$
minitoc	.mtc $\langle N \rangle$.M $\langle N \rangle$
minilof	.mlf $\langle N \rangle$.F $\langle N \rangle$
minilot	.mlt $\langle N \rangle$.T $\langle N \rangle$
secttoc	.stc $\langle N \rangle$.S $\langle N \rangle$
sectlof	.slf $\langle N \rangle$.H $\langle N \rangle$
sectlot	.slt $\langle N \rangle$.V $\langle N \rangle$

- If you try to insert empty mini-tables, the `hints` option gives a global warning (except if you used also the `nocheckfiles` option, see section 1.4.3 on page 26).

`\firstpartis` • If you use one of the obsolete commands (`\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, `\firstchapteris` or `\firstsectionis`), a warning is issued for each use, of course, but also a `\firstsectionis` global hint as reminder.

- If you invoke a same preparation command more than once, an informative hint is issued for each spurious invocation.

1.10 Usage with MS-DOS



Under MS-DOS (and other PC oriented old operating systems), the filename extensions are limited to 3 characters. The `minitoc` package determines dynamically the type of extensions available and will use it. All other modifications will be done automatically. The `.mtc $\langle N \rangle$` extensions will become `.M $\langle N \rangle$` , where $\langle N \rangle$ is the absolute chapter number. The extensions `.mlf $\langle N \rangle$` and `.mlt $\langle N \rangle$` become `.F $\langle N \rangle$` and `.T $\langle N \rangle$` . The `.ptc $\langle N \rangle$` extensions become `.P $\langle N \rangle$` , where $\langle N \rangle$ is the absolute part number. The extensions `.plf $\langle N \rangle$` and `.plt $\langle N \rangle$` become `.G $\langle N \rangle$` and `.U $\langle N \rangle$` . The `.stc $\langle N \rangle$` extensions become `.S $\langle N \rangle$` , where $\langle N \rangle$ is the absolute section number. The extensions `.slf $\langle N \rangle$` and `.slt $\langle N \rangle$` become `.H $\langle N \rangle$` and `.V $\langle N \rangle$` . All these extensions are listed in table 1.11. Of course, this implies a limit of 99 chapters in a document, but do you really need so many chapters (or sections in an article)? The limit of 99 parts does not seem too serious for most documents, but for sections, it could be tragical. The `hints` option (section 1.9 on page 47) will report such situations. See also section 2.5 on page 54.

1.11 Why several L^AT_EX runs are required?

The mini-tables, at part, chapter and section levels, are using some space on the first pages on each chapter, part or section, thus the page numbers are altered. After the first L^AT_EX run, the mini-tables and lists, partial tables and lists and section-level tables and lists will be empty (in fact skipped since version #35); after the second run, they appear (if not empty), but because they modify the page numbering, page numbers are wrong; after the third L^AT_EX run, the mini, part- and section-level tables and lists should be correct (see figure 2.1 on page 53).

1.12 The mtcoff package

If a document has been prepared with the minitoc package, it contains many minitoc specific commands, most of them being `\dominitoc`, `\faketableofcontents`, and `\minitoc` commands (and their equivalents for lists of figures and tables). If you want to typeset this document without any mini-table, you have just to replace the minitoc package by the mtcoff package (without option), and all these commands will be ignored, eventually writing warning messages in the `.log` file. At least two L^AT_EX runs will be necessary to get a correct page numbering and cross references. It also sanitizes the `.aux`, `.toc`, `.lof`, and `.lot` files from minitoc specific commands which are now spurious.

Chapter 2

Frequently Asked Questions

Contents

2.0	Introduction	52
2.1	How to avoid a page break near the rules before and after the mini-table?	52
2.2	How about implementing others layouts for a mini-table?	53
2.3	Two consecutive backslashes in a contents line make an error	53
2.4	Reordering chapters makes havoc	53
2.5	Extensions for the names of auxiliary files	54
2.6	Playing with the chapter number	54
2.7	Supported document classes	54
2.8	Compatibility with L ^A T _E X versions	54
2.9	Other mini-tables	55
2.10	Why so many auxiliary files?	55
2.11	How to do mini-tables at levels other than chapter?	56
2.12	Incompatibility with L ^A T _E X2.09	56
2.13	Documents resetting the chapter number at each part	57
2.14	The mini-tables have too much spaced lines	57
2.15	The secttocs are wrong	57
2.16	How to remove the lines of dots?	57
2.17	How to use the hyperref package with minitoc?	57
2.18	Problem while upgrading minitoc	58
2.19	A local table of contents for the set of appendices	58
2.20	Use with the appendix package	58
2.21	Use with the tocloft package	59
2.22	Use with the memoir class	60
2.23	There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths	61
2.24	Compatibility with the A _M S document classes	61
2.25	How to hide some entries from the main table of contents	61
2.26	How to define your own .mld file?	64
2.27	Use with the abstract package	65
2.28	Use with the sectsty package	65
2.29	Strange alignment in the minitocs	65
2.30	Some useful precautions with starred sectionning commands	66
2.31	Use with packages for captions	67

2.32	Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir	67
2.33	Use with the varsects package	67
2.34	Initial font settings	67
2.35	Use with the KOMA-Script classes	69
2.36	Use with the jura class or the alphanum package	69
2.37	Use of the .mld files with the babel package	69
2.38	Use with the fncychap package	70
2.39	Use with the quotchap package	70
2.40	Use with the romannum package	70
2.41	Use with the sfheaders package	70
2.42	Use with the alnumsec package	70
2.43	Use with the captcont package	71
2.44	Vertical space (gap) before and after parttocs, partlofs, and partlots titles	71

Figures

2.1	Three compilations for minitoc	53
------------	---------------------------------------	-----------

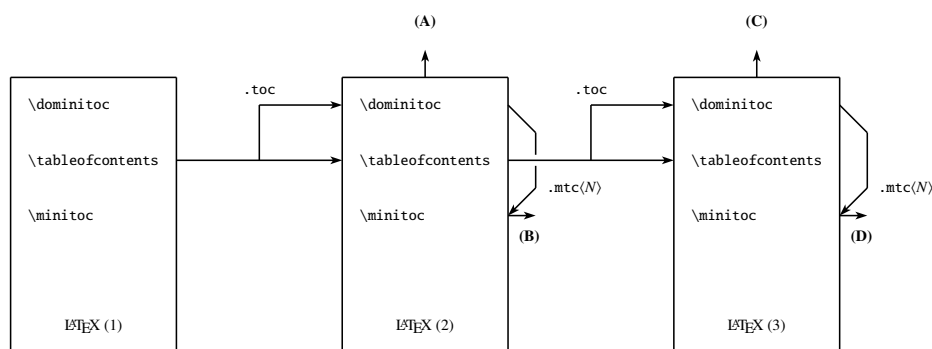
2.0 Introduction

Here is a list of problems and frequently asked questions about `minitoc.sty`. If the version has a number less than 45, please upgrade to version #45. This list is also given in the `minitoc.bug` file, in pure text form. The numbering of this list is done by date of the first occurrence of the question.

If a problem arises, it is often wise to: a) use the `hints` option (see section 1.9 on page 47), which is activated by default, and b) read the `<document>.log` file, which may contain pertinent messages. If you do not find a solution, ask a question on an adequate news group, like `fr.comp.text.tex` (in french) or `comp.text.tex` (in english) preferably, groups which I try to follow, or send me a mail in last resort (please join a minimal but complete example reproducing the problem).

2.1 How to avoid a page break near the rules before and after the mini-table?

`\enlargethispage` This problem seemed solved since version #8, but version #12 adds better fixes. You may have to make some final tuning with `\enlargethispage`. See the L^AT_EX manual [126]. The `needspace` package [193] may also be useful.



(A) `\tableofcontents` produces a table of contents, which is likely inaccurate.

(B) `\minitoc` produces minitocs, which are likely inaccurate.

(C) `\tableofcontents` produces a table of contents, which is accurate.

(D) `\minitoc` produces minitocs, which are accurate.

Figure 2.1: Three compilations for minitoc

2.2 How about implementing others layouts for a mini-table?

Suggestions are welcome, but look at the section 1.5.13 on page 39.

2.3 Two consecutive backslashes in a contents line make an error

Use `\protect\linebreak`.

2.4 Reordering chapters makes havoc

If you reorder chapters, havoc follows... mini-tables going in wrong chapters.

The best way seems to make one run with the `mtcoff` package replacing the `minitoc` package, then restore the `minitoc` package and re-execute `\LaTeX` at least three times (yes, it is time consuming...). See figure 2.1. Running with the `mtcoff` package ensures that the standard auxiliary files are cleared from “spurious” commands introduced by `minitoc`. A more radical solution is to delete the `.aux`, `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files relative to the document, then re-execute `\LaTeX` at least three times.

2.5 Extensions for the names of auxiliary files

This package creates auxiliary files with extensions like `.mtc(N)`. Some operating systems allow only 3 characters extensions. What to do?

No modification is needed: all became automatic since version #28! If you insist to use 3 characters extensions, even on operating systems allowing more, just use the package option `shorttext`. Then you will get first the autoconfiguration messages, then a message saying that you will use short extensions. But then be careful to not have more than 99 mini-tables of the same kind (even empty)!

2.6 Playing with the chapter number



Do not cheat with the “chapter” counter, i.e., do not write ugly things like

```
\setcounter{chapter}{6}
```

The mechanism would break. It is better to add `\chapter` commands, to create empty (but numbered in a legal way) chapters. Since version #10, the `minitoc` package works with appendices. Version #19 allows to begin with a chapter other than number 1. And look at “Special Entries for TOC, LOF, LOT, Bibliography and Index”, section 1.6.5 on page 45.

The same remark applies to the `part` and `section` counters.

2.7 Supported document classes

The `minitoc` package is restricted to document classes which define chapters in the standard way, like “book” and “report”, or sections in the standard way, like “article”. There are “parttocs” if the document class defines the `\part` command. Note that classes like “letter”, which have not the classical sectionning structure, cannot be supported. Classes using sectionning commands with other names are not supported¹. See also section 2.24 on page 61.

2.8 Compatibility with L^AT_EX versions

Some users have failed to make `minitoc` to work. They got a message like:

¹ This would be very difficult: any user can create new sectionning commands (often with the help from some packages) with standard or new names; this is only limited by the imagination. The `minitoc` package relies on the names of the standard sectionning commands and on the syntax of these commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0021>
Undefined command ... \@inputcheck ...
Your version of latex.tex is obsolete. Trying to continue...
```

or:

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0022>
Undefined command ... \reset@font ...
Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
Trying to continue... crossing fingers.
```

The `\reset@font` command has been added to `latex.tex` on September 29th, 1991 and the `\@inputcheck` command on March 18th, 1992 and this version of `latex.tex` has been released on March 25th, 1992. If you get this message, you have an old version of `latex.tex`. Get a recent one from the archives (or a recent distribution) and regenerate a `latex.fmt` format via `initex` (or your configuration tool).

2.9 Other mini-tables

Some demanding users want to have `minilof`, `minilot` and `minibbl`. First, “`minibbl`” is another problem, strongly related to the `BiTEX`’s dealing with `.aux` files. Look at the `chapterbib` [6], `bibunits` [100], `multibib` [101], and `bibtopic` [11] packages. Version #13 has implemented basic `minilofs` and `minilots`. `Minibbbs` are not the aim of this package².

2.10 Why so many auxiliary files?

This package creates a lot of auxiliary files and some users have argued that it is too many. A deep redesign would be necessary to avoid that. Using only one big auxiliary file (or one for all `minitocs`, one for all `minilofs`, ...) would make the reading of such file very slow, as it would be read for each `\miniXXX` macro! Moreover, this would make the `checkfiles` (see section 1.4.3 on page 26) package option impractical to implement. Note that the many files `*.mtc*`, etc., may be deleted after the `LATEX` run. They are rebuilt by the preparation commands (like `\dominitoc` and `siblings`). But, since version #35, `minitoc` is able to detect and skip empty `*.mtc*` files (and `siblings`) to avoid ugly titles with just two thin rules. It would not be easy to do with one big auxiliary file. Since version #44, the `listfiles` package option is available to create a list of these auxiliary files; see section 1.8 on page 47.

These files contain the mini-tables extracted from the `.toc`, `.lof`, and `.lot` files. They are no more useful after the `LATEX` run. If you run `LATEX` via a script or a “`makefile`”, it may

² See <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/textfaq2html?label=multibib>

be useful to add to it a cleaning feature (which should be optional, to allow debugging). The table 1.11 on page 49 gives the list of the extensions for these files (note that a `<document>.mtc` auxiliary file is also created as a scratch file).

As an example, you can look at the rubber script [15] (written in Python) provided by Emmanuel BEFFARA:

<http://rubber.sourceforge.net/>
<http://www.pps.jussieu.fr/~beffara/soft/rubber/>

2.11 How to do mini-tables at levels other than chapter?

Here also, some redesign was needed. From version #15, there are `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlots` for the part level in `book|report`-like and `article`-like documents, `secttocs`, `sectlofs` and `sectlots` for the section level in `article`-like documents. Note that you can not have `minitocs` features at chapter and section level in the same document, because doing so would make an unreadable monster. The user must choose the main class of the document according to the size of it (e.g., do not write an article of more than 100 sections: this is a report, or even a book!).

	part	chapter	section
book	*	*	
report	*	*	
article	*		*

2.12 Incompatibility with L^AT_EX2.09

`\protect` The more recent version of L^AT_EX2_ε adds `\protect` before `\contentsline` in the
`\contentsline` `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files. The version #17 of `minitoc` attempts to be compatible with L^AT_EX2_ε and L^AT_EX2.09. This will be the *last* version usable with L^AT_EX2.09. Versions #18 and later are L^AT_EX2_ε specific, and no more compatible with L^AT_EX2.09, which is completely obsolete.

2.13 Documents resetting the chapter number at each part

Since version #23, `minitoc` works with document classes resetting chapter (or section) number at each part (or chapter). This is possible because the auxiliary files for the mini-tables have now an *absolute* number.

2.14 The mini-tables have too much spaced lines

From version #29, you can have tight mini-tables with the `tight` option, and with the `k-tight` option for the KOMA-Script classes [157] (since version #43).

2.15 The secttocs are wrong

Secttocs did not work: corrected (version #38).

2.16 How to remove the lines of dots?

The lines of dots (leaders) between section titles and page numbers are removed by the `undotted` option (#29). See also section 1.5.13 on page 39.

2.17 How to use the hyperref package with minitoc?



Since version #31, `minitoc` works correctly with the powerful `hyperref` package [172], thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, who used the work of Bernd JAEHNE and Didier VERNA. Hence the `minitoc-hyper.sty` package is now obsolete and should no more be used. It is still present on the CTAN archives for compatibility with old documents. If you add the loading of the `hyperref` package to a document yet using `minitoc`, you will get error message about spurious closing braces. Just let finish the \LaTeX run, then re- \LaTeX the document. There will be no problem if you remove the loading of `hyperref` and add it again: the problem occurs only when upgrading from `minitoc` #30 to `minitoc` #31 (or higher) with a document already processed and adding `hyperref` at the same time! It seems better to process the document with `minitoc` #31 (or higher) without `hyperref`, then with `hyperref`, because some internal commands written into the auxiliary files have been modified. If used, the `hyperref` package must be loaded *before* `minitoc`. Note that the documents `minitoc.dtx` and `fminitoc.dtx` show (not so) basic examples of the use of the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`.

2.18 Problem while upgrading `minitoc`

If upgrading from version #30 or lower to version #31 or higher, you should delete the `.aux`, `.toc`, `.lof`, `.lot` files of the document, else the first \LaTeX run with version #31 or higher will produce a lot of errors (the next run should be ok). See also the section 2.17 on the preceding page.

2.19 A local table of contents for the set of appendices

<code>\doparttoc</code> <code>\tableofcontents</code> <code>\appendix</code> <code>\part</code> <code>\parttoc</code> <code>\addtocontents</code> <code>\protect</code> <code>\setcounter</code> <code>\chapter</code> <code>\partbegin</code>	Some users need a table of contents for the appendices, but without putting the entries of it into the main table of contents. The solution is to put the appendices in a <code>\part</code> subdivision of the document and ask for a table of contents at the <code>\part</code> level: <pre> \doparttoc % after \begin{document} . . . \tableofcontents . . . \appendix \part{Appendices} % create a part level subdivision \parttoc % create a local table of contents % To suppress the appendix part in the main toc \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{-1}} \chapter{First appendix} . . . % Add this at the end of appendices if there is something % after the appendices (like an index or a bibliography) % to put a bound to the contents of \parttoc \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin} </pre>
---	--

See also section 2.25 on page 61.

2.20 Use with the `appendix` package

<code>appendices</code> <code>\addcontentsline</code> <code>\adjustmtc</code> <code>\adjuststc</code>	If you use the <code>appendix</code> package [196] (by Peter R. WILSON), you will observe a serious problem with <code>minitocs</code> in the <code>appendices</code> environment (and after it): they do not match with their respective appendices. In fact, the environment opening <code>\begin{appendices}</code> hides a <code>\addcontentsline</code> command for a chapter or a section, putting trouble in the numbering of <code>minitocs</code> or <code>secttocs</code> . Several solutions are available. The first one is to add a <code>\adjustmtc</code> or <code>\adjuststc</code> command (depending if the appendices are at the chapter or section level) after <i>each</i> <code>\begin{appendices}</code> command. An other solution is to add the following commands in the preamble <i>after</i> the loading of the <code>appendix</code> package:
--	--

```
\let\oldappendices\appendices
\def\appendices{\oldappendices\adjustmtc}
```

if appendices are at the chapter level, OR:

```
\let\oldappendices\appendices
\def\appendices{\oldappendices\adjuststc}
```

if appendices are at the section level.

These two solutions may be modified by replacing `\adjustmtc` by the sequence:

```
\addtocontents{toc}{\chapterend}
OR
\addtocontents{toc}{\sectend}
```

when it is necessary to delimit the end of the preceeding chapter or section.

A rather elegant solution is to add an entry into the TOC via the `\addappheadtotoc` offered by the `appendix` package. As this entry is a chapter-level (or section-level) entry, it delimits correctly the end of the preceeding chapter or section.

2.21 Use with the `tocloft` package

`\mtcsetfont` (This answer is given in the documentation of the `tocloft` package [194].) The `tocloft` (by Peter R. WILSON) and `minitoc` packages have an unfortunate interaction³, which fortunately can be fixed. In the normal course of events, when `minitoc` is used in a chaptered document it will typeset section entries in the minitocs in bold font. If `tocloft` is used in conjunction with `minitoc`, then the `minitoc` section entries are typeset in the normal font, except for the page numbers which are in bold font, while the ToC section entries are all in normal font.

One cure, if you want the `minitoc` section entries to be all in normal small font, is to put:

```
\renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\normalfont\small}
```

or:

```
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalfont\small}
```

³ Discovered by Lyndon DUDGING.

in the preamble.

Otherwise, the cure is the following incantation:

```
\renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\bfseries}
\renewcommand{\cftsecleader}{\bfseries\cftdotfill{\cftdotsep}}
\renewcommand{\cftsecpagefont}{\bfseries}
```

To have the section entries in both the ToC and the minitocs in bold then put the incantation in the preamble. To have only the minitoc section entries in bold while the ToC entries are in the normal font, put the incantation between the `\tableofcontents` command and the first `\chapter` command.

As `tocloft` is a very powerful and useful package, these cures are worth to be added if you need the benefits of this package. See also section 2.22.

2.22 Use with the memoir class

The `memoir` class [200, 201] offers basically the fonctionnalités of the `appendix`, `tocbibind` and `tocloft` packages (this class and these packages have the same author, Peter R. WILSON), hence it has the same problems; see above the available solutions (sections 2.20 on page 58, 1.6.5 on page 45, and 2.21 on the page before respectively). If your version of the `memoir` class is recent, the syntax of the `\chapter` command is different and the `memoir` class *could be no more compatible* with the `minitoc` package, but a patch is inserted to fix the problem. Hopefully, if your version of the `memoir` is more recent than 2005/09/25, the patch is no more necessary.

If you are using the `memoir` class (or the `tocloft` package), the `\mtcsetfont` command has no effect (`\mtcsetttitlefont` works); you should use the font commands which are specific of the `memoir` class (or of the `tocloft` package).

If you still want to use the `\mtcsetfont` commands while using the `memoir` class (or of the `tocloft` package), you must disable the `memoir/tocloft` font commands. This is done by the following commands:

```
\let\cftpfont\relax
\let\cftchapterfont\relax
\let\cftsectionfont\relax
\let\cftsubsectionfont\relax
\let\cftsubsubsectionfont\relax
\let\cftparagraphfont\relax
\let\cftsubparagraphfont\relax
\let\cftfigurefont\relax
\let\cftsubfigurefont\relax
```

```
\let\cfttablefont\relax
\let\cftsubtablefont\relax
```

2.23 There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths

`\mtcsetfont` Since version #41, the `\mtcsetfont` and `\mtcsettitlefont` commands are available.
`\mtcsettitlefont` You do not need anymore to know `\mtcSSSfont`, `\ptifont`, etc.

`\mtcsettitle` Since version #42, the `\mtcsettitle` command is available. You do not need anymore to know `\mtctitle`, `\slttitle`, etc.

`\mtcsetdepth` Since version #43, the `\mtcsetdepth` command is available. You do not need anymore to know the counters `minitocdepth`, `sectlotdepth`, etc.

2.24 Compatibility with the \mathcal{AMS} document classes

`\mtcaddchapter` The `amsart.cls` and `amsproc.cls` document classes are unfortunately incompatible with `minitoc`. The `amsbook.cls` document class requires the insertion of commands if you want a list of figures and/or a list of tables:

```
\listoffigures
\mtcaddchapter % added
\listoftables
\mtcaddchapter % added
```

2.25 How to hide some entries from the main table of contents

`mtchideinmaintoc` It is a problem similar to that of section 2.19 on page 58. An example is having a local table of contents for a chapter (`\minitoc`) whose entries should not appear in the main table of contents. Just use the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment:

```
\chapter{Title}
\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[level]
\minitoc
```

```

\section{sub-title}
...
\end{mtchideinmaintoc}

```

This environment accepts an optional numeric argument, which is the depth of hiding in the main toc (default: -1, complete hiding). You can look at the `apx.tex` example file:

```

\documentclass{book}
\usepackage{tocbibind} % adds some entries in the main TOC.
\usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
\usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
\setcounter{minitocdepth}{3}
\setcounter{parttocdepth}{3}
\begin{document}
\doarttoc
\dominitoc
\tableofcontents
\mtcaddchapter % because tocbibind adds
%             % a chapter entry in the TOC
\chapter{First}
\minitoc
First chapter
\section{First section}
\lipsum
\section{Second section}
\lipsum
\chapter{Second}
\minitoc
Second
\section{First section of second chapter}
\lipsum
\section{Second section of second chapter}
\lipsum
\appendix % begins the appendices
\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{Appendices}
%             % adds a part entry in the TOC
\adjustptc % fixes the parttoc counter ptc
\parttoc % adds a partial toc for the appendices
\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[-1] % hides the details of the
%                             % appendices in the main TOC, but chapter-level
%                             % entries would be still visible if you use 0
%                             % in place of -1 as optional argument.
\chapter{First appendix}
\minitoc
First appendix
\section{First section}
\lipsum
\section{Second section}
\lipsum
\chapter{Second appendix}
\minitoc
Second appendix
\section{First section of second appendix}

```

```

\lipsum
\section{Second section of second appendix}
\lipsum
\end{mtchideinmaintoc} % end of hiding
\end{document}

```

Of course, the environments `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` are also available, to hide some entries in the main list of figures or of tables.



Note that the position of the end of these environments must be adjusted to include a page break (like the one done by a `\chapter` command), else the `restore` command might be inserted to early into the `.toc`, `.lof` or `.lot` file. There is an example file (`hide1.tex`):

<code>\documentclass{book}</code>	<code>\end{figure}</code>
<code>\usepackage[tight]{minitoc}</code>	<code>\begin{figure}</code>
<code>\begin{document}</code>	<code>\caption{BBBB2}</code>
<code>\dominilof</code>	<code>\end{figure}</code>
<code>\dominilot</code>	<code>\begin{table}</code>
<code>\listoffigures</code>	<code>\caption{TBBB1}</code>
<code>\listoftables</code>	<code>\end{table}</code>
<code>\chapter{First}</code>	<code>\begin{table}</code>
<code>\minilof</code>	<code>\caption{TBBB2}</code>
<code>\minilot</code>	<code>\end{table}</code>
<code>\begin{figure}</code>	<code>\chapter{Third}</code>
<code>\caption{AAAA1}</code>	<code>\end{mtchideinmainlot}</code>
<code>\end{figure}</code>	<code>\end{mtchideinmainlof}</code>
<code>\begin{figure}</code>	<code>\minilof</code>
<code>\caption{AAAA2}</code>	<code>\minilot</code>
<code>\end{figure}</code>	<code>\begin{figure}</code>
<code>\begin{table}</code>	<code>\caption{CCCC1}</code>
<code>\caption{TAAAA1}</code>	<code>\end{figure}</code>
<code>\end{table}</code>	<code>\begin{figure}</code>
<code>\begin{table}</code>	<code>\caption{CCCC2}</code>
<code>\caption{TAAAA2}</code>	<code>\end{figure}</code>
<code>\end{table}</code>	<code>\begin{table}</code>
<code>\chapter{Second}</code>	<code>\caption{TCCC1}</code>
<code>\minilof</code>	<code>\end{table}</code>
<code>\minilot</code>	<code>\begin{table}</code>
<code>\begin{mtchideinmainlof}</code>	<code>\caption{TCCC2}</code>
<code>\begin{mtchideinmainlot}</code>	<code>\end{table}</code>
<code>\begin{figure}</code>	<code>\end{document}</code>
<code>\caption{BBBB1}</code>	

But it is also possible to use *commands* in place of these environments: you place a `\mtchideinmainlof` (or `mtchideinmainlot`) command in the first figure (or table) to hide, *before* its caption and a `\endmtchideinmainlof` (or `\endmtchideinmainlot`) command at the end of the last figure (or table) to hide, *after* its caption, like in this example file (`hide2.tex`):

<pre> \documentclass{book} \usepackage[tight]{minitoc} \begin{document} \dominilof \dominilot \listoffigures \listoftables \chapter{First} \minilof \minilot \begin{figure} \caption{AAAA1} \end{figure} \begin{figure} \caption{AAAA2} \end{figure} \begin{table} \caption{TAAAA1} \end{table} \begin{table} \caption{TAAAA2} \end{table} \chapter{Second} \minilof \minilot \begin{figure} \mtchideinmainlof \caption{BBBB1} \end{figure} </pre>	<pre> \begin{figure} \caption{BBBB2} \endmtchideinmainlof \end{figure} \begin{table} \mtchideinmainlot \caption{TBBBB1} \end{table} \begin{table} \caption{TBBBB2} \endmtchideinmainlot \end{table} \chapter{Third} \minilof \minilot \begin{figure} \caption{CCCC1} \end{figure} \begin{figure} \caption{CCCC2} \end{figure} \begin{table} \caption{TCCCC1} \end{table} \begin{table} \caption{TCCCC2} \end{table} \end{document} </pre>
--	---

This method, while more delicate to apply, is more reliable in delimiting the hiding domain: it solves the problem of the asynchronicity between the writing of floats and the writing of the normal text.

2.26 How to define your own .mld file?

<pre> \mtcsettitle \mtcselectlanguage </pre>	<p>First, you should not directly modify one of the distributed .mld and .mlo files. The simplest way to alter some title is to redefine the corresponding command via <code>\renewcommand</code> or better via <code>\mtcsettitle</code>. If you really want to have your own .mld file, you copy an existing .mld file into one with a new name (not the name of a distributed .mld file). Then you modify this new .mld file and you can use it via <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code>. You can always contact me to add this new .mld file to the distribution. These remarks apply also to the <code><language>[.mld-.mlo]</code> pairs of language definition files.</p>
--	---

2.27 Use with the abstract package

`abstract` If the `abstract` package [195] (by Peter R. WILSON), is used with its `addtotoc` option, a “Abstract” entry is added to the table of contents, as a starred chapter if the document class defines `\chapter`, else as a starred section. This problem is detected by the `hints` option and you should add a `\mtcaddchapter[]` or a `\mtcaddsection[]` command after your `abstract` environment.

2.28 Use with the sectsty package

If the `sectsty` package [147] (by Rowland McDONNELL) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.29 Strange alignment in the minitocs

In minitocs, subsections titles are not aligned with sections, as they are in the main table of contents.

The entries of a table of contents are formatted via internal commands like `\l@part`, `\l@chapter`, `\l@section`, etc.

The “part” and “chapter” levels (and “section” for an article) use specific commands which are somewhat complex for a more elaborated formatting. For the “section” (in the `report` and `book` classes) and lower levels, these commands are (book class, `book.cls`) by default:

```
\newcommand*\l@section{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}
\newcommand*\l@subsection{\@dottedtocline{2}{3.8em}{3.2em}}
\newcommand*\l@subsubsection{\@dottedtocline{3}{7.0em}{4.1em}}
\newcommand*\l@paragraph{\@dottedtocline{4}{10em}{5em}}
\newcommand*\l@subparagraph{\@dottedtocline{5}{12em}{6em}}
```

which will be applied in the main table of contents and in the minitocs. The arguments of `\@dottedtocline` are

- 1) the logical depth (which will be compared to `tocdepth` or `minitocdepth`).
- 2) the indentation.
- 3) the width reserved for the section/subsection/... number.

In the standard `book`, `report` and `article` classes, the dimensions (second and third arguments) are given in “em” units, and this unit depends of the current font. In the main table of contents, the section and subsection entries are written in the *same* font, hence usually the alignment is correct. But in the minitocs, the section entries are written in a bold font while the subsection entries are written in a non bold font (the default font choices are given in table 1.6 on page 33), hence one “em” has different sizes in these two fonts and the alignment is changed.

There are several solutions:

- Redefine the `\l@section ... \l@subparagraph` commands to use font independent units (pt, mm, pc, etc.). This redefinition must be performed in a package or via a command defined by a package or between `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother`, because these commands have a @ in their names; you must use `\renewcommand*` to redefine these commands.
- Use the `tocloft` package [194] to change the indentation, with font independent units. But then see section 2.21 on page 59.
- Use the same font for the section and subsection entries in the minitocs, using the `\mtcsetfont` command (see section 1.5.9 on page 38) or redefining the `\mtcSfont`, `\mtcSSfont`, `\mtcSSSfont`, `\mtcPfont` and `\mtcSPfont` commands (see table 1.6 on page 33), or similar.

2.30 Some useful precautions with starred sectionning commands

- The headers are not modified by `\part*`, `\chapter*` or `\section*`; it is necessary to use `\markboth` or `\markright` to get correct page headers for the current and following pages.
- If you need an entry in the table of contents for a `\chapter*` or a `\section*` command, you must use `\mtcaddchapter[title]` or `\mtcaddsection[title]` *after* the starred sectionning command. If you need an entry in the table of contents for a `\part*` command, the page number in the table of contents would be wrong, because `\part*` implies a `\clearpage` or a `\cleardoublepage` before the first page of the part. Use the sequence

```
\cleardoublepage      % \clearpage if openany option.
\mtcaddpart[title]
\part*[title]
```

2.31 Use with packages for captions

If one of the `caption` [178], `caption2` [179]⁴, (both written by Axel SOMMERFELDT), `ccaption` [199] (by Peter R. WILSON), or `mcaption` [108] (by Stephan HENNIG), package is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because such packages alter (redefine) the commands listing figures and tables. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.32 Bad interaction `minitoc`/`hyperref`/`memoir`

When the `minitoc` and `hyperref` [172] packages are used in a document of class `memoir` [200, 201], the chapter header “Chapter” does not appear on the first page of the chapter.

This problem is fixed in version #44 of `minitoc`.

2.33 Use with the `varsects` package

If the `varsects` package [180] (by Daniel TAUPIN[†]) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.34 Initial font settings

The setting of the fonts in the mini-tables is a rather complex problem. If we take the `parttoc`s as an example, there is a `\ptcfont` font-command which is used for two purposes⁵:

- First, to be used as default value for some other font-commands (like `\ptcSPfont`). As its default value is used in the initialization of the `minitoc` package, the value of these other commands is *not altered* if you modify `\ptcfont`. You must modify these commands one at a time.
- Second, it is invoked at the beginning of each `parttoc`, `partlof` or `partlot` to set an initial font command. Then each entry of the mini-table calls its own font command (like `\ptcSPfont`). Thus, if you modify `\ptcfont`, you can obtain a global effect on the fonts in the `parttoc`s, `partlof`s, and `partlot`s. So you can play with the various parameters of the fonts (family, shape, series, size), if you want fancy mini-tables; but it is rather difficult.

⁴ This package is obsolete; now use a recent version of the `caption` package.

⁵ The same remarks apply to the other mini-tables.



In the initialization of the `minitoc` package, we have a sequence of commands:

```
\let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont      % (subsections)
\let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont     % (subsubsections)
\let\ptcPfont\ptcfont       % (paragraphs)
\let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont      % (subparagraphs)
\let\plffont\ptcfont        % (figures)
\let\plfSfont\ptcfont       % (subfigures)
\let\pltfont\ptcfont        % (tables)
\let\pltSfont\ptcfont       % (subtables)
```

to define some default fonts. But this sequence is executed only once. If you alter `\ptcfont`, the modification is not applied to these font commands. The command `\ptcfont` is invoked at the beginning of each `parttoc`. `\ptcCfont` is invoked for each chapter entry in a `parttoc` (`\ptcSfont` for each section entry, etc.). So `\ptcfont` can be used to define some global characteristics for the fonts in the `parttocs`, while `\ptcCfont` (etc.) can be used to customize the fonts for each level of entries.

Note that if you say:

```
\def\ptcSSfont{\ptcfont}    % (subsections)
\def\ptcSSSfont{\ptcfont}   % (subsubsections)
\def\ptcPfont{\ptcfont}     % (paragraphs)
\def\ptcSPfont{\ptcfont}    % (subparagraphs)
\def\plffont{\ptcfont}      % (figures)
\def\plfSfont{\ptcfont}     % (subfigures)
\def\pltfont{\ptcfont}      % (tables)
\def\pltSfont{\ptcfont}     % (subtables)
```

after loading the `minitoc` package, these font commands will be “associated” to `\ptcfont`, hence if you modify `\ptcfont` (by via `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{...}` or `\renewcommand`), they will follow the modification. But if you modify one of these commands via `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{subsection}{...}` (subsection is an example), the association is broken. But you could be more clever by saying something like

```
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{subsection}{\ptcfont\itshape}
```

to preserve the association and modify only some parameters of a `minitoc` font command.

For levels above subsection (part, chapter and section), the fonts are more specific in general, but you can, of course, say something like `\def\ptcCfont{\ptcfont}` to make a similar association. You can even make other associations, like this:

```
% for high sectionning levels:
\def\highlevelsfont{\rmfamily\bfseries\normalsize\upshape}
```

```
% for low sectionning levels:
\def\lowlevelsfont{\rmfamily\mdseries\smallsize\upshape}
% then for each level:
\def\ptcCfont{\highlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSfont{\highlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSSfont{\lowlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSSSfont{\lowlevelsfont}
\def\ptcPfont{\lowlevelsfont\itshape}
\def\ptcSPfont{\lowlevelsfont\itshape}
```

Then you can redefine `\highlevelsfont` or `\lowlevelsfont` to act on several fonts in one step, but you must use `\renewcommand`. You cannot act on `\highlevelsfont` or `\lowlevelsfont` with `\mtcsetfont`.

Note that only the fonts for parttocs are used in the examples above; but, of course, the situation is the same for minitocs and secttocs. `\highlevelsfont` and `\lowlevelsfont` are macro names that you can choose, they are not part of the minitoc package.

2.35 Use with the KOMA-Script classes

If a KOMA-Script class [157], compatible with minitoc (`scrbook`, `scrreprt` or `scrartcl`), is used, some class options may cause problems with the minitoc package, because these options add chapter or section entries in the table of contents. See section 1.6.5 on page 45. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.36 Use with the jura class or the alphanum package

The `jura` class loads the `alphanum` package, which redefines the sectionning structure in a non-standard way, after the loading of the `report` class. This class and this package are incompatible with minitoc.

2.37 Use of the .mld files with the babel package

If you are using the `babel` package [29, 30], you can automatize the loading of the `.mld` file by adding some code in the preamble of your document, like this:

```
\AtBeginDocument{%
\addto\captionslanguageI{\mtcselectlanguage{language2}}}
```

where *language1* is the language name for `babel` and *language2* the language name for `minitoc`; there are often identical, but there are exceptions (when you use a locally customized `.mld` file, by example).

2.38 Use with the `fncychap` package

If the `fncychap` package [140] (by Ulf A. LINDGREN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.39 Use with the `quotchap` package

If the `quotchap` package [184] (by Karsten TINNEFELD) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.40 Use with the `romannum` package

If the `romannum` package [202] (by Peter R. WILSON) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the numbering of the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.41 Use with the `sfheaders` package

If the `sfheaders` package [142] (by Maurizio LORETI) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.42 Use with the `alnumsec` package

If the `alnumsec` package [122] (by Frank KÜSTER) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the numbering of the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.43 Use with the `captcont` package

If the `captcont` package [82] (by Steven Douglas COCHRAN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the caption commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.44 Vertical space (gap) before and after `parttocs`, `partlofs`, and `partlots` titles

These vertical gaps were hard-coded like for the chapter heads in the `book` and `report` document classes. The values were 50pt and 40pt, but some users want to adjust them for the titles of the part-level mini-tables. Since version #45, these gaps are defined by `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads`, with these defaults values. These commands apply globally to `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlots`. These are *commands*, *not* dimensions, so they must be modified via `\renewcommand` (*not* via `\setlength`). An example of use is given in the `gaps.tex` document file.



Chapter 3

Memento

Tables	
3.1	Package options 72
3.2	General commands 73
3.3	Commands: part level 74
3.4	Commands: chapter level 75
3.5	Commands: section level 76
3.6	Commands for horizontal rules 77
3.7	Commands for page numbers 77
3.8	Specific commands for parttocs and other mini-tables features 78
3.9	Preparation and insertion commands 78
3.10	Adjustment commands 79
3.11	Obsolete commands 79

Table 3.1: Package options

Options	Default	Meaning
shorttext	*NO*	Short extensions for auxiliary files.
loose, tight	loose	Spacing of lines in mini-tables.
k-loose, k-tight	k-loose	Spacing of lines in mini-tables (KOMA-Script classes).
dotted, undotted	dotted	Presence of leaders (dotted lines).
insection	*NO*	Keeps floats (figures and tables) from drifting outside of their section. Useful if you use sectlofs/sectlots.
notoccite	*NO*	Useful if you have \cite commands in sectionning titles and use an unsorted bibliographic style.
listfiles, nolistfiles	nolistfiles	Lists the minitoc auxiliary files into <i>document.maf</i> .
hints, nohints	hints	Adds hints in the .log file. Useful to detect some problems.

Language options are listed in table 1.7 on page 34. Default: english.

Table 3.2: General commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\faketableofcontents</code>	Replaces <code>\tableofcontents</code> if you want mini-tables of contents but no main table of contents.
<code>\fakelistoffigures</code>	Replaces <code>\listoffigures</code> if you want mini-lists of figures but no main list of figures.
<code>\fakelistoftables</code>	Replaces <code>\listoftables</code> if you want mini-lists of tables but no main list of tables.
<code>\mtcselectlanguage{language}</code>	Loads <code>language.mld</code> to select a language for mini-tables titles.
<code>\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}</code>	Changes the depth for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before after pagestyle}{commands}</code>	Modifies the features for a mini-table.
<code>\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{sectioning-level}{font commands}</code>	Redefines a minitoc font command.
<code>\mtcsetformat{mini-table}{dotinterval pagenumwidth tocrightmargin}{value}</code>	Changes the layout of some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits page numbers in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetrules{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits horizontal rules in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{title string}</code>	Changes the title for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{font commands}</code>	Changes the font of the title for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcskip</code>	To add a vertical skip between the mini-tables.
<code>\mtcskipamount</code>	Length of <code>\mtcskip</code> . Default: <code>\bigskipamount</code> .
<code>\tightmtcfalse</code>	Loose mini-tables. Default.
<code>\tightmtctrue</code>	Tight mini-tables.
<code>\ktightmtcfalse</code>	Loose mini-tables. Default. (KOMA-Script classes).
<code>\ktightmtctrue</code>	Tight mini-tables. (KOMA-Script classes).
<code>\undottedmtcfalse</code>	Dotted lines in mini-tables (from entry to page number). Default.
<code>\undottedmtctrue</code>	No dotted lines in mini-tables (from entry to page number).

Table 3.3: Commands: part level

Command	Meaning
<code>\doparttoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\parttoc*</code> .
<code>\dopartlof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\partlof*</code> .
<code>\dopartlot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\partlot*</code> .
<code>\parttoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a parttoc is needed*.
<code>\partlof[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a partlof is needed*.
<code>\partlot[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a partlot is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{parttocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following parttocs. Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on partlofs and partlots.
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{parttoc partlof partlot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on partlofs and partlots.
<code>\ptcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a partial table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\ptcfont</code>	Font command for parttoc. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> (article) or: <code>\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\ptcCfont</code>	Font command for parttoc, chapter entries. Default: <code>\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .
<code>\ptcSfont</code>	Font command for parttoc, section entries. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (article) or: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\ptcSSfont</code>	Font command for parttoc, subsection entries**.
<code>\ptcSSSfont</code>	Font command for parttoc, subsubsection entries**.
<code>\ptcPfont</code>	Font command for parttoc, paragraph entries**.
<code>\ptcSPfont</code>	Font command for parttoc, subparagraph entries**.
<code>\plffont</code>	Font for partlof. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\plfSfont</code>	Font for partlof (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\pltfont</code>	Font for partlot. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\pltSfont</code>	Font for partlot (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\ptctitle</code>	Title of parttocs. Default: Table of Contents.
<code>\plftitle</code>	Title of partlofs. Default: List of Figures.
<code>\plttitle</code>	Title of partlots. Default: List of Tables.
<code>\ptifont</code>	Font for partXXX titles. Default: <code>\Large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (article) or: <code>\LARGE\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\mtcgapbeforeheads</code>	Vertical gap before part-level mini-tables titles. Default: 50pt
<code>\mtcgapafterheads</code>	Vertical gap after part-level mini-tables titles. Default: 40pt

*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\partXXX` commands, global for the `\dopartXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: 1 for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

** : defaults like `\ptcfont`.

Table 3.4: Commands: chapter level

Command	Meaning
<code>\dominitoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\minitoc*</code> .
<code>\dominilof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\minilof*</code> .
<code>\dominilot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\minilot*</code> .
<code>\minitoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minitoc is needed*.
<code>\minilof[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minilof is needed*.
<code>\minilot[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minilot is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{minitocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following minitocs. Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on minilofs and minilots.
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{minitoc minilof minilot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on minilofs and minilots.
<code>\mtcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a mini-table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\mtcfont</code>	Font command for minitoc. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mtcSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, section entries. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .
<code>\mtcSSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subsection entries**.
<code>\mtcSSSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subsubsection entries**.
<code>\mtcPfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, paragraph entries**.
<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subparagraph entries**.
<code>\mlffont</code>	Font for minilof. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mlfSfont</code>	Font for minilof (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mltfont</code>	Font for minilot. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mltSfont</code>	Font for minilot (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mtctitle</code>	Title of minitocs. Default: Contents.
<code>\mlftitle</code>	Title of minilofs. Default: Figures.
<code>\mltttitle</code>	Title of minilots. Default: Tables.
<code>\mtifont</code>	Font for miniXXX titles. Default: <code>\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .

*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\miniXXX` commands, global for the `\dominiXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

** : defaults like `\mtcfont`.

Table 3.5: Commands: section level

Command	Meaning
<code>\dosecttoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\secttoc*</code> .
<code>\dosectlof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\sectlof*</code> .
<code>\dosectlot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\sectlot*</code> .
<code>\secttoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a <code>secttoc</code> is needed*.
<code>\sectlof[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a <code>sectlof</code> is needed*.
<code>\sectlot[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a <code>sectlot</code> is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{secttocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following <code>secttocs</code> . Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on <code>sectlofs</code> and <code>sectlots</code> .
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{secttoc sectlof sectlot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on <code>sectlofs</code> and <code>sectlots</code> .
<code>\stcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a mini-table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\stcfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\stcSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , subsection entries**.
<code>\stcSSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , subsubsection entries**.
<code>\stcPfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , paragraph entries**.
<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , subparagraph entries**.
<code>\slffont</code>	Font for <code>sectlof</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\slfSfont</code>	Font for <code>sectlof</code> (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\sltfont</code>	Font for <code>sectlot</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\sltSfont</code>	Font for <code>sectlot</code> (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\stctitle</code>	Title of <code>secttocs</code> . Default: Contents.
<code>\slftitle</code>	Title of <code>sectlofs</code> . Default: Figures.
<code>\slttitle</code>	Title of <code>sectlots</code> . Default: Tables.
<code>\stifont</code>	Font for <code>sectXXX</code> titles. Default: <code>\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .

*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\sectXXX` commands, global for the `\dosectXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

** : defaults like `\stcfont`.

Table 3.6: Commands for horizontal rules

Command	Meaning
<code>\[no]ptcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in parttocs.
<code>\[no]mtcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minitocs.
<code>\[no]stcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in secttocs.
<code>\[no]plfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in partlofs.
<code>\[no]mlfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minilofs.
<code>\[no]slfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in sectlofs.
<code>\[no]pltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in partlots.
<code>\[no]mltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minilots.
<code>\[no]sltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in sectlots.
<code>\mtcsetrules{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits horizontal rules in some or all mini-tables.

By default, parttocs have no rules; minitocs and secttocs have rules. In articles, parttocs have rules.

Table 3.7: Commands for page numbers

Command	Meaning
<code>\[no]ptcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in parttocs.
<code>\[no]plfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in partlofs.
<code>\[no]pltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in partlots.
<code>\[no]mtcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minitocs.
<code>\[no]mlfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minilofs.
<code>\[no]mltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minilots.
<code>\[no]stcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in secttocs.
<code>\[no]slfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in sectlofs.
<code>\[no]sltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in sectlots.
<code>\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits page numbers in some or all mini-tables.

By default, the page numbers are present.

Table 3.8: Specific commands for parttocs and other mini-tables features

Command	Default	Meaning
<code>\beforeparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a parttoc.
<code>\beforepartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a partlof.
<code>\beforepartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a partlot.
<code>\afterparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a parttoc.
<code>\afterpartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a partlof.
<code>\afterpartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a partlot.
<code>\thispageparttocstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a parttoc.
<code>\thispagepartlofstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a partlof.
<code>\thispagepartlotstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a partlot.
<code>\beforeminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minitoc.
<code>\beforeminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minilof.
<code>\beforeminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minilot.
<code>\afterminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minitoc.
<code>\afterminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minilof.
<code>\afterminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minilot.
<code>\thispagemininitocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minitoc.
<code>\thispageminilofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minilof.
<code>\thispageminilotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minilot.
<code>\beforesecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a secttoc.
<code>\beforesectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a sectlof.
<code>\beforesectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a sectlot.
<code>\aftersecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a secttoc.
<code>\aftersectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a sectlof.
<code>\aftersectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a sectlot.
<code>\thispagesecttocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a secttoc.
<code>\thispagesectlofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a sectlof.
<code>\thispagesectlotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a sectlot.
<code>\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before after pagestyle}{commands}</code> Modifies the features for a mini-table.		

Table 3.9: Preparation and insertion commands

Type	Phase	Level		
		part	chapter	section
table of contents	preparation	<code>\doparttoc[p]</code>	<code>\dominitoc[p]</code>	<code>\dosecttoc[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\parttoc[p]</code>	<code>\minitoc[p]</code>	<code>\secttoc[p]</code>
list of figures	preparation	<code>\dopartlof[p]</code>	<code>\dominilof[p]</code>	<code>\dosectlof[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\partlof[p]</code>	<code>\minilof[p]</code>	<code>\sectlof[p]</code>
list of tables	preparation	<code>\dopartlot[p]</code>	<code>\dominilot[p]</code>	<code>\dosectlot[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\partlot[p]</code>	<code>\minilot[p]</code>	<code>\sectlot[p]</code>
all	preparation	<code>\mtcprepare[p]</code>		

Each of these commands accepts one optional argument p , which specifies the position of the title of the mini-table. This argument p has a global effect for the preparation commands, but local for the insertion commands. It is a letter: [l] for left aligned (default), [c] for centered, [r] for right aligned, [e] or [n] for empty (no title).

Table 3.10: Adjustment commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\adjustptc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> by n .
<code>\adjustmtc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> by n .
<code>\adjuststc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> by n .
<code>\decrementptc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> .
<code>\decrementmtc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> .
<code>\decrementstc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> .
<code>\incrementptc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> .
<code>\incrementmtc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> .
<code>\incrementstc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> .
<code>\mtcaddpart[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\part*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcaddchapter[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\chapter*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcaddsection[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\section*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcfixglossary[chapter section part]</code>	Adjusts the entry for glossary in the ToC.
<code>\mtcfixindex[chapter section part]</code>	Adjusts the entry for index in the ToC.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmaintoc}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main table of contents.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmainlof}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmainlof}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main list of figures.
<code>\mtchideinmainlof[depth] ... \endmtchideinmainlof</code>	Pair of commands to hide entries in the main list of figures.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmainlot}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmainlot}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main list of tables.
<code>\mtchideinmainlot[depth] ... \endmtchideinmainlot</code>	Pair of commands to hide entries in the main list of tables.

Table 3.11: Obsolete commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\firstpartis{N}</code>	N is the number of the first part.
<code>\firstchapteris{N}</code>	N is the number of the first chapter.
<code>\firstsectionis{N}</code>	N is the number of the first section.

Chapter 4

Messages

Contents

4.1	Messages from the <code>minitoc</code> package	81
4.1.1	Informative messages	81
4.1.1.1	Informative messages for hints	89
4.1.2	Warning messages	92
4.1.2.1	Warning messages for hints	96
4.1.3	Error messages	112
4.2	Messages from the <code>mtcoff</code> package	123
4.2.1	Warning messages	123
4.3	Message from the <code>mtcpatchmem</code> package	125

This chapter lists and comments the messages given by the `minitoc`, `mtcoff` and `mtcpatchmem` packages¹.

- The first line of each message contains usually the name of the package and an unique identifier (this identifier may be useful to search in this chapter of the documentation, but has no special meaning, except the leading letter: I for informative, W for warning, and E for error).
- Informative messages are written only in the `document.log` file; the prefix is F for the warning messages from the `mtcoff` package and M for the informative message from the `mtcpatchmem` package.
- Warning messages are shown on the screen (but often too quickly to be seen, because normally \LaTeX does not stop for warnings) and written in the `document.log` file.
- Error messages are shown on the screen and written in the `document.log` file, but \LaTeX stops, so you can ask for help by typing “h”.

¹ The texts of the messages given in this chapter may slightly differ from the real text, because some messages contain some variable elements and the layout may differ.

- In this chapter, some words in the messages are typeset in italic characters; they represent the variable parts of the message:
 - *ARG1* The first argument of the command.
 - *ARG2* The second argument of the command.
 - *ARG3* The third argument of the command.
 - *CLASS* The name of the class of your document.
 - *counter* The name of a L^AT_EX counter.
 - *document* The name of your document, without its `.tex` extension.
 - *extension* The extension part of the name of a file.
 - *file* The name of a file (often a minitoc auxiliary file, the `document.toc` file, the `document.lof` file, or the `document.lot` file).
 - *internal_name* The name of an internal macro redefined by a `\mtcset...` command.
 - *LANGUAGE* The name of the language (for `\mtcselectlanguage`).
 - *LINE* The number of the line in the source file.
 - *macro* The name of a minitoc font command redefined by `\mtcsetfont`.
 - *new_title* The new value of a title redefined by `\mtcsettitle`.
 - *NUMBER* The number of mini-tables of the given type in your document (when you are using short extensions and that number is greater than 99).
 - *PREPARATION* The name of a minitoc preparation command.
 - *sequence* A sequence of commands used to redefine an internal macro via a `\mtcset...` command.
 - *value* The new value of a counter.

4.1 Messages from the minitoc package

4.1.1 Informative messages

Package: minitoc 2006/06/08 v45 Package minitoc (JPFD)

This is the announce message of the minitoc package, with its name, date and version. “JPFD” are my initials. This message has no identifier because it is emitted by `\ProvidesPackage`.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0001>
(minitoc)           *** minitoc package, version 45 ***.
```

Remember the version of the package.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0002>
(minitoc)           Autoconfiguration of extensions.
```

The minitoc package tries to determine if short or long extensions for file names are used by the operating system.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0003>
(minitoc)           chapter level macros available.
```

The `\chapter` sectionning command is available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the chapter level, but *not* the mini-table commands at the section level.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0004>
(minitoc)           chapter level macros NOT available.
```

The `\chapter` sectionning command is *not* available, so you cannot use the mini-table commands at the chapter level, but, if the `\section` sectionning command is available, you can use mini-table commands at the section level.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0005>
(minitoc)           compatible with hyperref.
```

This version of minitoc is compatible with the hyperref package.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0006>
(minitoc)           document.extension is empty on input line LINE.
```

The auxiliary file for a mini-table is found empty (or inexistent) when minitoc tries to insert it. If the `checkfiles` option is active, it is skipped.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0007>
(minitoc)           Horizontal rules are activated
(minitoc)           for the ARGIs on input line LINE.
```

The horizontal rules will be present in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0008>
(minitoc)           Horizontal rules are inhibited
(minitoc)           for the ARGIs on input line LINE.
```

The horizontal rules will be omitted in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0009>
(minitoc)           Listing minitoc auxiliary files
(minitoc)           Creating the document.maf file.
```

You have used the `listfiles` package option. A list of the minitoc auxiliary files is written in the *document.maf* file. It may be helpful to delete these files. See section 1.8 on page 47.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0010>
Package minitoc Info: The LANGUAGE language is selected.
(minitoc)           on input line LINE.
```

The *LANGUAGE.mld* file has been successfully loaded for the *LANGUAGE* language² by the `\mtcselectlanguage` command at line *LINE*. The titles for the mini-tables are changed.

² The *english.mld* file is always loaded first, to have english as default language.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0011>
(minitoc)           LANGUAGE language object selected.
(minitoc)           on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has successfully (indirectly) loaded the `LANGUAGE.mlo` minitoc object file.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0012>
(minitoc)           Long extensions (Unix-like) will be used.
```

The autoconfiguration has detected that your operating system is able to use long extensions; this will be the default.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0013>
(minitoc)           \mtcsetdepth redefines the counter
(minitoc)           "counter" as "value" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsetdepth` macro changes the value of the specified depth counter and forces it to *value*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0014>
(minitoc)           \mtcsetfeature redefines the macro
(minitoc)           "\internal_name" as
(minitoc)           "\sequence" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsetfeature` macro has redefined the internal macro *internal_name* with the given *sequence*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0015>
(minitoc)           \mtcsetfont redefines the macro
(minitoc)           "macro" as "sequence" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsetfont` command redefines the (old style) *macro* by the given *sequence* of font commands.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0016>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetformat redefines the macro
(minitoc)          "\internal_name" as "ARG3" on input line LINE.

```

The macro `\mtcsetformat` redefines an internal macro with the value given by its third argument.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0017>
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitle redefines the macro
(minitoc)          "internal_name" as
(minitoc)          "new_title" on input line LINE.

```

A mini-table title is redefined via the `\mtcsettitle` macro.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0018>
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitlefont redefines the macro
(minitoc)          "\internal_name" as
(minitoc)          "sequence" on input line LINE.

```

The `\mtcsettitlefont` macro redefines the (old style) `\internal_name` macro which the given sequence *sequence*.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0019>
(minitoc(hints))    No hints have been written
(minitoc(hints))    in the document.log file.

```

The hints package option has detected no potential problem.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0020>
(minitoc)          old version of the memoir class.

```

The version of the memoir class is old. The minitoc package does not need to patch it.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0021>
(minitoc)           Page numbers are activated
(minitoc)           for the ARGIs on input line LINE.

```

The page numbers will be present in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0022>
(minitoc)           Page numbers are inhibited
(minitoc)           for the ARGIs on input line LINE.

```

The page numbers will be omitted in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0023>
(minitoc)           part level macros available.

```

The `\part` sectioning command is available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the part level.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0024>
(minitoc)           PREPARING MINITOCs FROM file on input line LINE.

```

A `\dominitoc` command prepares the minitoc auxiliary files for minitocs from *file*.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0025>
(minitoc)           PREPARING PARTTOCS FROM file on input line LINE.

```

A `\doparttoc` command prepares the parttoc auxiliary files for parttocs from *file*.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0026>
(minitoc)           PREPARING SECTTOCS FROM file on input line LINE.

```

A `\dosecttoc` command prepares the secttoc auxiliary files for secttocs from *file*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0027>
(minitoc)             recent version of the memoir class.
```

The version of the memoir class is recent. The minitoc package will try to patch it.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0028>
(minitoc)             section level macros available.
```

The `\section` sectionning command is available but the `\chapter` sectionning command is *not* available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the section level.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0029>
(minitoc)             section level macros NOT available.
```

The `\section` sectionning command is not defined (by the document class), so the section level commands of the minitoc package are not available.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0030>
(minitoc)             the memoir class is loaded:
(minitoc)             compatibility attempted.
```

The memoir document class is used. The minitoc package tries to ensure compatibility.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0031>
(minitoc)             ==> this version is configured for UNIX-like
(minitoc)             (long extensions) file names.
```

The autoconfiguration has detected that your operating uses UNIX-like (long extensions) file names.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0032>
(minitoc)           This version of the memoir class uses
(minitoc)           a version of \chapter which is
(minitoc)           incompatible with the minitoc package.
(minitoc)           We try to patch.

```

The memoir class uses a version of the `\chapter` command which needs to be corrected because its syntax has been changed. A patch is loaded.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0033>
(minitoc)           Writing document.extension.

```

An auxiliary file for a mini-table is written by a minitoc preparation command (like `\dominitoc`).

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0034>
(minitoc)           PREPARING MINILOFS FROM file on input line LINE.

```

A `\dominilof` command prepares the minilof auxiliary files for minilofs from *file*.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0035>
(minitoc)           PREPARING PARTLOFS FROM file on input line LINE.

```

A `\dopartlof` command prepares the partlof auxiliary files for partlofs from *file*.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0036>
(minitoc)           PREPARING SECTLOFS FROM file on input line LINE.

```

A `\dosectlof` command prepares the sectlof auxiliary files for sectlofs from *file*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0037>
(minitoc)             PREPARING MINILOTS FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A \dominilot command prepares the minilot auxiliary files for minilots from *file*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0038>
(minitoc)             PREPARING PARTLOTS FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A \dopartlot command prepares the partlot auxiliary files for partlots from *file*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0039>
(minitoc)             PREPARING SECTLOTS FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A \dosectlot command prepares the sectlot auxiliary files for sectlots from *file*.

4.1.1.1 Informative messages for hints

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0040>
(minitoc(hints))      The ‘‘abstract’’ package has been
(minitoc(hints))      loaded with the ‘‘addtotoc’’ option.
(minitoc(hints))      You need to look at the
(minitoc(hints))      documentation to adjust.
```

As you are using the `abstract` package with its `addtotoc` option, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.27 on page 65.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0041>
(minitoc(hints))      --- The amsbook class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))      for specific precautions.
```

As you are using the `amsbook` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.24 on page 61.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0042>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The appendix package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.

```

As you are using also the `appendix` package, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.20 on page 58.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0043>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The KOMAScript CLASS class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.

```

As you are using also the `CLASS` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 1.6.5 on page 45. The classes involved here are `scrbook`, `scrreprt`, and `scrarcl`, i.e., the KOMA-Script classes [157] compatible with `minitoc`.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0044>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The memoir class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.

```

As you are using the `memoir` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.22 on page 60.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0045>
(minitoc(hints))          The \PREPARATION command
(minitoc(hints))          has been invoked more than once
(minitoc(hints))          on input line LINE.

```

A `minitoc` preparation command has been invoked more than once.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0046>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The tocbibind package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.

```

As you are using also the tocbibind package, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 1.6.5 on page 45.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0047>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The tocloft package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.

```

As you are using also the tocloft package, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.21 on page 59.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0048>
(minitoc(hints))          Using \mtcprepare may induce some
(minitoc(hints))          hints about the preparation commands,
(minitoc(hints))          because it invokes ALL the preparation
(minitoc(hints))          commands allowed by the document class,
(minitoc(hints))          without any previous check.
(minitoc(hints))          on input line LINE.

```

The \mtcprepare command invoke all the possible preparation commands, depending only on the document class and the available contents files. It does not known exactly what you want, so it can prepare too many mini-tables files.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0049>
(minitoc(hints))          ==> You requested the hints option
(minitoc(hints))          Some hints are eventually given below.

```

As you have requested the hints package option (which is set by default), some “hints” are eventually given in the *document.log* file. You can find them easily by searching for the string “minitoc(hints)” with a text editor.

4.1.2 Warning messages

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0001>
(minitoc)                \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                Cannot use \mtcfixglossary without
(minitoc)                optional argument [part].
```

The sectioning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixglossary` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0002>
(minitoc)                \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                Cannot use \mtcfixindex without
(minitoc)                optional argument [part].
```

The sectioning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixindex` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0003>
(minitoc)                \firstchapteris is an obsolete
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstchapteris`). You should remove it.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0004>
(minitoc)                \firstpartis is an obsolete
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstpartis`). You should remove it.

```

Package minitoc Warning: <W0005>
(minitoc)                \firstsectionis is an obsolete
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.

```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstsectionis`). You should remove it.

```

Package minitoc Warning: <W0006>
(minitoc)                \mtcfixglossary can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.

```

The `\mtcfixglossary` macro can only use `[part]` as optional argument (which becomes the default), because `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined.

```

Package minitoc Warning: <W0007>
(minitoc)                \mtcfixindex can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.

```

The `\mtcfixindex` macro can only use `[part]` as optional argument (which becomes the default), because `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined.

```

Package minitoc Warning: <W0008>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                MINILOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.

```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominilof` command. Please check if you have called `\dominilof` in the correct sequence of commands.

```

Package minitoc Warning: <W0009>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                MINILOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.

```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominilot` command. Please check if you have called `\dominilot` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0010>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                MINITOCs NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominitoc` command.
Please check if you have called `\dominitoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0011>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                PARTLOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dopartlof` command.
Please check if you have called `\dopartlof` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0012>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                PARTLOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dopartlot` command.
Please check if you have called `\dopartlot` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0013>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                PARTTOCS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\doparttoc` command.
Please check if you have called `\doparttoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0014>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                SECTLOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosectlof` command.
Please check if you have called `\dosectlof` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0015>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                SECTLOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosectlot` command. Please check if you have called `\dosectlot` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0016>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                SECTTOCS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosecttoc` command. Please check if you have called `\dosecttoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0017>
(minitoc)                no section or chapter level macros available
(minitoc)                PLEASE VERIFY YOUR MAIN DOCUMENT CLASS.
```

The `\chapter` and `\section` sectionning commands are not defined. Your document class is likely without any sectionning command, so the minitoc package is pointless. *Verify your main document class.*

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0018>
Package minitoc Warning: part level macros NOT available.
```

The `\part` sectionning command is not defined (by the document class), so the part level commands of the minitoc package are not available. It is a warning message because most classes with sectionning commands define the `\part` command, so you should verify which class you are using.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0019>
(minitoc)                Short extensions (MSDOS-like) will be used.
(minitoc)                ==> this version is configured for MSDOS-like
(minitoc)                (8+3) file names.
```

The autofiguration has found that the operating systems use file names with short extensions (8+3 scheme).

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0020>
(minitoc)                You have forced the use of short extensions.
```

You have used the `shorttext` package option to force the use of short extensions (8+3 scheme). This action limits the number of usable mini-tables of each kind and may be problematic if you have more than 99 mini-tables of the same kind. If your operating system allows for long extensions, do not use the `shorttext` package option, except for testing purposes.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0021>
(minitoc)                Your version of latex.tex is obsolete.
(minitoc)                Trying to continue...
```

You are using an obsolete version of \LaTeX , but the minitoc package will try to continue. It would be better to update your \LaTeX installation.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0022>
Package minitoc Warning: Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
(minitoc)                Trying to continue... crossing fingers.
```

Your version of \LaTeX is very obsolete, and almost unusable with the minitoc package. You can try to continue the compilation, but you are urged to update your \LaTeX installation.

4.1.2.1 Warning messages for hints

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0023>
(minitoc(hints))          --- It may be the consequence
(minitoc(hints))          of loading the ‘‘hyperref’’ package.
```

Some sectionning commands have been altered *after* the loading of the minitoc package. The hyperref package does that, but it is harmless. For other packages or user-made alterations, it is recommended to alter the sectionning commands only *before* loading the minitoc package. See section 2.17 on page 57.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0024>
(minitoc(hints))              Some hints have been written
(minitoc(hints))              in the document.log file.
```

The `hints` package option has detected some potential problems and written hints into the `document.log` file. You can search it for the “`minitoc(hints)`” string with a text editor.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0025>
(minitoc(hints))              --- The alphanum package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))              It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))              with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `alphanum` package which is incompatible with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0026>
(minitoc(hints))              --- The amsart class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))              It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))              with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `amsart` document class which is incompatible with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0027>
(minitoc(hints))              --- The amsproc class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))              It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))              with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `amsproc` document class which is incompatible with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0028>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The \chapter command is altered
                           after minitoc.

```

Some packages alter the sectionning commands, like `\chapter`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (as recommended), alters the sectionning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`, but then it is harmless.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0029>
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: --- The jura class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.

```

You are using the `jura` document class which is incompatible with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0030>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The \part command is altered
                           after minitoc.

```

Some packages alter the sectionning commands, like `\part`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (as recommended), alters the sectionning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`, but then it is harmless.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0031>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))          without the section option,
(minitoc(hints))          but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))          which implies it. Try to inverse the
(minitoc(hints))          loading order and use coherent options.
(minitoc(hints))          You may have got a message
(minitoc(hints))          ! LaTeX Error: Option clash for package placeins.

```



You are using the `placeins` package, but without its `section` options, while `minitoc` is called with its `insection` option which implies it. See page 27, near a “dangerous bend” symbol like the one shown in the margin.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0032>
(minitoc(hints))           --- The placeins package loaded is
(minitoc(hints))           too old. It should have a version
(minitoc(hints))           date of 2005/04/18 at least.
```

You are using an obsolete version of the `placeins` package. Please update it from the CTAN archives or a recent distribution.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0033>
(minitoc(hints))           The caption package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `caption` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.31 on page 67.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0034>
(minitoc(hints))           The caption2 package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `caption2` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.31 on page 67.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0035>
(minitoc(hints))           The ccaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `ccaption` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.31 on page 67.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0036>
(minitoc(hints))               The mcaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The mcaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 67.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0037>
(minitoc(hints))               The sectsty package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The sectsty package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.28 on page 65.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0038>
(minitoc(hints))               The varsects package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The varsects package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.33 on page 67.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0039>
(minitoc(hints))               --- The \section command is altered
                                after minitoc.

```

Some packages alter the sectionning commands, like `\section`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the minitoc package. The hyperref package, even if it is loaded *before* the minitoc package (as recommended), alters the sectionning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the hyperref package with minitoc, but then it is harmless.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0040>
(minitoc(hints))               --- The titletoc package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))               It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))               with the minitoc package.

```

You are trying to use also the `titletoc` package, but it is incompatible with the `minitoc` package. See note 17 on page 48.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0041>
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty minilofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minilofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0042>
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty minilots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minilots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0043>
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty minitocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minitocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0044>
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty partlofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty partlofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0045>
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty partlots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty partlots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0046>
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty parttocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty parttocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0047>
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty sectlofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty sectlofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0048>
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty sectlots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty sectlots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0049>
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty secttocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty secttocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0050>
(minitoc(hints))              You have invoked an obsolete
                               command: \firstchapteris.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstchapteris`). You should remove it.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0051>
(minitoc(hints))              You have invoked an obsolete
                               command: \firstpartis.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstpartis`). You should remove it.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0052>
(minitoc(hints))              You have invoked an obsolete
                               command: \firstsectionis.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstsectionis`). You should remove it.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0053>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))              and more than 99 chapters (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 chapters, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective chapters in your document. See section 1.10 on page 49.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0054>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))                and more than 99 parts (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 parts, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective parts in your document. See section 1.10 on page 49.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0055>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))                and more than 99 sections (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 sections, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective sections in your document. See section 1.10 on page 49.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0056>
(minitoc(hints))                You are using \dosectlof and/or
(minitoc(hints))                \dosectlot, \sectlof and/or \sectlot,
(minitoc(hints))                hence the ‘‘insection’’ package
(minitoc(hints))                option is recommended.
```

You are asking for mini-lists of figures or tables at the section level. But as floats (figures and tables) could drift somewhere outside the printing area of the text of the section, the sectlofs and sectlots can be rather strange. In order to have a better behaviour of these mini-tables, it may be useful to add the `insection` package option. See page 27.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0057>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \minilof,
(minitoc(hints))                but not \dominilof.
```

You have attempted to insert some minilofs (via `\minilof`), but the minilofs have not been prepared (via `\dominilof`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0058>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minilot,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominilot.
```

You have attempted to insert some minilots (via `\minilot`), but the minilots have not been prepared (via `\dominilot`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0059>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minitoc,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominitoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some minitocs (via `\minitoc`), but the minitocs have not been prepared (via `\dominitoc`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0060>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \partlof,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dopartlof.
```

You have attempted to insert some partlofs (via `\partlof`), but the partlofs have not been prepared (via `\dopartlof`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0061>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \partlot,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dopartlot.
```

You have attempted to insert some partlots (via `\partlot`), but the partlots have not been prepared (via `\dopartlot`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0062>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \parttoc,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \doparttoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some parttocs (via `\parttoc`), but the parttocs have not been prepared (via `\doparttoc`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0063>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \sectlof,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dosectlof.
```

You have attempted to insert some sectlofs (via `\sectlof`), but the sectlofs have not been prepared (via `\dosectlof`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0064>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \sectlot,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dosectlot.
```

You have attempted to insert some sectlots (via `\sectlot`), but the sectlots have not been prepared (via `\dosectlot`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0065>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \secttoc,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dosecttoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some secttocs (via `\secttoc`), but the secttocs have not been prepared (via `\dosecttoc`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0066>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minilof,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \listoffigures nor
(minitoc(hints))              \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some minilofs (via `\minilof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0067>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minilot but not
(minitoc(hints))              \listoftables nor
(minitoc(hints))              \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some minilots (via `\minilot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0068>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \minitoc but not
(minitoc(hints))               \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))               nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some minitocs (via `\minitoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0069>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \partlof but not
(minitoc(hints))               \listoffigures
(minitoc(hints))               nor \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some partlofs (via `\partlof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0070>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \partlot but not
(minitoc(hints))               \listoftables
(minitoc(hints))               nor \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some partlots (via `\partlot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0071>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \parttoc but not
(minitoc(hints))               \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))               nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some parttocs (via `\parttoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0072>
(minitoc(hints))      You have used \sectlof but not
(minitoc(hints))      \listoffigures
(minitoc(hints))      nor \fakelistoffigures.

```

You have tried to insert some sectlofs (via `\sectlof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0073>
(minitoc(hints))      You have used \sectlot but not
(minitoc(hints))      \listoftables
(minitoc(hints))      nor \fakelistoftables.

```

You have tried to insert some sectlots (via `\sectlot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0074>
(minitoc(hints))      You have used \secttoc but not
(minitoc(hints))      \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))      nor \faketableofcontents.

```

You have tried to insert some secttocs (via `\secttoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0075>
(minitoc(hints))      You have used \doparttoc
(minitoc(hints))      but not \parttoc.

```

You have prepared some parttocs (via `\doparttoc`), but you never use one of them.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0076>
(minitoc(hints))      You have used \dopartlof
(minitoc(hints))      but not \partlof.

```

You have prepared some partlofs (via `\dopartlof`), but you never use one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0077>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dopartlot
(minitoc(hints))              but not \partlot.
```

You have prepared some partlots (via `\dopartlot`), but you never use one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0078>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dominitoc
(minitoc(hints))              but not \minitoc.
```

You have prepared some minitocs (via `\dominitoc`), but you never use one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0079>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dominilof
(minitoc(hints))              but not \minilof.
```

You have prepared some minilofs (via `\dominilof`), but you never use one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0080>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dominilot
(minitoc(hints))              but not \minilot.
```

You have prepared some minilots (via `\dominilot`), but you never use one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0081>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dosecttoc
(minitoc(hints))              but not \secttoc.
```

You have prepared some secttocs (via `\dosecttoc`), but you never use one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0082>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \dosectlof
(minitoc(hints))               but not \sectlof.
```

You have prepared some sectlofs (via `\dosectlof`), but you never use one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0083>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \dosectlot
(minitoc(hints))               but not \sectlot.
```

You have prepared some sectlots (via `\dosectlot`), but you never use one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0084>
(minitoc(hints))               --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))               with the above option,
(minitoc(hints))               but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))               which is incompatible with it.
(minitoc(hints))               Try to remove the above option and
(minitoc(hints))               use coherent options.
```

You are using the `placeins` package, but with its `above` options, while `minitoc` is called with its `insection` option which is incompatible with it. See page 27, near a “dangerous bend” symbol like the one shown in the margin.



```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0085>
(minitoc(hints))               --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))               with the below option,
(minitoc(hints))               but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))               which is incompatible with it.
(minitoc(hints))               Try to remove the below option
(minitoc(hints))               and use coherent options.
```

You are using the `placeins` package, but with its `below` options, while `minitoc` is called with its `insection` option which is incompatible with it. See page 27, near a “dangerous bend” symbol like the one shown in the margin.



```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0086>
(minitoc(hints))               The fncychap package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The fncychap package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.38 on page 70.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0087>
(minitoc(hints))               The quotchap package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The quotchap package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.39 on page 70.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0088>
(minitoc(hints))               The romannum package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The romannum package alters the numbering of some sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.40 on page 70.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0089>
(minitoc(hints))               The sfheaders package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The sfheaders package alters the sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.41 on page 70.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0090>
(minitoc(hints))               The alnumsec package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The alnumsec package alters the sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.42 on page 70.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0091>
(minitoc(hints))               The captcont package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The `captcont` package alters the caption commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.43 on page 71.

4.1.3 Error messages

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0001>
(minitoc)                But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixglossary not usable

```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the `\mtcfixglossary` macro; even `\part` is undefined. Verify your document class.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0002>
(minitoc)                But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixindex not usable

```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the `\mtcfixindex` macro; even `\part` is undefined. Verify your document class.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0003>
(minitoc)                Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect

```


Some `mtchideinmainlof` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main list of figures will be strange.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0004>
(minitoc)           Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect
```

Some `mtchideinmainlot` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main list of tables will be strange.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0005>
(minitoc)           Imbrication of mtchideinmaintoc environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect
```

Some `mtchideinmaintoc` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main table of contents will be strange.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0006>
(minitoc)           LANGUAGE is not a known language,
(minitoc)           LANGUAGE.mld not found.
(minitoc)           Command ignored.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Correct the source using a valid language name.
Press RETURN
```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has attempted to load the `LANGUAGE.mld` minitoc language definition file, but has not found it. First, verify the name of the language (likely to be misspelt), then check if your installation contains *all* the many distributed `.mld` files of the minitoc package, at the right place. If it is a local `.mld` file, it should be installed in the right place (in a local hierarchy) or be in the working directory.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0007>
(minitoc)          LANGUAGE is not a known minitoc
(minitoc)          language object file (.mlo),
(minitoc)          LANGUAGE.mlo not found.
(minitoc)          Command ignored.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Correct the source using a valid language name.
Press RETURN

```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has attempted to load indirectly the `LANGUAGE.mlo` minitoc language object file, but has not found it. First, verify the name of the language (likely to be misspelt), then check if your installation contains *all* the many distributed .mlo files of the minitoc package, at the right place. If it is a local .mlo file, it should be installed in the right place (in a local hierarchy) or be in the working directory.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0008>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth attempts to use
(minitoc)          an undefined counter (ARG/depth).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

You are trying to set the depth for an inexistent or undefined type of mini-table. Verify the type given and the document class, and the loaded packages.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0009>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARGI).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetdepth` macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0010>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth: Illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetdepth` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0011>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfeature has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0012>
(minitoc) \mtcsetfeature has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
(minitoc)          It should be a feature param
(minitoc)          (before, after, pagestyle).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro is incorrect. It should be `before`, `after`, or `thispagestyle`.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0013>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfont has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (arg1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of `\mtcsetfont` is incorrect; it should be the type of a mini-table (`parttoc ...`, `sectlot`).

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0014>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfont has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
(minitoc)          It should be a sectionning level
(minitoc)          (part...subparagraph) or * .
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of `\mtcsetfont` is incorrect; it should be a sectionning level (i.e., a sectionning command without its backslash), like `part ...`, `subparagraph`.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0015>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetformat has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of a `\mtcsetformat` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc, ..., sectlot`).

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0016>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetformat has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
(minitoc)          It should be a formatting param choosen from:
(minitoc)          pagenumwidth, tocrightmargin, dotinterval.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetformat` macro is wrong. It should be one of the following keywords: `pagenumwidth`, `tocrightmargin`, or `dotinterval`.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0017>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetpagenumbers has a wrong first
(minitoc)          argument (ARG1)..
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` macro must be a type of minitable (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0018>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetpagenumbers has a wrong second
(minitoc)          argument (ARG2).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` must be a keyword chosen in the following lists:

- on, ON, yes, YES, y, Y, true, TRUE, t, T, vrai, VRAI, v, V, oui, OUI, o, O, and 1;
- off, OFF, no, NO, n, N, false, FALSE, faux, FAUX, f, F, non, NON, and 0.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0019>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetrules has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)                (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)                (parttoc...sectlot)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetrules` is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (parttoc, ..., sectlot).

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0020>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetrules has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)                (ARG2).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetrules` must be a keyword chosen in the following lists:

- on, ON, yes, YES, y, Y, true, TRUE, t, T, vrai, VRAI, v, V, oui, OUI, o, O, and 1;
- off, OFF, no, NO, n, N, false, FALSE, faux, FAUX, f, F, non, NON, and 0.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0021>
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitle has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of a `\mtcsettitle` macro is incorrect; it should be a mini-table type (parttoc, ..., sectlot).

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0022>
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitlefont has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsettitlefont` must be a mini-table type. You likely misspelt it.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0023>
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsetfeature has incompatible
(minitoc)          first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first and second arguments of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro are incompatible. You should verify them.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0024>
(minitoc)                The macro \mtcsetfont has incompatible
(minitoc)                first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The `\mtcsetfont` macro takes a mini-table type as first argument, a sectionning level as second argument (or a star), and a sequence of font commands as third argument. The second argument must have a lower level than the first one (i.e., it is meaningless to specify the font for the chapter level entries for a minitoc or a secttoc).

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0025>
(minitoc)                The macro \mtcsetformat has incompatible
(minitoc)                first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first and second arguments of a `\mtcsetformat` macro are incompatible. One is likely to be misspelt.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0026>
(minitoc)                The optional argument of \mtcfixglossary
(minitoc)                is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section

```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixglossary` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to chapter) or be part, chapter, or section.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0027>
(minitoc)           The optional argument of \mtcfixindex
(minitoc)           is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section

```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixindex` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to chapter) or be part, chapter, or section.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0028>
(minitoc)           Unable to patch the memoir class.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
So it remains incompatible. Sorry.

```

Your version of the `memoir` class is really incompatible with the `minitoc` package and cannot be automatically patched. Please update the `memoir` class and/or the `minitoc` package from the CTAN archives or a recent distribution.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0029>
(minitoc)           Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect

```

A `mtchideinmainlof` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main list of figures could be incorrect.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0030>
(minitoc)           Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect

```

A `mtchideinmainlot` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main list of tables could be incorrect.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0031>
(minitoc)                Unbalanced mtchideinmaintoc environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect
```

A `mtchideinmaintoc` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main table of contents could be incorrect.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0032>
(minitoc)                You are using the \mtcloadmlo command
(minitoc)                outside of a .mld file.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It will be ignored
```

It is *forbidden* to use the `\mtcloadmlo` macro outside of a `.mld` file (which is loaded via `\mtcselectlanguage`). The command is ignored.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0033>
(minitoc)                The macro \mtcsettitle uses
(minitoc)                an illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of a minitoc macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table, like `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot`.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0034>
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsettitlefont uses
(minitoc)          an illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of a minitoc macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table, like parttoc, partlof, partlot, minitoc, minilof, minilot, secttoc, sectlof, or sectlot.

4.2 Messages from the mtcoff package

The mtcoff package gives only warning messages; their numbers begin with F.

4.2.1 Warning messages

```

Package mtcoff Warning: <F0001>
(mtcff)          \addstarredchapter{...} should be replaced
(mtcff)          by \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
(mtcff)          on input line LINE.

```

The `\addstarredchapter` command is specific of the minitoc package and simulated by the mtcoff package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}` command.

```

Package mtcoff Warning: <F0002>
(mtcff)          \addstarredpart{...} should be replaced
(mtcff)          by \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
(mtcff)          on input line LINE.

```

The `\addstarredpart` command is specific of the minitoc package and simulated by the mtcoff package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0003>
(mtcoff)                \addstarredsection{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredsection` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0004>
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddchapter{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddchapter` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0005>
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddpart{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddpart` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0006>
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddsection{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddsection` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0007>
(mtcoff)                You should scan (backwards) your .log
(mtcoff)                file to find some commands needing
(mtcoff)                to be replaced if you decide to
(mtcoff)                DEFINITELY stop using minitoc for this
(mtcoff)                document. It is more wise to keep the
(mtcoff)                \usepackage lines for minitoc and mtcoff
(mtcoff)                and to comment out only one of them.
```

You have replaced the use of the `minitoc` package by its substitute `mtcoff`. It is recommended to keep the `\usepackage` lines for both `minitoc` and `mtcoff` and to comment out only one of them. If you decide to *definitely* stop using `minitoc` for this document, it is wise to scan (backwards) the `document.log` file (after a compilation using `mtcoff`) to locate some commands needing to be replaced.

4.3 Message from the `mtcpatchmem` package

```
Package mtcpatchmem Info: <M0001>
Package mtcpatchmem Info: mtcpatchmem package to patch the memoir class.
```

You are using a version of the `memoir` class which needs a correction. This correction has been automatically loaded if necessary. Very recent versions should not need it anymore. See chapter 11 on page 349.

Chapter 5

Jargon

Tables

5.1	Category codes	132
5.2	Encoding schemes implemented in CJK	133
5.3	Document classes	134
5.4	Depths for sectionning commands	135
5.5	Most common font encodings	145
5.6	Most common font families	146
5.7	Most common font series	146
5.8	Most common font shapes	146
5.9	The five font parameters for some fonts	146
5.10	Author commands for fonts	147

This chapter attempts to explain some terms used in this documentation, and describes some useful files and suffixes. Many data come from various documentations of cited packages, and from [3, 4, 84, 86, 118, 127, 133, 134, 135, 143, 144, 145, 152, 157, 159, 160, 188].

- .aux** The suffix of the name for an *auxiliary* file of a \LaTeX document. It carries some information from a \LaTeX run to the next.
- .dtx** The suffix of the name for a documented source file of a \LaTeX package or class. This file is often associated with a .ins file to generate the package or class. Compiling a .dtx file with \LaTeX generates the documentation.
- .F** The base suffix of the name for a minilof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is .Fnn where nn is the absolute number of the minilof.
- .G** The base suffix of the name for a partlof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is .Gnn where nn is the absolute number of the partlof.

.H	The base suffix of the name for a sectlof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Hnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the sectlof.
.ins	The suffix of the name for an installation file of a \LaTeX package or class. When compiled with \LaTeX , it extracts the files of the package or class from an <code>.dtx</code> file.
.lof	The suffix of the name of the “list of figures” file.
.log	The suffix of the name of the log file (compilation report).
.lot	The suffix of the name of the “list of tables” file.
.M	The base suffix of the name for a minitoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Mnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minitoc.
.maf	The suffix of the name of the file generated by the <code>listfiles</code> package option. This file contains the list of the minitoc auxiliary files.
.mld	The suffix for the name of a minitoc language definition file. A minitoc language definition file contains the definitions for the mini-table titles in a given language.
.mlf	The base suffix of the name for a minilof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.mlfnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minilof.
.mlo	The suffix for the name of a minitoc language object file. For some exotic languages, the encoding makes not easy to put directly the titles in a <code>.mld</code> file; hence the <code>.mld</code> file must load a <code>.mlo</code> file.
.mlt	The base suffix of the name for a minilot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.mltτnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minilot.
.mtc	The base suffix of the name for a minitoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.mtcτnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minitoc.
.P	The base suffix of the name for a parttoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Pnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the parttoc.
.plf	The base suffix of the name for a partlof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.plfnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlof.
.plt	The base suffix of the name for a partlot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.pltτnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlot.
.ptc	The base suffix of the name for a parttoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.ptcτnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the parttoc.

- .S** The base suffix of the name for a secttoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Snn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the secttoc.
- .slf** The base suffix of the name for a sectlof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.slfnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the sectlof.
- .slt** The base suffix of the name for a sectlot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.sltnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the sectlot.
- .stc** The base suffix of the name for a secttoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.stcnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the secttoc.
- .sty** The suffix for the name of a package file, loaded via `\usepackage`.
- .T** The base suffix of the name for a minilot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Tnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the minilot.
- .toc** The suffix of the name of the “table of contents” file.
- .U** The base suffix of the name for a partlot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Unn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the partlot.
- .V** The base suffix of the name for a sectlot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Vnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the sectlot.
- absolute numbering** The auxiliary files for the mini-tables have a suffix containing an *absolute number*, i.e., the number is unique and always increasing from the first part, chapter or section; this has solved some obscure problems, and also made obsolete some commands, like `\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, and `\firstsectionis`. The absolute numbering has been introduced in version #23.
- abstract** The abstract package [195] (by Peter R. WILSON) needs some precautions if used with its `addtotoc` option.
- add.bib** A small bibliographic data base for the `add.tex` and `addsec.tex` example documents.
- add.tex** An example document showing how to use `\mtcaddchapter` and the `tocbibind` package [197] with `minitoc`.
- addsec.tex** An example document showing how to use `\mtcaddsection` and the `tocbibind` package [197] with `minitoc`. It also shows how it is challenging to manage the mini-lists of floats at the section level.



adjustment Some minitoc commands and environments are known as “adjustment commands” because they are used in some circumstances to “adjust” a counter or to alter the displaying of contents files. These commands and environments are `\adjustptc`, `\adjustmtc`, `\adjuststc`, `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, `\decrementstc`, `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`, `\incrementstc`, `\mtcaddpart`, `\mtcaddchapter`, `\mtcaddsection`, `\mtcfixglossary`, `\mtcfixindex`, `mtchideinmaintoc`, `mtchideinmainlof`, and `mtchideinmainlot`. It is *strongly recommended* that the user verifies the result of such adjustments in the final document.

after A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed *after* a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 43.

alnumsec The `alnumsec` package [122] allows you to use alphanumeric section numbering, e.g. A. Introduction; III. International Law. Its output is similar to the `alphanum` package (part of the `jura` class [76]), but you can use the standard L^AT_EX sectioning commands. Thus it is possible to switch numbering schemes easily. Greek letters, double letters (bb) and different delimiters around them are supported. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.9 on page 48 and section 2.42 on page 70).

alphanum The `alphanum` package, part of the specialized `jura` class [76], by Felix BRAUN, is incompatible with the minitoc package.

\mathcal{AMS} the American Mathematical Society. This society has developed some document classes: `amsart` and `amsproc` are incompatible with the minitoc package, `amsbook` is compatible but needs precautions.

amsart, amsart.cls A document class for articles, provided by the American Mathematical Society (\mathcal{AMS}). This class is incompatible with the minitoc package.

amsbook, amsbook.cls A document class for books, provided by the American Mathematical Society (\mathcal{AMS}). This class is compatible with the minitoc package, but needs some precautions. See section 2.24 on page 61.

amsproc, amsproc.cls A document class for conference proceedings, provided by the American Mathematical Society (\mathcal{AMS}). This class is incompatible with the minitoc package.

Antomega Antomega [121] (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) is a language support package for **Lambda**, based on the original `omega.sty` file of the Omega project. However, it provides some additional useful functionalities. Some languages definition files (`.mld`) use titles taken from Antomega: `greek-mono.mld`, `greek-polydemo.mld`, `greek-polykatha.mld`, `latvian.mld`, `polish2.mld`, `russian2m.mld`, `russian2o.mld`, and `spanish3.mld`.

appendices See appendix below.

appendix The `appendix` package [196] (by Peter R. WILSON) provides various ways of formatting the titles of appendices. Also (sub)appendices environments

are provided that can be used, for example, for per chapter/section appendices. If this package is used with `minitoc`, some precautions are needed (see section 2.20 on page 58).

apx.tex An example file showing the use of the `\mtchideinmaintoc` environment to hide the entries of the appendices in the main TOC and to create a part-level TOC for the appendices.

ArabTeX ArabTeX [124, 125] is a package (by Klaus LAGALLY) to prepare L^AT_EX documents in the arabic or hebrew languages. The titles in `arab.mld` (or `arabic.mld`), `arab2.mld` and `hebrew.mld` come from ArabTeX, while the titles of `hebrew2.mld` comes from Babel.

ArmTeX ArmTeX [87] is a package (by Serguei DACHIAN and others) to prepare L^AT_EX documents in the armenian language. The titles in `armenian.mld` come from ArmTeX.

article A standard L^AT_EX document class. It has sectioning commands: `\part` and `\section` (and below), but not `\chapter`. It is compatible with the `minitoc` package and you can make mini-tables at the part and section levels (but, of course, not at the chapter level).

\AtBeginDocument This standard macro allows to add code to be executed at the beginning of the document (if fact, at the very end of its preamble, but inside it, which implies some restrictions), at the point where `\begin{document}` is processed. This allows a package (or a class) to add code without creating any conflicts with other packages trying to do the same.

\AtEndDocument This standard macro allows to add code to be executed at the end of the document, at the point where `\end{document}` is processed. This allows a package (or a class) to add code without creating any conflicts with other packages trying to do the same.

autoconfiguration Since version #28, `minitoc` detects automatically if the extensions (suffixes) of the file names are limited to 3 characters (like under MS-DOS) or not. This process is named autoconfiguration. The package option `shorttext` forces the limitation to 3 characters.

auxiliary During the preparation of a document, the L^AT_EX system uses some **auxiliary** files to store information. The standard auxiliary files are `document.aux` (for cross-reference labels, counters, etc.), `document.toc` for the table of contents, `document.lof` for the list of figures, and `document.lot` for the list of tables. The `minitoc` package creates its own auxiliary files, to store the contents of each mini-table. These files are the *minitoc auxiliary files*, whose names are `document.extension`, the table 1.11 on page 49 lists the possible extensions.

babel The `babel` package [29, 30] (by Johannes BRAAMS and others) is a large package useful to write L^AT_EX documents in many languages, not only english. Many titles for mini-tables come from the `babel` package.

BangTeX A package for typesetting documents in the Bangla language using the T_EX/L^AT_EX systems; see [162].

- before** A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed *before* a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 43.
- BibTeX** A program by Oren PATASHNIK to make bibliographies in L^AT_EX documents. Distributed with L^AT_EX. See [145, 164, 165].
- bibtopic** A L^AT_EX package [11] for including several bibliographies in a document. These bibliographies might be considered to cover different topics (hence the name) or bibliographic material (e.g., primary and secondary literature) and the like.
- bibunits** The bibunits package [100] allows separate bibliographies for different units or parts of the text. The units can be chapters, sections or bibunit environments. This package is compatible with a wide variety of packages, including, but not limited to, natbib, overcite and KOMA-Script classes [157].
- book** A standard L^AT_EX document class. It has sectioning commands: `\part`, `\chapter`, and `\section` (and below). It is compatible with the minitoc package and you can make mini-tables at the part and chapter levels (but not at the section level, to avoid too many auxiliary files).
- cappuccino** See “minutes” below.
- captcont** The captcont package [82] provides support for retaining a figure or caption number across several float environments — usually over several pages. It allows control over the contents of the List-of-Figures and the List-of-Tables pages. It should be compatible with all other packages that modify or extend the float environment and with the subfig package [83] in particular.
- caption** The caption package [178] provides many ways to customize the captions in floating environments such `figure` and `table` and cooperates with many other packages.
- caption2** The¹ caption2 package [179] used to be an experimental side-version of the regular caption package [178] and has been superseded by the new release of the regular caption package version 3.0 in December 2003. caption2 is still some kind of supported, that means it will be part of future releases and bugs will still be fixed, so existing documents using this package will still compile. But Axel SOMMERFELDT will *not* answer questions about this package anymore except questions on migrating to the regular version of the caption package. And it will *not* be adapted or enhanced in the future.
- So please don’t use this package for new documents. It’s old, it’s obsolete and it starts to begin smell bad!
- Please ignore all hints in books or other documents which try to tell you that the caption2 package should be used instead of the caption package — these hints are outdated since December 2003.

¹ This text comes from the documentation of the caption package. The caption and caption2 packages have the same author, Axel SOMMERFELDT.

catalog A plain text file which contains basic infos about the minitoc package (abstract, date, author, version, licence).

catcode Short for “category code”. In² the first place, it’s wise to have a precise idea of what your keyboard sends to the machine. There are 256 characters that T_EX might encounter at each step, in a file or in a line of text typed directly on your terminal. These 256 characters are classified into 16 categories numbered 0 to 15. See table 5.1. It’s not necessary for you to learn these code numbers;

Table 5.1: Category codes

Category	Meaning
0	Escape character (\ usually)
1	Beginning of group ({ usually)
2	End of group (} usually)
3	Math shift (\$ usually)
4	Alignment tab (& usually)
5	End of line (<return> usually)
6	Parameter (# usually)
7	Superscript (^ usually)
8	Subscript (_ usually)
9	Ignored character (<null> usually)
10	Space (␣ usually)
11	Letter (A, . . . , Z and a, . . . , z)
12	Other character (none of the above or below)
13	Active character (~ usually)
14	Comment character (% usually)
15	Invalid character (<delete> usually)

the point is only that T_EX responds to 16 different types of characters. At first, “*The T_EXbook*” led you to believe that there were just two types—the escape character and the others—and then you were told about two more types, the grouping symbols { and }. The category code for any character can be changed at any time, but it is usually wise to stick to a particular scheme.

ccaption The ccaption package [199] provides commands for “continuation captions”, unnumbered captions, and a legend heading for any environment. Methods are provided to define captions for use outside float environments, and to define new float environments and subfloats. Tools are provided for defining your own captioning styles.

Chapter 0 Some documents do not begin with chapter number one, but with chapter number zero (or even a weirder number). This caused a serious problem in old versions of the minitoc package: the minitocs appeared in the wrong chapters, and a first correction was the introduction of specific commands (\firstchapteris and co.). With the addition of the absolute numbering of the mini-table auxiliary files (see *absolute* above), the problem was solved in minitoc version #23, and these commands became obsolete. See section 1.6.4 on page 44.

² This definition is taken from “*The T_EXbook*” [115].

chapterbib The `chapterbib` package [6] allows multiple bibliographies in a \LaTeX document, including items `\cite'd` in more than one bibliography. Despite the name “`chapterbib`”, *the bibliographies are for each included file*, not necessarily for each chapter.

checkfiles A package option of `minitoc`. It checks every mini-table to look if it is empty; then empty mini-tables are *not* printed. This is the default. The opposite package option (`nocheckfiles`) prints even the empty mini-tables, which look ugly. See section 8.74.2 on page 304.

CJK The CJK system [137, 138] (by Werner LEMBERG and others), is a set of packages and fonts to prepare \LaTeX documents in some oriental language, like chinese, japanese, korean (with Hangûl or Hanja fonts), and thai, plus some variants of russian. The titles of mini-tables for these languages come from some files CJK files and inserted in `.mld` files when possible, or in `.mlo` files when the encoding is incompatible with the `.ins/.dtx` mechanism; the `.mld` file must input the corresponding `.mlo` file. CJK implements the GB, Big 5, JIS, SJIS, KS, UTF 8, and CNS encodings (on 16 bits, except UTF 8 on 24 bits). See table 5.2.

Table 5.2: Encoding schemes implemented in CJK

Encoding	1 byte	2 bytes	3 bytes
GB	0xA1–0xF7	0xA1–0xFE	—
Big 5	0xA1–0xF9	0x40–0xFE	—
JIS	0xA1–0xF4	0xA1–0xFE	—
SJIS	0xA1–0xFE	0x40–0xFC	—
KS	0xA1–0xFD	0xA1–0xFE	—
UTF 8	0xC0–0xEF	0x80–0xBF	0x80–0xBF
CNS	0xA1–0xFE	0xA1–0xFE	—

Some encoding schemes (Big 5, SJIS) have gaps in the range of the second byte. It is difficult to input Big 5 and SJIS encoding directly into \TeX since some of the values used for the encodings’ second bytes are reserved for control characters: ‘{’, ‘}’, and ‘\’. Redefining them breaks a lot of things in \LaTeX ; to avoid this, preprocessors are normally used which convert the second byte into a number followed by a delimiter character. For further details, please refer to [143, 144]; Ken LUNDE discusses in great detail all CJK encodings which are or have been in use. Please note that the `minitoc` package uses the `.mlo` files as a workaround for this problem; see section 1.5.12 on page 39.

class The³`class` is the first information \LaTeX needs to know when processing an input file; it is the type of document the author wants to create. This is specified with the `\documentclass` command.

`\documentclass[options]{class}`

Here `class` specifies the type of document to be created. Table 5.3 on the next page lists the standard document classes. The \LaTeX 2_ε distribution provides

³ This note is extracted from [160], then adapted.

additional classes for other documents, including letters and slides, but the `minitoc` package has not been tested with all theses classes. The *options* parameters customize the behaviour of the document class. The options have to be separated by commas. The standard classes supported by the `minitoc` package are listed in section 2.7 on page 54.

Table 5.3: Document classes

Class	Usage
<code>article</code>	For articles in scientific journals, presentations, short reports, program documentation, invitations, ...
<code>report</code>	For longer reports containing several chapters, small books, PhD theses, ...
<code>book</code>	For real books
<code>slides</code>	For slides; the class uses big sans serif letters. You might want to consider using Beamer \TeX ^a instead. Do not use <code>minitoc</code> with these classes.

^a <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/beamer/doc/beameruserguide.pdf>

CMR For “Computer Modern Roman”. The roman subset of the Computer Modern fonts. See “Computer Modern” below.

comp.text.tex The Usenet news group about \TeX and \LaTeX , in english.

Computer Modern A set of fonts [114] designed by Donald KNUTH for \TeX . Initially they were built with METAFONT [116] (a program also created by KNUTH), but PostScript versions exist today, with extensions (for accented characters, mainly): the EC-fonts (European Computer Modern), the cm-super fonts, etc.

counter A \TeX register containing an integer value. There are 256 counters (from 0 to 255) in \TeX , but \LaTeX uses some of them, and many packages need some counters for their own usage. An extended version derived from \TeX , $\varepsilon\text{-}\TeX$ [77], allows more counters. Omega also offers more counters.

CTAN The *Comprehensive \TeX Archive Network*, a set of computer archives containing most of the \TeX related resources (like fonts, software, documentations, packages). They are accessible via Internet. The participating hosts in the Comprehensive TeX Archive Network are:

- `ftp.dante.de` (Hamburg, Germany)
 - anonymous ftp `/tex-archive (/pub/tex /pub/archive)`
 - rsync access on <rsync://rsync.dante.de/CTAN/>
 - World Wide Web access on <http://www.dante.de/>
 - Administrator: <mailto:ftpmaint@dante.de>
- `ftp.tex.ac.uk` (Cambridge, UK)
 - anonymous ftp `/tex-archive (/pub/tex /pub/archive)`
 - rsync access on <rsync://rsync.tex.ac.uk/CTAN/>
 - NFS mountable from <nfs.tex.ac.uk:/tex-archive>
 - World Wide Web access on <http://www.tex.ac.uk/>

- Administrator: <mailto:ctan-uk@tex.ac.uk>
- tug.ctan.org (Colchester, Vermont, USA)
 - anonymous ftp [/tex-archive \(/pub/archive\)](ftp://tug.ctan.org/pub/archive)
 - World Wide Web access on <http://www.ctan.org/>
 - Administrator: <mailto:tex@ctan.tug.org>

There are also many sites mirroring these main archives.

depth In the standard documents classes (and in most classes) with sectionning commands, we have a notion of **depth**. The depth of a sectionning command determines the numbering level in its title (from the value of the `secnumdepth` counter), and the entries for a given sectionning command appear in the main table of contents if the depth of this sectionning command is lower than or equal to the value of the `tocdepth` counter; see table 5.4 for the depths of the sectionning commands in the main document classes.

Table 5.4: Depths for sectionning commands

Class:	book	report	article
<code>secnumdepth</code>	2	2	3
<code>\part</code>	−1	−1	0
<code>\chapter</code>	0	0	×
<code>\section</code>	1	1	1
<code>\subsection</code>	2	2	2
<code>\subsubsection</code>	3	3	3
<code>\paragraph</code>	4	4	4
<code>\subparagraph</code>	5	5	5

The mechanism is analog for the `parttocs`, `minitocs`, and `secttocs`, using the values of the `parttocdepth`, `minitocdepth`, and `secttocdepth` counters. If you use sub-figures or sub-tables, the corresponding mini-tables use counters like `partlofdepth`, `partlotdepth`, `minilofdepth`, `minilotdepth`, `sectlofdepth`, and `sectlotdepth`.

descriptor (file descriptor). A software entity describing the interface between a program and a file. For most programs and operating systems, the number of file descriptors is limited. For \TeX (and \LaTeX), there are 16 file descriptors for writing and 16 file descriptors for reading.

duplex2v.pro A PostScript header file, which tries to activate recto-verso printing. It works with some HP and Canon PostScript printers.

em A length unit equal (approximatively) to the width of a “m” letter in the current font.

emk An example of shell script to prepare the english documentation of the `minitoc` package. The script `imk` must have be run previously. See item 9 on page 157.

encoding This specifies the order that characters appear in the font (e.g., whether the 65th character is “A”). The most common value for TeX font encoding is OT1. The other predefined option is T1 (extended T_EX). There’s also US ASCII (7 bit), ISO Latin-1 (8 bit), Adobe Standard Encoding, UTF8 (Unicode), etc. See [136].

environment An environment is a delimited domain in a document, where special rules apply. Such a domain is delimited by `\begin{env}` ... `\end{env}` and may take arguments, like this:

```
\begin{minipage}[t]{.5\textwidth}
\end{minipage}
```

ethiop A L^AT_EX package [22] giving the ethiopian language support for the Babel package [29, 30].

extension The name of a file is often made of 2 parts: a *base name* and an *extension*, separated by a dot. On some old operating systems, the base name is limited to 8 characters and the extension to 3 characters (the “8+3” scheme). See also sections 1.10 on page 49 and 2.5 on page 54. It is strongly recommended to not have more than one dot in a file name.

farsi.sty See FarsiT_EX below.

FarsiT_EX A package to typeset a document in the farsi (iranian, persian) language. See <http://www.farsitex.org>. But this package is today available only for L^AT_EX2.09. See also sections 12.50 on page 378 and 12.51 on page 379.

features A feature (for the minitoc package) is a set of actions executed at each occurrence of a mini-table of a given type. Three features are associated to each mini-table type: a “before” feature (executed before the mini-table), an “after” feature (executed after the mini-table), and a “thispagestyle” feature, which is executed with the mini-table to set its page style. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 43.

filecontents A special L^AT_EX environment. It allows to create a file (whose name is passed as an argument of the environment) by writing the contents of the environment into that file:

```
\begin{filecontents}{file}
...contents ...
\end{filecontents}
```

This environment should be used *before* `\documentclass`. It is used in `minitoc.ins` to prepare the `.mlo` files (see section 1.5.12 on page 39) and some files used in the compilation of the documentation.

\firstchapteris An obsolete command, temporary used as a workaround for the Chapter 0 problem; see **Chapter 0** and **absolute numbering** above, and section 1.6.4 on page 44.

\firstpartis Analog to `\firstchapteris` above.

\firstsectionis Analog to **\firstchapteris** above

\FloatBarrier A macro from the **placeins** package [8]. It set up a “barrier” against the drift of floats (like figures or tables).

fminitoc.bib A bibliographic data base for the french documentation of the **minitoc** package.

fminitoc.dtx The source file for the french documentation of the **minitoc** package. In fact, it just sets **\jobname** then loads **minitoc.dtx**, which itself loads **minitoc.lan** to select the language used in **minitoc.dtx**; **minitoc.dtx** contains both english and french documentation fragments, selected by **\ifcase** constructs with the **\LANG** variable, set to 0 by **minitoc.lan** or to 1 by **fminitoc.lan** (i.e., by **\jobname.lan**). **fminitoc.dtx** is generated when compiling **minitoc.ins**.

fminitoc.ist This file contains a style for formatting the index in the french documentation. It is generated when compiling **minitoc.ins**.

fminitoc.lan A file used to force the french language in the documentation. It is generated when compiling **minitoc.ins**.

fminitoc.pdf The french documentation in PDF format.

fminitoc.ps The french documentation in PostScript format. No more distributed (but look at the **fmk** and **pmk** scripts).

fmk An example of shell script to prepare the french documentation of the **minitoc** package. The script **imk** must have be run previously. See item 9 on page 157.

fncychap The **fncychap** package [140] provides a set of commands for changing the format used for some headings (chapters) in the standard \LaTeX 2_ε document classes: **book**, and **report**. It must be loaded *before* the **minitoc** package (see point 1.9 on page 48 and section 2.38 on page 70).

fr.comp.text.tex The Usenet newsgroup about \TeX and \LaTeX , in french.

franc.sty A small package file used to prepare the french documentation. It is generated when compiling **minitoc.ins**.

frbib.sty A small package file used to prepare the bibliography of the french documentation. It is generated when compiling **minitoc.ins**.

frnew.sty A small package file used to prepare the french documentation. It is generated when compiling **minitoc.ins**.

frplain1.bst A bibliographic style file used to prepare the bibliography of the french documentation. It has been updated from the standard **plain.bst** for french by Ronan KERYELL, then I added some adaptations for french (like last names in small caps for authors and editors), then modified with the **urlbst** [99] tool to add an URL field.

gaps.tex An example file showing the use of the **\mtcgapbeforeheads** and **\mtcgapafterheads** commands.

- guarani** A \LaTeX package to compose text in Guarani, the main language spoken in Paraguay. The file `guarani.ldf`, included in this package, defines the titles. See [25] and section 12.69 on page 389.
- hangcaption** The `hangcaption` package [113] defines a variant of the `\caption` command to produce captions with hanging indentation. This package is likely obsolete (1992, \LaTeX 2.09).
- hide1.tex** An example file showing the use of the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- hide2.tex** An example file showing the use of the following pairs of commands: `\mtchideinmainlof` and `\endmtchideinmainlof`, `\mtchideinmainlot` and `\endmtchideinmainlot`.
- hint** An indication, a clue to detect a problem. It is also a message written (into the `document.log` file) by the `hints` option (see below).
- hints** An option of the `minitoc` package. It verifies the loading order of some packages, the invocation order of some `minitoc` commands, the coherence between main `minitoc` commands, etc., and gives warnings and other useful hints (mainly in the `.log` file). This is a default option (use the `nohints` option to skip these checks).
- H \LaTeX** A system to write documents in the Korean language, using Lambda (see below). Written by KOAUNGH Un [118, in korean]. It uses special Hangŭl or Hanja fonts and the UTF-8 input encoding.
- hyperlink** In a document, a reference to another object which is dynamically found (via a click with the mouse). This requires a special type of document (PDF, PostScript with hypertext features) and a suitable viewer (PDF viewer, recent PS viewer). This is useful to navigate in a document or in many documents, which can be remote documents.
- hyperref** The `hyperref` package [172] is used to emend cross-referencing commands in \LaTeX to produce some sort of `\special` commands; there are backends for the `\special` set defined for Hyper \TeX dvi processors, for embedded pdfmark commands for processing by Acrobat Distiller (**dvips** and **dvip-sone**), for **dviwindo**, for **pdf \TeX** , for **\TeX 4ht**, and for V \TeX 's pdf and HTML backends.
- This package derives from, and builds on, the work of the Hyper \TeX project, described at <http://xxx.lanl.gov/hypertex/>. It extends the functionality of all the \LaTeX cross-referencing commands (including the table of contents, bibliographies, etc.) to produce `\special` commands which a driver can turn into hypertext links; it also provides new commands to allow the user to write *ad hoc* hypertext links (hyperlinks), including those to external documents and URLs.
- ifmtarg** The `ifmtarg` package [203] provides an if-then-else command for testing if a macro argument is empty (“empty” meaning zero or more spaces only).
- imk** An example of shell script, which prepares the `minitoc` package from `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx`; note that `imk` must be run before running `emk` or `fmk`. See item 9 on page 157.

insection The `insection` package option loads the `placeins` package [8] with adequate options to avoid the floats (like figures and tables) to drift outside of their sections. This package option is recommended if you use `sectlofs` or `sectlots` in your document. See section 1.2 on page 26.

insertion The insertion commands of the `minitoc` package insert a mini-table in the document. A corresponding *preparation* command must have been invoked (only once) before. The insertion commands are:

```
\parttoc, \partlof, \partlot,
\minitoc, \minilof, \minilot,
\secttoc, \sectlof, \sectlot,
\mtcprepare
```

INSTALL A text file describing the installation of the `minitoc` package. See chapter 6 on page 155.

\jobname A \TeX primitive containing the name of the document in preparation, i.e., the name of the file read first by \TeX (or \LaTeX), without its extension. Very useful to build the names of other files.

jura The `jura` class [76], by Felix BRAUN, is incompatible with the `minitoc` package. It is used for german judicial documents.

k-loose A `minitoc` package option useful if your document is written with one of the KOMA-Script classes. This option tries to set a loose line spacing in the mini-tables. Analog to the `loose` package option for standard classes.

k-tight A `minitoc` package option useful if your document is written with one of the KOMA-Script classes. This option tries to set a tight line spacing in the mini-tables. Analog to the `tight` package option for standard classes.

KOMA-Script KOMA-Script [157] is a very complex bundle. You may see this, because it is not only one class or one package but a bundle of many classes and packages. The classes (`scrartcl.cls`, `scrbook.cls`, `scrletter.cls`, `scrlettr2.cls`, and `scrreprt.cls`) are counterparts to the standard classes but never they come with only the same commands, environments, options and optional possibilities like the standard classes nor they result in the same look-a-like.

The `scrbook.cls`, `scrreprt.cls`, and `scrartcl.cls` classes are compatible with the `minitoc` package, with some precautions (see section 1.6.5 on page 45). The `scrletter.cls` and `scrlettr2.cls` have no sectioning commands, so the `minitoc` package is pointless with them.

KOMA-Script comes with a lot of classes, packages, commands, environments and possibilities. Some of these you may find also at the standard classes, many of them you wouldn't. Some are even supplements to the \LaTeX kernel.

The main classes of the KOMA-Script bundle are designed as counterparts to the standard \LaTeX classes. This means that the KOMA-Script bundle contains replacements for the three standard classes `book`, `report`, and `article`. There is also a replacement for the standard class `letter`.

Lambda The \LaTeX format (in the \TeX meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Omega is called “Lambda” (Λ).

\LaTeX \LaTeX [126] is a typesetting system that is very suitable for producing scientific and mathematical documents of high typographical quality. It is also suitable for producing all sorts of other documents, from simple letters to complete books. \LaTeX uses \TeX [115, 117] as its formatting engine (from [160]).

In fact, \LaTeX is a macro package that enables authors to typeset and print their work at the highest typographical quality, using a predefined, professional layout. \LaTeX was originally written by Leslie LAMPORT [126]. It uses the \TeX formatter as its typesetting engine. These days \LaTeX is maintained by Frank MITTELBACH and his team.

In 1994 the \LaTeX package was updated by the \LaTeX 3 team, led by Frank MITTELBACH, to include some long-requested improvements, and to reunify all the patched versions which had cropped up since the release of \LaTeX 2.09 some years earlier. To distinguish the new version from the old, it is called \LaTeX 2 ϵ .

\LaTeX is pronounced “Lay-tech” or “Lah-tech.” If you refer to \LaTeX in an ASCII environment, you type LaTeX. \LaTeX 2 ϵ is pronounced “Lay-tech two e” and typed LaTeX2e.

\LaTeX 2.09 An obsolete version of the \LaTeX program, before 1994; it is no more supported. Do not use it. Use the current version of \LaTeX 2 ϵ , which is supported and much more efficient.

\LaTeX 2 ϵ The current version of the \LaTeX program, after 1994; it is supported.

leaders A repetitive sequence of dots (or of one another small character), regularly spaced, used to link two objects on the same line (leading from a title to a page number in a table of contents or the like).

letter A standard document class to prepare letters for postal mail (mail on paper). As such documents have no sectioning commands nor structure, the `minitoc` package is pointless (hence incompatible) with them.

listfiles An option of the `minitoc` package. It creates a list of the `minitoc` auxiliary files (these files contains the mini-tables and may be removed after the \LaTeX run) in the `document.maf` file. See section 1.8 on page 47.

LOF An acronym for “list of figures”.

lofdepth This counter, if it exists, contains the depth of the list of figures.

loose An option of the `minitoc` package. It gives a loose line spacing in the mini-tables. It is the default. The opposite option is `tight`.

LOT An acronym for “list of tables”.

lotdepth This counter, if it exists, contains the depth of the list of tables.

LPPL The *LaTeX Project Public License*, available at

<http://www.latex-project.org/lppl.txt>

Its current version is 1.3 (2003-12-01). The `minitoc` package is distributed under this license.

\makeatletter and **\makeatother** Many⁴ internal commands of L^AT_EX, of packages and classes contain the @ character in their names. This effectively prevents such names from being used in documents for user-defined commands. However, it also means that they cannot appear in a document, even in the preamble, without taking special precautions. As it is sometimes necessary to have such bits of “internal code” in the preamble, the commands `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother` make it easy to do: the difficult bit is to remember to add them, failure to do so can result in some strange errors. And these commands should never be used in a package or class file.

makefile A special text file containing instructions describing the creation and the installation of a piece of software, using the “**make**” utility; **make** is a nice tool coming from the Unix operating system, but variants exist.

mcaption The `mcaption` package [108] provides a `margincap` environment for putting captions in the outer document margin with either a top or bottom alignment.

memoir, memoir.cls A very general and powerful document class (by Peter R. WILSON, described in [200, 201]); this class is compatible with the `minitoc` package (with some precautions) if you use a recent version. See section 2.22 on page 60.

mini-art.tex An example of document (article class) using the `minitoc` package.

mini-bibliography See **minibbl** below.

mini-list Synonym for “mini-table” below.

mini-lof See “minilof” below.

mini-lot See “minilot” below.

mini-table This term refers to a local table of contents (like a table of contents, a list of figures or a list of tables) for a sectioning unit (part, chapter or section), by opposition to a global table (the table of contents, the list of figures or the list of tables for the whole document). The main aim of the `minitoc` package is the creation of such mini-tables. But the term “minitoc” is also used to refer to such mini-table, as a generic term, because the first versions of the package allowed only table of contents for chapters.

mini-toc See “minitoc” below.

minibbl Short for “mini-bibliography”, i.e., to have a bibliography per part, chapter or section, or even by theme or subject. This is out of the domain of the `minitoc` package. See section 2.9 on page 55.

minilof A list of figures for a chapter.

⁴ Informations from [152, page 843].

minilofdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the minilofs.

minilot A list of tables for a chapter.

minilotdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the minilots.

minitoc A table of contents for a chapter. Also used as a generic term for any mini-table (see “mini-table” above).

minitoc-ex.tex An example of document (book or report class) using the minitoc package.

minitoc.bib A bibliographic data base for the english documentation of the minitoc package.

minitoc.bug A plain text file containing a list of problems and questions about the minitoc package. See chapter 2 on page 51.

minitocdepth This counter contains the depth of the minitocs.

minitoc.dtx The file containing the documentation and the commented code of the minitoc package.

minitoc-hyper.sty A special version of the minitoc package which has been prepared by Bernd JAEHNE and Didier VERNA to work with the powerful hyperref package [172]; Heiko OBERDIEK has integrated their work so since version #31, minitoc is compatible with hyperref. *Hence the minitoc-hyper.sty package is now obsolete and should no more be used. It is still present on the CTAN archives for compatibility with old documents.*



minitoc.ins The installation file for the minitoc package. Compiling it with L^AT_EX produces most of the files of the minitoc package.

minitoc.ist This file contains a style for formatting the index in the english documentation. It is generated when compiling minitoc.ins.

minitoc.l A text file containing the list of all the files being included in the minitoc package. Files not listed in minitoc.l are files used only to install the package or to produce its documentation.

minitoc.lan A file used to force the english language in the documentation. It is generated when compiling minitoc.ins.

minitoc.pdf The english documentation in PDF format.

minitoc.pre This file contains a L^AT_EX preamble for the documentation. It is generated when compiling minitoc.ins.

minitoc.ps The english documentation in PostScript format. No more distributed (but look at the emk and pmk scripts).

minitoc.sty This file contains the main part of the minitoc package, with comments removed. It is generated when compiling minitoc.ins.

minitoc.sum A plain text file containing a commented list of the minitoc commands and environments. See chapter 3 on page 72.

minutes The `minutes` package [139] (by Knut LICKERT) is used to prepare conference proceedings. The `minitoc` package allows to add “coffee breaks” in the table of contents via commands like `\addcoffeeline` and `\coffeeline` (and internal commands) whose names contain the string “coffee”, hence the footnote about “cappuccino” ☕ in the installation chapter!

MonTeX MonTeX [84, 86] is a large package to prepare documents in various dialects of the Mongol language (Bicig and Bicig2, Mongol, Bithe and Manju, Buryat, Xalx and Khalkha) and in a dialect of Russian used in Mongolia (Russianc). Bicig is another name for Uighur. You can find many things about Mongolia and Mongolian at the web site [85]. The following description is extracted from [86].

MonTeX is a package which offers support for writing documents in Mongolian, Manju, Buryat and Russian. Mongolian can be represented in traditional Uighur script (also known as Classical or Traditional Script) and Cyrillic. Manju resembles the Traditional Mongolian script (from which it is derived) but uses a rich choice of diacritics in order to eliminate numerous ambiguities of the Mongolian script ancestor. Modern Buryat, like Mongolian in its present form, is written with a Cyrillic alphabet, but both Mongolian (35 letters) and Buryat (36 letters) use more letters than Russian (33 letters).

Mongolian The word *Mongolian* is actually an umbrella term for several languages rather than the precise name of a single language. Things become more complicated when names of ethnic groups, languages and writing systems are mixed.

Xalx or Khalkha is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Mongolia proper. Their dialect forms the basis of Mongolian written with Cyrillic letters. Throughout this text, *Modern Mongolian* is used as a synonym.

Buryat is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Buryatia, north of Mongolia, east of Lake Baikal, being a part of the Russian Federation. The Buryat call themselves *Buryaad* while Xalx Mongolians call them *Buriad*. The English name follows the Russian orthography. Linguistically, Xalx and Buryat Mongol are fairly close languages; Buryat has a slightly different sound system in which the phoneme /s/ partially shifted to /h/; the modern Buryat Cyrillic alphabet (virtually identical with the Cyrillic alphabet used for writing Modern Mongolian) has one additional letter (H/h, `\xalx{H/h}`) for marking the difference to /s/.

Bicig (literally *script* in Mongolian) denotes text written in the traditional Mongolian script which is also referred to as Uighur. Throughout this document, the term *Bicig* will be used on an equal footing with *Classical* and *Traditional* Mongolian. The latter term is used in the name of the Unicode/ISO10646 character plane U1800 which contains Mongolian, Manju, Sibe and sets of special characters called Ali Gali or Galig. In order to identify Mongolian script related commands distinct for Mongolian and Manju, the Mongolian commands have the name root `bicig` whereas the Manju commands have the name root `bithe`.

Xalx Mongolian, or Modern Colloquial Mongolian, is about as different from the form written in Classical script as modern English in phonetical spelling (assume it be written in Shavian letters) from the highly historical orthography of Standard English. Beyond these differences, Mongolian written in Classical Script usually preserves a substantial amount of historical grammatical features which make it look a bit like Elizabethan English.

Manju Manju is a Tungusic language closely related to Mongolian. Though Manju is virtually not spoken anymore, it has been the official language during 300 years of Manju government in Qing Dynasty China. Vast amounts of official documents survive, as well as some of the finest multilingual dictionaries ever compiled, e. g. the Pentaglot, or Mirror in Five Languages, a dictionary with 18671 entries in five languages (Manju, Tibetan, Mongolian, Uighur and Chinese). Manju writing is derived from Uighur Mongolian by adding diacritics in the form of dots and circles.

MS-DOS (Microsoft® Disk Operating System) An old operating system for personal computers (PCs). From the `minitoc` point of view, its main drawback is the use of filenames with short extensions (the “8+3” scheme), which limits to 99 the number of mini-tables for each kind.

mtcmess, mtcmess.sty A package used to provide variants of the standard commands `\PackageInfo`, `\PackageWarning`, `\PackageWarningNoLine`, and `\PackageError` by adding an optional argument for a unique message identifier.

mtcoff, mtcoff.sty A package which is used in place of the `minitoc` package to ignore all the commands and environments of the `minitoc` package. In fact, it defines them to do nothing. Useful if you want a version of your document without any mini-table.

mtcpatchmem, mtcpatchmem.sty A small package which is automatically loaded if necessary when you use the `memoir` document class with a version incompatible with the `minitoc` package, but correctible. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

mu A length unit normally used in math mode (`\mu` means “math unit”); 18 math units make 1em (one quad), which is about the width of a “m” in the current font. So the size of 1mu is font dependent. The separation between dots in the dotted lines in the mini-tables is expressed in math units.

multibib The `multibib` package [101] allows to create references to multiple bibliographies within one document. It thus provides a complementary functionality to packages like `bibunits` [100] or `chapterbib` [6], which allow to create one bibliography for multiple, but different parts of the document.

needspace The `needspace` package [193] provides commands to reserve space at the bottom of a page. If there is not enough space on the current page (column) a new page (column) is started.

Table 5.5: Most common font encodings

Encoding	Description
T1	L ^A T _E X extended text (“Cork”)
TS1	L ^A T _E X symbols (Latin)
T2A, T2B, T2C	L ^A T _E X text (Cyrillic)
T3	L ^A T _E X phonetic alphabet
TS3	L ^A T _E X phonetic alphabet (extra symbols)
T4	L ^A T _E X text (African languages)
T5	L ^A T _E X text (Vietnamien)
T7	L ^A T _E X text (reserved for Greek)
OT1	T _E X text (as defined by Donald K _N UTH)
OT2	T _E X text for Cyrillic languages (obsolete)
OT3	International phonetic alphabet (obsolete)
OT4	T _E X text with extensions for the Polish language
OT6	T _E X text with extensions for the Armenian language
OML	T _E X math italic (Donald K _N UTH)
OMS	T _E X math symbols (Donald K _N UTH)
OMX	T _E X math large symbols (Donald K _N UTH)
X2	L ^A T _E X extended text (Cyrillic)
U	Unknown
L<xx>	A local encoding
LV1	Encoding used with some V _T eX fonts
LY1	Alternative to T1 encoding, for Y&Y software

NFSS The *New Font Selection Scheme*. The L^AT_EX 2_ε font selection system [135] was first released as the “New Font Selection Scheme” (NFSS) in 1989, and then in release 2 in 1993. L^AT_EX 2_ε includes NFSS release 2 as standard.

Every text font in L^AT_EX has five *attributes*:

encoding This specifies the order that characters appear in the font. The two most common text encodings used in L^AT_EX are K_NUTH’s “T_EX text” encoding, and the “T_EX text extended” encoding developed by the T_EX Users Group members during a T_EX Conference at Cork in 1990 (hence its informal name “Cork encoding”). See [136].

family The name for a collection of fonts, usually grouped under a common name by the font foundry. For example, “Adobe Times”, “ITC Garamond”, and K_NUTH’s “Computer Modern Roman” are all font families.

series How heavy or expanded a font is. For example, “medium weight”, “narrow” and “bold extended” are all series.

shape The form of the letters within a font family. For example, “italic”, “oblique” and “upright” (sometimes called “roman”) are all font shapes.

size The design size of the font, for example “10pt”.

The possible values for these attributes are given short acronyms by L^AT_EX. The most common values for the font encoding are given in table 5.5.

Table 5.6: Most common font families

Family	Description
<code>cmr</code>	Computer Modern Roman
<code>cmss</code>	Computer Modern Sans
<code>cmtt</code>	Computer Modern Typewriter
<code>cmm</code>	Computer Modern Math Italic
<code>cmsy</code>	Computer Modern Math Symbols
<code>cmex</code>	Computer Modern Math Extensions
<code>ptm</code>	Adobe Times
<code>phv</code>	Adobe Helvetica
<code>pcr</code>	Adobe Courier

Table 5.7: Most common font series

Series	Description
<code>m</code>	Medium
<code>b</code>	Bold
<code>bx</code>	Bold extended
<code>sb</code>	Semi-bold
<code>c</code>	Condensed

Table 5.8: Most common font shapes

Shape	Description
<code>n</code>	Normal (that is “upright” or “roman”)
<code>it</code>	Italic
<code>sl</code>	Slanted (or “oblique”)
<code>sc</code>	Caps and small caps

Table 5.9: The five font parameters for some fonts

L ^A T _E X specification					Font	T _E X font name
OT1	<code>cmr</code>	<code>m</code>	<code>n</code>	<code>10</code>	Computer Modern Roman 10 point	<code>cmr10</code>
OT1	<code>cmss</code>	<code>m</code>	<code>sl</code>	<code>1pc</code>	Computer Modern Sans Oblique 1 pica	<code>cmssi12</code>
OML	<code>cmm</code>	<code>m</code>	<code>it</code>	<code>10pt</code>	Computer Modern Math Italic 10 point	<code>cmmi10</code>
T1	<code>ptm</code>	<code>b</code>	<code>it</code>	<code>1in</code>	Adobe Times Bold Italic 1 inch	<code>ptmb8t at 1in</code>

The “local” encodings are intended for font encodings which are only locally available, for example a font containing an organisation’s logo in various sizes.

There are far too many font families to list them all, but some common ones are listed in table 5.6. The most common values for the font series are listed in table 5.7. The most common values for the font shape are listed in table 5.8.

The font size is specified as a dimension, for example `10pt` or `1.5in` or `3mm`; if no unit is specified, `pt` is assumed. These five parameters specify every L^AT_EX font, see table 5.9, for example.

These five parameters are displayed whenever L^AT_EX gives an overfull box warning, for example:

```
Overfull \hbox (3.80855pt too wide) in paragraph at
lines 314--318
[]\OT1/cmr/m/n/10 Normally [] and [] will be iden-ti-cal,
```

Table 5.10: Author commands for fonts

Author command	Attribute	Value in article class
<code>\textrm...</code> or <code>\rmfamily</code>	family	cmr
<code>\textsf...</code> or <code>\sffamily</code>	family	cmss
<code>\texttt...</code> or <code>\ttfamily</code>	family	cmtt
<code>\textmd...</code> or <code>\mdseries</code>	series	m
<code>\textbf...</code> or <code>\bfseries</code>	series	bx
<code>\textup...</code> or <code>\upshape</code>	shape	n
<code>\textit...</code> or <code>\itshape</code>	shape	it
<code>\textsl...</code> or <code>\slshape</code>	shape	sl
<code>\textsc...</code> or <code>\scshape</code>	shape	sc
<code>\tiny</code>	size	5pt
<code>\scriptsize</code>	size	7pt
<code>\footnotesize</code>	size	8pt
<code>\small</code>	size	9pt
<code>\normalsize</code>	size	10pt
<code>\large</code>	size	12pt
<code>\Large</code>	size	14.4pt
<code>\LARGE</code>	size	17.28pt
<code>\huge</code>	size	20.74pt
<code>\Huge</code>	size	24.88pt

The table 5.10 lists the author commands for fonts which set the five attributes⁵.

nocheckfiles A package option of minitoc. The opposite of the checkfiles package option (see above).

nohints A package option of minitoc. The opposite of the hints package option (see above).

nolistfiles An option of the minitoc package. It is the opposite of the listfiles above. Default. See section 1.8 on page 47.

notoccite This option of the minitoc package loads the notoccite package [7] (by Donald ARSENEAU). It avoids problems with `\cite` commands in sectioning commands or captions. See section 1.7 on page 46.

Omega The Omega typesetting system⁶ (Ω) (by Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE) is an extension of \TeX that is aimed primarily at improving \TeX 's multilingual abilities.

When the \TeX program was originally developed in the mid seventies by Donald KNUTH it was mainly aimed at typesetting mathematical texts in the english language. Since then \TeX has made inroads in broader and broader areas of scientific, literary and other scholarly activities in many countries all over the world. In 1991, KNUTH froze \TeX , mainly in the interest of stability. However, he allows the \TeX code to be used as the basis for further

⁵ The values used by these commands are determined by the document class.

⁶ Most but not all of this note is taken in the Omega documentation.

developments, so long as the resulting system is distributed under a different name.

In Omega all characters and pointers into data-structures are 31-bit wide, instead of 8-bit, thereby eliminating many of the trivial limitations of \TeX . Omega also allows multiple input and output character sets, and uses programmable filters to translate from one encoding to another, to perform contextual analysis, etc. Internally, Omega uses the universal Unicode/ISO-10646 character set. Omega also includes support for multiple writing directions.

These improvements not only make it a lot easier for \TeX users to cope with multiple or complex languages, like Arabic, Indic, Khmer, Chinese, Japanese or Korean, in one document, but also form the basis for future developments in other areas, such as native color support and hypertext features.

The \LaTeX format (in the \TeX meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Omega is called “Lambda” (Λ). \LaTeX for Omega is named Lambda (Λ). Extending Omega with the ε - \TeX extensions is a separate project, known as Aleph (\aleph) and led by Giuseppe BILOTTA. The \LaTeX for Aleph is known as *Lamed* (\aleph).

package Packages⁷ are a very important feature of \LaTeX . These are extensions to the basic \LaTeX commands that are written to files with names that end with `.sty` and are loaded with the command `\usepackage` in the preamble. Packages can be classified by they origin.

- **Core** packages (in fact, **base** and **required** packages) are an integral part of the \LaTeX basic installation and are therefore fully standard.
- **Tools** packages are a set written by members of the \LaTeX 3 Team and should always be in the installation.
- **Graphics** packages are a standardized set for including pictures generated by other programs and for handling colors; they are at the same level as the tools packages.
- **\mathcal{AMS} - \LaTeX** packages, published by the American Mathematical Society, should be in any installation⁸.
- **Contributed** packages have been submitted by actual users; certain of these have established themselves as “essential” to standard \LaTeX usage, but all are useful.

partlof A list of figures for a part.

partlofdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the partlofs.

partlot A list of tables for a part.

partlotdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the partlots.

parttoc A table of contents for a part.

parttocdepth This counter contains the depth of the parttocs.

⁷ This info is taken from [119, page 12–13] and adapted.

⁸ They are insispensable if you use a lot of mathematics.

- PDF** Portable Document Format [96]. A descendant of the Postscript language from Adobe, optimized for navigation on the Internet. It adds hypertext, font substitution, and compression features.
- placeins** The `placeins` package [8] keeps floats “in their place”, preventing them from floating past a `\FloatBarrier` command into another section. To use it, declare `\usepackage{placeins}` in the preamble and insert `\FloatBarrier` commands at places that floats should not move past, perhaps at every `\section`. The `insection` package option of the `minitoc` package does that with adequate options, and loads also the `flafter` package (described in [132] and [152, page 286]); see section 1.4.3 on page 26.
- placeins.txt** A plain text file containing the documentation of the `placeins` package [8].
- plainurl.bst** A bibliographic style derived from the `plain.bst` standard style, but modified with the `urlbst` tool [99] to add an URL field.
- PLATEX** A version of \LaTeX customized for the polish (polski) language. See [161, 191]. But the same name refers also to a version of \LaTeX customized for the japanese language, $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ [110].
- pmk** An example of shell script to prepare the `minitoc` package and its documentation; you should adapt it to your needs. See item 9 on page 157.
- PostScript** A page description language, by Adobe. It describes the appearance of a page, including elements such as text, graphics, and scanned images, to a printer or visualization device. Introduced by Adobe in 1985, it has become the language of choice in high quality printing.
- preamble** In the main file of a \LaTeX source document, the part of it between the commands `\documentclass[...]{...}` and `\begin{document}`. In the preamble, you can insert global declarations and the loading of packages via `\usepackage` commands.
- preparation** The preparation commands of the `minitoc` package prepare the auxiliary files for the mini-tables of a given type. A *preparation* command must have been invoked (only once) before any insertion command for the mini-table type. The preparation commands are:
- ```
\doparttoc, \dopartlof, \dopartlot,
\dominitoc, \dominilof, \dominilot,
\dosecttoc, \dosectlof, \dosectlot,
\mtcprepare
```
- proc** A standard  $\text{\LaTeX}$  document class, for preparing conference proceedings. For the `minitoc` package, it is very similar to the `article` document class; see above.
- pseudo-chapter** Or starred chapter. A chapter introduced by a `\chapter*` command. By default, it has no entry in the table of contents. `\chapter*` needs some precautions with the `minitoc` package. See section 1.4.4 on page 30.

**quotchap** The `quotchap` package [184] provides a set of commands for adding quotations to some headings (chapters) in the standard  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2 $\epsilon$  document classes: `book`, and `report`. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.9 on page 48 and section 2.39 on page 70).

**README** is a plain text file (english) describing briefly the `minitoc` package, plus some useful infos.

**report** A standard  $\text{\LaTeX}$  document class. It has sectionning commands: `\part`, `\chapter`, and `\section` (and below). It is compatible with the `minitoc` package and you can make mini-tables at the part and chapter levels (but not at the section level, to avoid too many auxiliary files).

**rmk** An example of shell script, which sorts the files of the `minitoc` package into classes (one directory for each class). It should be run after the scripts `imk` (mandatory) and `emk` and/or `fmk`, in that sequence. See item 9 on page 157.

**romannum** The `romannum` package [202] changes the numbers (for sectionning commands) generated by  $\text{\LaTeX}$  from arabic digits to roman numerals. This package uses the `stdclsdv` package [192]. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.9 on page 48 and section 2.40 on page 70).

**rubber** Rubber [15] is a wrapper for  $\text{\LaTeX}$  and companion programs. Its purpose is, given a  $\text{\LaTeX}$  source to process, to compile it enough times to resolve all references, possibly running satellite programs such as **B $\text{\LaTeX}$** , **makeindex**, **Metapost**, etc., to produce appropriate data files. It has facilities to make some post-processing cleanup actions, like deleting the auxiliary files created by `minitoc`.

**scrartcl** See KOMA-Script above.

**scrbook** See KOMA-Script above.

**scrreprt** See KOMA-Script above.

**sectionning commands** These are the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  commands which specify the logical structure of your document. The main sectionning commands are `\part`, `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection`, `\subsubsection`, `\paragraph`, and `\subparagraph`. Some standard document classes have not the `\chapter` command (like the `article` and `proc` classes), some have no sectionning commands (like the `letter` class). In the later case, the `minitoc` package is pointless. If some of the `\part`, `\chapter`, or `\section` commands are not defined, the `minitoc` commands for that level are unavailable. If `\chapter` is defined, the `minitoc` commands at the section level are not defined in the current and older versions of the `minitoc` package, but if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` is defined, then the `minitoc` commands at the section level are defined. See section 1.1.1 on page 22. In non-standard document classes, sectionning commands with non-standard names cannot be recognized by the `minitoc` package.

**sectlof** A list of figures for a section.

**sectlofdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the `sectlofs`.

- sectlot** A list of tables for a section.
- sectlotdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the sectlots.
- sectsty** The `sectsty` package [147] provides a set of commands for changing the font used for the various sectional headings in the standard  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2 $\epsilon$  document classes: `article`, `book`, and `report`. This package also works with the KOMA-Script classes `scrartcl`, `scrbook`, and `scrreprt`. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.9 on page 48 and section 2.28 on page 65).
- secttoc** A table of contents for a section.
- secttocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the secttocs.
- sfheaders** The `sfheaders` package [142] (for  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2 $\epsilon$ ) borrows some definitions from the standard `article/report/book` classes and modifies them in order to print the part, chapter, section, subsection... headers with the Sans-Serif variant of the current font. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.9 on page 48 and section 2.41 on page 70).
- shell** In the Unix, Unix-like and Linux operating systems, the **shell** is a program used as an interface between the operating system and the user. It can also be used as a scripting language to write programs or scripts to prepare routinely used sequences of tasks. The main shells are the Bourne shell (**sh**), the C shell (**csh**), the Korn shell (**ksh**), and their many successors (like **bash**, **tcsh**, etc.).
- shorttext** An option of the `minitoc` package. It forces the use of short extensions (3 characters) in the names of the `minitoc` auxiliary files. This option is inactive by default, but is automatically activated if your operating system needs short extensions. See **autoconfiguration** above and the section 2.5 on page 54.
- shorttoc** The `shorttoc` package [89] allows to create an other table of contents in a document, with an other depth and an other title than the main table of contents.
- SJIS** The SJIS character encoding (for the japanese language), also known as MS-Kanji (Kanji for Microsoft®), consists of two overlaid character sets: the so-called halfwidth Katakana (JIS X0201-1976, 1-byte characters encoded in the range 0xA1 to 0xDF) and the (fullwidth) JIS character set (JIS X0208-1990, mapped to the remaining code points). This information is taken from [137, 138].
- $\text{\LaTeX}$**  A version of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  customized for the swedish language. See [146].
- stdclsdv** The `stdclsdv` package [192] is intended to be used by the authors of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  packages that need to know about the sectional divisions provided by the document class.
- strut** A vertical invisible rule used to force a minimal separation between two lines of text.

- subfig** The `subfig` package [83] provides support for the inclusion of small, “sub-figures” and “sub-tables”. It simplifies the positioning, captioning and labeling of them within a single `figure` or `table` environment. In addition, this package allows such sub-captions to be written to the List of Figures or List of Tables if desired.
- suffix** See “extension” above.
- T<sub>E</sub>X** T<sub>E</sub>X is a computer program created by Donald KNUTH [115]. It is aimed at typesetting text and mathematical formulae. KNUTH started writing the T<sub>E</sub>X typesetting engine in 1977 to explore the potential of the digital printing equipment that was beginning to infiltrate the publishing industry at that time, especially in the hope that he could reverse the trend of deteriorating typographical quality that he saw affecting his own books and articles. T<sub>E</sub>X as we use it today was released in 1982, with some slight enhancements added in 1989 to better support 8-bit characters and multiple languages. T<sub>E</sub>X is renowned for being extremely stable, for running on many different kinds of computers, and for being virtually bug free. The version number of T<sub>E</sub>X is converging to  $\pi$  and is now at 3.141592.
- T<sub>E</sub>X is pronounced “Tech,” with a “ch” as in the German word “Ach” or in the Scottish “Loch.” In an ASCII environment, T<sub>E</sub>X becomes TeX.
- thispagestyle** A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed at each occurrence of a given type of mini-table, to force the page style to use for the current page. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 43.
- tight** An option of the `minitoc` package. It gives a tight line spacing in the mini-tables. The opposite option is `loose`.
- titlesec** The `titlesec` package [26] allows to change the sectioning titles. Amongst its many features it provides margin titles, different format in left and right pages, rules above and below the title, etc. Unfortunately, it is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package.
- titletoc** The `titletoc` package is useful for toc entries formatting, providing the possibility of changing the format in the middle of a document, grouping the entries in a single paragraph, pretty free-forms entries, partial tocs, etc. Unfortunately, it is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package.
- The `titletoc.sty` file is not part of the `titlesec` package; it’s an independent package, but it’s described in the `titlesec` package documentation [26].
- TOC** Acronym for “table of contents”.
- tocbibind** The `tocbibind` package [197] can be used to add the ToC and/or bibliography and/or the index etc., to the Table of Contents listing. But it needs some precautions when used with the `minitoc` package. See section 1.6.5 on page 45.
- tocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the table of contents.



**tocloft** The `tocloft` package [194] provides means of controlling the typographic design of the Table of Contents, List of Figures and List of Tables. New kinds of “List of ...” can be defined. If you use the `tocloft` package and the `minitoc` package, see section 2.21 on page 59 about fixing some minor compatibility issues.

**TODO** is a plain text file (english) which lists some suggested developments of the package, not yet implemented. Comments and suggestions are welcome.



**token** A token<sup>9</sup> is either (a) a single character with an attached category code (see “catcode” above), or (b) a control sequence. You *should* remember two chief things about T<sub>E</sub>X’s tokens: (1) A control sequence is considered to be a single object that is no longer composed of a sequence of symbols. Therefore long control sequence names are no harder for T<sub>E</sub>X to deal with than short ones, after they have been replaced by tokens. Furthermore, spaces are not ignored after control sequences inside a token list; the ignore-space rule applies only in an input file, during the time that strings of characters are being tokenized. (2) Once a category code has been attached to a character token, the attachment is permanent. For example, if character ‘{’ were suddenly declared to be of category 12 instead of category 1, the characters ‘{<sub>1</sub>’ already inside token lists of T<sub>E</sub>X would still remain of category 1; only newly made lists would contain ‘{<sub>12</sub>’ tokens. In other words, individual characters receive a fixed interpretation as soon as they have been read from a file, based on the category they have at the time of reading. Control sequences are different, since they can change their interpretation at any time. T<sub>E</sub>X’s digestive processes always know exactly what a character token signifies, because the category code appears in the token itself; but when the digestive processes encounter a control sequence token, they must look up the current definition of that control sequence in order to figure out what it means.

**UNIX** A modern operating system, available on many computers and in various flavors. From the `minitoc` point of view, it has the advantage of using file-names with long extensions (the length limit is too high to be a problem with the number of mini-tables).

**UNIX-like** Operating systems analog to Unix, with the same advantages. Linux is a good example, but others exist.

**UTF 8** UTF 8 (Unicode Transformation Format 8), also called UTF 2 or FSS-UTF, is a special representation of Unicode (resp. ISO 10646). It uses multibyte sequences of various lengths, but only 2-byte and 3-byte sequences are implemented in CJK. ASCII characters will be used as-is — without this property it would be impossible to use UTF 8 with T<sub>E</sub>X. See table 5.2 on page 133.

**varsects** The `varsects` package [180] provides a set of commands for changing the font used for the various sectional headings in the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> document classes: `article`, `book`, and `report`. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.9 on page 48 and section 2.33 on page 67).

**xr** The `xr` package [78] implements a system for eXternal References. I wrote the first version of this package, but it had severe problems. David CARLISLE

<sup>9</sup> This definition is taken from “The T<sub>E</sub>Xbook” [115].

rewrote it in a much better and more robust way. With his permission, I used some of its code in the `minitoc` package to implement the preparation commands (like `\dominitoc`). If you use also the `hyperref` package [172], use `xr-hyper` [79] in place of the `xr` package.

# Chapter 6

## Installation

### Tables

|                                                        |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 6.1 List of files ( <code>minitoc.1</code> ) . . . . . | 156 |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|

This chapter describes the installation of the `minitoc` package (version #45).

This package contains a lot of files. The list of all files is given in `minitoc.1`. See table 6.1 on the next page. The files are sorted into “classes” below (a file can appear in more than one class). Each class specifies the function and the placement of its files.

- (0) The files `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx` are the basic source files of this package. The file `fminitoc.dtx` loads `minitoc.dtx` but selects the french documentation. The language selection is done by using `\ifcase ... \or ... \fi` constructs.



- (1) The files `minitoc.sty`, `mtcoeff.sty`, `mtcmess.sty`, and *all* `*.mld` and `*.mlo` files are the package itself<sup>1</sup>.

The table 1.7 on page 34 lists the available languages; for each of these languages, a *language.mld* file is available; the languages in parentheses are aliases of a main language and their `.mld` files will load the `.mld` file of that main language.

`mtcpatchmem.sty` is a temporary fix for compatibility with the `memoir` class.

The files of this class must be *all* installed in a directory where  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$  finds the `.sty` files.

- (2) Informative text files:

- `INSTALL` is a file describing the installation of the package. You are (almost) reading it (but it is shorter).

<sup>1</sup> The large number `*.mld` files is (partialy) a consequence of the fact that some languages have aliases (or dialects) and hence one `*.mld` file for each name (a `*.mld` file can load another one); the english and french languages are evident examples. For some languages, the multiplicity of the `*.mld` files corresponds to a multiplicity of fonts and/or encodings (chinese, greek, japanese, korean, malayalam, polish, russian, serbian), or even for spelling reforms (german, greek, norsk).

Table 6.1: List of files (minitoc.1)

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>class (0) :</b><br>-minitoc.ins<br>-minitoc.dtx<br>-fminitoc.dtx<br><br><b>class (1) :</b><br>-minitoc.sty<br>-mtcoeff.sty<br>-mtcmess.sty<br>-mtcpatchmem.sty<br>-acadian.mld<br>-acadien.mld<br>-afrikaan.mld<br>-afrikaans.mld<br>-albanian.mld<br>-american.mld<br>-arab.mld<br>-arab2.mld<br>-arabic.mld<br>-armenian.mld<br>-australian.mld<br>-austrian.mld<br>-bahasa.mld<br>-bahasai.mld<br>-bahasam.mld<br>-bangla.mld<br>-basque.mld<br>-bicig.mld<br>-bicig2.mld<br>-bicig3.mld<br>-bithe.mld<br>-brazil.mld<br>-brazilian.mld<br>-breton.mld<br>-british.mld<br>-bulgarian.mld<br>-bulgarianb.mld<br>-buryat.mld<br>-buryat2.mld<br>-canadian.mld<br>-canadien.mld<br>-castillan.mld<br>-castillian.mld<br>-catalan.mld<br>-chinese1.mld, and<br>chinese1.mlo<br>-chinese2.mld, and<br>chinese2.mlo<br>-croatian.mld<br>-czech.mld<br>-danish.mld<br>-dutch.mld<br>-english.mld<br>-english1.mld<br>-english2.mld<br>-esperant.mld<br>-esperanto.mld<br>-estonian.mld<br>-ethiopia.mld<br>-ethiopian.mld<br>-ethiopian2.mld<br>-farsi1.mld, and<br>farsi1.mlo<br>-farsi2.mld, and<br>farsi2.mlo | -finnish.mld<br>-finnish2.mld<br>-francais.mld<br>-french.mld<br>-french1.mld<br>-french2.mld<br>-frenchb.mld<br>-frenchle.mld<br>-frenchpro.mld<br>-galician.mld<br>-german.mld<br>-germanb.mld<br>-germanb2.mld<br>-greek.mld<br>-greek-mono.mld<br>-greek-polydemo.mld<br>-greek-polykatha.mld<br>-guarani.mld<br>-hangul1.mld, and<br>hangul1.mlo<br>-hangul2.mld, and<br>hangul2.mlo<br>-hangul3.mld, and<br>hangul3.mlo<br>-hangul4.mld, and<br>hangul4.mlo<br>-hangul-u8.mld, and<br>hangul-u8.mlo<br>-hanja1.mld, and<br>hanja1.mlo<br>-hanja2.mld, and<br>hanja2.mlo<br>-hanja-u8.mld, and<br>hanja-u8.mlo<br>-hebrew.mld<br>-hebrew2.mld<br>-hungarian.mld<br>-icelandic.mld<br>-indon.mld<br>-indonesian.mld<br>-interlingua.mld<br>-irish.mld<br>-italian.mld<br>-italian2.mld<br>-japanese.mld, and<br>japanese.mlo<br>-japanese2.mld, and<br>japanese2.mlo<br>-japanese3.mld, and<br>japanese3.mlo<br>-japanese4.mld, and<br>japanese4.mlo<br>-japanese5.mld, and<br>japanese5.mlo<br>-kannada.mld<br>-khalkha.mld<br>-latin.mld<br>-latin2.mld<br>-latvian.mld<br>-letton.mld<br>-lithuanian.mld<br>-lowersorbian.mld<br>-lsorbian.mld<br>-magyar.mld<br>-magyar2.mld | -magyar3.mld<br>-malay.mld<br>-malayalam-keli.mld<br>-malayalam-omega.mld, and<br>malayalam-omega.mlo<br>-malayalam-rachana.mld<br>-malayalam-rachana2.mld<br>-manju.mld<br>-meyalu.mld<br>-mongol.mld<br>-naustrian.mld<br>-newzealand.mld<br>-ngerman.mld<br>-ngermanb.mld<br>-ngermanb2.mld<br>-norsk.mld<br>-norsk2.mld<br>-nynorsk.mld<br>-nynorsk2.mld<br>-polish.mld<br>-polish2.mld<br>-polski.mld<br>-portuges.mld<br>-portuguese.mld<br>-romanian.mld<br>-romanian2.mld<br>-romanian3.mld<br>-russian.mld<br>-russianb.mld<br>-russianc.mld<br>-russian2m.mld<br>-russian2o.mld<br>-russian-cca.mld, and<br>russian-cca.mlo<br>-russian-cca1.mld, and<br>russian-cca1.mlo<br>-russian-lh.mld, and<br>russian-lh.mlo<br>-russian-lhcyralt.mld, and<br>russian-lhcyralt.mlo<br>-russian-lhcyrkoi.mld, and<br>russian-lhcyrwin.mld, and<br>russian-lhcyrwin.mlo<br>-samin.mld<br>-scottish.mld<br>-serbian.mld<br>-serbianc.mld<br>-slovak.mld<br>-slovene.mld<br>-spanish.mld<br>-spanish2.mld<br>-spanish3.mld<br>-spanish4.mld<br>-swedish.mld<br>-swedish2.mld<br>-thai.mld, and<br>thai.mlo<br>-turkish.mld<br>-uighur.mld<br>-uighur2.mld<br>-uighur3.mld<br>-UKenglish.mld<br>-ukraine.mld<br>-ukrainian.mld<br>-uppersorbian.mld | -USenglish.mld<br>-usorbian.mld<br>-vietnam.mld<br>-vietnamese.mld<br>-welsh.mld<br>-xalx.mld<br>-xalx2.mld<br>-xalx3.mld<br><br><b>class (2) :</b><br>-INSTALL<br>-minitoc.1<br>-README<br>-catalog<br>-TODO<br><br><b>class (3) :</b><br>-minitoc-ex.tex<br>-mini-art.tex<br>-add.tex<br>-addsec.tex<br>-add.bib<br>-hide1.tex<br>-hide2.tex<br>-apx.tex<br>-gaps.tex<br><br><b>class (4) :</b><br>-minitoc.bug<br>-minitoc.sum<br><br><b>class (5) :</b><br>-minitoc.ins<br>-minitoc.dtx<br>-minitoc.bib<br>-minitoc.ist<br>-minitoc.lan<br>-minitoc.pre<br>-plainurl.bst<br>-lamed.eps, lamed.pdf,<br>lamed.tex<br><br><b>class (6) :</b><br>-minitoc.dtx<br>-fminitoc.dtx<br>-fminitoc.bib<br>-fminitoc.ist<br>-fminitoc.lan<br>-minitoc.pre<br>-franc.sty<br>-frbib.sty<br>-frnew.sty<br>-frplain1.bst<br><br><b>class (7) :</b><br>-minitoc.pdf<br><br><b>class (8) :</b><br>-fminitoc.pdf<br><br><b>class (9) :</b><br>-pmk<br>-imk<br>-emk<br>-fmk<br>-rmk<br>-duplex2v.pro |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

- `minitoc.l` contains the list of all files of the `minitoc` distribution. See table 6.1 on the page before.
  - `README` is a file describing briefly the `minitoc` package, plus some useful infos.
  - `catalog` contains basic infos about the `minitoc` package (abstract, date, author, version, licence).
  - `TODO` lists some suggested developments of the package, not yet implemented. Comments and suggestions are welcome.
- (3) `minitoc-ex.tex`, `mini-art.tex`, `add.tex`, `addsec.tex`, `add.bib`, `hide1.tex`, `hide2.tex`, `apx.tex`, `gaps.tex`, are example files, to play with.
  - (4) `minitoc.bug`, `minitoc.sum` are plain text documentation: list of problems (faq, see chapter 2 on page 51) and summary of commands (see chapter 3 on page 72).
  - (5) `minitoc.ins`, `minitoc.ist`, `minitoc.pre`, `minitoc.lan`, `plainurl.bst`, `minitoc.dtx`, and `minitoc.bib` are the source of the documentation in (non perfect) english, `lamed.eps` and `lamed.pdf` are images to include, `lamed.tex` is the source code<sup>2</sup>.
  - (6) `minitoc.dtx`, `fminitoc.dtx`, `fminitoc.bib`, `fminitoc.ist`, `fminitoc.lan`, `fminitoc.pre`, `franc.sty`, `frbib.sty`, `frnew.sty`, `frplain1.bst` are the source (and tools) of the documentation in french<sup>3</sup>. `fminitoc.pre` is the preamble code for the documentation.
  - (7) `minitoc.pdf`, is the documentation in (non perfect) english, in PDF format.
  - (8) `fminitoc.pdf` is the documentation in french, in PDF format. The french documentation and source files must not be omitted.
  - (9) `pmk` is a shell script<sup>4</sup> to prepare the package and its documentation; you should adapt it to your needs. There are also four partial scripts (to be adapted):
    - `imk`, which prepares the package from `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx`; note that `imk` must be run before running `emk` or `fmk`; it creates also some `.sty` files necessary to prepare the documentation but that are not to be installed;
    - `emk`, which prepares the english documentation from `minitoc.dtx`;
    - `fmk`, which prepares the french documentation from `fminitoc.dtx` and `minitoc.dtx`;
    - `rmk`, which sorts the files into classes (one directory for each class).

These scripts are currently written in C-shell, but there are very simple, and should be easy to convert in another classic shell. The documentation in PostScript format is no more distributed on the CTAN sites, but these scripts prepare it (using the `duplex2v.pro` PostScript header file to try printing recto-verso).

<sup>2</sup> Compiling `lamed.tex` requires a specific hebrew font and a specific package, plus conversion into EPS or PDF. I prefer to provide also the image files.

<sup>3</sup> This seems rather strange. In fact, the english and french documentations are both in the `minitoc.dtx` file. `fminitoc.dtx` sets a flag then loads `minitoc.dtx`; hence the file `fminitoc.dtx` is much smaller than `minitoc.dtx`. Thus, `minitoc.ins` contains also some utility files which are automatically created (some `.sty` files, `minitoc.ist`, `fminitoc.ist`, `minitoc.lan`, `fminitoc.lan`). The english and french versions are not word-by-word translations, but they are in parallel in the file `minitoc.dtx`, and this helps the maintenance. Note that there is no more a `fminitoc.ins` file.

<sup>4</sup> You can sip a big cappuccino ☕ while this script is running!

- The files of (0) must be installed in a directory where  $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\mathcal{E}}$  finds `.dtx` and `.ins` files.
- The files of (1) must be installed in a directory where  $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\mathcal{E}}$  finds `.sty` files.
- The files of (2), (3), (4), (5), (6) and (9) must be installed in a separate directory, but must not be omitted.
- The files of (7) and (8) must be installed as on-line documentation.

Note that `minitoc.dtx` and hence `fminitoc.dtx` are (not so trivial) examples of using `minitoc` (with `hyperref`).

## Chapter 7

# Postface

### Contents

|             |                                |            |
|-------------|--------------------------------|------------|
| <b>7.1</b>  | <b>The origins</b>             | <b>160</b> |
| <b>7.2</b>  | <b>New design in 1993</b>      | <b>160</b> |
| <b>7.3</b>  | <b>Developments in 1994</b>    | <b>160</b> |
| <b>7.4</b>  | <b>No developments in 1995</b> | <b>161</b> |
| <b>7.5</b>  | <b>Developments en 1996</b>    | <b>161</b> |
| <b>7.6</b>  | <b>Developments in 1997</b>    | <b>161</b> |
| <b>7.7</b>  | <b>Developments in 1998</b>    | <b>161</b> |
| <b>7.8</b>  | <b>Developments in 1999</b>    | <b>162</b> |
| <b>7.9</b>  | <b>Developments in 2000</b>    | <b>162</b> |
| <b>7.10</b> | <b>Developments in 2001</b>    | <b>162</b> |
| <b>7.11</b> | <b>Developments in 2002</b>    | <b>162</b> |
| <b>7.12</b> | <b>Developments in 2003</b>    | <b>163</b> |
| <b>7.13</b> | <b>Developments in 2004</b>    | <b>163</b> |
| <b>7.14</b> | <b>Developments in 2005</b>    | <b>163</b> |
| <b>7.15</b> | <b>Developments in 2006</b>    | <b>165</b> |

This chapter summarizes the evolution of the `minitoc` package, year by year. A more detailed history is available in “Changes History”, page [459](#). Many minor changes are skipped here.

In fact, this chapter is for the average user of the package, who wants to have an overview of its evolution; the chapter “Changes History” is more oriented towards people interested in the code of the package and the problems encountered during its development.

## 7.1 The origins

The `minitoc` package was initially written by Nigel WARD in 1990 and 1991, with major contributions by Dan JURAFSKY. But `minitoc` suffered of a major weakness: when the number of chapters exceeded 9 or 10, you got a rather mysterious error message:

```
No room for a new \write.
```

As I needed the basic fonctionnality of this package (printing mini-tables of contents for each chapter), I looked further in its code and finally found the culprit: `minitoc` used a `\newwrite` command to create a new file for the contents table of each chapter, allocating a new file descriptor each time. But the number of file descriptors for writing is limited to 16 under  $\text{\LaTeX}$  (in fact, by the underlying  $\text{\TeX}$  program itself). As some descriptors are already used by  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , writing more than 9 or 10 chapters was too much. Such errors are difficult to find when testing on too small documents: with few chapters, everything goes fine. But on a real document, with many chapters, the mysterious error happens.

## 7.2 New design in 1993

So I decided (June 1993, when I took the maintenance the package) to change the allocation method to always use the same file descriptor for all the mini-table of contents files. Some major improvements happened in 1993: the addition of the `mtcoff` (`minitocoff` at this time) package and a rewrite of `minitoc` to extract the data from the `document.toc` file, with a selection mechanism. Then a first solution for the short extension problem was added (still manual). An elementary system for the fonts in the mini-tables was added. In December 1993, the `minilofs` and `minilots` were added.

## 7.3 Developments in 1994

The first improvements in 1994 were about the forming of the mini-tables: spacing was improved and the position of the title became ajustable (with the optional parameter of `\minitoc` or `\dominitoc`). But a major addition was done: part-level mini-tables (`parttocs`, `partlofs`, `partlots`) and, for articles, section-level mini-tables (`secttocs`, `sectlofs`, `sectlots`).

With the emergence of  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ , replacing the ageing  $\text{\LaTeX} 2.09$ , some work was necessary to support the compatibility with this new version. This was not easy, but Denis ROEGEL and Frank MITTELBACH gave me many helpful hints.

Another major addition is the language option feature, with the concept of the *minitoc language definition file* (or `.mld` file), coming from the `babel` package [29, 30], by Johannes BRAAMS. But at this time, these files were still named as `.sty` files.



An important simplification is introduced by the notion of “absolute numbering”, which avoids many problems when the chapters are not numbered the standard way (consecutively, starting from 1, with arabic digits).

## 7.4 No developments in 1995

Sorry, I was busy with an other project.

## 7.5 Developments en 1996

The very annoying problem with the starred sectionning commands received some (rather primitive) solutions, but it is very complex, so manual interventions are often required.

The names of the minitoc language definition files take now the extension `.mld`, more specific, and english is the default language. Some new languages are added.

The work on the starred sectionning commands continues.

The `minitocoff` companion package is renamed `mtcoff` to keep its name short.

## 7.6 Developments in 1997

The problem of short extensions for files names under some operating systems is addressed via the new `shorttext` package option and by the new autoconfiguration feature.

For the starred sectionning commands, the `\addstarredchapter` commande is added (with analog commands for starred parts and sections).

## 7.7 Developments in 1998

The `tight` and `loose` package options are added to improve the line spacing in the mini-tables.

## 7.8 Developments in 1999

The dotted and undotted package options are added to add or suppress some lines of dots (leaders) in the mini-tables.

## 7.9 Developments in 2000

A major addition is the compatibility with the `hyperref` package [172], thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA and Bernd JAEHNE.

Some corrections about the starred sectionning commands are added by Heiko OBERDIEK.

The mini-tables features (`\beforeparttoc` and `co.`) commands are added.

Some adjustment commands, like `\mtcaddchapter`, are added, again about the problem with the starred sectionning commands.

The compatibility with the `tocbibind` package [197] is documented.

Aliases for some languages are added.

## 7.10 Developments in 2001

Added the `checkfiles` and `nocheckfiles` package options, to avoid the insertion of (ugly) empty mini-tables.

Added the `\mtcselectlanguage` command to change more easily the language of the mini-tables titles.

## 7.11 Developments in 2002

Correction of an interaction between `\tableofcontents` (creating a hidden `\chapter*` or `\section*` command) and the numbering of the mini-table files.

Added the `\mtcskip` and `\mtcskipamount` commands.

## 7.12 Developments in 2003

Added the `insection` package option (which was temporarily done by the `flsection` and `flsectionb` package options) to deal with floats drifting out of their section. The `placeins` package [8] (by Donald ARSENEAU) is used.

The font commands are made compatible with the `memoir` class [200, 201].

Added compatibility with the `notoccite` package [7].

## 7.13 Developments in 2004

Added comments in the `.mld` files needing special fonts. Better documentation about languages.

Added an explanation about making a local table of contents for an appendix, eventually masking it in the main table of contents. Compatibility with the `appendix` package [196].

A major addition is the `hints` package option, to detect some programming and compatibility problems.

## 7.14 Developments in 2005

All messages are now written via the standard interface commands (`\PackageInfo`, `\PackageWarning`, and `\PackageError`), so the `minitoc` package is less verbose on the terminal.

Added the `\mtcsetfont` and `\mtcsetttitlefont` commands (from a suggestion by Benjamin BAYART) to replace many font commands by only one command with a better user interface.

Comments about the  $\mathcal{AMS}$  classes (some ones are incompatible with `minitoc`).

Added the `\mtcsetformat` and `\mtcsetttitle` commands, again to have a simpler user interface.

Added various hints (`insection` package, order of `minitoc` basic commands, short extensions).

Added the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` commands, again to have a simpler user interface.

Added the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment, to hide a group of entries in the main table of contents; added also the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.

Added the `\mtcfixindex` and `\mtcsettitle` commands.

Added the description of the installation of the package (a new chapter and the file `INSTALL`).

Improved and added hints about coherence of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and co.

Added the `\mtcsetfeature` command (very complex).

Added a hint about the `abstract` package [195].

The `minitoc` package is now written using the `.dtx-.ins` system. Some cleanup is done in the code.

Added the `\mtcfixglossary` command, like `\mtcfixindex`.

Some improvements are made to print the documentation.

Some new hints are added (`sectsty` package [147], empty mini-tables, obsolete commands).

Added the notion of depth for mini-tables of figures/tables. Added the `\mtcsetdepth` command.

The `hints` package option is now the default.

Added a method for making a bilingual documentation in one file (the `minitoc.dtx` file). This method could be used for more languages.

Added or improved some adjustment commands (`\adjustptc`, `\incrementptc`, `\decrementptc`, etc.).

Added the `k-tight` and `k-loose` package options, for the KOMA-Script document classes [157].

Added a patch for the recent version of the `memoir` class [200, 201].

Use `\mtcselectlanguage` in language options and in “secondary” `.mld` files.

Added the `\mtcloadmlo` command to be used in some `.mld` files to load a `.mlo` file. The extension `.mlo` means *minitoc language object*; such files contains characters not easily manipulated in a `.dtx` file.

The history of changes is now displayed in a much simpler way (using a glossary was too cumbersome).

Added the `listfiles` package option, to create a list of the minitoc auxiliary files, which can be removed after the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  compilation of the document. It is the `document.maf` file.

Added a remark in the FAQ chapter (and `minitoc.bug`) about precautions to take with the starred sectioning commands.

Added hints about the `caption`, `caption2`, `ccaption`, and `mcaption` packages (they must be loaded *before* minitoc).

A “Jargon” chapter is added. It will grow slowly.

Added a note about a problem with `minitoc`, `hyperref` and `memoir` used together.

Some bugs in the `\mtcset...` commands are fixed.

Added a hint about the `varsects` package [180].

Added a hint on the number of mini-tables when short extensions are used.

Added a chapter with all the (explained) messages.

## 7.15 Developments in 2006

Added the “\*” keyword as first argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` command, to get an action on all kinds of mini-tables.

Corrections in the `\mtcaddsection`, `\mtcfixglossary`, and `\mtcfixindex` commands.

In the PDF documentation, the panel of bookmarks shows initially only the bookmarks for parts and chapters, but you can open them to show deeper entries.

Added a comment about the initialization of fonts in the FAQ (point 34). It is still an open domain and I am working on it.

Added a hint about the KOMA-Script classes [157], and an entry in the FAQ chapter (and in `minitoc.bug`).

Added the “Postface” chapter.

Added the `\mtcprepare` command.

Added an URL field in the bibliography (the styles are modified with the `urlbst` tool [99]).

Added `mtcmess.sty` to add unique identifiers to the messages.

Suppressed the PostScript documentation files from the distribution (no more accepted on CTAN archives), but the scripts still creates them.

Corrections in the `insection` package option.

Reordering of the chapters in the user's manual (part I).

Added a hint about the `fncychap` package [140].

Added a hint about the `quotchap` package [184].

Added a hint about the `romannum` package [202].

Added a hint about the `sfheaders` package [142].

Added a hint about the `alnumsec` package [122].

Added a hint about the `captcont` package [82].

Added FAQ 44 and the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` commands.

# Acknowledgments

I need to thank the following peoples<sup>1</sup>, for their help, their questions, their interventions in the news groups<sup>2</sup>, and/or for their packages, classes and documents:

Hassan ABOLHASSANI, Nabil ABU EL-ATA, Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA, Alex AJ, Jérôme ANDRIEUX, Achod André ARADIAN, Einar ÁRNASON, Tim ARNOLD, Donald ARSENEAU, David ASPINALL, Gonvcal BADENES, Philipp BACHMANN, Marin BALGARENSKY, Benjamin BAYART, Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM, Claudio BECCARI, Emmanuel BEFFARA, József BÉRCES, Karl BERRY, Javier BEZOS, Árpád BÍRÓ, Laurent BLOCH, Georgi BOSNAKOV, Daniel BOURBONNAIS, Victor BOYKO, Johannes BRAAMS, Mustafa BURC, David CARLISLE, Manuel CARRIBA, Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, Jana CHLEBIKOVA, Steven Douglas COCHRAN, Maurizio CODOGNO, David B. COOK, Oliver CORFF, Prakash COUNTCHAM, Serguei DACHIAN, Adrian DAERR, Ben DE RYDT, Dorjpalam DORJ, Lyndon DUDDING, Marko ĚEHAJA, Victor EIJKHOUT, Thomas ESSER, Karl F. EVERITT, Mike FABIAN, Robin FAIRBAIRNS, Simon FEAR, Ulrike FISCHER, Daniel FLIPO, Jim FOX, Diego GARCIA MORATE, Hubert GÄSSLEIN, Mohammad GHODSI, Markus GLEISZNER, Vitali GONTSHARUK, Michel GOOSSENS, Fraser GRANT, Norman GRAY, Loïc GRENON, Sébastien GROT, Marion GUNN, Boumediene HAMZI, Yannis HARALAMBOUS, Alexander HARIN, Danny HEAP, Thorsten HEIN, Sten HELLMAN, Haavard HELSTRUP, Yvon HENEL, Stephan HENNIG, Florence HENRY, Morten HØGHOLM, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Umstatter HORST, Don HOSEK, Yufan HU, Dave W. HUSEBY, Dmitry IVANOV, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Zunbeltz IZAOLA, Bernd JAEHNE, Radwan JALAM, Michael JANISH, Regnor JERNSLETTEN, Zhuhan JIANG, Robert JUHASZ, JUNGSHIK Shin, Dan JURAFSKY, Mikko KANERVA, David KASTRUP, Ronan KERYELL, Bil KLEB, Peter KLEIWEG, Rune KLEVELAND, Jörg KNAPPEN, KOAUNGHU Un, Markus KOHM, Attila KOPPANYI, Thankmar KRONZUCKER, Alexej M. KRYUKOV, Toshiaki KUMAZAWA, Frank KÜSTER, Klaus LAGALLY, Fabio LANARI, Robert LANGE, Dag LANGMYHR, Olga LAPKO, Henning LARSEN, Jean-Marc LASGOUTTES, Claire LAUVERNET, Boris LAVVA, Werner LEMBERG, Thomas LEONHARDT, Stéphane LEPOLOZEC, Julien LE THUAUT, Adam LEWENBERG, Knut LICKERT, Arnaldo Viegas DE LIMA, Ulf A. LINDGREN, Anselm LINGNAU, Milos LOKAJICEK, Maurizio LORETI, Dan LUECKING, Ken LUNDE, Anders LYHNE, Pierre MACKAY, Lars MADSEN, Irina MAKHOVAYA, Bob MARGOLIS, Nicolas MARKEY, Marcus MARR, Terry MART, Ruiz-Altava MARTI, Vadim MASLOV, Sven MATTISSON, Rowland McDONNELL, Ben McKAY, Yanick MICHOU, Frank MITTELBACH, Lapo Filippo MORI, Michael MORRISON, Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ, Sergei O. NAOUMOV, Cuong NGUYEN, Julien NICOLAS, Rolf NIEPRASCHK, Josselin NOIREL, Heiko OBERDIEK, Mariusz OLKO, Piet VAN OOSTRUM, Erik ÖSTHOLS, Alan PAIĆ, Palash Baran PAL, Oren PATASHNIK, Matthias PELGER, Terje Engeset PETTERST, John PLAICE, Nico POPPELIER, Rama PORRAT, Roozbeh POURNADER, Sebastian RAHTZ, Bernd RAICHLE, Jose Pedro RAMALHETE, Keranen REINO, Adrian REZUŞ, Tony ROBERTS, Denis ROEGEL,

---

<sup>1</sup> And I apologize to whose I forgot.

<sup>2</sup> Mainly, `fr.comp.text.tex` (in french) and `comp.text.tex` (in english), but also `de.comp.text.tex` (in german, but I do not read it well).

Christian ROLLAND, Jan Michel RYNNING, Young RYU, Enn SAAR, David SAMSOEN, Julio SANCHEZ, Elmar SCHALUECK, Tobias SCHLEMMER, Uwe SCHNEIDER, Martin SCHRÖDER, Ali SHOUKAT, Andrij SHVAIKA, Jankovic SLOBODAN, Apostolos SYROPOULOS, Dung TA QUANG, Daniel TAUPIN<sup>†</sup>, Hàn Thế THÀNH, Karsten TINNEFELD, Sigita TOLUSIS, Laurent TORDELLA, Stefan ULRICH, Turgut UYAR, Jari VAARIO, Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE, Vincent VAQUIN, Didier VERNÉ, Sylvain VESCO, Vladimir VOLOVITCH, Nigel WARD, Staszek WAWRYKIEWICZ, Stephan WEBANCK, Eduard WERNER, Peter R. WILSON, Marcin WOLIŃSKI, Élisabeth WOLKOWSKI, Tim WRIGHT, C.S. YOGANANDA, Adi ZAIMI, Danilo ZAVRTANIK, Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI, Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV, and Leon ŽLAJPAH.



## **Part II**

# **Implementation**

## Contents of the Second Part

|           |                                                                                                              |            |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>8</b>  | <b>Commented code of <code>minitoc.sty</code></b>                                                            | <b>171</b> |
| <b>9</b>  | <b>Commented code of <code>mtcoff.sty</code></b>                                                             | <b>335</b> |
| <b>10</b> | <b>Commented code of <code>mtcmess.sty</code></b>                                                            | <b>348</b> |
| <b>11</b> | <b>Patch for the <code>memoir</code> class</b>                                                               | <b>349</b> |
| <b>12</b> | <b>The <code>minitoc</code> language definition (<code>.mld</code>) and object (<code>.mlo</code>) files</b> | <b>351</b> |

## Chapter 8

# Commented code of minitoc.sty

### Contents

|             |                                                                                |            |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>8.1</b>  | <b>Introduction</b>                                                            | <b>174</b> |
| <b>8.2</b>  | <b>Identification code</b>                                                     | <b>175</b> |
| <b>8.3</b>  | <b>A file descriptor to write</b>                                              | <b>175</b> |
| <b>8.4</b>  | <b>Indentation and skip</b>                                                    | <b>175</b> |
| <b>8.5</b>  | <b>Tests and flags</b>                                                         | <b>176</b> |
| 8.5.1       | Flags for the <code>hints</code> option                                        | 176        |
| 8.5.2       | Use of section-level mini-lists of floats                                      | 177        |
| 8.5.3       | Presence of some packages and classes                                          | 177        |
| 8.5.4       | Presence or absence of some sectionning commands                               | 178        |
| 8.5.5       | Flags to check to see if some commands are used                                | 179        |
| 8.5.6       | Check if the document has exactly 2 parts                                      | 180        |
| <b>8.6</b>  | <b>Preparation for the <code>notoccite</code> option</b>                       | <b>180</b> |
| <b>8.7</b>  | <b>Preparation for the <code>tight</code> and <code>k-tight</code> options</b> | <b>181</b> |
| <b>8.8</b>  | <b>Preparation to work with <code>hyperref</code></b>                          | <b>181</b> |
| <b>8.9</b>  | <b>Checking the presence of some packages</b>                                  | <b>182</b> |
| 8.9.1       | Check if the <code>sectsty</code> package is loaded, and when                  | 182        |
| 8.9.2       | Check if the <code>varsects</code> package is loaded, and when                 | 182        |
| 8.9.3       | Check if the <code>fncychap</code> package is loaded, and when                 | 182        |
| 8.9.4       | Check if the <code>quotchap</code> package is loaded, and when                 | 182        |
| 8.9.5       | Check if the <code>romannum</code> package is loaded, and when                 | 183        |
| 8.9.6       | Check if the <code>sfheaders</code> package is loaded, and when                | 183        |
| 8.9.7       | Check if the <code>alnumsec</code> package is loaded, and when                 | 183        |
| 8.9.8       | Check if the <code>captcont</code> package is loaded, and when                 | 183        |
| 8.9.9       | Check if the <code>caption</code> package is loaded, and when                  | 184        |
| 8.9.10      | Check if the <code>caption2</code> package is loaded, and when                 | 184        |
| 8.9.11      | Check if the <code>ccaption</code> package is loaded, and when                 | 184        |
| 8.9.12      | Check if the <code>mcaption</code> package is loaded, and when                 | 184        |
| <b>8.10</b> | <b>Is the <code>memoir</code> class loaded?</b>                                | <b>185</b> |
| <b>8.11</b> | <b>Testing the emptiness of a file</b>                                         | <b>185</b> |
| <b>8.12</b> | <b>Internal macros to decrement <code>minitoc</code> counters</b>              | <b>187</b> |

|        |                                                                                                       |     |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 8.13   | Patching the <code>\part</code> command                                                               | 187 |
| 8.14   | Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part                                                         | 188 |
| 8.15   | Section level macros                                                                                  | 188 |
| 8.16   | Corrections for numbering                                                                             | 189 |
| 8.17   | Patching the <code>\section</code> command                                                            | 189 |
| 8.18   | Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section                                                      | 189 |
| 8.19   | Chapter level macros                                                                                  | 190 |
| 8.20   | Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command                                                            | 190 |
| 8.21   | Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter                                                      | 190 |
| 8.22   | Miscellaneous declarations                                                                            | 191 |
| 8.23   | Autoconfiguration of extensions                                                                       | 192 |
| 8.24   | Detecting obsolete versions of L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X                                        | 193 |
| 8.25   | A macro to make a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers                                          | 193 |
| 8.26   | Default values for the page-number customization macros                                               | 194 |
| 8.27   | “Features” for the mini-tables                                                                        | 196 |
| 8.28   | Fake tables of contents                                                                               | 199 |
| 8.29   | Depth counters for minilofs and minilots                                                              | 199 |
| 8.30   | Chapter level commands                                                                                | 200 |
| 8.31   | Starred parts, chapters or sections                                                                   | 200 |
| 8.32   | Font commands for the mini-tables                                                                     | 201 |
| 8.33   | Internal commands to position the mini-table titles                                                   | 202 |
| 8.34   | The <code>mtc@verse</code> environment                                                                | 203 |
| 8.35   | The <code>\minitoc</code> , <code>\minilof</code> , and <code>\minilot</code> commands                | 203 |
| 8.35.1 | The <code>\minitoc</code> command                                                                     | 203 |
| 8.35.2 | The <code>\minilof</code> command                                                                     | 206 |
| 8.35.3 | The <code>\minilot</code> command                                                                     | 209 |
| 8.36   | Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command, continued                                                 | 212 |
| 8.37   | The <code>\addstarred...</code> commands                                                              | 213 |
| 8.38   | TOC entries without leaders                                                                           | 213 |
| 8.39   | Mini-tables with or without leaders                                                                   | 214 |
| 8.40   | The <code>\dominitoc</code> command and its siblings                                                  | 215 |
| 8.40.1 | Analysis and splitting of the TOC file                                                                | 218 |
| 8.41   | Mini-lists of figures                                                                                 | 222 |
| 8.41.1 | Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file                                                    | 222 |
| 8.42   | Mini-lists of tables                                                                                  | 224 |
| 8.42.1 | Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file                                                     | 225 |
| 8.43   | Macro to write a contents line                                                                        | 227 |
| 8.44   | Depth counters for partlofs and partlots                                                              | 228 |
| 8.45   | Part level commands                                                                                   | 229 |
| 8.46   | Fonts for the parttocs                                                                                | 229 |
| 8.47   | Default titles for part-level mini-tables                                                             | 230 |
| 8.48   | The <code>ptc@verse</code> environment                                                                | 232 |
| 8.49   | The part level mini-tables: <code>\parttoc</code> , <code>\partlof</code> , and <code>\partlot</code> | 233 |
| 8.49.1 | The <code>\parttoc</code> command                                                                     | 233 |
| 8.49.2 | The <code>\partlof</code> command                                                                     | 236 |
| 8.49.3 | The <code>\partlot</code> command                                                                     | 239 |
| 8.50   | Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs                                                              | 241 |
| 8.51   | Patching the <code>\part</code> command, continued                                                    | 242 |
| 8.52   | The <code>\doparttoc</code> command and its siblings                                                  | 242 |
| 8.52.1 | Processing macros for the parttocs                                                                    | 244 |
| 8.52.2 | Processing macros for the partlofs                                                                    | 248 |
| 8.52.3 | Processing macros for the partlots                                                                    | 250 |
| 8.53   | Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots                                                              | 253 |

|             |                                                      |            |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>8.54</b> | <b>Section-level commands</b>                        | <b>253</b> |
| <b>8.55</b> | <b>Fonts commands for secttocs and co.</b>           | <b>254</b> |
| <b>8.56</b> | <b>Internal macros for title positioning</b>         | <b>254</b> |
| <b>8.57</b> | <b>The stc@verse environment</b>                     | <b>255</b> |
| <b>8.58</b> | <b>The \secttoc, \sectlof, and \sectlot commands</b> | <b>255</b> |
| 8.58.1      | The \secttoc command                                 | 255        |
| 8.58.2      | The \sectlof command                                 | 258        |
| 8.58.3      | The \sectlot command                                 | 261        |
| <b>8.59</b> | <b>Auxiliary internal commands, section level</b>    | <b>263</b> |
| <b>8.60</b> | <b>Patching the \section command (continued)</b>     | <b>264</b> |
| <b>8.61</b> | <b>The \dosecttoc command and siblings</b>           | <b>265</b> |
| <b>8.62</b> | <b>End of section-level commands</b>                 | <b>274</b> |
| <b>8.63</b> | <b>The \mtcprepare command</b>                       | <b>275</b> |
| <b>8.64</b> | <b>Necessary \l@... commands</b>                     | <b>275</b> |
| <b>8.65</b> | <b>The horizontal rules and their default values</b> | <b>276</b> |
| <b>8.66</b> | <b>The \mtcset... commands</b>                       | <b>276</b> |
| 8.66.1      | Keywords for the \mtcset... commands                 | 277        |
| 8.66.2      | The \mtcsetfont command                              | 278        |
| 8.66.3      | The \mtcsettitlefont command                         | 282        |
| 8.66.4      | The \mtcsettitle command                             | 284        |
| 8.66.5      | The \mtcsetformat command                            | 285        |
| 8.66.6      | The \mtcsetpagenumbers command                       | 289        |
| 8.66.7      | The \mtcsetrules command                             | 291        |
| 8.66.8      | The \mtcsetfeature command                           | 293        |
| 8.66.9      | The \mtcsetdepth command                             | 296        |
| <b>8.67</b> | <b>The mtchideinmaintoc environment and siblings</b> | <b>297</b> |
| <b>8.68</b> | <b>Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC</b>        | <b>299</b> |
| <b>8.69</b> | <b>Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC</b>           | <b>301</b> |
| <b>8.70</b> | <b>The \mtcselectlanguage command</b>                | <b>302</b> |
| <b>8.71</b> | <b>The \mtcloadmlo internal command</b>              | <b>302</b> |
| <b>8.72</b> | <b>The “coffee breaks”</b>                           | <b>303</b> |
| <b>8.73</b> | <b>Initialization of counters</b>                    | <b>303</b> |
| <b>8.74</b> | <b>Declarations for simple options</b>               | <b>303</b> |
| 8.74.1      | Options tight and loose, k-tight and k-loose         | 304        |
| 8.74.2      | Options checkfiles and nocheckfiles                  | 304        |
| 8.74.3      | Options dotted and undotted                          | 304        |
| 8.74.4      | Option notoccite                                     | 304        |
| 8.74.5      | Option shorttext                                     | 304        |
| <b>8.75</b> | <b>The insection option</b>                          | <b>305</b> |
| <b>8.76</b> | <b>The listfiles and nolistfiles options</b>         | <b>305</b> |
| <b>8.77</b> | <b>Language options</b>                              | <b>305</b> |
| <b>8.78</b> | <b>The hints option</b>                              | <b>309</b> |
| 8.78.1      | First part: \mtc@hints@begindoc                      | 309        |
| 8.78.1.1    | Hint about the alphanum package                      | 309        |
| 8.78.1.2    | Hint about the appendix package                      | 310        |
| 8.78.1.3    | Hint about the tocbibind package                     | 310        |
| 8.78.1.4    | Hint about the KOMA-Script classes                   | 310        |
| 8.78.1.5    | Hint about the tocloft package                       | 311        |
| 8.78.1.6    | Hint about the titletoc package                      | 311        |
| 8.78.1.7    | Hint about the placeins package                      | 311        |
| 8.78.1.8    | Hint about the memoir class                          | 312        |
| 8.78.1.9    | Hint about the amsart and amsproc classes            | 313        |
| 8.78.1.10   | Hint about the amsbook class                         | 313        |
| 8.78.1.11   | Hint about the abstract package                      | 313        |

|             |                                                                                       |            |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 8.78.1.12   | Hint about the <code>jura</code> class . . . . .                                      | 314        |
| 8.78.1.13   | Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands . . . . .                       | 314        |
| 8.78.1.13.1 | Alteration of <code>\part</code> . . . . .                                            | 314        |
| 8.78.1.13.2 | Alteration of <code>\chapter</code> . . . . .                                         | 315        |
| 8.78.1.13.3 | Alteration of <code>\section</code> . . . . .                                         | 315        |
| 8.78.1.14   | Hint about the coherence of the calling sequences of some commands . . . . .          | 315        |
| 8.78.2      | Final part: <code>\mtc@hints@enddoc</code> . . . . .                                  | 316        |
| 8.78.2.1    | Hint about <code>\sect-lof lot</code> and the <code>insection</code> option . . . . . | 317        |
| 8.78.2.2    | Final part of the coherence tests . . . . .                                           | 317        |
| 8.78.2.3    | Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part) . . . . .                    | 319        |
| 8.78.2.4    | Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part) . . . . .                   | 321        |
| 8.78.2.5    | Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions . . . . .                | 323        |
| 8.78.2.6    | Final part of the hint about the <code>sectsty</code> package . . . . .               | 324        |
| 8.78.2.7    | Final part of the hint about the <code>varsects</code> package . . . . .              | 324        |
| 8.78.2.8    | Final part of the hint about the <code>fncychap</code> package . . . . .              | 324        |
| 8.78.2.9    | Final part of the hint about the <code>quotchap</code> package . . . . .              | 325        |
| 8.78.2.10   | Final part of the hint about the <code>romannum</code> package . . . . .              | 325        |
| 8.78.2.11   | Final part of the hint about the <code>sfheaders</code> package . . . . .             | 325        |
| 8.78.2.12   | Final part of the hint about the <code>alnumsec</code> package . . . . .              | 326        |
| 8.78.2.13   | Final part of the hint about the <code>captcont</code> package . . . . .              | 326        |
| 8.78.2.14   | Final part of the hint about the <code>caption</code> package . . . . .               | 326        |
| 8.78.2.15   | Final part of the hint about the <code>caption2</code> package . . . . .              | 327        |
| 8.78.2.16   | Final part of the hint about the <code>ccaption</code> package . . . . .              | 327        |
| 8.78.2.17   | Final part of the hint about the <code>mcaption</code> package . . . . .              | 327        |
| 8.78.2.18   | Check if empty mini-tables have been detected . . . . .                               | 328        |
| 8.78.2.19   | Check if obsolete commands have been used . . . . .                                   | 329        |
| 8.78.2.20   | Check if some hints have been written . . . . .                                       | 330        |
| <b>8.79</b> | <b>Processing of options</b> . . . . .                                                | <b>331</b> |
| 8.79.1      | Processing the <code>insection</code> option . . . . .                                | 331        |
| 8.79.2      | Processing the <code>notoccite</code> option . . . . .                                | 331        |
| 8.79.3      | Processing the <code>listfiles</code> option . . . . .                                | 332        |
| 8.79.4      | Processing the <code>hints</code> option . . . . .                                    | 333        |
| 8.79.5      | Saving the sectionning commands . . . . .                                             | 333        |
| <b>8.80</b> | <b>The <code>fminitoc.dtx</code> file</b> . . . . .                                   | <b>334</b> |

## Figures

|     |                                                            |     |
|-----|------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 8.1 | Hack to detect the limitation to short extensions. . . . . | 192 |
|-----|------------------------------------------------------------|-----|

## 8.1 Introduction

This long chapter presents the code of the `minitoc` package and attempts to explain it. Some comments of the original source file <sup>1</sup> are skipped, like the history, because they do not need further examination (they will be put in the change history).

<sup>1</sup> The source file of version #42. Version #43 includes the conversion of the package to `.dtx-.ins` format. Version #42 has not been distributed because of that.

The code is split in sections to make the reading easier, and the sections are sometimes reordered to make the reading easier.

Most of the `minitoc` external commands have `mtc`, `ptc`, `stc`, or one of the mini-table names (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`) in their names. Most of the `minitoc` internal commands have `@mtc`, `@ptc`, `@stc`, or `parttoc@`, ..., `sectlot@` in their names, or a similar convention. The few exceptions should be explicit enough to not conflict with other packages.

## 8.2 Identification code

The code of `minitoc.sty` starts here:

```
1 \(*minitoc)

\NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/02]%
\ProvidesPackage{minitoc}%
\mtcPackageInfo{minitoc}{2006/06/08 v45 Package minitoc (JPFD)}
\RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
\mtcPackageInfo{minitoc}{2006/03/14}
2 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/02]%
3 \ProvidesPackage{minitoc}%
4 [2006/06/08 v45 Package minitoc (JPFD)]
5 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
6 \mtcPackageInfo{minitoc}{2006/03/14}
7 {*** minitoc package, version 45 ***\@gobble}
```

## 8.3 A file descriptor to write

```
\tf@mtc A file descriptor is needed to write the files containing the mini-tables, it is \tf@mtc.
\newwrite
8 \newwrite\tf@mtc
```

## 8.4 Indentation and skip

```
\mtcindent We define the indentation \mtcindent (both sides) of the mini-tables and the command
\mtcskip \mtcskip to make a vertical skip before a mini-table, its value is \mtcskipamount
\mtcskipamount (default: \bigskipamount).
\parskip
9 \newlength\mtcindent
10 \newskip\mtcskipamount
11 \setlength\mtcindent{\bigskipamount}
12 \setlength\mtcskipamount{\bigskipamount}
12 % %%%\def\mtcskip{\leavevmode\unskip\removelastskip%
```

```

13 % %%% {\parskip=\z@\addvspace{\mtcskipamount}}
14 \def\mtcskip{{\parskip=\z@\addvspace{\mtcskipamount}}}

```

Note that `\mtcskip` uses a local group to avoid the influence of `\parskip`.

`\mtcgapbeforeheads` We define the default values for the vertical gaps before and after titles part level  
`\mtcgapafterheads` mini-tables.

```

15 \def\mtcgapbeforeheads{50\p@}
16 \def\mtcgapafterheads{40\p@}

```

## 8.5 Tests and flags

We need to declare some flags<sup>2</sup> (via `\newif`) to detect the loading of some packages or classes and the availability of some commands (this will be used by the `hints` option (section 8.78 on page 309) or to allow the definition of some `minitoc` commands).

```

\if@mtc@hints@
\if@mtc@hints@w@
\if@mtc@hints@giben@

```

### 8.5.1 Flags for the `hints` option

But first, we define some flags for the `hints` option:

- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@` is true if the `hints` option is required (default).
- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@w@` is set true if we detect that some sectioning commands have been altered since the loading of the document class.
- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@given@` is set true if the `hints` option detects something curious and writes messages in the `.log` file. It will be used at the end of the document to signal that you should look for hints in the `.log` file.

```

17 \newif\if@mtc@hints@ \@mtc@hints@true
18 \newif\if@mtc@hints@w@ \@mtc@hints@w@false
19 \newif\if@mtc@hints@given@ \@mtc@hints@given@false

```

<sup>2</sup> Not so many years ago, some authors had a preference for using counters rather than flags, because a flag costs 3 control sequences (`\iffoo`, `\foofalse` and `\footrue`), which use memory. But the number of count registers is limited to 256 in the native TeX engine (much more with  $\epsilon$ -TeX, but still limited in number), while memory has become rather cheap today. And a code programmed with flags (`\iffoo ... \else ... \fi`) is easier to structure than a code programmed with counters, IMHO.



### 8.5.2 Use of section-level mini-lists of floats

```
\if@mtc@sect@floats@ We will check if the commands \dosectlof and \dosectlot are used:
\dosectlof
\dosectlot 20 \newif\if@mtc@sect@floats@ \@mtc@sect@floats@false
```

### 8.5.3 Presence of some packages and classes

```
\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ We will check if the placeins package is loaded, then if the memoir is loaded (and if
\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ it is a recent version), then if the sectsty package is loaded (before or after minitoc).
\if@mtc@memoirnew@ We do the same for some caption-related packages and the varsects package and others
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ package altering the sectionning commands.
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ 21 \newif\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ \@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@ 22 \newif\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ \@mtc@memoirLoaded@false
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ 23 \newif\if@mtc@memoirnew@ \@mtc@memoirnew@false
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ 24 \newif\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@false
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ 25 \newif\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@ 26 \newif\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ \@mtc@captionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ 27 \newif\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@captionLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ 28 \newif\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ \@mtc@captionIILoaded@false
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ 29 \newif\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ \@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ 30 \newif\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ 31 \newif\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ 32 \newif\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ 33 \newif\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ 34 \newif\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@false
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ 35 \newif\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ 36 \newif\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@false
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ 37 \newif\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ 38 \newif\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@false
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ 39 \newif\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@ 40 \newif\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ \@mtc@romannumLoaded@false
41 \newif\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ \@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@false
42 \newif\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@false
43 \newif\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@false
44 \newif\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@false
45 \newif\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@false
46 \newif\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ \@mtc@captcontLoaded@false
47 \newif\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@ \@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@false
```

```
\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ We will check if you have attempted to insert some empty mini-tables:
\if@mtc@empty@partlof@
\if@mtc@empty@partlot@ 48 \newif\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ \@mtc@empty@parttoc@false
\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ 49 \newif\if@mtc@empty@partlof@ \@mtc@empty@partlof@false
\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ 50 \newif\if@mtc@empty@partlot@ \@mtc@empty@partlot@false
\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ 51 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ \@mtc@empty@minitoc@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@
\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@
\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@
```

```

52 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ \@mtc@empty@minilof@false
53 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minilot@ \@mtc@empty@minilot@false
54 \newif\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@ \@mtc@empty@secttoc@false
55 \newif\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ \@mtc@empty@sectlof@false
56 \newif\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ \@mtc@empty@sectlot@false

```

### 8.5.4 Presence or absence of some sectionning commands

We define and set flags about the presence of the sectionning commands (in fact, the counters associated with these commands).

`\if@mtc@part@def@` The part counter:

```

57 \newif\if@mtc@part@def@ \@mtc@part@def@false
58 \ifundefined{part}{\@mtc@part@def@false}{\@mtc@part@def@true}

```

`\if@mtc@chapter@def@` The chapter counter:

```

59 \newif\if@mtc@chapter@def@ \@mtc@chapter@def@false
60 \ifundefined{chapter}{\@mtc@chapter@def@false}{\@mtc@chapter@def@true}

```

`\if@mtc@section@def@` The section counter:

```

61 \newif\if@mtc@section@def@ \@mtc@section@def@false
62 \ifundefined{section}{\@mtc@section@def@false}{\@mtc@section@def@true}

```

We define and set flags about the absence of the sectionning commands.

`\if@mtc@part@undef@` The part counter:

```

63 \newif\if@mtc@part@undef@ \@mtc@part@undef@true
64 \ifundefined{part}{\@mtc@part@undef@true}{\@mtc@part@undef@false}

```

`\if@mtc@chapter@undef@` The chapter counter:

```

65 \newif\if@mtc@chapter@undef@ \@mtc@chapter@undef@true
66 \ifundefined{chapter}{\@mtc@chapter@undef@true}{\@mtc@chapter@undef@false}

```

`\if@mtc@section@undef@` The section counter:

```
67 \newif\if@mtc@section@undef@ \@mtc@section@undef@true
68 \ifundefined{section}{\@mtc@section@undef@true}{\@mtc@section@undef@false}
```

### 8.5.5 Flags to check to see if some commands are used

We define a pair of flags for each mini-table type: one for the command itself and one for the preparation command (`\do...`). These flags will be used by the hints package option (section 8.78 on page 309).

`\if@parttoc@used@` For the part level:  
`\if@partlof@used@`  
`\if@partlot@used@`

```
69 \newif\if@parttoc@used@ \global\@parttoc@used@false
70 \newif\if@partlof@used@ \global\@partlof@used@false
71 \newif\if@partlot@used@ \global\@partlot@used@false
72 \newif\if@doparttoc@used@ \global\@doparttoc@used@false
73 \newif\if@dopartlof@used@ \global\@dopartlof@used@false
74 \newif\if@dopartlot@used@ \global\@dopartlot@used@false
```

`\if@minitoc@used@` For the chapter level:  
`\if@minilof@used@`  
`\if@minilot@used@`

```
75 \newif\if@minitoc@used@ \global\@minitoc@used@false
76 \newif\if@minilof@used@ \global\@minilof@used@false
77 \newif\if@minilot@used@ \global\@minilot@used@false
78 \newif\if@dominitoc@used@ \global\@dominitoc@used@false
79 \newif\if@dominilof@used@ \global\@dominilof@used@false
80 \newif\if@dominilot@used@ \global\@dominilot@used@false
```

`\if@secttoc@used@` For the section level:  
`\if@sectlof@used@`  
`\if@sectlot@used@`

```
81 \newif\if@secttoc@used@ \global\@secttoc@used@false
82 \newif\if@sectlof@used@ \global\@sectlof@used@false
83 \newif\if@sectlot@used@ \global\@sectlot@used@false
84 \newif\if@dosecttoc@used@ \global\@dosecttoc@used@false
85 \newif\if@dosectlof@used@ \global\@dosectlof@used@false
86 \newif\if@dosectlot@used@ \global\@dosectlot@used@false
```

`\if@firstpartis@used@` We also detect the use of some obsolete commands:  
`\if@firstchapteris@used@`  
`\if@firstsectionis@used@`

```
87 \newif\if@firstpartis@used@ \global\@firstpartis@used@false
88 \newif\if@firstchapteris@used@ \global\@firstchapteris@used@false
89 \newif\if@firstsectionis@used@ \global\@firstsectionis@used@false
```

### 8.5.6 Check if the document has exactly 2 parts

`\ifmtcsecondpart` In french, the ordinal adjective is “deuxième” if the second object is not the last object, but “second” or “seconde” (feminine) when it also the last one. So we define a specific flag:

```
90 \newif\ifmtcsecondpart \mtcsecondpartfalse
```

`\AtBeginDocument` At the beginning of the document, we test this flag and make it global:

`\ifmtcsecondpart`

```
91 \AtBeginDocument{%
92 \ifmtcsecondpart
93 \global\mtcsecondparttrue
94 \else
95 \global\mtcsecondpartfalse
96 \fi}
```

`\AtEndDocument` At the end of the document, we set and memorize the value of the flag in the .aux file:

`\ifmtcsecondpart`

```
\\@mainaux
97 \AtEndDocument{%
98 \ifnum\value{part}=2\relax
99 \mtcsecondparttrue
100 \else
101 \mtcsecondpartfalse
102 \fi
103 \if@filesw
104 \ifmtcsecondpart
105 \immediate\write\@mainaux
106 {\string\global\string\mtcsecondparttrue}%
107 \else
108 \immediate\write\@mainaux
109 {\string\global\string\mtcsecondpartfalse}%
110 \fi
111 \fi}
```

So we need two  $\text{\LaTeX}$  runs to get a correct result. The `french2.mld` language definition file (see section 12.57 on page 382) uses this trick to form the titles of part level mini-tables.

## 8.6 Preparation for the notoccite option

`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` We declare a flag for the presence of this option and the new internal command  
`\if@mtc@notoccite@` `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile`, which is a “hook” command (redefinable command)

used by this option (requested by Donald ARSENEAU for his notoccite package [7]). See section 1.7 on page 46.

```
112 \newif\if@mtc@notoccite@ \@mtc@notoccite@false
113 \@ifundefined{mtc@hook@beforeinputfile}%
114 {\let\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile\relax}{}}
```

## 8.7 Preparation for the tight and k-tight options

`\iftightmtc` We just declare a flag for each of these options; they are set false by default (loose and `\ifktightmtc` k-loose options):

```
115 \newif\iftightmtc \tightmtcfalse
116 \newif\ifktightmtc \ktightmtcfalse
```

## 8.8 Preparation to work with hyperref

`\AtBeginDocument` This code prepares the interface with the hyperref package [172]. A flag is defined, then `\if@mtc@hyper@used@` this preparation is performed in a `\AtBeginDocument` block if this package is loaded. This action defines some commands for the hyperref package.

```
117 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0005>]{minitoc}{compatible with hyperref\@gobble}
118 \newif\if@mtc@hyper@used@ \global\@mtc@hyper@used@false
119 \AtBeginDocument{%
120 \@ifpackageloaded{hyperref}{}%
121 \global\@mtc@hyper@used@true
122 \def\toclevel@xpart{1000}%
123 \def\toclevel@xchapter{1000}%
124 \def\toclevel@xsect{1000}%
125 \let\toclevel@starpart\toclevel@part
126 \let\toclevel@starchapter\toclevel@chapter
127 \let\toclevel@starsection\toclevel@section
128 \let\toclevel@starsubsection\toclevel@subsection
129 \let\toclevel@starsubsubsection\toclevel@subsubsection
130 \let\toclevel@starparagraph\toclevel@paragraph
131 \let\toclevel@starsubparagraph\toclevel@subparagraph
132 }{}}
```

## 8.9 Checking the presence of some packages

### 8.9.1 Check if the sectsty package is loaded, and when

`\AtBeginDocument` We must test if the `sectsty` package [147] is loaded before or after `minitoc`, so we  
`\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@` test when `minitoc` is loaded and also in a `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all packages  
`\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@` have been loaded. See section 8.78.2.6 on page 324.

```
133 \ifpackageloaded{sectsty}{\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@true}{}
134 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{sectsty}{\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@true}{} }
```

### 8.9.2 Check if the varsects package is loaded, and when

`\AtBeginDocument` We must test if the `varsects` package [180] is loaded before or after `minitoc`, so  
`\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@` we test when `minitoc` is loaded and also in a `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all  
`\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@` packages have been loaded. See section 8.78.2.7 on page 324.

```
135 \ifpackageloaded{varsects}{\@mtc@varsectsLoaded@true}{}
136 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{varsects}{\@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@true}{} }
```

### 8.9.3 Check if the fncychap package is loaded, and when

`\AtBeginDocument` We must test if the `fncychap` package [140] is loaded before or after `minitoc`, so  
`\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@` we test when `minitoc` is loaded and also in a `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all  
`\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@` packages have been loaded. See section 8.78.2.8 on page 324.

```
137 \ifpackageloaded{fncychap}{\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@true}{}
138 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{fncychap}{\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@true}{} }
```

### 8.9.4 Check if the quotchap package is loaded, and when

`\AtBeginDocument` We must test if the `quotchap` package [184] is loaded before or after `minitoc`, so  
`\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@` we test when `minitoc` is loaded and also in a `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all  
`\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@` packages have been loaded. See section 8.78.2.9 on page 325.

```
139 \ifpackageloaded{quotchap}{\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@true}{}
140 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{quotchap}{\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@true}{} }
```

### 8.9.5 Check if the romannum package is loaded, and when

`\AtBeginDocument` We must test if the romannum package [202] is loaded before or after minitoc, so  
`\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@` we test when minitoc is loaded and also in a `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all  
`\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@` packages have been loaded. See section 8.78.2.10 on page 325.

```
141 \@ifpackageloaded{romannum}{\@mtc@romannumLoaded@true}{}
142 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{romannum}{\@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@true}{}}
```

### 8.9.6 Check if the sfheaders package is loaded, and when

`\AtBeginDocument` We must test if the sfheaders package [142] is loaded before or after minitoc, so  
`\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@` we test when minitoc is loaded and also in a `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all  
`\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@` packages have been loaded. See section 8.78.2.11 on page 325.

```
143 \@ifpackageloaded{sfheaders}{\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@true}{}
144 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{sfheaders}{\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@true}{}}
```

### 8.9.7 Check if the alnumsec package is loaded, and when

`\AtBeginDocument` We must test if the alnumsec package [122] is loaded before or after minitoc, so  
`\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@` we test when minitoc is loaded and also in a `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all  
`\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@` packages have been loaded. See section 8.78.2.12 on page 326.

```
145 \@ifpackageloaded{alnumsec}{\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@true}{}
146 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{alnumsec}{\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@true}{}}
```

### 8.9.8 Check if the captcont package is loaded, and when

`\AtBeginDocument` We must test if the captcont package [82] is loaded before or after minitoc, so  
`\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@` we test when minitoc is loaded and also in a `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all  
`\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@` packages have been loaded. See section 8.78.2.13 on page 326.

```
147 \@ifpackageloaded{captcont}{\@mtc@captcontLoaded@true}{}
148 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{captcont}{\@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@true}{}}
```

### 8.9.9 Check if the caption package is loaded, and when

`\AtBeginDocument` We must test if the `caption` package [178] is loaded before or after `minitoc`, so we  
`\if@mtc@captionLoaded@` test when `minitoc` is loaded and also in a `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all packages  
`\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@` have been loaded. See section 8.78.2.14 on page 326.

```
149 \@ifpackageloaded{caption}{\@mtc@captionLoaded@true}{}
150 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{caption}{\@mtc@captionLoaded@a@true}{} }
```

### 8.9.10 Check if the caption2 package is loaded, and when

`\AtBeginDocument` We must test if the `caption2` package [179] is loaded before or after `minitoc`, so  
`\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@` we test when `minitoc` is loaded and also in a `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all  
`\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@` packages have been loaded. See section 8.78.2.15 on page 327.

```
151 \@ifpackageloaded{caption2}{\@mtc@captionIILoaded@true}{}
152 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{caption2}{\@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@true}{} }
```

### 8.9.11 Check if the ccaption package is loaded, and when

`\AtBeginDocument` We must test if the `ccaption` package [199] is loaded before or after `minitoc`, so  
`\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@` we test when `minitoc` is loaded and also in a `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all  
`\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@` packages have been loaded. See section 8.78.2.16 on page 327.

```
153 \@ifpackageloaded{ccaption}{\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@true}{}
154 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{ccaption}{\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@true}{} }
```

### 8.9.12 Check if the mcaption package is loaded, and when

`\AtBeginDocument` We must test if the `mcaption` package [108] is loaded before or after `minitoc`, so  
`\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@` we test when `minitoc` is loaded and also in a `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all  
`\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@` packages have been loaded. See section 8.78.2.17 on page 327.

```
155 \@ifpackageloaded{mcaption}{\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@true}{}
156 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{mcaption}{\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@true}{} }
```



## 8.10 Is the memoir class loaded?

`\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@` We test if the memoir [200, 201] class is loaded. This class needs some compatibility adjustments or may be incompatible if too recent. In the later case, a patch is inserted  
`\if@mtc@memoirnew@` (see chapter 11 on page 349). This correction is no more necessary after the 2005/09/25  
`\if@mtcpatchmemoir@` version of memoir.cls.

```

157 \newif\if@mtcpatchmemoir@ \mtcpatchmemoir@false
158 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}{\@mtc@memoirLoaded@true\relax%
159 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0030>]{minitoc}%
160 {the memoir class is loaded:\MessageBreak
161 compatibility attempted\@gobble}}%
162 {\@mtc@memoirLoaded@false}
163 \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@
164 \@ifundefined{@m@chapter}%
165 {\@mtc@memoirnew@false\mtcPackageInfo[<I0020>]{minitoc}%
166 {old version of the memoir class\@gobble}}
167 {\@mtc@memoirnew@true\mtcPackageInfo[<I0027>]{minitoc}%
168 {recent version of the memoir class\@gobble}}
169 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0032>]{minitoc}%
170 {This version of the memoir class uses \MessageBreak
171 a version of \string\chapter\space which is \MessageBreak
172 incompatible with the minitoc package. \MessageBreak
173 We try to patch\@gobble}%
174 \@mtcpatchmemoir@true}
175 \fi

```

`\if@mtcpatchmemoir@` And now the patch:

```

176 \if@mtcpatchmemoir@
177 \IfFileExists{mtcpatchmem.sty}{%
178 \@ifclasslater{memoir}{2005/09/25}{}{\RequirePackage{mtcpatchmem}}}{%
179 \mtcPackage[<E0028>]{Error}{minitoc}
180 {Unable to patch the memoir class}%
181 {So it remains incompatible. Sorry.}}
182 \fi

```

## 8.11 Testing the emptiness of a file

`\mtc@ifmtarg` Some macros for testing if an argument of a macro is empty (taken from the package  
`\mtc@xifmtarg` ifmtarg [203], by Peter R. WILSON and Donald ARSENEAU, and from while.tip, by  
`\mtc@EndWhile` Stephan P. von BECHTOLSHEIM [190]). The group is necessary to keep local the catcode  
`\mtc@WhilePreCondition` change of “Q”, hence a \gdef is needed for \mtc@ifmtarg.  
`\mtc@WhileCondition`  
`\mtc@WhileBody` 183 \begingroup  
`\mtc@While` 184 \catcode'\Q=3  
`\mtc@WhileNext`

```

185 \long\gdef\mtc@ifmtarg#1{%
186 \mtc@xifmtarg#1QQ\@secondoftwo\@firstoftwo\@nil}
187 \long\gdef\mtc@xifmtarg#1#2Q#3#4#5\@nil{#4}
188 \endgroup
189 \let\mtc@EndWhile = \fi
190 \def\mtc@While #1#2#3\mtc@EndWhile{%
191 \def\mtc@WhilePreCondition{#1}%
192 \def\mtc@WhileCondition{#2}%
193 \def\mtc@WhileBody{#3}%
194 \mtc@@While
195 }
196 \def\mtc@@While{%
197 \mtc@WhilePreCondition
198 \mtc@WhileCondition
199 \def\mtc@WhileNext{%
200 \mtc@WhileBody
201 \mtc@@While
202 }%
203 \else
204 \def\mtc@WhileNext{}%
205 \fi
206 \mtc@WhileNext
207 }

```

\if@mtc@checkfiles Some macros to test if a file is empty or not: \mtc@CkFile{file} returns

\if@mtc@FE \mtc@FEtrue if the file is empty, \mtc@FEfalse if the file is not empty. An

\if@mtc@LI inexistent file is empty. A file full of white space (space, tabulation, newline) is empty.

\mtc@While Comments are empty.

\mtc@Body

\mtc@EndWhile **Note:** on a big empty file, the \mtc@While loop may be time consuming, but not an

\mtc@CkFile eternity (33 s for  $10^6$  lines on my computer), and the first non-empty line stops the loop.

\mtc@CkStr \jobname.mtc is used as scratch file. It is erased after use.

\mtc@Rline

\tf@mtc

\@inputcheck

```

208 \newif\if@mtc@LI\@mtc@LItrue
209 \newif\if@mtc@FE\@mtc@FEtrue
210 \newif\if@mtc@checkfiles\@mtc@checkfilestrue
211 \def\mtc@Body{\immediate\read\@inputcheck to
212 \mtc@Rline\relax
213 \ifeof\@inputcheck\relax\@mtc@LIfalse\fi
214 \expandafter\ifx\mtc@Rline\par\relax
215 \def\mtc@Rline{}
216 \else
217 \ifeof\@inputcheck\relax\global\@mtc@LIfalse\fi
218 \mtc@ifmtarg{\mtc@Rline}{\relax}%
219 {\@mtc@FEfalse\@mtc@LIfalse}
220 \fi
221 }
222 \def\mtc@CkFile#1{%
223 \@mtc@LItrue\@mtc@FEtrue
224 \if@mtc@checkfiles
225 \IfFileExists{#1}{%
226 \immediate\openin\@inputcheck #1\relax

```

```

227 \mtc@While{}{\if@mtc@LI\relax}%
228 {\mtc@Body}%
229 \mtc@endWhile}%
230 {\@mtc@FEtrue}%
231 \else
232 \@mtc@FEfalse%
233 \fi}
234 \closein\@inputcheck\relax
235 \def\mtc@CkStr#1{%
236 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
237 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{#1}%
238 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
239 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.mtc}%
240 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
241 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

## 8.12 Internal macros to decrement minitoc counters

\mtc@onebackpart It is sometimes necessary to decrement a minitoc counter (ptc, mtc or stc) by one.  
\mtc@onebackchapter These macros are:  
\mtc@onebacksection  
\addtocounter

```

242 \def\mtc@onebackpart{\addtocounter{ptc}{-1}}
243 \def\mtc@onebackchap{\addtocounter{mtc}{-1}}
244 \def\mtc@onebacksect{\addtocounter{stc}{-1}}

```

## 8.13 Patching the \part command

\part If the \part command is not defined (by the document class, usually), we cannot patch it  
\mtc@svspart and a warning is displayed<sup>3</sup>. Else, we patch its two branches, \@part (for the unstarred  
\mtc@svpart version) or \@spart (for the starred version, \part\*): we add \stepcounter{ptc} to  
\@spart increment the parttoc counter ptc. See also section 8.51 on page 242.  
\@part  
\stepcounter The code of the next section (section 8.14 on the following page) is also skipped if \part  
is not defined.

```

245 \@ifundefined{part}{%
246 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0018>]{minitoc}%
247 {part level macros NOT available}
248 }{%% else undefined part (\part defined)
249 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0023>]{minitoc}%
250 {part level macros available\@gobble}
251 \let\mtc@svspart\@spart

```

<sup>3</sup> Document classes with sectioning commands but no \part command are likely non standard, hence the warning displayed on the terminal.

```

252 \def\@spart{\stepcounter{ptc}\mtc@svspart}
253 \let\mtc@svpart\@part
254 \def\@part{\stepcounter{ptc}\mtc@svpart}

```

## 8.14 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part

`\mtcaddpart` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred part, we need the `\mtcaddpart` macro, which has an optional argument, the title of the part as it should appear in the TOC.

`\mtc@ifmtarg`

`\contentsline` By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omitted, we add a `\contentsline{xpart}{}...` line in the `.toc` file. If it is not empty, we add a `\contentsline{part}{title...}...` line in the `.toc` file. We always add a `\l@xpart` `\contentsline{xpart}{}...` line in the `.lof` and `.lot` files. Then we increment the `ptc` counter, via `\adjustptc` (defined in section 8.45 on page 229). Using `xpart` as first argument of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xpart` will be invoked in place of `\l@part` to print the entry in the TOC, but `\l@xpart` uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```

255 \newcommand{\mtcaddpart}[1][]{%
256 \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xpart}{}}%
257 {\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}}%
258 \addcontentsline{lof}{xpart}{}%
259 \addcontentsline{lot}{xpart}{}%
260 \adjustptc}

```

This code terminates (temporarily) the part level commands.

```

261 }%

```

## 8.15 Section level macros

`\chapter` The section level macros are defined if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` defined, i.e., in document classes like `article`, but not in document classes like `book` or `report`. So we test if `\chapter` is defined and if `\section` is defined, with adequate warnings. If neither are defined, you are in big trouble to use the `minitoc` package with the class of your document.

`\section`

```

262 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\mtcPackageInfo[<I0004>]{minitoc}%
263 {chapter level macros NOT available\@gobble}}%
264 \@ifundefined{section}{\mtcPackageInfo[<I0029>]{minitoc}%
265 {section level macros NOT available\@gobble}}%
266 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0017>]{minitoc}%
267 {no section or chapter level macros available
268 \MessageBreak}

```

```

269 PLEASE VERIFY YOUR MAIN DOCUMENT CLASS}}%
270 {\mtcPackageInfo[<I0028>]{minitoc}%
271 {section level macros available\@gobble}%

```

## 8.16 Corrections for numbering

```

\mtc@onebacksect As the TOC, the LOF and the LOT are considered as (starred) sections, we must
\tableofcontents decrement the secttoc counter (stc) via \mtc@onebacksect when the corresponding
\listoffigures commands are executed. Hence we patch these commands.
\listoftables
\mtcsv@tableofcontents 272 \let\mtcsv@tableofcontents\tableofcontents
\mtcsv@listoffigures 273 \let\mtcsv@listoffigures\listoffigures
\mtcsv@listoftables 274 \let\mtcsv@listoftables\listoftables
275 \def\tableofcontents{\mtcsv@tableofcontents\mtc@onebacksect}
276 \def\listoffigures{\mtcsv@listoffigures\mtc@onebacksect}
277 \def\listoftables{\mtcsv@listoftables\mtc@onebacksect}

```

## 8.17 Patching the \section command

```

\mtc@svsection If the \section command is not defined (by the document class, usually), we can-
\mtc@svss not patch it and a warning is displayed. Else, we patch its two branches, \@sect
\@ssect (for the unstarred version) or \@ssect (for the starred version, \section*): we add
\@sect \stepcounter{stc} to increment the secttoc counter stc, only in the unstarred case
\section (the version #25 has removed a spurious decrementation of this counter).
\stepcounter
278 \let\mtc@svsection\section
279 \def\section{\stepcounter{stc}\mtc@svsection}
280 \let\mtc@svss\@ssect

```

## 8.18 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section

```

\mtcaddsection To add an entry in the TOC for a starred section, we need the \mtcaddsection macro,
\mtc@ifmtarg which has an optional argument, the title of the section as it should appear in the
\contentsline TOC. By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via \mtc@ifmtarg) or
\adjuststc omitted, we add a \contentsline{xsect}{}... line in the .toc file. If it is not
\l@xsect empty, we add a \contentsline{section}{title...}... line in the .toc file.
\l@section We always add a \contentsline{xsect}{}... line in the .lof and .lot files.
Then we increment the stc counter, via \adjuststc (this command is defined in
section 8.54 on page 253). Using xsect as first argument of \contentsline means
that \l@xsect will be invoked in place of \l@section to print the entry in the TOC,

```

but `\l@xsect` uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```

281 \newcommand{\mtcaddsection}[1][1]{%
282 \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xsect}{}}%
283 {\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{#1}}%
284 \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{}}%
285 \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{}}%
286 \adjuststc}

```

This code terminates (temporarily) the section level commands, and we continue with chapter level macros.

```

287 }}%
288 {%

```

## 8.19 Chapter level macros

`\chapter` The chapter level macros are defined if `\chapter` is defined, i.e., in document classes like `book` or `report`. So we test if `\chapter` is defined, with adequate warnings. The test is already done above, we are in the “else” branch of `\ifundefined{chapter}`.

```

289 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0003>]{minitoc}{chapter level macros available\@gobble}

```

## 8.20 Patching the `\chapter` command

`\chapter` The `\chapter` command is defined (by the document class, usually). We patch its two branches, `\@chapter` (for the unstarred version) or `\@schapter` (for the starred version, `\chapter*`): we add call to `\stepcounter{mtc}` to increment the minitoc counter `mtc`. `\mtc@svchapter` Only the unstarred branch (`\@chapter`) is patched here. The other branch is patched later (section 8.36 on page 212).

```

290 \let\mtc@svchapter\@chapter
291 \def\@chapter{\stepcounter{mtc}\mtc@svchapter}

```

## 8.21 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter

`\mtcaddchapter` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter, we need the `\mtcaddchapter` macro, which has an optional argument, the title of the chapter as it should appear in the TOC. By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`)

```

\contentsline
 \adjustmtc
 \l@xchapter
 \l@chapter

```

or omitted, we add a `\contentsline{xchapter}{...}` line in the `.toc` file. If it is not empty, we add a `\contentsline{chapter}{title...}` line in the `.toc` file. We always add a `\contentsline{xchapter}{...}` line in the `.lof` and `.lot` files. Then we increment the `mtc` counter, via `\adjustmtc` (defined in section 8.31 on page 200). Using `xchapter` as first argument of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xchapter` will be invoked in place of `\l@chapter` to print the entry in the TOC, but `\l@xchapter` uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```

292 \newcommand{\mtcaddchapter}[1][\relax]{%
293 \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}}%
294 {\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}}%
295 \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}%
296 \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}%
297 \adjustmtc}

```

This code terminates (temporarily) the chapter level commands, i.e., terminates the `\ifundefined{chapter}` at the beginning of section 8.15 on page 188.

```

298 }%

```

## 8.22 Miscellaneous declarations

|                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <pre> \newread \mtc@toks \mtc@string \mtc@strut \mtc@strutbox \mtc@hstrut \mtc@hstrutbox \mtc@v \mtc@zrule \mtc@BBR </pre> | <p>The <code>\newread</code> command must be redeclared as being <code>\outer</code> (as Donald ARSENEAU told me). We need a token register (<code>\mtc@toks</code>), a temporary string (<code>\mtc@string</code>), struts (two kinds, each one using a box containing an invisible vertical rule), a rule with all dimensions equal to zero (<code>\mtc@zrule</code>) and a command discouraging page breaks (<code>\mtc@BBR</code>, for “bad break”). For the struts, which are boxes containing an invisible vertical rule, we use “ex” units, to follow the current font.</p> <pre> 299 \def\newread{\alloc@6\read\chardef\sixt@@n} 300 \newtoks\mtc@toks 301 \def\mtc@string{\relax} 302 \newbox\mtc@strutbox 303 \setbox\mtc@strutbox=\hbox{\rule[1.8ex]{\z@}{2.5ex}} 304 \def\mtc@strut{\relax\ifmmode\copy\mtc@strutbox 305     \else\unhcopy\mtc@strutbox\fi} 306 \newbox\mtc@hstrutbox 307 \setbox\mtc@hstrutbox=\hbox{\rule[1.ex]{\z@}{1.ex}} 308 \def\mtc@hstrut{\relax\ifmmode\copy\mtc@hstrutbox 309     \else\unhcopy\mtc@hstrutbox\fi} 310 \def\mtc@v{\leavevmode\mtc@strut} 311 \def\mtc@zrule{\rule[\z@]{\z@}{\z@}} 312 \def\mtc@BBR{\unpenalty\nopagebreak[4]} </pre> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

| Phase (time runs from left to right): |                              | 1    | 2     | 3 |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|------|-------|---|
| OS with long extensions               | <code>\jobname.mtc1</code>   | TRUE | TRUE  | * |
|                                       | <code>\jobname.mtc</code>    |      | FALSE |   |
| OS with short extensions              | <code>\jobname.mtc(1)</code> | TRUE | FALSE | * |

Figure 8.1: Hack to detect the limitation to short extensions.

## 8.23 Autoconfiguration of extensions

`\tf@mtc` This code is a hack to determine if the operating system is able or unable to use long extensions (> 3 characters) in file names. We define a file descriptor (`\tf@mtc`) to write files<sup>4</sup>. This code is verbose if long extensions cannot be used, else the messages are only written in the `.log` file. The sequencing of these operations is vital. The figure 8.1 shows this sequence. A star (\*) denotes which file is read in phase 3.

```
\if@longextensions@ (0) First, a message and a new flag:
 \tf@mtc
 \openout 313 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0002>]{minitoc}%
 \write 314 {Autoconfiguration of extensions\@gobble}
 \closeout 315 \newif\if@longextensions@\@longextensions@false
 \input (1) We write "\@longextensions@true" in \jobname.mtc1. But if the OS has short
 \jobname extensions, the real name of the file will be truncated to \jobname.mtc.

316 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc1
317 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{string\@longextensions@true}
318 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

(2) We write "\@longextensions@false" in \jobname.mtc.

319 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
320 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{string\@longextensions@false}
321 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

(3) We read \jobname.mtc1. But if the OS has short extensions, the real name of the
file will be truncated to \jobname.mtc.

322 \input{\jobname.mtc1}
```

<sup>4</sup> Note that it is the *only* new file descriptor created by the minitoc package. All files written by minitoc use this descriptor, or one of the standard descriptors, e.g., for the `.log` file. In fact, minitoc writes also in the `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files, but via file descriptors already used by standard commands like `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures` and `\listoftables`. We can conclude that minitoc itself uses only one file descriptor (or write stream). Some other attempts to make per chapter TOCs have failed by quickly leading to exhaustion of file descriptors (TEX offers only 16 file descriptors for writing), because they called the standard internal `\starttoc` macro, which invokes `\newwrite`, for each mini-table. As minitoc writes into only one file at a time (and in the `.log` file, and in the standard contents files, of course), we can reuse the same file descriptor and avoid this serious problem. The minitoc package writes in the contents files when it encounters a major sectioning command (`\part`, `\chapter`, or `\section`), if necessary. It writes into the mini-table auxiliary files only via the mini-table preparing commands (`\doparttoc`, ..., `\dosectlot`), once at a time. You do not need a new hammer for each nail.



- (4) Hence, the flag is true if we read really from `\jobname.mtc1`, but false if we read from `\jobname.mtc`. The text and the severity of the messages are different.

```

323 \if@longextensions@
324 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0012>]{minitoc}%
325 {Long extensions (Unix-like) will be used@gobble}
326 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0031>]{minitoc}%
327 {==> this version is configured for UNIX-like \MessageBreak
328 \space\space\space\space(long extensions) file names@gobble}%
329 \else
330 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0019>]{minitoc}%
331 {Short extensions (MSDOS-like) will be used\MessageBreak
332 ==> this version is configured for MSDOS-like \MessageBreak
333 \space\space\space\space(8+3) file names}
334 \fi

```

- (5) We erase the contents of the two files (because `\jobname.mtc` is also used later as a scratch file, see section 8.11 on page 185).

```

335 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
336 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
337 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc1
338 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

```

## 8.24 Detecting obsolete versions of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X

`\@inputcheck` `\reset@font` This code detects old versions of the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X kernel that are no more supported and with which the minitoc package can hardly work. The trick is to detect the absence of some internal L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X commands, `\@inputcheck` and `\reset@font`. If you get one of these messages, you are in bad luck and should *urgently* update your L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X installation, which is rusting since... many years!



```

339 \@ifundefined{@inputcheck}%
340 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0021>]{minitoc}%
341 {Your version of latex.tex is obsolete.\MessageBreak
342 Trying to continue..}\newread\@inputcheck\relax}{}}
343 \@ifundefined{reset@font}%
344 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0022>]{minitoc}%
345 {Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.\MessageBreak
346 Trying to continue... crossing fingers}%
347 \let\reset@font\relax}{}

```

## 8.25 A macro to make a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers

`\@undottedtocline` `\ifundottedmtc` `\undottedmtcfalse` The (internal) macro `\@undottedtocline` is a modified version of the standard command `\@dottedtocline`. It will be used in customization macros.

```

348 \newif\ifundottedmtc\undottedmtcfalse
349 \def\@undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{%
350 \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth \else
351 \vskip \z@ plus.2\p@
352 {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
353 \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
354 \interlinepenalty\@M
355 \leavevmode
356 \@tempdima #3\relax \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \hbox{}}%
357 \hskip -\leftskip
358 #4\nobreak\hfill \nobreak
359 \null\par}%
360 \fi}

```

## 8.26 Default values for the page-number customization macros

`\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@` This section defines some customization macros for the presence or absence of page numbers in the mini-tables. But if the memoir class [200, 201] is loaded, it does the job. So, we test first `\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@` to use the commands of memoir when they are available.

```

361 \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@

```

```

\mtcpagenumbers For entries in minitocs:
\nomtcpagenumbers
362 \def\mtcpagenumbers{%
363 \cftpagenumberon{section}
364 \cftpagenumberon{subsection}
365 \cftpagenumberon{subsubsection}
366 \cftpagenumberon{paragraph}
367 \cftpagenumberon{subparagraph}}
368 \def\nomtcpagenumbers{%
369 \cftpagenumbersoff{section}
370 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
371 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
372 \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
373 \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}

```

```

\stcpagenumbers For entries in secttocs:
\nostcpagenumbers
374 \def\stcpagenumbers{%
375 \cftpagenumberon{subsection}
376 \cftpagenumberon{subsubsection}
377 \cftpagenumberon{paragraph}

```

```

378 \cftpagenumberon{subparagraph}}
379 \def\nostcpagenumbers{%
380 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
381 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
382 \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
383 \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}

```

\ptcpagenumbers For entries in parttocs:  
\noptcpagenumbers

```

384 \def\ptcpagenumbers{%
385 \cftpagenumberon{chapter}
386 \cftpagenumberon{section}
387 \cftpagenumberon{subsection}
388 \cftpagenumberon{subsubsection}
389 \cftpagenumberon{paragraph}
390 \cftpagenumberon{subparagraph}}
391 \def\noptcpagenumbers{%
392 \cftpagenumbersoff{chapter}
393 \cftpagenumbersoff{section}
394 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
395 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
396 \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
397 \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}

```

\mlfpagenumbers For entries in minilofs, sectlofs, and partlofs:

```

\nomlfpagenumbers
\slfpagenumbers 398 \def\mlfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberon{figure}}
\noslfpagenumbers 399 \def\nomlfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}
\plfpagenumbers 400 \def\slfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberon{figure}}
\noplfpagenumbers 401 \def\noslfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}
402 \def\plfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberon{figure}}
403 \def\noplfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}

```

\mltpagenumbers For entries in minilots, sectlots, and partlots:

```

\nomltpagenumbers
\sltpagenumbers 404 \def\mltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberon{table}}
\nosltpagenumbers 405 \def\nomltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}
\pltpagenumbers 406 \def\sltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberon{table}}
\nopltpagenumbers 407 \def\nosltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}
408 \def\pltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberon{table}}
409 \def\nopltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}

```

Else, minitoc will use its own commands.

```

410 \else

```

```

\mtcpagenumbers First, for minitocs, secttocs and parttocs:
\nomtcpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 411 \def\mtcpagenumbers{\let\mtc@pgno\null}
\nomlfpagenumbers 412 \def\nomtcpagenumbers{\let\mtc@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 413 \def\stcpagenumbers{\let\stc@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 414 \def\nostcpagenumbers{\let\stc@pgno\relax}
415 \def\ptcpagenumbers{\let\ptc@pgno\null}
416 \def\noptcpagenumbers{\let\ptc@pgno\relax}

```

```

\mlfpagenumbers Then, for minilofs, sectlofs and partlofs:
\nomlfpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 417 \def\mlfpagenumbers{\let\mlf@pgno\null}
\nomlfpagenumbers 418 \def\nomlfpagenumbers{\let\mlf@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 419 \def\slfpagenumbers{\let\slf@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 420 \def\noslfpagenumbers{\let\slf@pgno\relax}
421 \def\plfpagenumbers{\let\plf@pgno\null}
422 \def\noplfpagenumbers{\let\plf@pgno\relax}

```

```

\mltpagenumbers Then, for minilots, sectlots and partlots:
\nomltpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers 423 \def\mltpagenumbers{\let\mlt@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 424 \def\nomltpagenumbers{\let\mlt@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 425 \def\sltpagenumbers{\let\slt@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 426 \def\nosltpagenumbers{\let\slt@pgno\relax}
427 \def\pltpagenumbers{\let\plt@pgno\null}
428 \def\nopltpagenumbers{\let\plt@pgno\relax}
429 \fi

```

```

\ptcpagenumbers Then the default values are set; page numbers are present:
\plfpagenumbers
\pltpagenumbers 430 \ptcpagenumbers
\mtcpagenumbers 431 \plfpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 432 \pltpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers 433 \mtcpagenumbers
\stcpagenumbers 434 \mlfpagenumbers
\slfpagenumbers 435 \mltpagenumbers
\sltpagenumbers 436 \stcpagenumbers
437 \slfpagenumbers
438 \sltpagenumbers

```

## 8.27 “Features” for the mini-tables

Each kind of mini-table has three “features”: a “before” feature, an “after” feature and a “thispagestyle” feature.

A “before” feature is defined by a macro like `\beforeparttoc` which contains code to be executed before any mini-table of a given type: `\beforeparttoc` is executed before each parttoc. Usually such features contains only trivial commands like `\clear[double]page`, or `\empty`.

An “after” feature is analog but its code is executed after each mini-table of a given type.

A “thispagestyle” feature is defined by a macro like `\thispageparttocstyle` which contains code to define the page style implied by mini-tables of a given type: the command `\thispageparttocstyle` can be defined as `\thispagestyle{...}`. Usually, the “thispagestyle” feature is only defined for part-level mini-tables, which use page breaks in their before and after features. For chapter- and section-level mini-tables, the “thispagestyle” feature is usually defined as `\empty`.

We set the default values for the part-level features depending on the presence of the `\chapter` command, as article-like documents are different from the book- or report-like documents for the layout of part-level mini-tables.

```

\chapter If \chapter is not defined, the part level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by
\beforeparttoc default):
\beforepartlof
\beforepartlot 439 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
440 \let\beforeparttoc\empty
441 \let\beforepartlof\empty
442 \let\beforepartlot\empty}%

```

```

\cleardoublepage But if \chapter is defined, they have a \cleardoublepage as default “before” feature:

443 {\let\beforeparttoc\cleardoublepage
444 \let\beforepartlof\cleardoublepage
445 \let\beforepartlot\cleardoublepage}

```

```

\beforeinitoc Chapter level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):
\beforeminilof
\beforeminilot 446 \let\beforeinitoc\empty
447 \let\beforeminilof\empty
448 \let\beforeminilot\empty

```

```

\beforesecttoc Section level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):
\beforesectlof
\beforesectlot 449 \let\beforesecttoc\empty
450 \let\beforesectlof\empty
451 \let\beforesectlot\empty

```

`\chapter` If `\chapter` is not defined, the part level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

```

\afterparttoc
\afterpartlof 452 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\afterpartlot 453 \let\afterparttoc\empty
 454 \let\afterpartlof\empty
 455 \let\afterpartlot\empty}%

```

`\cleardoublepage` But if `\chapter` is defined, they have a `\cleardoublepage` as default “after” feature:

```

456 {\let\afterparttoc\cleardoublepage
457 \let\afterpartlof\cleardoublepage
458 \let\afterpartlot\cleardoublepage}

```

`\afterminitoc` Chapter level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

```

\afterminilof
\afterminilot 459 \let\afterminitoc\empty
 460 \let\afterminilof\empty
 461 \let\afterminilot\empty

```

`\aftersecttoc` Section level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

```

\aftersectlof
\aftersectlot 462 \let\aftersecttoc\empty
 463 \let\aftersectlof\empty
 464 \let\aftersectlot\empty

```

`\thispagestyle` By default, all the “thispagestyle” features (at part level) use the `empty` page style. It affects only the first page of the mini-table. If `\chapter` is not defined, there is no default “thispagestyle” features at the part level.

```

\thispageparttocstyle
\thispagepartlofstyle
\thispagepartlotstyle
\thispageminitocstyle 465 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\thispageminilofstyle 466 \def\thispageparttocstyle{\empty}
\thispageminilotstyle 467 \def\thispagepartlofstyle{\empty}
\thispagesecttocstyle 468 \def\thispagepartlotstyle{\empty}}%
\thispagesectlofstyle 469 {\def\thispageparttocstyle{\thispagestyle{empty}}
\thispagesectlotstyle 470 \def\thispagepartlofstyle{\thispagestyle{empty}}
 471 \def\thispagepartlotstyle{\thispagestyle{empty}}}
 472 \def\thispageminitocstyle{\empty}
 473 \def\thispageminilofstyle{\empty}
 474 \def\thispageminilotstyle{\empty}
 475 \def\thispagesecttocstyle{\empty}
 476 \def\thispagesectlofstyle{\empty}
 477 \def\thispagesectlotstyle{\empty}

```

`\mtcsetfeature` In section 8.66.8 on page 293, we will define the `\mtcsetfeature` macro which is much easier user interface to set the mini-tables “features”.

## 8.28 Fake tables of contents

`\faketableofcontents` If you don’t want a table of contents, but want minitocs, you need to create the .toc file, without inserting it into your document. This `\faketableofcontents` command is a stripped off version of the standard command `\tableofcontents`. We define in the same way the commands `\fakelistoffigures` and `\fakelistoftables`, using in fact just a stripped version `\fake@starttoc` of `\@starttoc`. But it is nice to reset to zero the `ptc`, `mtc`, and `stc` counters now, if they are defined<sup>5</sup>.

```

478 \def\faketableofcontents{\fake@starttoc{toc}%
479 \ifundefined{c@ptc}{\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
480 \ifundefined{c@mtc}{\setcounter{mtc}{0}}%
481 \ifundefined{c@stc}{\setcounter{stc}{0}}%
482 }
483 \def\fakelistoffigures{\fake@starttoc{lof}}
484 \def\fakelistoftables{\fake@starttoc{lot}}
485 \def\fake@starttoc#1{\begingroup
486 \makeatletter
487 \if@filesw \expandafter\newwrite\csname tf@#1\endcsname
488 \immediate\openout \csname tf@#1\endcsname
489 \jobname.#1\relax
490 \fi
491 \global\@nobreakfalse \endgroup}

```

This code uses the same file descriptors (for writing) than the original commands.

## 8.29 Depth counters for minilofs and minilots

`\AtBeginDocument` If the counters `lofdepth` and `lotdepth` are defined, we create the necessary new counters: `minilofdepth` and `minilotdepth`. These counters are initialized to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an `\AtBeginDocument` block:

```

492 \AtBeginDocument{%
493 \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{%
494 {\newcounter{minilofdepth}\setcounter{minilofdepth}{2}}%
495 \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{%
496 {\newcounter{minilotdepth}\setcounter{minilotdepth}{2}}%
497 }

```

---

<sup>5</sup> Remember the infamous “`stc0`” bug.

## 8.30 Chapter level commands

From here, we define the chapter-level commands.

```
\mtc@markboth First, we memorize the marks (not used today, but...):
\@mkboth
498 \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
499 \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
```

## 8.31 Starred parts, chapters or sections

```
\addst@rred We define commands to manage the starred sectionning commands: \part*, \chapter*
\addcontentsline and \section*. The section-level is different depending if \chapter is defined or not.
\stepcounter Eventually, a counter is incremented. A contents line is added in the .toc file, with the
\c@ptc right depth to print it (see \l@star... later, in section 8.64 on page 275).
\c@mtc
\c@stc
500 \def\addst@rred#1#2{%
501 \addcontentsline{toc}{star#1}{#2}%
502 \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{}{%
503 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax
504 \stepcounter{ptc}%
505 \fi
506 }%
507 \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{}{%
508 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax
509 \stepcounter{mtc}%
510 \fi
511 }%
512 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{}{%
513 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax
514 % \ifundefined{chapter}{\stepcounter{stc}}{}%
515 \stepcounter{stc}%
516 \fi
517 }%
518 }%
```

```
\addstarredsection If \chapter is not defined, we just define \addstarredsection:
\chapter
\addst@rred
519 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
520 \gdef\addstarredsection#1{\addst@rred{section}{#1}}
521 }%
```

Else we begin to define the stuff for chapter-level commands (the “else” branch of `\@ifundefined{chapter}`):



522 {%

```

\The@mtc We define now: the internal format of the mtc counter (\The@mtc), the obsolete com-
\firstchapteris mand \firstchapteris (it just emits a harmless warning), the mtc counter (initial-
\if@firstchapteris@used@ ized to 0), the \adjustmtc command (increments the mtc counter, by 1 by default),
\adjustmtc the \decrementmtc command (decrements the mtc counter by 1), the \incrementmtc
\decrementmtc command (increments the mtc counter by 1), the format of the mtc counter (\themtc),
\incrementmtc the counter minitocdepth, initialized to 2, for the depth of a minitoc (analog to the
\themtc standard tocdepth counter). We define the horizontal rules to draw before and after
\columnwidth minitocs (\mtc@rule), and we copy that definition into analog macros for other kinds
\mtc@rule of mini-tables. We also set the default value (24pt) of \mtcindent, the indentation for
\mlf@rule minitocs (both sides). The rules are 0.4pt thick. They are defined via \hrule to stay in
\mlt@rule vertical mode for the final \kern.
\plf@rule
\plt@rule 523 \def\The@mtc{\arabic{mtc}}
\slf@rule 524 \def\firstchapteris#1%
\slt@rule 525 {\mtcPackageWarning[<W0003>]{minitoc}%
\mtcindent 526 {\string\firstchapteris \space is an obsolete\MessageBreak command}%
527 \@firstchapteris@used@true}
528 \newcounter{mtc}
529 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
530 \newcommand{\adjustmtc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{mtc}{#1}}
531 \def\decrementmtc{\addtocounter{mtc}{-1}}
532 \def\incrementmtc{\addtocounter{mtc}{+1}}
533 \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}
534 \newcounter{minitocdepth}
535 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{2}
536 \def\mtc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule \@width\columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}
537 \let\mlf@rule\mtc@rule
538 \let\mlt@rule\mtc@rule
539 \let\plf@rule\mtc@rule
540 \let\plt@rule\mtc@rule
541 \let\slf@rule\mtc@rule
542 \let\slt@rule\mtc@rule
543 \mtcindent=24\p@

```

## 8.32 Font commands for the mini-tables

```

\mtcfont We define these commands with full NFSS [135] descriptions. These definitions are
\mtcSfont effective if \chapter is defined. The fonts for titles are also defined here. See also the
\mtcSSfont \mtcsetfont macro (section 8.66.2 on page 278) and the \mtcsettitlefont macro
\mtcSSSfont later (section 8.66.3 on page 282).
\mtcPfont
\mtcSPfont 544 \def\mtcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}
\mlffont 545 \def\mtcSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
\mlfSfont 546 \let\mtcSSfont\mtcfont
\mltfont 547 \let\mtcSSSfont\mtcfont
\mltSfont
\mtifont

```

```

548 \let\mtcPfont\mtcfont
549 \let\mtcSPfont\mtcfont
550 \let\mlffont\mtcfont
551 \let\mlfSfont\mtcfont
552 \let\mltfont\mtcfont
553 \let\mltSfont\mtcfont
554 \def\mtifont{\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}

```

`\coffeeont` And `\coffeeont` is used for “coffee breaks” ☕ in the `minutes` package [139].

```

555 \def\coffeeont{\small\rmfamily\slshape\mdseries}

```

### 8.33 Internal commands to position the mini-table titles

`\df@mtitc` The commands `\miniXXX` and `\dominiXXX` accept an optional argument to left justify, center, right justify or omit the title of the chapter-level mini-tables. By default, these titles  
`\df@mtilf` are left justified. The choice made in a `\dominiXXX` command is global and memorized  
`\df@mtilt` in `\df@mtitc`, `\df@mtilf` or `\df@mtilt`; the choice made in a `\miniXXX` command is  
`\do@mtitc` local and stored in `\do@mtitc`, `\do@mtilf` or `\do@mtilt`. See the `\minitoc@` macro  
`\do@mtilf` later (section 8.35.1 on the following page). An empty title needs a vertical correction  
`\do@mtilt` (Frank MITTELBACH).

```

\c@mti Centering, flushleft, flushright or empty titles:
\l@mti
\r@mti 556 \def\c@mti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
\e@mti 557 \def\l@mti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
\n@mti 558 \def\r@mti#1{\null\hfill #1\null}
559 \def\e@mti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
560 \def\n@mti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}

```

```

\l@mti Default: titles on left:
\do@mtitc
\df@mtitc 561 \let\do@mtitc\l@mti
\do@mtilf 562 \let\df@mtitc\l@mti
\df@mtilf 563 \let\do@mtilf\l@mti
\do@mtilt 564 \let\df@mtilf\l@mti
\df@mtilt 565 \let\do@mtilt\l@mti
566 \let\df@mtilt\l@mti

```

### 8.34 The `mtc@verse` environment

`mtc@verse` Each minitoc is placed inside a `mtc@verse` environment. This environment is analog to the standard `verse` environment and hence defined via two commands: `\mtc@verse` and `\endmtc@verse`. As it is a list environment, we first define (in a local way) `\`, then call `\list{}` and set some dimensions like `\itemsep`, `\itemindent`, `\listparindent`, `\topsep`. `\parsep` is set to zero if the `tight` option is active (to reduce the spacing of the lines). `\parskip` is set to zero if the `k-tight` option is active (to reduce the spacing of the lines). Both margins are set to `\mtcindent`. `\endmtc@verse` terminates the list and discourages a page break.

```

\iftightmtc
\ifktightmtc
 \
 \list
 \itemsep
 \itemindent
\listparindent
 \topsep
 \parsep
\mtcindent
567 \def\mtc@verse{\let\=\@centercr
568 \list{ }\itemsep\z@
569 \itemindent \z@
570 \listparindent \itemindent
571 \partopsep\z@
572 \iftightmtc \parsep\z@ \fi
573 \ifktightmtc \parskip\z@ \fi
574 \topsep=lex
575 \leftmargin\mtcindent
576 \rightmargin\leftmargin}\item[]}
577 \def\endmtc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

### 8.35 The `\minitoc`, `\minilof`, and `\minilot` commands

These three commands are very similar, with only cosmetic differences.

#### 8.35.1 The `\minitoc` command

`\minitoc` The `\minitoc` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minitoc (no `\chapter` automatic minitoc).

`\dominitoc` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a `\dominitoc` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominitoc` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minitoc`. The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominitoc` command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominitoc`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minitoc`.

`\minitoc` So we define `\minitoc` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and  
`\minitoc@` call the true code in the `\minitoc@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use  
`\@ifnextchar` the `\@ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
578 \def\minitoc{\@ifnextchar[{\minitoc@}{\minitoc@d}}}
```

The real code of `\minitoc` is in `\minitoc@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minitoc@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minitoc@used@true` to note that `\minitoc` has been called (this will be used by a hint later, section 8.78.2.2 on page 317).

```
579 \def\minitoc@[#1]{%
580 \global\@minitoc@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minitoc is constructed from `\jobname` and a suf-  
`\if@longextensions` fix `\@tocfile`, which is `mtc` (long extensions) or `M` (short extensions) followed by the absolute number of the minitoc.

```
581 \if@longextensions@
582 \def\@tocfile{mtc\The@mtc}%
583 \else
584 \def\@tocfile{M\The@mtc}%
585 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file  
`\if@mtc@FE` is empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minitoc has been requested).  
`\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@`

```
586 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
587 \if@mtc@FE
588 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
589 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
590 \@mtc@empty@minitoc@true
591 \else
```

`\thispageminitlestyle` We call `\thispageminitlestyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minitoc). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minitoc.

```
592 \thispageminitlestyle
593 %% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mtctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mtctitle}}%
```

```

\beforeminitoc We call \beforeminitoc, then begin a samepage environment (to try to discourage page
samepage breaks in a minitoc) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout
\do@mtitc is corrected. We print the title with its font (\mtifont), then the top rule of the minitoc
\e@mti (if rules are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the
\n@mti title and the top rule). The font is set to \mtcfont.
\c@mti
\l@mti 594 \beforeminitoc
\r@mti 595 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 596 \if #1e\let\do@mtitc\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 597 \else\if #1n\let\do@mtitc\n@mti
\mtctitle 598 \else\if #1c\let\do@mtitc\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 599 \else\if #1l\let\do@mtitc\l@mti
\mtcfont 600 \else\if #1r\let\do@mtitc\r@mti
\mtifont 601 \else\if #1d\let\do@mtitc\df@mtitc
\mtc@rule 602 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 603 \mtc@CkStr{\mtctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtitc\e@mti\relax\fi
tabular 604 \raggedright
605 \parskip=\z@%
606 \reset@font\mtcfont%
607 \parindent=\z@%
608 \nopagebreak[4]%
609 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
610 \par\noindent %
611 \ifx\mtc@rule\relax
612 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
613 \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtitc{\mtc@v\mtctitle}\\
614 \end{tabular}%
615 \else
616 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
617 \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtitc{\mtc@v\mtctitle}\\ \hline
618 \end{tabular}%
619 \fi

\mtc@zrule We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters
\mtc@BBR and begin an mtc@verse environment:
\mtcindent
mtc@verse 620 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
621 \leftmargin\mtcindent
622 \rightmargin\mtcindent
623 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
624 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
625 \begin{mtc@verse}%

\c@tocdepth We force the effective depth of the mini-table (\c@tocdepth) to the required depth
\c@minitocdepth (\c@minitocdepth), so the printing is done inside the mtc@verse environment, where
\\ tocdepth has been forced to minitocdepth, to print only the entries whose level is low
\mtc@BBR enough. then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative
indentation.

```

```

626 \c@tocdepth=\c@minitocdepth
627 \leavevmode\\mtc@BBR
628 \vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

```

\mtc@pgno We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minitoc by inputting the
\@dottedtocline minitoc file. But before reading the minitoc file, we must call the hook macro (asked for
\@undottedtocline by Donald ARSENEAU for his notoccite package [7]) \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile and the macro \mtc@setform which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user
\mtc@setform via some \mtcsetformat commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro
\mtcsetformat redefinitions.
\mtc@strut

```

```

629 \beginngroup
630 \makeatletter
631 \@ifundefined{mtc@pgno}%
632 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
633 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
634 \mtc@setform%
635 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
636 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
637 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
638 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup

```

```

mtc@verse We close the mtc@verse environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page
\mtc@bottom@rule break), then close the samepage environment, and call \afterminitoc. The blank line
 \ (\\) is essential.

```

```

samepage
\afterminitoc 639 \end{mtc@verse}%
640 \kern0.\baselineskip%
641 \nopagebreak[4]\mtc@bottom@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
642 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule
643 \end{samepage}%
644 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminitoc\fi}

```

```

\mtc@bottom@rule And we define the bottom rule for a minitoc, with some space under the minitoc:

```

```

\mtc@rule
\columnwidth 645 \def\mtc@bottom@rule{%
646 \ifx\mtc@rule\relax\relax\else
647 \vskip -2.5ex
648 \rule[2.4\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}\fi}

```

### 8.35.2 The `\minilof` command

`\minilof` The `\minilof` command is very similar to the `\minitoc` command.

`\minilof` The `\minilof` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minilof (no `\chapter` automatic minilof).

`\dominilof` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been  
`\minilof` set earlier by a `\dominilof` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominilof` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minilof`. The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominilof` command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominilof`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minilof`.

`\minilof` So we define `\minilof` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and  
`\minilof@` call the true code in the `\minilof@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use  
`\@ifnextchar` the `\@ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
649 \def\minilof{\@ifnextchar[{\minilof@}{\minilof@d}}}
```

The real code of `\minilof` is in `\minilof@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minilof@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minilof@used@true` to note that `\minilof` has been called (this will be used by a hint later, section 8.78.2.2 on page 317).

```
650 \def\minilof@[#1]{%
651 \global\@minilof@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minilof is constructed from `\jobname` and a suf-  
`\if@longextensions@` fix `\@tocfile`, which is mlf (long extensions) or F (short extensions) followed by the absolute number of the minilof.

```
652 \if@longextensions@%
653 \def\@tocfile{mlf\The@mtc}%
654 \else
655 \def\@tocfile{F\The@mtc}%
656 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file  
`\if@mtc@FE` is empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minilof has been requested).  
`\if@mtc@empty@minilof@`

```
657 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
658 \if@mtc@FE
659 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
660 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
661 \@mtc@empty@minilof@true
662 \else
```

`\thispageminilofstyle` We call `\thispageminilofstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minilof). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minilof.

```
663 \thispageminilofstyle
664 %% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mlftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mlftitle}}%
```

`\beforeminilof` We call `\beforeminilof`, then begin a `samepage` environment (to try to discourage page breaks in a minilof) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is corrected. We print the title with its font (`\mtifont`), then the top rule of the minilof (if rules are present), using a `tabular` environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule). The font is set to `\mlffont`.

```
\l@mti 665 \beforeminilof
\r@mti 666 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 667 \if #1e\let\do@mtilf\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 668 \else\if #1n\let\do@mtilf\n@mti
\mtctitle 669 \else\if #1c\let\do@mtilf\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 670 \else\if #1l\let\do@mtilf\l@mti
\mlffont 671 \else\if #1r\let\do@mtilf\r@mti
\mtifont 672 \else\if #1d\let\do@mtilf\df@mtilf
\mlf@rule 673 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 674 \mtc@CkStr{\mlftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtilf\e@mti\relax\fi
tabular 675 \raggedright
676 \parskip=\z@
677 \reset@font\mlffont
678 \parindent=\z@
679 \nopagebreak[4]%
680 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
681 \par\noindent
682 \ifx\mlf@rule\relax
683 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
684 \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilf{\mtc@v\mlftitle}\\
685 \end{tabular}%
686 \else
687 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
688 \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilf{\mtc@v\mlftitle}\\ \hline
689 \end{tabular}%
690 \fi
```

`\mtc@zrule` We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and begin an `mtc@verse` environment:

```
\mtc@BRR
\mtcindent
mtc@verse 691 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BRR
692 \leftmargin\mtcindent
693 \rightmargin\mtcindent
694 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
695 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
696 \begin{mtc@verse}%
```



`\c@tocdepth` We force the effective depth of the mini-table (`\c@tocdepth`) to the required depth  
`\c@minilofdepth` (`\c@minilofdepth`), so the printing is done inside the `mtc@verse` environment, where  
`\` `tocdepth` has been forced to `minilofdepth`, to print only the entries whose level is low  
`\mtc@BBR` enough. then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative  
indentation.

```
697 \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{\c@tocdepth=\c@minilofdepth}
698 \ifnum\c@tocdepth<1\relax\c@tocdepth=1\fi
699 \leavevmode\mtc@BBR
700 \vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\mtc@pgno` We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minilof by inputing the  
`\@dottedtocline` minilof file. But before reading the minilof file, we must call the hook macro (asked for  
`\@undottedtocline` by Donald ARSENEAU for his notoccite package [7]) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile`  
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` and the macro `\mlf@setform` which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user  
`\mlf@setform` via some `\mtcsetformat` commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro  
`\mtcsetformat` redefinitions.  
`\mtc@strut`

```
701 \beginngroup
702 \makeatletter
703 \ifundefined{mlf@pgno}%
704 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
705 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
706 \mlf@setform
707 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
708 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
709 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
710 \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
```

`mtc@verse` We close the `mtc@verse` environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page  
`\mtc@bottom@rule` break), then close the `samepage` environment, and call `\afterminilof`. The blank line  
`\` (`\`) is essential.

```
samepage
\afterminilof 711 \end{mtc@verse}%
712 \kern-1.\baselineskip%
713 \nopagebreak[4]\mlf@rule\null\leavevmode\%
714 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
715 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminilof\fi%
```

### 8.35.3 The `\minilot` command

`\minilot` The `\minilot` command is absolutely similar to the `\minilof` command:

`\minilot` The `\minilot` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minilot (no  
`\chapter` automatic minilot).

`\dominilot` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been  
`\minilot` set earlier by a `\dominilot` command. The letter “d” represents this default value.  
`\dominilot` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional  
argument of `\minilot`. The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominilot`  
command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1)  
which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominilot`, or locally via  
the optional argument of `\minilot`.

`\minilot` So we define `\minilot` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and  
`\minilot@` call the true code in the `\minilot@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use  
`\@ifnextchar` the `\@ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
716 \def\minilot{\@ifnextchar[{\minilot@}{\minilot@d}}
```

The real code of `\minilot` is in `\minilot@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited  
by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minilot@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minilot@used@true` to note that `\minilot` has been  
called (this will be used by a hint later, section 8.78.2.2 on page 317).

```
717 \def\minilot@[#1]{%
718 @global\@minilot@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minilot is constructed from `\jobname` and a suf-  
`\if@longextensions@` fix `\@tocfile`, which is mlt (long extensions) or T (short extensions) followed by the  
absolute number of the minilot.

```
719 \if@longextensions@%
720 \def\@tocfile{mlt\The@mtc}%
721 \else
722 \def\@tocfile{T\The@mtc}%
723 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file  
`\if@mtc@FE` is empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minilot has been requested).  
`\if@mtc@empty@minilot@`

```
724 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
725 \if@mtc@FE
726 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
727 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
728 \@mtc@empty@minilot@true
729 \else
```

`\thispageminilotstyle` We call `\thispageminilotstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minilot). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minilot.

```
730 \thispageminilotstyle
731 %% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mltttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mltttitle}}%
```

`\beforeminilot` We call `\beforeminilot`, then begin a `samepage` environment (to try to discourage page breaks in a minilot) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is corrected. We print the title with its font (`\mtifont`), then the top rule of the minilot (if rules are present), using a `tabular` environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule). The font is set to `\mltfont`.

```

\l@mti 732 \beforeminilot
\r@mti 733 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 734 \if #1e\let\do@mtilt\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 735 \else\if #1n\let\do@mtilt\n@mti
\mtctitle 736 \else\if #1c\let\do@mtilt\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 737 \else\if #1l\let\do@mtilt\l@mti
\mltfont 738 \else\if #1r\let\do@mtilt\r@mti
\mtifont 739 \else\if #1d\let\do@mtilt\df@mtilt
\mlt@rule 740 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 741 \mtc@CkStr{\mltttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtilt\e@mti\relax\fi
tabular 742 \raggedright
743 \parskip=\z@%
744 \reset@font\mltfont%
745 \parindent=\z@%
746 \nopagebreak[4]%
747 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
748 \par\noindent
749 \ifx\mlt@rule\relax
750 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
751 \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilt{\mtc@v\mltttitle}\\
752 \end{tabular}%
753 \else
754 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
755 \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilt{\mtc@v\mltttitle}\\\hline
756 \end{tabular}%
757 \fi
```

`\mtc@zrule` We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and begin an `mtc@verse` environment:

```

\mtcindent
mtc@verse 758 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
759 \leftmargin\mtcindent
760 \rightmargin\mtcindent
761 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
762 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
763 \begin{mtc@verse}%
```

`\c@tocdepth` We force the effective depth of the mini-table (`\c@tocdepth`) to the required depth (`\c@minilotdepth`), so the printing is done inside the `mtc@verse` environment, where `\c@minilotdepth` has been forced to `minilotdepth`, to print only the entries whose level is low enough. then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative indentation.

```

764 \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}{\c@tocdepth=\c@minilotdepth}
765 \ifnum\c@tocdepth<1\relax\c@tocdepth=1\fi
766 \leavevmode\\mtc@BBR
767 \vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\mtc@pgno` We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minilot by inputting the minilot file. But before reading the minilot file, we must call the hook macro (asked for by Donald ARSENEAU for his notoccite package [7]) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` and the macro `\mlt@setform` which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some `\mtcsetformat` commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.

```

\mtc@strut
768 \begingroup
769 \makeatletter
770 \ifundefined{mlt@pgno}%
771 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
772 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
773 \mlt@setform
774 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
775 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-.5\baselineskip}
776 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
777 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup

```

`mtc@verse` We close the `mtc@verse` environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break), then close the `samepage` environment, and call `\afterminilot`. The blank line (`\\`) is essential.

```

\mtc@bottom@rule
\\
samepage
\afterminilot
778 \end{mtc@verse}%
779 \kern-1.\baselineskip%
780 \nopagebreak[4]\mlt@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
781 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
782 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminilot\fi%

```

### 8.36 Patching the `\chapter` command, continued

`\l@xchapter` First, we define `\l@xchapter` which is like `\l@chapter`, but with a huge depth, to inhibit its printing (except if you cheat):

```

\l@chapter
\l@chapter
\l@chapter
\l@chapter
783 \def\l@xchapter{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1em}{2.3em}}
784 \def\l@xchapter{\l@chapter}

```

`\@chapter` Then we patch `\@chapter` (the non-starred branch of `\chapter`) to add pseudo-chapter entries in the LOF and the LOT (these entries will be used by the `\dominiXXX` commands to split the LOF and the LOT into slices).

`\sv@chapter`

`\addcontentsline`

`\ignorespaces`

```

785 \let\sv@chapter\@chapter
786 \def\@chapter[#1]#2{\sv@chapter[#1]{#2}\relax%
787 \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{#1}%
788 \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{#1}%
789 \ignorespaces}

```

`\mtc@schapter` We also patch `\@schapter` (the starred branch of `\chapter`) to add marks in the TOC to delimit chapters; these marks will be used by the `\dominiXXX` commands to take slices from the LOF and the LOT; as they are defined as `\relax`, they should not perturbate other packages.

`\@schapter`

`\addtocontents`

`\chapterbegin`

`\chapterend`

```

790 \let\mtc@schapter\@schapter
791 \def\@schapter{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\chapterend}\mtc@schapter}
792 \def\@schapter{\addtocontents{@@@}{\protect\chapterbegin}\mtc@schapter}
793 \let\chapterbegin\relax
794 \let\chapterend\relax

```

### 8.37 The `\addstarred...` commands

`\addstarredsection` If the command `\chapter` is undefined, we define the command `\addstarredsection` (only if `\section` is defined). If the command `\chapter` is defined, we define the

`\addstarredchapter` command `\addstarredchapter`. If the command `\part` is defined, we define the

`\addstarredpart` command `\addstarredpart`. We use the utility command `\addst@rred` defined in

`\chapter` section 8.31 on page 200.

`\section`

`\part`

`\addst@rred`

```

795 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
796 {\@ifundefined{section}%
797 {}{\def\addstarredsection#1{\addst@rred{section}{#1}}}%
798 {\def\addstarredchapter#1{\addst@rred{chapter}{#1}}}
799 \@ifundefined{part}%
800 {}{\def\addstarredpart#1{\addst@rred{part}{#1}}}

```

### 8.38 TOC entries without leaders

`\@Undottedtocline` We define two internal macros to format TOC entries without leaders. The macro

`\coffeeont` `\@Undottedtocline` prints no page number, but `\@Undottedtoclinep` prints it.

```

801 \def\@Undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{%

```

```

802 \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth \else
803 \vskip \z@ \@plus.2\p@
804 {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
805 \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
806 \interlinepenalty\@M
807 \leavevmode
808 \@tempdima #3\relax
809 \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \null\nobreak\hskip -\leftskip
810 {\coffeeont #4}\nobreak
811 \nobreak\null
812 \par}%
813 \fi}

```

\@Undottedtoclinep The same but with the page number:  
\coffeeont

```

814 \def\@Undottedtoclinep#1#2#3#4#5{%
815 \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth \else
816 \vskip \z@ \@plus.2\p@
817 {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
818 \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
819 \interlinepenalty\@M
820 \leavevmode
821 \@tempdima #3\relax
822 \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \null\nobreak\hskip -\leftskip
823 {\#4}\nobreak
824 \hfill
825 \nobreak\null
826 \hb@xt@\@pnumwidth{\hfil\normalfont \normalcolor #5}%
827 \par}%
828 \fi}

```

### 8.39 Mini-tables with or without leaders

\minitoc@ This code sets the flag to false, then patches each mini-table command (its internal  
\minilof@ part). We alter the commands \minitoc@, \minilof@, etc., to test the flag  
\minilot@ \ifundottedmtc and, if true, replace locally \@dottedtocline by its dotless version  
\@dottedtocline \@Undottedtoclinep. Of course, we must also test the availability of the \chapter,  
\@Undottedtoclinep \part and \section commands, to avoid to define many unnecessary commands.  
\sv@minitoc@  
\sv@minilof@ 829 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{%  
\sv@minilot@ 830 \let\sv@minitoc@\minitoc@  
831 \def\minitoc@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi  
832 \sv@minitoc@[#1]}}%  
833 \let\sv@minilof@\minilof@  
834 \def\minilof@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi  
835 \sv@minilof@[#1]}}%  
836 \let\sv@minilot@\minilot@  
837 \def\minilot@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi

```

838 \sv@minilot@[#1]}}}

\sv@parttoc@ For the part level:
\sv@partlof@
\sv@partlot@ 839 \@ifundefined{part}{}{%
\ifundottedmtc 840 \let\sv@parttoc@\parttoc@
 \parttoc@ 841 \def\parttoc@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
 \partlof@ 842 \sv@parttoc@[#1]}}}%
 \partlot@ 843 \let\sv@partlof@\partlof@
 844 \def\partlof@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
 845 \sv@partlof@[#1]}}}%
 846 \let\sv@partlot@\partlot@
 847 \def\partlot@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
 848 \sv@partlot@[#1]}}}

\sv@secttoc@ For the section level:
\sv@sectlof@
\sv@sectlot@ 849 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
\ifundottedmtc 850 \@ifundefined{section}{}{%
 \secttoc@ 851 \let\sv@secttoc@\secttoc@
 \sectlof@ 852 \def\secttoc@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
 \sectlot@ 853 \sv@secttoc@[#1]}}}%
 854 \let\sv@sectlof@\sectlof@
 855 \def\sectlof@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
 856 \sv@sectlof@[#1]}}}%
 857 \let\sv@sectlot@\sectlot@
 858 \def\sectlot@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
 859 \sv@sectlot@[#1]}}}}}%

```

## 8.40 The `\dominitoc` command and its siblings

`\dominitoc` The three commands `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof` and `\dominilot` are, of course, very similar. They take the `\jobname.toc` file (resp. the `\jobname.lof` and `\jobname.lot` files) produced by the previous  $\text{\LaTeX}$  run and cut it in slices (one slice per chapter or starred chapter) into the `\jobname.mtc<N>` files (resp. the `\jobname.mlf<N>` and `\jobname.mlt<N>` files), using specific lines in the `\jobname.toc` (resp. `\jobname.lof` and `\jobname.lot`) file. These lines are essentially chapter-level entry commands (like `\contentsline{chapter}...`, `\contentsline{xchapter}...`, `\contentsline{starchapter}...`, `\chapbegin`) delimiting chapters in the TOC (or in the LOF or the LOT). Analog part-level lines delimit parts, hence also chapters.

`\dominitoc` As `\dominitoc` has an optional argument, whose default value is “1” (left), it calls  
`\dominitoc@` `\dominitoc@` with a argument delimited by brackets.  
`\@@dominitoc`  
`\ifdominitoc@used@` The macros are `\dominitoc` (user interface), which calls `\dominitoc@[1]` (or with the optional argument of `\dominitoc`). Then `\dominitoc@[1]` processes its argument and calls `\@@dominitoc`. `\@@dominitoc` calls `\@dominitoc` (passing `\jobname` as argument) then close the minitoc file written. `\@dominitoc` reset to zero the counter of mini-tables, calls `\MTC@next#1.toc` (where #1 is the value of `\jobname`), then reset again to zero the counter of mini-tables. Each call to `\dominitoc@` (i.e., to `\dominitoc`) sets the flag `\@dominitoc@used@true`. This will be used later for a hint (which detects that you have correctly called `\minitoc after \dominitoc` and that both or neither have been called). See section 8.78.2.2 on page 317. The code is similar for `\dominilof` and `\dominilot`.

`\dominitoc` The `\dominitoc` command extracts information from the .toc file and create the  
`\@dominitoc` minitocs files, with the adequate extension.  
`\MTC@next`

```
860 \def\@dominitoc#1{%
861 \makeatletter
862 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
863 \MTC@next#1.toc\relax\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
864 \def\dominitoc{\@ifnextchar[{\dominitoc@}{\dominitoc@[1]}}
```

`\dominilof` The `\dominilof` command extracts information from the .lof file and create the  
`\@dominilof` minilofs files, with the adequate extension.  
`\MLF@next`

```
865 \def\@dominilof#1{%
866 \makeatletter
867 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
868 \MLF@next#1.lof\relax\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
869 \def\dominilof{\@ifnextchar[{\dominilof@}{\dominilof@[1]}}
```

`\dominilot` The `\dominilot` command extracts information from the .lot file and create the  
`\@dominilot` minilots files, with the adequate extension.  
`\MLT@next`

```
870 \def\@dominilot#1{%
871 \makeatletter
872 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
873 \MLT@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
874 \def\dominilot{\@ifnextchar[{\dominilot@}{\dominilot@[1]}}
```



```

\if@dominitoc@used@ Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minitoc title; a
\if@mtc@hints@ hint detects any spurious invocation.
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\df@mtitc 875 \def\dominitoc@[#1]{%
\@mti 876 \if@mtc@hints@
\@mti 877 \if@dominitoc@used@
\c@mti 878 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\l@mti 879 {The \string\dominitoc \space command\MessageBreak
\r@mti 880 has been invoked more than once\MessageBreak}
\@dominitoc 881 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
882 \fi
883 \fi
884 \global\@dominitoc@used@true
885 \if #1e\let\df@mtitc\@mti%
886 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtitc\@mti%
887 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtitc\c@mti%
888 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtitc\l@mti%
889 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtitc\r@mti%
890 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
891 \@dominitoc}

```

```

\if@dominilof@used@ Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minilof title; a
\if@mtc@hints@ hint detects any spurious invocation.
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\df@mtilf 892 \def\dominilof@[#1]{%
\@mti 893 \if@mtc@hints@
\@mti 894 \if@dominilof@used@
\c@mti 895 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\l@mti 896 {The \string\dominilof \space command\MessageBreak
\r@mti 897 has been invoked more than once\MessageBreak}
\@dominilof 898 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
899 \fi
900 \fi
901 \global\@dominilof@used@true
902 \if #1e\let\df@mtilf\@mti%
903 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtilf\@mti%
904 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtilf\c@mti%
905 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtilf\l@mti%
906 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtilf\r@mti%
907 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
908 \@dominilof}

```

```

\if@dominilot@used@ Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minilot title; a
\if@mtc@hints@ hint detects any spurious invocation.
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\df@mtilt 909 \def\dominilot@[#1]{%
\@mti 910 \if@mtc@hints@
\@mti 911 \if@dominilot@used@
\c@mti 912 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\l@mti 913 {The \string\dominilot \space command\MessageBreak
\r@mti
\@dominilot

```

```

914 has been invoked more than once\MessageBreak}
915 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
916 \fi
917 \fi
918 \global\@dominilot@used@true
919 \if #1e\let\df@mtilt\e@mti%
920 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtilt\n@mti%
921 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtilt\c@mti%
922 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtilt\l@mti%
923 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtilt\r@mti%
924 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
925 \@@dominilot}

```

\@@dominitoc These macros invoke the \@domini... macros to create the mini-table file, then close  
 \@@dominilof the file descriptor.  
 \@@dominilot

```

\tf@mtc 926 \def\@@dominitoc{\@dominitoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
 927 \def\@@dominilof{\@dominilof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
 928 \def\@@dominilot{\@dominilot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

### 8.40.1 Analysis and splitting of the TOC file

This is done via a loop managed by the following macros <sup>6</sup>:

```

\MTC@next Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:
\MTC@list
\MTC@loop 929 \def\MTC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
 930 \edef\MTC@list{#2}%
 931 \MTC@loop{#1}%
 932 }

\MTC@toc Check if the list is empty:
\MTC@list
\MTC@explist 933 \def\MTC@toc{%
 934 \ifx\MTC@list@empty\else\expandafter\MTC@explist\fi
 935 }

```

<sup>6</sup> This code is derived from the `xr` package [78], by David CARLISLE, with his permission. The strings “HO”, “DV”, and “BJ” in the comments denote modifications made by Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA, and Bernd JAEHNE for the support of `hyperref`, essentially by adding an argument to some macros, to use the `hyperlink` argument in the contents lines.

```

\MTC@contentsline The macro \MTC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file and detects
\arabic interesting keywords. If \chapter is found, the mtc counter (which simulates the chapter
\chapter counter, but is absolute) is incremented and a new minitoc file is created.
\themtc
\tf@mtc 936 \def\MTC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0/BJ: 4 instead of 3 parameters
937 \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}% %%H0: space removed
938 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter
939 \stepcounter{mtc}%

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then
\themtc open it (after closing the file descriptor):
\mtcname
\tf@mtc 940 \if@longextensions@%
\closeout 941 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
\openout 942 {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
943 \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
944 \else
945 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
946 {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
947 \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
948 \fi
949 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
950 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
951 \fi

\mtc@toks Now, we filter the relevant contents lines, the token register \mtc@toks is used as a
verbatim memory.

952 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%

\MTC@WriteContentsline Each interesting contents line is copied, with a font command added before it. We begin
\section with the standard sectionning commands, below \chapter:
\subsection
\subsubsection 953 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
\paragraph 954 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcS}{#3}{#4}%
\subparagraph 955 \fi
956 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
957 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSS}{#3}{#4}%
958 \fi
959 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
960 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
961 \fi
962 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
963 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcP}{#3}{#4}%
964 \fi
965 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
966 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSP}{#3}{#4}%
967 \fi

```

```

\coffee A coffee break contents line ☕ is written for \coffee:
\MTC@WriteCoffeeline
968 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
969 \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
970 \fi

\starchapter If it is \starchapter (for a starred chapter), we increment the mtc counter, build a new
\stepcounter minitoc file name, close the file descriptor and open it with this new file.
\if@longextensions@
\mtcname 971 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starchapter
\themtc 972 \stepcounter{mtc}%
\tf@mtc 973 \if@longextensions@
\closeout 974 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
\openout 975 {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc@gobble}%
976 \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
977 \else
978 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
979 {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc@gobble}%
980 \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
981 \fi
982 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
983 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
984 \fi

\starsection For starred sectionning commands lower than \chapter, a contents line is written into
\MTC@WriteContentsline the minitoc file, with a font command added:
\starsubsection
\starsubsubsection 985 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
\starparagraph 986 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcS}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubparagraph 987 \fi
988 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
989 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSS}{#3}{#4}%
990 \fi
991 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
992 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
993 \fi
994 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
995 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcP}{#3}{#4}%
996 \fi
997 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
998 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSP}{#3}{#4}%
999 \fi
1000 }

\MTC@explist The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; it expands the list of entries and call \MTC@next
\MTC@next to process the first one:
\MTC@list
1001 \def\MTC@explist{\expandafter\MTC@next\MTC@list\}

```

```

\MTC@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
\openin process the next entry in the list.
\@inputcheck
\MTC@toc 1002 \def\MTC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
\MTC@read 1003 \ifeof\@inputcheck
1004 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0010>]{minitoc}%
1005 {No file #1.\MessageBreak MINITOCs NOT PREPARED}%
1006 \expandafter\MTC@toc
1007 \else
1008 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0024>]{minitoc}{PREPARING MINITOCs FROM #1}%
1009 \expandafter\MTC@read
1010 \fi
1011 }

```

```

\MTC@read Read the next entry of the .toc file.
\read
\@inputcheck 1012 \def\MTC@read{%
\MTC@line 1013 \read\@inputcheck to\MTC@line

```

```

\MTC@test The make sure that \MTC@test has sufficient arguments:
\MTC@line
\MTC@ 1014 \expandafter\MTC@test\MTC@line.....\MTC% %%H0: . added
1015 }%

```

```

\MTC@test The \MTC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to
\contentsline delimit chapters:
\MTC@contentsline
\mtc@string 1016 %%H0/BJ: now patch \MTC@test,
\@input 1017 %%H0/BJ: call \MTC@contentsline with 4 instead of 3 parameters
\MTC@list
\chapterend Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input,
\closeout add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally
\tf@mtc process the next file in the list.
\openout
\chapterbegin 1018 \long\def\MTC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MTC@{% %%H0: #6 added
\addtocounter 1019 \ifx#1\contentsline
\MTC@toc 1020 \let\mtc@string\string
\MTC@read 1021 \MTC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
1022 %%H0/BJ: 4. parameter added by Tony Roberts
1023 \let\mtc@string\relax
1024 \else\ifx#1\@input
1025 \edef\MTC@list{\MTC@list#2\relax}%
1026 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
1027 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1028 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
1029 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
1030 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%

```

```

1031 \fi\fi\fi\fi
1032 \ifeof\@inputcheck
1033 \expandafter\MTC@toc
1034 \else
1035 \expandafter\MTC@read
1036 \fi
1037 }%

```

## 8.41 Mini-lists of figures

The code is similar to the code for mini-tables of contents, but with less commands to recognize.

### 8.41.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file

`\MLF@next` This is done via a loop managed by the following macros:

`\MLF@list`

`\MLF@loop` Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:

```

1038 \def\MLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
1039 \edef\MLF@list{#2}%
1040 \MLF@loop{#1}}

```

`\MLF@lof` Checks if the list is empty:

`\MLF@list`

```

\MLF@explist 1041 \def\MLF@lof{%
1042 \ifx\MLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MLF@explist\fi}

```

`\MLF@contentsline` The macro `\MLF@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOF file and detects interesting keywords. If `\xchapter` is found, the counter `mtc` is incremented and a new `minilof` file is created.

`\arabic`

`\xchapter`

```

1043 \def\MLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: added #4
1044 \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}} %%H0: space removed
1045 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xchapter
1046 \stepcounter{mtc}%

```

`\if@longextensions@` The name of the minilof file is built from `\jobname` and a long or short extension:

```

\themtc
\mlfname 1047 \if@longextensions@%
\closeout 1048 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
\tf@mtc 1049 {Writing\space\jobname.mlf\themtc@gobble}
\openout 1050 \def\mlfname{\jobname.mlf\themtc}%
1051 \else
1052 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1053 {Writing\space\jobname.F\themtc@gobble}
1054 \def\mlfname{\jobname.F\themtc}%
1055 \fi
1056 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1057 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mlfname
1058 \fi

```

`\figure` If we found a `\figure` entry, we copy it into the minilof file:

```

\subfigure
\mtc@toks 1059 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
\MTC@WriteContentsline 1060 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
1061 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlf}{#3}{#4}%
1062 \fi
1063 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
1064 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
1065 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlfS}{#3}{#4}%
1066 \fi
1067 }

```

`\MLF@explist` The loop to read the LOF file; it expands the list of entries and calls `\MLF@next` to process the first one:

```

\MLF@list
1068 \def\MLF@explist{\expandafter\MLF@next\MLF@list\}

```

`\MLF@loop` And now, we scan the `.lof` file:

```

\openin
\@inputcheck 1069 \def\MLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
\MLF@lof 1070 \ifeof\@inputcheck
\MLF@read 1071 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0008>]{minitoc}%
1072 {No file #1.\MessageBreak MINILOFS NOT PREPARED}%
1073 \expandafter\MLF@lof
1074 \else
1075 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0034>]{minitoc}%
1076 {PREPARING MINILOFS FROM #1}%
1077 \expandafter\MLF@read\fi}

```

```

\MLF@read Read the next entry in the .lof file:
\read
\@inputcheck 1078 \def\MLF@read{%
1079 \read\@inputcheck to\MLF@line

```

```

\MLF@line The make sure that \MLF@test has sufficient arguments:
\MLF@test
\MLF@ 1080 \expandafter\MLF@test\MLF@line. . . . \MLF@% %%H0: . added
1081 }%

```

\MLF@test The \MLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit chapters.

```

\contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input,
\mtc@string add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally
\MLF@contentsline process the next file in the list.
\@input
\MLF@list 1082 \long\def\MLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MLF@{% %%H0: #6 added
\chapterend 1083 \ifx#1\contentsline
\closeout 1084 \let\mtc@string\string
\tf@mtc 1085 \MLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
\openout 1086 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapterbegin 1087 \else\ifx#1\@input
\addtocounter 1088 \edef\MLF@list{\MLF@list#2\relax}%
\MLF@lof 1089 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
\MLF@read 1090 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1091 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
1092 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
1093 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
1094 \fi\fi\fi\fi
1095 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\MLF@lof
1096 \else\expandafter\MLF@read\fi}%

```

## 8.42 Mini-lists of tables

The code is similar to the code for mini-tables of contents, but with less commands to recognize.



**8.42.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file**

`\MLT@next` This is done via a loop managed by the following macros:

`\MLT@list`

`\MLT@loop` Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:

```
1097 \def\MLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
1098 \edef\MLT@list{#2}%
1099 \MLT@loop{#1}}
```

`\MLT@lot` Checks if the list is empty:

`\MLT@list`

```
\MLT@explist 1100 \def\MLT@lot{%
1101 \ifx\MLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MLT@explist\fi}
```

`\MLT@contentsline` The macro `\MLT@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOT file and detects interesting keywords. If `\xchapter` is found, the mtc counter is incremented and a new minilot file is created.

```
1102 \def\MLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: added #4
1103 \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}} %%H0: space removed
1104 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xchapter
1105 \stepcounter{mtc}%
```

`\if@longextensions@` The name of the minilot file it build from `\jobname` and a long or short extension:

```
\themtc
\mltname 1106 \if@longextensions@
\closeout 1107 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
\tf@mtc 1108 {Writing\space\jobname.mlt\themtc\@gobble}%
\openout 1109 \def\mltname{\jobname.mlt\themtc}%
1110 \else
1111 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1112 {Writing\space\jobname.T\themtc\@gobble}%
1113 \def\mltname{\jobname.T\themtc}%
1114 \fi
1115 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1116 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mltname
1117 \fi
```

`\table` If we found a `\table` entry, we copy it into the minilot file:

`\subtable`

`\mtc@toks` 1118 `\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table`

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` 1119 `\mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%`

1120 `\MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{\mlt}{#3}{#4}%`

1121 `\fi`

```

1122 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
1123 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
1124 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mltS}{#3}{#4}%
1125 \fi
1126 }

```

\MLT@explist The loop to read the LOT file; it expands the list of entries and calls \MLT@next to process the first one:  
 \MLT@list

```

1127 \def\MLT@explist{\expandafter\MLT@next\MLT@list\}

```

\MLT@loop And now, we scan the .lot file:  
 \openin  
 \@inputcheck 1128 \def\MLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax  
 \MLT@lot 1129 \ifeof\@inputcheck  
 \MLT@read 1130 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0009>]{minitoc}%  
 1131 {No file #1.\MessageBreak MINILOTS NOT PREPARED}%  
 1132 \expandafter\MLT@lot  
 1133 \else  
 1134 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0037>]{minitoc}%  
 1135 {PREPARING MINILOTS FROM #1}%  
 1136 \expandafter\MLT@read\fi}

\MLT@read Read the next entry in the .lot file:  
 \read  
 \@inputcheck 1137 \def\MLT@read{%  
 1138 \read\@inputcheck to\MLT@line

\MLT@line The ..... make sure that \MLT@test has sufficient arguments:  
 \MLT@test  
 \MLT@ 1139 \expandafter\MLT@test\MLT@line.....\MLT@% %%H0: . added  
 1140 }%

\MLT@test The \MLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit chapters.

```

\contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input,
\mtc@string add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally
\MLT@contentsline process the next file in the list.
\@input
\MLT@list 1141 \long\def\MLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MLT@{% %%H0: #6 added
\chapterend 1142 \ifx#1\contentsline
\closeout 1143 \let\mtc@string\string
\tf@mtc 1144 \MLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
\openout 1145 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapterbegin 1146 \else\ifx#1\@input
\addtocounter 1147 \edef\MLT@list{\MLT@list#2\relax}%
\MLT@lot 1148 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
\MLT@read 1149 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1150 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
1151 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
1152 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
1153 \fi\fi\fi\fi
1154 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\MLT@lot
1155 \else\expandafter\MLT@read\fi}%

```

Note that we terminate with a closing brace to end the chapter-level macros (end of the *else* branch of a `\@ifundefined{chapter}` alternative).

```
1156 }%
```

### 8.43 Macro to write a contents line

```

\mtc@dot The \MTC@WriteContentsline macro makes the definition of \MTC@contentsline
\MTC@WriteContentsline shorter. An extra \edef level is removed (Heiko OBERDIEK):
\mtc@param
\write The arguments of \MTC@WriteContentsline are:
\tf@mtc
\@resetfont
\mtc@string #1: the #1 argument of \MTC@contentsline;
\contentsline #2: font shorthand =: \csname #2font\endcsname;
\mtc@toks #3: the #3 argument of \MTC@contentsline;
#4: the #4 argument of \MTC@contentsline (hyperlink).

```

```

1157 \def\mtc@dot{.}
1158 \def\MTC@WriteContentsline#1#2#3#4{%
1159 \def\mtc@param{#4}%
1160 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{%
1161 {\string\resetfont
1162 \expandafter\string\csname #2font\endcsname
1163 \string\mtc@string
1164 \string\contentsline{#1}%

```

```

1165 {\the\mtc@toks}%
1166 {\string\reset@font
1167 \expandafter\string\csname #2font\endcsname
1168 \space #3%
1169 }%
1170 \ifx\mtc@dot\mtc@param
1171 \else
1172 {#4}% %%H0/BJ: #4 is hyperlink
1173 \fi
1174 }%
1175 }%
1176 }

```

`\MTC@WriteCoffeeline` And the same for a “coffee” ☕ line. The arguments of the macro `\MTC@WriteCoffeeline` are:

```

\write
\tf@mtc
\@resetfont #1: the #1 argument of \MTC@contentsline;
\coffeeefont
\mtc@string #2: the #3 argument of \MTC@contentsline.
\mtc@toks

```

```

1177 \def\MTC@WriteCoffeeline#1#2#3{%
1178 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{%
1179 {\string\reset@font
1180 \string\coffeeefont
1181 \string\mtc@string
1182 %% COFFEE \string\textbf{#1}%
1183 {\the\mtc@toks}%
1184 {\string\reset@font
1185 \string\coffeeefont
1186 \space #3%
1187 }%
1188 }%
1189 }%
1190 }

```

## 8.44 Depth counters for partlofs and partlots

`\AtBeginDocument` If the counters `lofdepth` and `lotdepth` are defined, we create the corresponding new counters: `partlofdepth` and `partlotdepth`. These counters are initialised to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an `\AtBeginDocument` block:

```

\c@lofdepth
\c@lotdepth
1191 \AtBeginDocument{%
1192 \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
1193 {\newcounter{partlofdepth}\setcounter{partlofdepth}{2}}%
1194 \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
1195 {\newcounter{partlotdepth}\setcounter{partlotdepth}{2}}%
1196 }

```

## 8.45 Part level commands

```

\part If \part is defined, we define some utility commands, a counter (ptc) for the
\theptc parttocs and related commands (\theptc, \Thepart, \adjustptc, \decrementptc,
\Thepart \incrementptc), the obsolete command \firstpartis, and the depth counter
\adjustptc parttocdepth.
\decrementptc
\incrementptc 1197 \@ifundefined{part}{}%
\firstpartis 1198 {}%
\firstpartis 1199 \def\part{part}
\if@firstpartis@used@ 1200 \def\Thepart{\arabic{ptc}}
\newcounter 1201 \def\firstpartis#1%
\setcounter 1202 {\mtcPackageWarning[<W0004>]{minitoc}%
1203 {\string\firstpartis \space is an obsolete\MessageBreak command}%
1204 \@firstpartis@used@true}
1205 \newcounter{ptc}
1206 \setcounter{ptc}{0}
1207 \newcommand{\adjustptc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{ptc}{#1}}
1208 \def\decrementptc{\addtocounter{ptc}{-1}}
1209 \def\incrementptc{\addtocounter{ptc}{+1}}
1210 \def\theptc{\arabic{ptc}}
1211 \newcounter{parttocdepth}
1212 \setcounter{parttocdepth}{2}

```

\ptc@rule But, sometimes, we need to make a difference between book/report and article classes (is \columnwidth \chapter defined?), to have a different layout: the definition of \ptc@rule is empty except if \chapter is undefined. By default, there is no rule before/after parttocs, partlofs, and partlots for books. You should redeclare \ptc@rule if you want these rules.

```

1213 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
1214 {\def\ptc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}}%
1215 {\let\ptc@rule\relax}

```

\ptcindent And we declare the default indentation (both sides) of the parttocs:

```

1216 \newlength\ptcindent
1217 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\ptcindent=24\p@}{\ptcindent=\z@}

```

## 8.46 Fonts for the parttocs

```

\ptcfont
\ptcSfont
\ptcSSfont
\ptcSSSfont We define the fonts for the parttocs. Note that they are larger if \chapter is defined
\ptcPfont (book/report-like document classes) than when it is not (article-like document
\ptcSPfont classes):
\plffont
\plfSfont
\pltfont
\pltSfont
\ptifont

```

```

1218 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
1219 \def\ptcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % the parttoc
1220 \def\ptcSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% (sections)
1221 \let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont % (subsections)
1222 \let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont % (subsubsections)
1223 \let\ptcPfont\ptcfont % (paragraphs)
1224 \let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont % (subparagraphs)
1225 \let\plffont\ptcfont % (figures)
1226 \let\plfSfont\ptcfont % (subfigures)
1227 \let\pltfont\ptcfont % (tables)
1228 \let\pltSfont\ptcfont % (subtables)
1229 \def\ptifont{\Large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% titles
1230 }%

\ptcfont If \chapter is defined, the fonts are larger and \ptcCfont must be defined:
\ptcCfont
\ptcSfont 1231 {%
\ptcSSfont 1232 \def\ptcfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % the parttoc
\ptcSSSfont 1233 \def\ptcCfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% (chapters)
\ptcPfont 1234 \def\ptcSfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}% (sections)
\ptcSPfont 1235 \let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont % (subsections)
\plffont 1236 \let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont % (subsubsections)
\plfSfont 1237 \let\ptcPfont\ptcfont % (paragraphs)
\pltfont 1238 \let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont % (subparagraphs)
\pltSfont 1239 \let\plffont\ptcfont % (figures)
\ptifont 1240 \let\plfSfont\ptcfont % (subfigures)
1241 \let\pltfont\ptcfont % (tables)
1242 \let\pltSfont\ptcfont % (subtables)
1243 \def\ptifont{\LARGE\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% titles
1244 }

```

## 8.47 Default titles for part-level mini-tables

\parttoc We define the default position, the fonts and the layout for titles of the part-level mini-  
\partlof tables (\parttoc, \partlof and \partlot). This formatting is different if \chapter is  
\partlot defined or undefined.

```

\c@pti If \chapter is undefined, the definitions are very simple, for centered, flushleft,
\l@pti flushright or empty titles. Empty titles need a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).
\r@pti
\c@pti 1245 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\l@pti 1246 \def\c@pti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\hfill\hfill}
\r@pti 1247 \def\l@pti#1{\null #1\hfill\hfill\hfill}
\c@pti 1248 \def\r@pti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\hfill}
\l@pti 1249 \def\c@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
\r@pti 1250 \def\l@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
\c@pti 1251 }%

```

`\e@pti` But, if `\chapter` is defined, we must simulate the formatting of a chapter head, which is  
`\n@pti` more complex. Empty titles need a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).

```
1252 {%
1253 \def\e@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
1254 \def\n@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
```

`\l@pti` For a title on the left, we must test if the main text is on two columns:

```
\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 1255 \def\l@pti#1{\if@twocolumn
\@afterheading 1256 \@topnewpage[\@makephead@l{#1}]%
\ptifont 1257 \else
\@makephead@l 1258 \@makephead@l{#1}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 1259 \@afterheading
\mtcgapafterheads 1260 \fi}
1261 \def\@makephead@l#1{%
1262 \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
1263 {\parindent \z@ \raggedright
1264 \ptifont
1265 #1\par
1266 \nobreak
1267 \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}}
1268 }}
```

`\r@pti` For a title on the right, we must also test if the main text is on two columns:

```
\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 1269 \def\r@pti#1{\if@twocolumn
\@makephead@r 1270 \@topnewpage[\@makephead@r{#1}]%
\@afterheading 1271 \else
\ptifont 1272 \@makephead@r{#1}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 1273 \@afterheading
\mtcgapafterheads 1274 \fi}
1275 \def\@makephead@r#1{%
1276 \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
1277 {\parindent \z@ \raggedleft
1278 \ptifont
1279 #1\par
1280 \nobreak
1281 \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}}
1282 }}
```

`\c@pti` For a centered title, we must also test if the main text is on two columns:

```
\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 1283 \def\c@pti#1{\if@twocolumn
\@makephead@c 1284 \@topnewpage[\@makephead@c{#1}]%
\@afterheading 1285 \else
\ptifont 1286 \@makephead@c{#1}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 1287 \@afterheading
\mtcgapafterheads
```

```

1288 \fi}
1289 \def\@makephead@c#1{%
1290 \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
1291 {\parindent \z@ \centering
1292 \ptifont
1293 #1\par
1294 \nobreak
1295 \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}}
1296 }}%
1297 }

```

```

\l@pti By default, titles are on left:
\do@ptitc
\df@ptitc 1298 \let\do@ptitc\l@pti
\do@ptilf 1299 \let\df@ptitc\l@pti
\df@ptilf 1300 \let\do@ptilf\l@pti
\do@ptilt 1301 \let\df@ptilf\l@pti
\df@ptilt 1302 \let\do@ptilt\l@pti
1303 \let\df@ptilt\l@pti

```

## 8.48 The ptc@verse environment

```

ptc@verse Each parttoc is placed inside a ptc@verse environment. This environment is analog to
\ptc@verse the standard verse environment and hence defined via two commands: \ptc@verse and
\endptc@verse \endptc@verse. As it is a list environment, we first define (in a local way) \, then call
\, \list{} and set some dimensions like \itemsep, \itemindent, \listparindent,
\@centercr \itemindent, \partopsep, \topsep. \parsep is set to zero if the tight option is
\list active (this reduces the spacing between the lines). \parskip is set to zero if the k-tight
\itemsep option is active (this reduces the spacing between the lines). Both margins are set to
\itemindent \ptcindent. \endptc@verse terminates the list and discourages a page break.
\listparindent
\topsep 1304 \def\ptc@verse{\let\=\@centercr
\parsep 1305 \list{}\itemsep\z@
\parskip 1306 \itemindent \z@
\partopsep 1307 \listparindent \itemindent
\ptcindent 1308 \partopsep\z@
\iftightmtc 1309 \iftightmtc \parsep\z@ \fi
\ifktightmtc 1310 \ifktightmtc \parskip\z@ \fi
1311 \topsep=lex
1312 \leftmargin\ptcindent
1313 \rightmargin\leftmargin\item[]}
1314 \def\endptc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```



## 8.49 The part level mini-tables: `\parttoc`, `\partlof`, and `\partlot`

`\parttoc` These commands are essentially similar to the `\minitoc` command, except that they  
`\partlof` should be placed after a `\part` command to produce a `parttoc`, a `partlof` or a `partlot`,  
`\partlot` and the formatting is different and depends of the availability of the `\chapter`  
command (for the fonts and the horizontal rules). The code is very similar. The  
`\partlof` and `\partlot` commands are siblings of the `\parttoc` command. Note  
that `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` use page styles, because `\beforepart...`  
and `\afterpart...` commands imply usually a `\clear[double]page` command,  
and hence `\markboth{...}{...}` must be called.

### 8.49.1 The `\parttoc` command

`\parttoc` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a `parttoc` (no automatic `parttoc`).  
`\parttoc@` First, `\parttoc` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default  
value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\parttoc@` is called with the effective position as  
argument:

```
1315 \def\parttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\parttoc@}{\parttoc@d}}
```

`\parttoc@` The `\parttoc@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@parttoc@used@` (for  
`\if@parttoc@used@` a coherence hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the  
`\if@longextensions@` `parttoc` file):

```
\@tocfile
\Thepart 1316 \def\parttoc@[#1]{%
1317 \global\@parttoc@used@true
1318 \if@longextensions@%
1319 \def\@tocfile{ptc\Thepart}%
1320 \else
1321 \def\@tocfile{P\Thepart}%
1322 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the `parttoc` file and give a warning if it is not here:

```
\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile 1323 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
1324 \if@mtc@FE
1325 \mtc@PackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
1326 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
1327 \@mtc@empty@parttoc@true
1328 \else
```

`\beforeparttoc` If the parttoc file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforeparttoc`, of course:

```
1329 \beforeparttoc
```

```

\mtc@markboth If \chapter is defined, we just set the page marks with the parttoc title and set the page
\@mkboth style:
\thispageparttocstyle
\MakeUppercase 1330 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{}%
\ptctitle 1331 \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
 1332 \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
 1333 \thispageparttocstyle
 1334 \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\ptctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\ptctitle}}%
 1335 }%
```

```

\do@ptitc A samepage environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the
\@pti parttoc title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positionning.
\@npti
\@c@pti 1336 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\@l@pti 1337 \if #1e\let\do@ptitc\@pti
\@r@pti 1338 \else\if #1n\let\do@ptitc\@npti
\@df@pti 1339 \else\if #1c\let\do@ptitc\@c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 1340 \else\if #1l\let\do@ptitc\@l@pti
\ptctitle 1341 \else\if #1r\let\do@ptitc\@r@pti
\if@mtc@FE 1342 \else\if #1d\let\do@ptitc\@df@ptitc
samepage 1343 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
 1344 \mtc@CkStr{\ptctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptitc\@pti\relax\fi
```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the parttoc, then we set the font:

`\parskip`

`\ptcfont`

```

1345 \raggedright
1346 \parskip=\z@%
1347 \reset@font\ptcfont%
1348 \parindent=\z@%
1349 \nopagebreak[4]%
1350 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
1351 \par\noindent
1352 \nopagebreak[4]%
```

`\ptc@rule` The parttoc title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the parttoc.

`\columnwidth`

`\ptifont`

```

\do@ptitc 1353 \ifx\ptc@rule\relax
\mtc@v
\ptctitle
\hline
```

```

1354 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
1355 \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptitc{\mtc@v\ptctitle}\\
1356 \end{tabular}%
1357 \else
1358 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
1359 \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptitc{\mtc@v\ptctitle}\\\hline
1360 \end{tabular}%
1361 \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some  
`\mtc@BBR` formatting parameters:

`\ptcindent`

```

1362 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
1363 \leftmargin\ptcindent
1364 \rightmargin\ptcindent
1365 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
1366 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

`ptc@verse` We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the parttoc. The toc depth is forced  
`\c@tocdepth` (locally) to `parttocdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position. A blank line  
`\c@parttocdepth` is necessary to avoid a negative indentation.

`\mtc@BBR`

```

1367 \begin{ptc@verse}\c@tocdepth=\c@parttocdepth%
1368 \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR
1369 \vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\ptc@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline`  
`\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. For chapter-level entries, we must invoke `\l@chapter` ignoring  
`\@undottedtocline` the page number argument. A hook (redefinissable command) is added, and the format-  
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` ting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\ptc@setform`. Then the  
`\ptc@setform` parttoc file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `ptc@verse` environment is terminated.

`\@tocfile`

`\mtc@strut` 1370 `\begingroup`

`ptc@verse` 1371 `\makeatletter`

```

1372 \ifundefined{ptc@pgno}%
1373 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{%
1374 \ifundefined{ptc@pgno}%
1375 {\let\l@chapter@SVPN\l@chapter%
1376 \def\l@chapter##1##2{\l@chapter@SVPN{##1}{\hbox{}}}}}%
1377 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
1378 \ptc@setform
1379 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
1380 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
1381 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
1382 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
1383 \end{ptc@verse}%

```

`\ptc@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if  
`\mtc@zrule` `\chapter` is not defined), and `\afterparttoc`.  
`samepage`  
`\afterparttoc` 1384 `\kern-1.\baselineskip%`  
1385 `\nopagebreak[4]\ptc@rule\null\leavevmode\\%`  
1386 `\vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%`  
1387 `\par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%`  
1388 `\afterparttoc\fi%`

### 8.49.2 The `\partlof` command

`\partlof` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a `partlof` (no automatic `partlof`). First, `\partlof` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\partlof@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```
1389 \def\partlof{\@ifnextchar[{\partlof@}{\partlof@d}}
```

`\partlof@` The `\partlof@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@partlof@used@` (for  
`\if@partlof@used@` a coherence hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the  
`\if@longextensions@` `partlof` file):  
`\@tocfile`  
`\Thepart` 1390 `\def\partlof@[#1]{%`  
1391 `\global\@partlof@used@true`  
1392 `\if@longextensions@%`  
1393 `\def\@tocfile{plf\Thepart}%`  
1394 `\else`  
1395 `\def\@tocfile{G\Thepart}%`  
1396 `\fi`

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the `partlof` file and give a warning if it is not here:

```
\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile 1397 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
1398 \if@mtc@FE
1399 \mtc@PackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
1400 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
1401 \@mtc@empty@partlof@true
1402 \else
```

`\beforepartlof` If the `partlof` file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforepartlof`, of course:

```
1403 \beforepartlof
```

```

\mtc@markboth If \chapter is defined, we just set the page marks with the partlof title and set the page
\@mkboth style:
\thispagepartlofsty
\MakeUppercase 1404 \ifundefined{chapter}{\%
\plftitle 1405 \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
1406 \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
1407 \thispagepartlofsty
1408 \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\plftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\plftitle}}%
1409 }%

\do@ptilf A samepage environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the
\@pti partlof title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positionning.
\n@pti
\c@pti 1410 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\l@pti 1411 \if #1e\let\do@ptilf\@pti
\r@pti 1412 \else\if #1n\let\do@ptilf\n@pti
\df@pti 1413 \else\if #1c\let\do@ptilf\c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 1414 \else\if #1l\let\do@ptilf\l@pti
\plftitle 1415 \else\if #1r\let\do@ptilf\r@pti
\if@mtc@FE 1416 \else\if #1d\let\do@ptilf\df@ptilf
1417 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
samepage 1418 \mtc@CkStr{\plftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptilf\@pti\relax\fi

\raggedright We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the
\parskip parttoc, then we set the font:
\plffont
1419 \raggedright
1420 \parskip=\z@%
1421 \reset@font\plffont%

\plf@rule The parttoc title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title
tabular and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an \hline. It is the
\columnwidth top rule of the partlof.
\ptifont
\do@ptilf 1422 \parindent=\z@%
\mtc@v 1423 \noprogrambreak[4]%
\plftitle 1424 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\noprogrambreak[4]%
\hline 1425 \par\noindent
1426 \ifx\plf@rule\relax
1427 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
1428 \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilf{\mtc@v\plftitle}\\
1429 \end{tabular}%
1430 \else
1431 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
1432 \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilf{\mtc@v\plftitle}\\ \hline
1433 \mtc@hstrut\\
1434 \end{tabular}%
1435 \fi

```

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some  
 \mtc@BBR formatting parameters:  
 \ptcindent

```

1436 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
1437 \leftmargin\ptcindent
1438 \rightmargin\ptcindent
1439 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
1440 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
```

ptc@verse We enter in a ptc@verse environment to format the partlof. If necessary, the toc depth  
 \mtc@BBR is forced (locally) to partlofdepth. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position. A  
 blank line is necessary to avoid a negative indentation.

```

1441 \begin{ptc@verse}%
1442 \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}{\c@tocdepth=\c@partlofdepth}
1443 \ifnum\c@tocdepth<1\relax\c@tocdepth=1\fi
1444 \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR
1445 \vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

\plf@pgno If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline  
 \@dottedtocline with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from  
 \@undottedtocline \mtcsetformat are activated via \plf@setform. Then the partlof file is inserted,  
 \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile followed by a strut, and the ptc@verse environment is terminated.

```

\plf@setform
\@tocfile 1446 \begin{group}
\mtc@strut 1447 \makeatletter
ptc@verse 1448 \@ifundefined{plf@pgno}%
1449 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
1450 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
1451 \plf@setform
1452 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
1453 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-0\baselineskip}
1454 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
1455 \global\@nbreakfalse\end{group}
1456 \end{ptc@verse}%
```

\plf@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if  
 \mtc@zrule \chapter is not defined), and \afterpartlof. The blank line (\\) is essential.  
 samepage

```

\afterpartlof 1457 \kern-1.\baselineskip%
1458 \nopagebreak[4]\plf@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
1459 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
1460 \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
1461 \afterpartlof\fi}
```

### 8.49.3 The `\partlot` command

`\partlot` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a partlot (no automatic partlot). First, `\partlot@` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\partlot@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```
1462 \def\partlot{\ifnextchar{\\partlot@}\partlot@d}}
```

`\partlot@` The `\partlot@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@partlot@used@` (for a coherence hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the partlot file):

```
\@tocfile
\Thepart 1463 %
1464 \def\partlot@[#1]{%
1465 \global\@partlot@used@true
1466 \if@longextensions@%
1467 \def\@tocfile{plt\Thepart}%
1468 \else
1469 \def\@tocfile{U\Thepart}%
1470 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the partlot file and give a warning if it is not here:

```
\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile 1471 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
1472 \if@mtc@FE
1473 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
1474 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
1475 \@mtc@empty@partlot@true
1476 \else
```

`\beforepartlot` If the partlot file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforepartlot`, of course:

```
1477 \beforepartlot
```

`\mtc@markboth` If `\chapter` is defined, we just set the page marks with the partlot title and set the page style:

```
\@mkboth
\thispagepartlotstyle
\MakeUppercase 1478 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{%
\plttitle 1479 \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
1480 \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
1481 \thispagepartlotstyle
1482 \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\plttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\plttitle}}%
1483 }%
```

```

\do@ptilt A samepage environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the
\e@pti partlof title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positionning.
\n@pti
\c@pti 1484 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\l@pti 1485 \if #1e\let\do@ptilt\e@pti
\r@pti 1486 \else\if #1n\let\do@ptilt\n@pti
\df@pti 1487 \else\if #1c\let\do@ptilt\c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 1488 \else\if #1l\let\do@ptilt\l@pti
\plttitle 1489 \else\if #1r\let\do@ptilt\r@pti
\if@mtc@FE 1490 \else\if #1d\let\do@ptilt\df@ptilt
samepage 1491 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
1492 \mtc@CkStr{\plttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptilt\e@pti\relax\fi

\raggedright We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the
\parskip partlot, then we set the font:
\pltfont
1493 \raggedright
1494 \parskip=\z@%
1495 \reset@font\pltfont%
1496 \parindent=\z@%
1497 \nopagebreak[4]%
1498 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
1499 \par\noindent

\plt@rule The partlot title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title
tabular and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an \hline. It is the
\columnwidth top rule of the partlot.
\ptifont
\do@ptilt 1500 \ifx\plt@rule\relax
\mtc@v 1501 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\plttitle 1502 \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilt{\mtc@v\plttitle}\\
\hline 1503 \end{tabular}%
1504 \else
1505 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
1506 \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilt{\mtc@v\plttitle}\\ \hline
1507 \mtc@hstrut\\
1508 \end{tabular}%
1509 \fi

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some
\mtc@BBR formatting parameters:
\ptcindent
1510 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
1511 \leftmargin\ptcindent
1512 \rightmargin\ptcindent
1513 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
1514 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
```



`ptc@verse` We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the parttoc. If necessary, the toc depth  
`\mtc@BBR` is forced (locally) to `partlotdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

```

1515 \begin{ptc@verse}%
1516 \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}{\c@tocdepth=\c@partlotdepth}
1517 \ifnum\c@tocdepth<1\relax\c@tocdepth=1\fi
1518 \leavevmode\\mtc@BBR
1519 \vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\plt@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline`  
`\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from  
`\@undottedtocline` `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\plt@setform`. Then the partlot file is inserted,  
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` followed by a strut, and the `ptc@verse` environment is terminated.

```

\plt@setform
\@tocfile 1520 \beginngroup
\mtc@strut 1521 \makeatletter
ptc@verse 1522 \@ifundefined{plt@pgno}%
1523 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
1524 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
1525 \plt@setform
1526 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
1527 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-0\baselineskip}
1528 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
1529 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
1530 \end{ptc@verse}%

```

`\ptc@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if  
`\mtc@zrule` `\chapter` is not defined), and `\afterpartlot`. The blank line (\\) is essential.  
`samepage`  
`\afterpartlot` 1531 \kern-1.\baselineskip%  
1532 \nopagebreak[4]\plt@rule\null\leavevmode\\%  
1533 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%  
1534 \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace\*{-1ex}}%  
1535 \afterpartlot\fi}

## 8.50 Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs

`\@dottedtocline` The following auxiliary commands are used in the printing of parttocs. Note that  
`\l@xpart` `\l@xpart` uses a huge depth to inhibit the printing of its contents line (except if you  
`\l@pchapter` cheat). These command are similar to `\l@section`, only the arguments have been  
`\l@psect` altered:  
`\pchapter`  
`\psect` 1536 \def\l@xpart{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}  
1537 \def\l@pchapter{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.0em}{2.3em}}  
1538 \def\l@psect{\@dottedtocline{2}{1.0em}{2.3em}}

```

1539 \def\pchapter{pchapter}
1540 \def\psect{psect}

```

## 8.51 Patching the \part command, continued

```

\sv@part We patch both branches of the \part command: \@part (unstarred \part) and \@spart
\mtc@svpart (\part*). We add the incrementation of the ptc counter to both branches. In the
\part unstarred branch, we add xpart entries in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT. In the starred
\addtocontents branch, we add a \partbegin line in the TOC. This command is just a marker and does
\sv@spart nothing real (\relax).
\ptc@spart
\@spart 1541 \let\sv@part\mtc@svpart
\stepcounter 1542 \def\@part[#1]#2{\sv@part[#1]#2}\relax
\partbegin 1543 \addcontentsline{lof}{xpart}{#1}%
\partend 1544 \addcontentsline{lot}{xpart}{#1}%
1545 \addcontentsline{toc}{xpart}{#1}%
1546 \stepcounter{ptc}}
1547 \let\sv@spart\@spart
1548 \def\@spart{\stepcounter{ptc}\sv@spart}
1549 \let\ptc@spart\@spart
1550 \def\@spart{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partend}\ptc@spart}
1551 \def\@spart{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin}\ptc@spart}
1552 \let\partend\relax
1553 \let\partbegin\relax

```

## 8.52 The \doparttoc command and its siblings

```

\doparttoc The \doparttoc command works like the \dominitoc command, \dopartlof like
\dopartlof \dominilof and \dopartlot like \dominilot.
\dopartlot

```

```

\@doparttoc The \doparttoc command extracts information from the .toc file and creates the
\PTC@next .ptc(N) files (.ptc becomes .P on MS-DOS).
\setcounter
1554 \def\@doparttoc#1{%
1555 \makeatletter
1556 \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
1557 \PTC@next#1.toc\relax\\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%

```

```

\@dopartlof The \dopartlof command extracts information from the .lof file and creates the
\PLF@next .plf(N) files (.plf becomes .G on MS-DOS).
\setcounter

```

```

1558 \def\@dopartlof#1{%
1559 \makeatletter
1560 \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
1561 \PLF@next#1.lof\relax\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%

```

\@dopartlot The \@dopartlot command extracts information from the .lot file and creates the  
 \PLT@next .plt(N) files (.plt becomes .U on MS-DOS).  
 \setcounter

```

1562 \def\@dopartlot#1{%
1563 \makeatletter
1564 \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
1565 \PLT@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%

```

\doparttoc We define the user macros, who detect the optional argument:

\dopartlof

```

\dopartlot 1566 \def\doparttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\doparttoc@}{\doparttoc@[1]}}
1567 \def\dopartlof{\@ifnextchar[{\dopartlof@}{\dopartlof@[1]}}
1568 \def\dopartlot{\@ifnextchar[{\dopartlot@}{\dopartlot@[1]}}

```

\doparttoc@ We treat the optional argument of \@doparttoc (it becomes the default position for titles  
 \if@mtc@hints@ of parttocs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.

\if@doparttoc@used@

```

\@mtc@hints@given@true 1569 \def\doparttoc@[#1]{%
 \df@ptitc 1570 \if@mtc@hints@
 \e@pti 1571 \if@doparttoc@used@
 \n@pti 1572 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
 \c@pti 1573 {The \string\doparttoc \space command\MessageBreak
 \l@pti 1574 has been invoked more than once\MessageBreak}
 \r@pti 1575 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
 1576 \fi
 1577 \fi
 1578 \global\@doparttoc@used@true
 1579 \if #1e\let\df@ptitc\e@pti%
 1580 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptitc\n@pti%
 1581 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptitc\c@pti%
 1582 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptitc\l@pti%
 1583 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptitc\r@pti%
 1584 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
 1585 \@doparttoc}

```

\dopartlof@ We treat the optional argument of \@dopartlof (it becomes the default position for titles  
 \if@dopartlof@used@ of partlofs) and flag this macro as used, a hint detects any spurious invocation.

\if@mtc@hints@

```

\@mtc@hints@given@true 1586 \def\dopartlof@[#1]{%
 \df@ptilf 1587 \if@mtc@hints@
 \e@pti 1588 \if@dopartlof@used@
 \n@pti
 \c@pti
 \l@pti
 \r@pti

```

```

1589 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
1590 {The \string\dopartlof \space command\MessageBreak
1591 has been invoked more than once\MessageBreak}
1592 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
1593 \fi
1594 \fi
1595 \global\@dopartlof@used@true
1596 \if #1e\let\df@ptilf\e@pti%
1597 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptilf\n@pti%
1598 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptilf\c@pti%
1599 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptilf\l@pti%
1600 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptilf\r@pti%
1601 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
1602 \@@dopartlof}

```

```

\dopartlot@ We treat the optional argument of \dopartlot (it becomes the default position for titles
\if@mtc@hints@ of partlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\if@dopartlot@used@ 1603 \def\dopartlot@[#1]{%
\df@ptilt 1604 \if@mtc@hints@
\@pti 1605 \if@dopartlot@used@
\@pti 1606 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@pti 1607 {The \string\dopartlot \space command\MessageBreak
\l@pti 1608 has been invoked more than once\MessageBreak}
\r@pti 1609 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
1610 \fi
1611 \fi
1612 \global\@dopartlot@used@true
1613 \if #1e\let\df@ptilt\e@pti%
1614 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptilt\n@pti%
1615 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptilt\c@pti%
1616 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptilt\l@pti%
1617 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptilt\r@pti%
1618 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
1619 \@@dopartlot}

```

\@@doparttoc These macros invoke the \@dopart... commands to create the mini-table file, then close the file descriptor.

\@@dopartlof

\@@dopartlot

```

\tf@mtc 1620 \def\@@doparttoc{\@doparttoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
1621 \def\@@dopartlof{\@dopartlof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
1622 \def\@@dopartlot{\@dopartlot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

### 8.52.1 Processing macros for the parttocs

\PTC@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

\PTC@list

\PTC@loop

```

1623 \def\PTC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
1624 \edef\PTC@list{#2}%
1625 \PTC@loop{#1}}

```

```

\PTC@toc Check if the list is empty:
\PTC@list
\PTC@explist 1626 \def\PTC@toc{%
1627 \ifx\PTC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PTC@explist\fi}

```

```

\PTC@contentsline The macro \PTC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file and detects
\part interesting keywords. If \part is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlof
\theptc file is created.
\tf@mtc
\ptcname 1628 \def\PTC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%HO/DV: 4 instead of 3 parameters
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 1629 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part
1630 \stepcounter{ptc}%
1631 \if@longextensions@
1632 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1633 {Writing\space\jobname.ptc\theptc\@gobble}%
1634 \def\ptcname{\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
1635 \else
1636 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1637 {Writing\space\jobname.P\theptc\@gobble}%
1638 \def\ptcname{\jobname.P\theptc}%
1639 \fi
1640 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1641 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\ptcname
1642 \fi
1643 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starp\relax
1644 \stepcounter{ptc}%

```

```

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then
\ptcname open it:

```

```

1645 \if@longextensions@
1646 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1647 {Writing\space\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
1648 \def\ptcname{\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
1649 \else
1650 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1651 {Writing\space\jobname.P\theptc}%
1652 \def\ptcname{\jobname.P\theptc}%
1653 \fi
1654 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1655 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\ptcname
1656 \fi

```

`\mtc@toks` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`:

```
1657 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` Now, we filter the relevant contents lines; this code extracts and writes info for chapters, sections, etc.:

```
\chapter
\pchapter
\section 1658 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter
\coffee 1659 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\subsection 1660 \fi
\subsubsection 1661 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\pchapter
\paragraph 1662 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\subparagraph 1663 \fi
1664 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
1665 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcS}{#3}{#4}%
1666 \fi
1667 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
1668 \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
1669 \fi
1670 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
1671 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSS}{#3}{#4}%
1672 \fi
1673 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
1674 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
1675 \fi
1676 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
1677 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcP}{#3}{#4}%
1678 \fi
1679 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
1680 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSP}{#3}{#4}%
1681 \fi
```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` And for the starred sectionning commands:

```
\starchapter
\starsection 1682 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starchapter
\starsubsection 1683 %%H0: the following line should be disabled: \stepcounter{ptc}%
\starsubsubsection 1684 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\starparagraph 1685 \fi
\starsubparagraph 1686 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
1687 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcS}{#3}{#4}%
1688 \fi
1689 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
1690 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSS}{#3}{#4}%
1691 \fi
1692 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
1693 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
1694 \fi
1695 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
1696 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcP}{#3}{#4}%
1697 \fi
```

```

1698 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
1699 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSP}{#3}{#4}%
1700 \fi
1701 }

```

\PTC@explist The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; expands the list of entries and call \PTC@next to process the first one:  
 \PTC@next  
 \PTC@list

```

1702 \def\PTC@explist{\expandafter\PTC@next\PTC@list\}

```

\PTC@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.  
 \PTC@toc  
 \PTC@read

```

1703 \def\PTC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
1704 \ifeof\@inputcheck
1705 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0013>]{minitoc}%
1706 {No file #1\MessageBreak PARTTOCS NOT PREPARED}%
1707 \expandafter\PTC@toc
1708 \else
1709 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0025>]{minitoc}%
1710 {PREPARING PARTTOCS FROM #1}%
1711 \expandafter\PTC@read\fi}

```

\PTC@read Read the next entry of the .toc file.

\PTC@line

```

1712 \def\PTC@read{%
1713 \read\@inputcheck to\PTC@line

```

\PTC@test The ..... make sure that \PTC@test has sufficient arguments:

\PTC@line

```

1714 \expandafter\PTC@test\PTC@line.....\PTC%%H0: . added
1715 }%

```

\PTC@test The \PTC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit parts:

```

1716 %%H0/BJ: now patch \PTC@test,
1717 %%H0/BJ: call \PTC@contentsline with 4 instead of 3 parameters

```

\PTC@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process the next file in the list.  
 \mtc@string  
 \PTC@list  
 \PTC@toc  
 \PTC@read  
 \partend

```

1718 \long\def\PTC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PTC@{% %%H0: #6 added
1719 \ifx#1\contentsline
1720 \let\mtc@string\string
1721 \PTC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
1722 %%H0/DV: 4 instead of 3 parameters
1723 \let\mtc@string\relax
1724 \else\ifx#1\@input
1725 \edef\PTC@list{\PTC@list#2\relax}%
1726 \else\ifx#1\partend
1727 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1728 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
1729 \else\ifx#1\partbegin
1730 \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
1731 \fi\fi\fi\fi
1732 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PTC@toc
1733 \else\expandafter\PTC@read\fi}%

```

### 8.52.2 Processing macros for the partlofs

`\PLF@next` Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

`\PLF@list`

```

\PLF@loop 1734 \def\PLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
1735 \edef\PLF@list{#2}%
1736 \PLF@loop{#1}}

```

`\PLF@lof` Check if the list is empty:

`\PLF@list`

```

\PLF@explist 1737 \def\PLF@lof{%
1738 \ifx\PLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PLF@explist\fi}

```

`\PLF@contentsline` The macro `\PLF@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOF file and detects interesting keywords. If `\part` is found, the `ptc` counter is incremented and a new partlof file is created.

`\tf@mtc`

`\plfname` 1739 \def\PLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: #4 added

```

\PLF@WriteContentsLine 1740 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part
1741 \stepcounter{ptc}%

```

`\if@longextensions@` We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then `\plfname` open it:

```

1742 \if@longextensions@
1743 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1744 {Writing\space\jobname.plf\theptc}%
1745 \def\plfname{\jobname.plf\theptc}%

```



```

1746 \else
1747 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1748 {Writing\space\jobname.G\theptc}%
1749 \def\plfname{\jobname.G\theptc}%
1750 \fi
1751 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1752 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\plfname
1753 \fi

```

\mtc@toks    The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline:

```

\figure Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
\subfigure
\mtc@toks 1754 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
\MTC@WriteContentsline 1755 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
1756 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plf}{#3}{#4}%
1757 \fi
1758 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
1759 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
1760 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plfs}{#3}{#4}%
1761 \fi
1762 }

```

\PLF@explist    The loop to read the lines of the LOF file; expands the list of entries and call \PLF@next  
 \PLF@next    to process the first one:  
 \PLF@list

```

1763 \def\PLF@explist{\expandafter\PLF@next\PLF@list\}

```

\PLF@loop    If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,  
 \PLF@lof    process the next entry in the list.  
 \PLF@read

```

1764 \def\PLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
1765 \ifeof\@inputcheck
1766 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0011>]{minitoc}%
1767 {No file #1\MessageBreak PARTLOFS NOT PREPARED}%
1768 \expandafter\PLF@lof
1769 \else
1770 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0035>]{minitoc}%
1771 {PREPARING PARTLOFS FROM #1}%
1772 \expandafter\PLF@read\fi}

```

\PLF@read Read the next entry of the .lof file.

```
\PLF@line
1773 \def\PLF@read{%
1774 \read\inputcheck to\PLF@line
```

\PLF@test The . . . . make sure that \PLF@test has sufficient arguments:

```
\PLF@line
1775 \expandafter\PLF@test\PLF@line. . . .\PLF@% %%H0: . added
1776 }%
```

\PLF@test The \PLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit parts:

```
1777 %%H0/BJ: now patch \PLF@test,
1778 %%H0/BJ: call \PLF@contentsline with 4 instead of 3 parameters
```

\PLF@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally

\PLF@list process the next file in the list.

\PLF@lof

```
\PLF@read 1779 \long\def\PLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PLF@{% %%H0: #6 added
\partend 1780 \ifx#1\contentsline
1781 \let\mtc@string\string
1782 \PLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
1783 \let\mtc@string\relax
1784 \else\ifx#1\@input
1785 \edef\PLF@list{\PLF@list#2\relax}%
1786 \else\ifx#1\partend
1787 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1788 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
1789 \else\ifx#1\partbegin
1790 \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
1791 \fi\fi\fi\fi
1792 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PLF@lof
1793 \else\expandafter\PLF@read\fi}%
```

### 8.52.3 Processing macros for the partlots

\PLT@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

\PLT@list

```
\PLT@loop 1794 \def\PLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
1795 \edef\PLT@list{#2}%
1796 \PLT@loop{#1}}
```

```

\PLT@lot Check if the list is empty:
\PLT@list
\PLT@explist 1797 \def\PLT@lot{%
1798 \ifx\PLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PLT@explist\fi}

\PLT@contentsline The macro \PLT@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOT file and detects
\part interesting keywords. If \part is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlot
\theptc file is created.
\tf@mtc
\plname 1799 \def\PLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: #4 added
\PLT@WriteContentsLine 1800 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part
1801 \stepcounter{ptc}%

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then
\plname open it:

1802 \if@longextensions@%
1803 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1804 {Writing\space\jobname.plt\theptc}%
1805 \def\plname{\jobname.plt\theptc}%
1806 \else
1807 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1808 {Writing\space\jobname.U\theptc}%
1809 \def\plname{\jobname.U\theptc}%
1810 \fi
1811 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1812 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\plname
1813 \fi

\mtc@toks The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline:

\table Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
\subtable
\mtc@toks 1814 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
\MTC@WriteContentsline 1815 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
1816 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plt}{#3}{#4}%
1817 \fi
1818 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
1819 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
1820 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{pltS}{#3}{#4}%
1821 \fi
1822 }

```

\PLT@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOT file; expands the list of entries and call \PLT@next to process the first one:  
 \PLT@next  
 \PLT@list

```
1823 \def\PLT@explist{\expandafter\PLT@next\PLT@list\}
```

\PLT@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.  
 \PLT@lot  
 \PLT@read

```
1824 \def\PLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
1825 \ifeof\@inputcheck
1826 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0012>]{minitoc}%
1827 {No file #1\MessageBreak PARTLOTS NOT PREPARED}%
1828 \expandafter\PLT@lot
1829 \else
1830 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0038>]{minitoc}%
1831 {PREPARING PARTLOTS FROM #1}%
1832 \expandafter\PLT@read\fi}
```

\PLT@read Read the next entry of the .lot file.

\PLT@line

```
1833 \def\PLT@read{%
1834 \read\@inputcheck to\PLT@line
```

\PLT@test The ..... make sure that \PLT@test has sufficient arguments:

\PLT@line

```
1835 \expandafter\PLT@test\PLT@line.....\PLT@% %%H0: . added
1836 }%
```

\PLT@test The \PLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit parts:

```
1837 %%H0/BJ: now patch \PLT@test,
1838 %%H0/BJ: call \PLT@contentsline with 4 instead of 3 parameters
```

\PLT@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process the next file in the list.  
 \mtc@string  
 \PLT@list  
 \PLT@lot

\PLT@read

\partend

```
1839 \long\def\PLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PLT@{% %%H0: #6 added
1840 \ifx#1\contentsline
1841 \let\mtc@string\string
1842 \PLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
1843 \let\mtc@string\relax
```

```

1844 \else\ifx#1\@input
1845 \edef\PLT@list{\PLT@list#2\relax}%
1846 \else\ifx#1\partend
1847 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1848 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
1849 \else\ifx#1\partbegin
1850 \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
1851 \fi\fi\fi\fi
1852 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PLT@lot
1853 \else\expandafter\PLT@read\fi}%

```

End of the part level stuff (begun in section 8.45 on page 229):

```

1854 }%

```

### 8.53 Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots

|                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <pre> \AtBeginDocument \c@lofdepth \c@lotdepth \newcounter \setcounter </pre> | <p>If the counters <code>lofdepth</code> and <code>lotdepth</code> are defined, we create new counters for the depths of the corresponding mini-tables: <code>sectlofdepth</code> and <code>sectlotdepth</code>. These counters are initialised to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an <code>\AtBeginDocument</code> block:</p> <pre> 1855 \AtBeginDocument{% 1856 \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}% 1857 {\newcounter{sectlofdepth}\setcounter{sectlofdepth}{2}}% 1858 \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}% 1859 {\newcounter{sectlotdepth}\setcounter{sectlotdepth}{2}}% 1860 } </pre> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### 8.54 Section-level commands

|                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <pre> \if@mtc@chapter@undef@ \if@mtc@section@def@ </pre> | <p>The section-level commands are defined only if <code>\chapter</code> is <i>not</i> defined, hence in article-like document classes, and only if <code>\section</code> is defined:</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

```

1861 \if@mtc@chapter@undef@
1862 \if@mtc@section@def@

```

|                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <pre> \firstsectionis \adjuststc \decrementstc \incrementstc \stc@rule \stcindent \columnwidth </pre> | <p>We define the obsolete command <code>\firstsectionis</code> (with its harmless warning), the counter <code>stc</code> of <code>secttocs</code>, the <code>\adjuststc</code>, <code>\decrementstc</code> and <code>\incrementstc</code> commands, the depth counter <code>secttocdepth</code> and its default value 2 (to include at least the subsections), the horizontal rule <code>\stc@rule</code> (rule before/after <code>secttoc</code>/<code>sectlof</code>/<code>sectlot</code>), the indentation (both sides) <code>\stcindent</code> for the <code>secttocs</code> (with its default values).</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

```

1863 \def\firstsectionis#1%
1864 {\mtcPackageWarning[<W0005>]{minitoc}%
1865 {\string\firstsectionis \space is an obsolete\MessageBreak command}%
1866 \@firstsectionis@used@true}
1867 \newcounter{stc}\setcounter{stc}{0}%
1868 \newcommand{\adjuststc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{stc}{#1}}%
1869 \def\decrementstc{\addtocounter{stc}{-1}}%
1870 \def\incrementstc{\addtocounter{stc}{+1}}%
1871 \newcounter{secttocdepth}\setcounter{secttocdepth}{2}%
1872 \def\stc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}%
1873 \newlength\stcindent \stcindent=24\p@

```

## 8.55 Fonts commands for secttocs and co.

```

\stcfont We define the fonts commands for the secttocs, sectlofs and sectlots and their titles:
\stcSSfont
\stcSSSfont 1874 \def\stcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % secttoc
\stcPfont 1875 \def\stcSSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries} % (subsections)
\stcSPfont 1876 \let\stcSSfont\stcfont % (subsubsections)
\slffont 1877 \let\stcPfont\stcfont % (paragraphs)
\slfSfont 1878 \let\stcSPfont\stcfont % (subparagraphs)
\sltfont 1879 \let\slffont\stcfont % sectlof (figures)
\sltSfont 1880 \let\slfSfont\stcfont % sectlof (subfigures)
\stlfont 1881 \let\sltfont\stcfont % sectlot (tables)
\stlSfont 1882 \let\stlfont\stcfont % sectlot (subtables)
\stifont 1883 \def\stifont{\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries} % titles

```

## 8.56 Internal macros for title positioning

Some internal macros for title positioning, from the optional arguments of `\dosecttoc` and `\secttoc` commands (and siblings):

```

\l@sti Centering, flushleft, flushright or empty titles (with a vertical correction for empty titles,
\c@sti from Frank MITTELBACH):
\r@sti
\l@sti 1884 \def\c@sti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\hfill\hfill\hfill\hfill\hfill}
\l@sti 1885 \def\l@sti#1{\null #1\hfill\hfill\hfill\hfill\hfill\hfill}
\l@sti 1886 \def\r@sti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\hfill\hfill\hfill\hfill\hfill}
\l@sti 1887 \def\l@sti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
\l@sti 1888 \def\r@sti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}

```

```

\do@stitlec By default, titles are flushleft.
\df@stitlec
\do@stilf 1889 \let\do@stitlec\l@sti
\df@stilf 1890 \let\df@stitlec\l@sti
\do@stilt 1891 \let\do@stilf\l@sti
\df@stilt 1892 \let\df@stilf\l@sti
\l@sti 1893 \let\do@stilt\l@sti
1894 \let\df@stilt\l@sti

```

## 8.57 The stc@verse environment

`stc@verse` The `stc@verse` environment is a very simple list environment, analog to the standard `verse` environment. Some formatting parameters are adjusted. The `tight/loose` and `ifktightmtc` `k-tight/k-loose` package options are honored.

```

1895 \def\stc@verse{\let\@centercr
1896 \list{}}{\itemsep\z@
1897 \itemindent \z@
1898 \listparindent \itemindent
1899 \partopsep \z@
1900 \iftightmtc \parsep \z@ \fi
1901 \ifktightmtc \parskip \z@ \fi
1902 \topsep \z@
1903 \leftmargin\stcindent
1904 \rightmargin\leftmargin}\item[]
1905 \def\endstc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

## 8.58 The \secttoc, \sectlof, and \sectlot commands

These three commands are very similar.

### 8.58.1 The \secttoc command

`\secttoc` The `\secttoc` command must be used after `\section` if you need a `secttoc` (no automatic `secttoc`). Its code is similar to the code of `\minitoc` (but simpler). First, `\secttoc` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\secttoc@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

1906 \def\secttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\secttoc@}{\secttoc@d}}

```

`\secttoc@` The `\secttoc@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@secttoc@used@` (for  
`\if@secttoc@used@` a coherence hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the  
`\if@longextensions@` secttoc file):

```
\@tocfile
\thestc 1907 \def\secttoc@[#1]{%
1908 \global\@secttoc@used@true
1909 \if@longextensions@%
1910 \def\@tocfile{stc\thestc}%
1911 \else
1912 \def\@tocfile{S\thestc}%
1913 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the secttoc file and give a warning if it  
`\if@mtc@FE` is not here or is empty:

```
\@tocfile
1914 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
1915 \if@mtc@FE
1916 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
1917 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
1918 \@mtc@empty@secttoc@true
1919 \else
```

`\beforesecttoc` If the secttoc file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some  
`\thispagesecttocstyle` presentation code: first, `\beforesecttoc`, of course, and the page style feature:

```
1920 \beforesecttoc
1921 \thispagesecttocstyle
```

`\do@sttc` We begin a `samepage` environment, then treat the positioning argument. If the title is  
`\e@sti` empty, we simulate the “e” positioning.  
`\n@sti`  
`\c@sti` 1922 %% `\mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\stctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\stctitle}}%`  
`\l@sti` 1923 `\relax\begin{samepage}%`  
`\r@sti` 1924 `\if #1e\let\do@sttc\e@sti`  
`\df@sti` 1925 `\else\if #1n\let\do@sttc\n@sti`  
`\mtc@CkStr` 1926 `\else\if #1c\let\do@sttc\c@sti`  
`\stctitle` 1927 `\else\if #1l\let\do@sttc\l@sti`  
`\if@mtc@FE` 1928 `\else\if #1r\let\do@sttc\r@sti`  
`samepage` 1929 `\else\if #1d\let\do@sttc\df@sttc`  
1930 `\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi`  
1931 `\mtc@CkStr{\stctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@sttc\e@sti\relax\fi`

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the  
`\parskip` secttoc, then we set the font:  
`\stcfont`



```

1932 \raggedright
1933 \parskip=\z@%
1934 \reset@font\stcfont%
1935 \parindent=\z@%
1936 \nopagebreak[4]%

```

`\stc@rule` The secttoc title is set in a `tabular` environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the secttoc.

```

\stifont
\do@sttc 1937 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
 \mtc@v 1938 \par\noindent
\stctitle 1939 \nopagebreak[4]%
 \hline 1940 \ifx\stc@rule\relax
1941 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
1942 \reset@font\stifont\do@sttc{\mtc@v\stctitle}\\
1943 \end{tabular}%
1944 \else
1945 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
1946 \reset@font\stifont\do@sttc{\mtc@v\stctitle}\\\hline
1947 \end{tabular}%
1948 \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

```

\mtc@BBR
\stcindent
1949 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
1950 \leftmargin\stcindent
1951 \rightmargin\stcindent
1952 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
1953 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

`stc@verse` We enter in a `stc@verse` environment to format the secttoc. The toc depth is forced (locally) to `secttocdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

```

\c@tocdepth
\c@secttocdepth
\mtc@BBR 1954 \begin{stc@verse}\c@tocdepth=\c@secttocdepth%
1955 \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR
1956 \vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\stc@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\@undottedtocline` `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\stc@setform`. Then the secttoc file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `stc@verse` environment is terminated.

```

\stc@setform
\@tocfile 1957 \begingroup
\mtc@strut 1958 \makeatletter
stc@verse

```

```

1959 \stc@setform%
1960 \@ifundefined{stc@pgno}%
1961 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
1962 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
1963 \stc@setform%
1964 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
1965 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
1966 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
1967 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
1968 \end{stc@verse}%

```

```

\stc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and
\mtc@zrule \aftersecttoc.
samepage
\aftersecttoc 1969 \kern-1.\baselineskip%
1970 \nopagebreak[4]\stc@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
1971 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
1972 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersecttoc\fi}%

```

### 8.58.2 The \sectlof command

\sectlof The \sectlof command must be used after \section if you need a sectlof (no automatic  
\sectlof@ sectlof). Its code is similar to the code of \minilof (but simpler). First, \sectlof  
detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, d, if it is missing.  
Then, \sectlof@ is called with the effective position as argument:

```

1973 \def\sectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\sectlof@}{\sectlof@d}}

```

\sectlof@ The \sectlof@ macro does the real work. It first sets the flag \if@sectlof@used@ (for  
\if@sectlof@used@ a coherence hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the  
\if@longextensions@ sectlof file):

```

\@tocfile
\thestc 1974 \def\sectlof@[#1]{%
1975 \global\@sectlof@used@true
1976 \if@longextensions@
1977 \def\@tocfile{slf\thestc}%
1978 \else
1979 \def\@tocfile{H\thestc}%
1980 \fi

```

\mtc@CkFile Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the sectlof file and give a warning if it  
\if@mtc@FE is not here or is empty:

```

\@tocfile
1981 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}

```

```

1982 \if@mtc@FE
1983 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
1984 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
1985 \@mtc@empty@sectlof@true
1986 \else

```

`\beforesectlof` If the sectlof file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforesectlof`, of course, and the page style feature:

```

1987 \thispagesectlofsty
1988 %% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\slftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\slftitle}}%
1989 \beforesectlof

```

`\do@stilf` We begin a `samepage` environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty, we simulate the “e” positionning.

```

\do@stilf
\@sti
\n@sti
\c@sti 1990 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\l@sti 1991 \if #1e\let\do@stilf\@sti
\r@sti 1992 \else\if #1n\let\do@stilf\n@sti
\df@sti 1993 \else\if #1c\let\do@stilf\c@sti
\mtc@CkStr 1994 \else\if #1l\let\do@stilf\l@sti
\slftitle 1995 \else\if #1r\let\do@stilf\r@sti
\if@mtc@FE 1996 \else\if #1d\let\do@stilf\df@stilf
1997 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
samepage 1998 \mtc@CkStr{\slftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stilf\@sti\relax\fi

```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the sectlof, then we set the font:

```

\parskip
\slffont
1999 \raggedright
2000 \parskip=\z@%
2001 \reset@font\slffont%
2002 \parindent=\z@%
2003 \nopagebreak[4]%

```

`\slf@rule` The sectlof title is set in a `tabular` environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the sectlof.

```

\columnwidth
\do@stilf 2004 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\mtc@v 2005 \par\noindent
\slftitle 2006 \ifx\slf@rule\relax
\hline 2007 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
2008 \reset@font\stifont\do@stilf{\mtc@v\slftitle}\\
2009 \end{tabular}%
2010 \else

```

```

2011 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
2012 \mtc@hstrut
2013 \reset@font\stifont\do@stilf{\mtc@v\slftitle}\\hline
2014 \end{tabular}%
2015 \fi

```

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some  
 \mtc@BBR formatting parameters:

```

\stcindent
2016 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\ \mtc@BBR
2017 \leftmargin\stcindent
2018 \rightmargin\stcindent
2019 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
2020 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

stc@verse We enter in a stc@verse environment to format the sectlof. The toc depth is forced  
 \c@tocdepth (locally) to sectlofdepth. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

```

\c@sectlofdepth
\mtc@BBR 2021 \begin{stc@verse}%
2022 \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{\c@tocdepth=\c@sectlofdepth}
2023 \ifnum\c@tocdepth<1\relax\c@tocdepth=1\fi
2024 \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR
2025 \vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

\slf@pgno If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline  
 \@dottedtocline with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from  
 \@undottedtocline \mtcsetformat are activated via \slf@setform. Then the sectlof file is inserted,  
 \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile followed by a strut, and the stc@verse environment is terminated.

```

\slf@setform
\@tocfile 2026 \begingroup
\mtc@strut 2027 \makeatletter
stc@verse 2028 \@ifundefined{slf@pgno}%
2029 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
2030 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
2031 \slf@setform%
2032 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
2033 \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
2034 \end{stc@verse}%

```

\stc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and  
 \mtc@zrule \aftersectlof. The blank line (\) is essential.

```

samepage
\aftersecttoc 2035 \kern-0.\baselineskip% ABCD
2036 \nopagebreak[4]\slf@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
2037 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
2038 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersectlof\fi}%

```

### 8.58.3 The `\sectlot` command

`\sectlot` The `\sectlot` command must be used after `\section` if you need a sectlot (no automatic sectlot). Its code is similar to the code of `\minilot` (but simpler). First, `\sectlot` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\sectlot@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```
2039 \def\sectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\sectlot@}{\sectlot@d}}
```

`\sectlot@` The `\sectlot@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@sectlot@used@` (for a coherence hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the sectlot file):

```
\@tocfile
\thetc 2040 \def\sectlot@[#1]{%
2041 \global\@sectlot@used@true
2042 \if@longextensions@%
2043 \def\@tocfile{slt\thetc}%
2044 \else
2045 \def\@tocfile{I\thetc}%
2046 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the sectlot file and give a warning if it is not here or is empty:

```
\@tocfile
2047 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
2048 \if@mtc@FE
2049 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
2050 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
2051 \@mtc@empty@sectlot@true
2052 \else
```

`\beforesectlot` If the sectlot file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforesectlot`, of course, and the page style feature:

```
2053 \thispagesectlotstyle
2054 %% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\slttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\slttitle}}%
2055 \beforesectlot
```

```

\do@stilt We begin a samepage environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is
 \e@sti empty, we simulate the “e” positionning.
 \n@sti
 \c@sti 2056 \relax\begin{samepage}%
 \l@sti 2057 \if #1e\let\do@stilt\e@sti
 \r@sti 2058 \else\if #1n\let\do@stilt\n@sti
 \df@sti 2059 \else\if #1c\let\do@stilt\c@sti
\mtc@CkStr 2060 \else\if #1l\let\do@stilt\l@sti
\sltttitle 2061 \else\if #1r\let\do@stilt\r@sti
\if@mtc@FE 2062 \else\if #1d\let\do@stilt\df@stilt
 samepage 2063 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
 2064 \mtc@CkStr{\sltttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stilt\e@sti\relax\fi

```

```

\raggedright We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the
 \parskip sectlot, then we set the font:
 \sltfont
 2065 \raggedright
 2066 \parskip=\z@%
 2067 \reset@font\sltfont%
 2068 \parindent=\z@%
 2069 \nepagebreak[4]%

```

```

\stc@rule The sectlot title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title
 tabular and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an \hline. It is the
 \stifont top rule of the sectlot.
\columnrule
\do@stilt 2070 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nepagebreak[4]%
 \mtc@v 2071 \par\noindent
\sltttitle 2072 \ifx\slt@rule\relax
 \hline 2073 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
 2074 \reset@font\stifont\do@stilt{\mtc@v\sltttitle}\\
 2075 \end{tabular}%
 2076 \else
 2077 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
 2078 \mtc@hstrut
 2079 \reset@font\stifont\do@stilt{\mtc@v\sltttitle}\\\hline
 2080 \end{tabular}%
 2081 \fi

```

```

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some
 \mtc@BBR formatting parameters:
\stcindent
 2082 \nepagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
 2083 \leftmargin\stcindent
 2084 \rightmargin\stcindent
 2085 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
 2086 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

```

stc@verse We enter in a stc@verse environment to format the sectlot. The toc depth is forced
\c@tocdepth (locally) to sectlotdepth. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.
\c@sectlotdepth
\mtc@BBR 2087 \begin{stc@verse}%
2088 \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}{\c@tocdepth=\c@sectlotdepth}
2089 \ifnum\c@tocdepth<1\relax\c@tocdepth=1\fi
2090 \leavevmode\\mtc@BBR
2091 \vskip -.5\baselineskip

\slt@pgno If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline
\@dottedtocline with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from
\@undottedtocline \mtcsetformat are activated via \slt@setform. Then the sectlot file is inserted,
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile followed by a strut, and the stc@verse environment is terminated.
\slt@setform
\@tocfile 2092 \begingroup
\mtc@strut 2093 \makeatletter
stc@verse 2094 \ifundefined{slt@pgno}%
2095 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
2096 \gdef\thetc{\arabic{stc}}
2097 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
2098 \slt@setform%
2099 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
2100 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
2101 \end{stc@verse}%

\stc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and
\mtc@zrule \aftersectlot.
samepage
\aftersectlot 2102 \kern-0.\baselineskip% ABCD
2103 \nopagebreak[4]\slt@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
2104 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
2105 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersectlot\fi%
```

## 8.59 Auxiliary internal commands, section level

```

\l@xsect We define auxiliary commands, used for the mini-tables and as delimiters in the TOC
\@dottedtocline file (and LOF and LOT files). The depth of xsect is huge to inhibit the printing of its
\l@chapter contents line (except if you cheat).
\l@chapter
\l@chapter 2106 \def\l@xsect{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
2107 \def\l@chapter{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
2108 \def\l@xsect{xsect}
2109 \def\l@chapter{chapter}
```

## 8.60 Patching the \section command (continued)

\@sect We patch the both branches of the \section command: \@sect for the unstarred version and \@ssect for the starred version. First, for the unstarred version (\@sect), we add a xsect contents line in the LOF and in the LOT. The test \ifnum #2=1 restricts the action to the section level macros (because \@sect is also used by \subsection and below, which have no mini-tables).

```
2110 \let\sv@sect\@sect
2111 \gdef\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{%
2112 \ifnum #2=1
2113 \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
2114 \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
2115 \fi
2116 \sv@sect{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}[#7]{#8}}
```

\section If it is a section (unstarred or starred via \starsection), we add a xsect entry in the LOF and in the LOT.

```
\starsection
\addcontentsline
2117 \def\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{
2118 \expandafter
2119 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax
2120 \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
2121 \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
2122 \fi
2123 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection\relax
2124 \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
2125 \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
2126 \fi
```

\@svsec And the remainder of the section header formatting:

```
\refstepcounter
\@tempskipa 2127 \ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth
\@hangfrom 2128 \let\@svsec\@empty
\addcontentsline 2129 \else
\numberline 2130 \refstepcounter{#1}%
\@svsechd 2131 \edef\@svsec{\csname the#1\endcsname\hskip 1em}%
\@xsect 2132 \fi
2133 \@tempskipa #5\relax
2134 \ifdim \@tempskipa>z@
2135 \begingroup #6\relax
2136 \@hangfrom{\hskip #3\relax\@svsec}%
2137 {\interlinepenalty \@M #8\par}%
2138 \endgroup
2139 \csname #1mark\endcsname{#7}\addcontentsline
2140 {toc}{#1}{\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth
2141 \else
2142 \protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}%
```



```

2143 \fi
2144 #7}%
2145 \else
2146 \def\@svsechd{#6\hskip #3\relax
2147 \@svsec #8\csname #1mark\endcsname
2148 {#7}\addcontentsline
2149 {toc}{#1}{\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth
2150 \else
2151 \protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}
2152 \fi
2153 #7}}%
2154 \fi
2155 \@xsect{#5}}

```

`\@sect` Then we patch the unstarred branch (`\@sect`). We define also the delimiting commands `\sectbegin` and `\sectend` commands. We do not add `\sectbegin` if it is a subsection or deeper.

```

\stc@sect
\addtocontents 2156 \let\stc@sect\@sect
2157 \def\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{%
2158 \ifnum #2<1 \relax
2159 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\sectbegin}
2160 \fi
2161 \stc@sect{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}[#7]{#8}}
2162 \let\sectend\relax
2163 \let\sectbegin\relax

```

## 8.61 The `\dosecttoc` command and siblings

The `\dosecttoc` command is very similar to `\dominitoc`.

`\dosecttoc` The `\dosecttoc` command extracts information from the `.toc` file and creates the `\@dosecttoc` `.stc(N)` files (`.stc` becomes `.S` on MS-DOS).

```

\STC@next
2164 \def\@dosecttoc#1{%
2165 \makeatletter
2166 \setcounter{stc}{0}
2167 \STC@next#1.toc\relax\\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```

`\dosectlof` The `\dosectlof` command extracts information from the `.lof` file and creates the `\@dosectlof` `.slf(N)` files (`.slf` becomes `.H` on MS-DOS).

```

\SLF@next
2168 \def\@dosectlof#1{%
2169 \makeatletter
2170 \setcounter{stc}{0}
2171 \SLF@next#1.lof\relax\\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```

`\dosectlot` The `\dosectlot` command extracts information from the `.lot` file and creates the  
`\@dosectlot` `.slt(N)` files (`.slt` becomes `.V` on MS-DOS).  
`\PLT@next`

```
2172 \def\dosectlot#1{%
2173 \makeatletter
2174 \setcounter{stc}{0}
2175 \SLT@next#1.lot\relax\\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}
```

`\dosecttoc` We define the user-level macros, who detect the optional argument:  
`\dosectlof`

```
\dosectlot 2176 \def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\dosecttoc@}{\dosecttoc@[1]}}
2177 \def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\dosectlof@}{\dosectlof@[1]}}
2178 \def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\dosectlot@}{\dosectlot@[1]}}
```

`\dosecttoc@` We treat the optional argument of `\dosecttoc` (it becomes the default position for titles  
of secttocs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.

`\@mtc@hints@given@true`

```
\if@dosecttoc@used@ 2179 \def\dosecttoc@[#1]{%
\df@stitle 2180 \if@mtc@hints@
\@sti 2181 \if@dosecttoc@used@
\n@sti 2182 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@sti 2183 {The \string\dosecttoc \space command\MessageBreak
\l@sti 2184 has been invoked more than once\MessageBreak}
\r@sti 2185 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
2186 \fi
2187 \fi
2188 \global\@dosecttoc@used@true
2189 \if #1e\let\df@stitle\@sti%
2190 \else\if #1n\let\df@stitle\n@sti%
2191 \else\if #1c\let\df@stitle\c@sti%
2192 \else\if #1l\let\df@stitle\l@sti%
2193 \else\if #1r\let\df@stitle\r@sti%
2194 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
2195 \@dosecttoc}
```

`\dosectlof@` We treat the optional argument of `\dosectlof` (it becomes the default position for titles  
of sectlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.

`\@mtc@hints@given@true`

```
\if@dosectlof@used@ 2196 \def\dosectlof@[#1]{%
\df@stilf 2197 \if@mtc@hints@
\@sti 2198 \if@dosectlof@used@
\n@sti 2199 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@sti 2200 {The \string\dosectlof \space command\MessageBreak
\l@sti 2201 has been invoked more than once\MessageBreak}
\r@sti 2202 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
2203 \fi
2204 \fi
2205 \global\@dosectlof@used@true
```

```

2206 \if #1e\let\df@stilf\e@sti%
2207 \else\if #1n\let\df@stilf\n@sti%
2208 \else\if #1c\let\df@stilf\c@sti%
2209 \else\if #1l\let\df@stilf\l@sti%
2210 \else\if #1r\let\df@stilf\r@sti%
2211 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
2212 \@@dosectlof}

```

\dosectlot@ We treat the optional argument of \dosectlot (it becomes the default position for titles  
 \if@mtc@hints@ of sectlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.  
 \@mtc@hints@given@true

```

\if@dosectlot@used@ 2213 \def\dosectlot@[#1]{%
 \df@stilt 2214 \if@mtc@hints@
 \e@sti 2215 \if@dosectlot@used@
 \n@sti 2216 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
 \c@sti 2217 {The \string\dosectlot \space command\MessageBreak
 \l@sti 2218 has been invoked more than once\MessageBreak}
 \r@sti 2219 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
 2220 \fi
 2221 \fi
 2222 \global\@dosectlot@used@true
 2223 \if #1e\let\df@stilt\e@sti%
 2224 \else\if #1n\let\df@stilt\n@sti%
 2225 \else\if #1c\let\df@stilt\c@sti%
 2226 \else\if #1l\let\df@stilt\l@sti%
 2227 \else\if #1r\let\df@stilt\r@sti%
 2228 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
 2229 \@@dosectlot}

```

\@@dosecttoc These macros invoke the \@dosect... commands to create the mini-table file, then close  
 \@@dosectlof the file descriptor.  
 \@@dosectlot

```

\tf@mtc 2230 \def\@@dosecttoc{\@dosecttoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
2231 \def\@@dosectlof{\@dosectlof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
2232 \def\@@dosectlot{\@dosectlot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

\STC@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

\STC@list

```

\STC@loop 2233 \def\STC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
2234 \edef\STC@list{#2}%
2235 \STC@loop{#1}}

```

\STC@toc Check if the list is empty:

\STC@list

```

\STC@explist 2236 \def\STC@toc{%
2237 \ifx\STC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\STC@explist\fi}

```

`\STC@contentsline` The macro `\STC@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the TOC file. If `\section` is found, the stc counter is incremented and a new secttoc file is created.

`\section`

`\thestc`

`\tf@mtc` 2238 `\def\STC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: #4 added`

`\stcname` 2239 `\gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}% %%H0: space removed`

`\MTC@WriteContentsLine` 2240 `\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section`

2241 `\stepcounter{stc}%`

2242 `%% \def\thestc{\arabic{stc}} %% H0: removed`

`\if@longextensions@` We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it:

`\stcname`

2243 `\if@longextensions@%`

2244 `\mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%`

2245 `{Writing\space\jobname.stc\thestc}%`

2246 `\def\stcname{\jobname.stc\thestc}%`

2247 `\else`

2248 `\mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%`

2249 `{Writing\space\jobname.S\thestc}%`

2250 `\def\stcname{\jobname.S\thestc}%`

2251 `\fi`

2252 `\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc`

2253 `\immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\stcname`

2254 `\fi`

`\mtc@toks` Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:

`\MTC@WriteCoffeeline`

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` 2255 `\mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%`

`\coffee` 2256 `\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee`

`\subsection` 2257 `\MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%`

`\subsubsection` 2258 `\fi`

`\paragraph` 2259 `\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection`

`\subparagraph` 2260 `\MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSS}{#3}{#4}%`

2261 `\fi`

2262 `\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection`

2263 `\MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSSS}{#3}{#4}%`

2264 `\fi`

2265 `\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph`

2266 `\MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcP}{#3}{#4}%`

2267 `\fi`

2268 `\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph`

2269 `\MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSP}{#3}{#4}%`

2270 `\fi`

`\starsection` A starred section terminates the current section and creates a new secttoc file:

`\stepcounter`

`\thestc` 2271 `\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection`

`\arabic` 2272 `\stepcounter{stc}%`

`\if@longextensions@`

`\stcname`

`\closeout`

`\openout`

```

2273 \gdef\thetc{\arabic{stc}}
2274 \if@longextensions@%
2275 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
2276 {Writing\space\jobname.stc\thetc}%
2277 \def\stcname{\jobname.stc\thetc}%
2278 \else
2279 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
2280 {Writing\space\jobname.S\thetc}%
2281 \def\stcname{\jobname.S\thetc}%
2282 \fi
2283 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2284 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\stcname
2285 \fi

```

\MTC@WriteContentsline We process the entries for starred sectionning commands:

```

\starsubsection
\starsubsubsection 2286 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
\starparagraph 2287 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSS}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubparagraph 2288 \fi
2289 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
2290 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
2291 \fi
2292 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
2293 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcP}{#3}{#4}%
2294 \fi
2295 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
2296 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSP}{#3}{#4}%
2297 \fi
2298 }

```

\STC@explist The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; expands the list of entries and call \STC@next to process the first one.

```

\STC@next
\STC@list
2299 \def\STC@explist{\expandafter\STC@next\STC@list\}

```

\STC@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

```

\STC@read
2300 \def\STC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
2301 \ifeof\@inputcheck
2302 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0016>]{minitoc}%
2303 {No file #1\MessageBreak SECTOCS NOT PREPARED}%
2304 \expandafter\STC@toc
2305 \else
2306 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0026>]{minitoc}%
2307 {PREPARING SECTOCS FROM #1}%
2308 \expandafter\STC@read\fi}

```

\STC@read Read the next entry of the .toc file.

\STC@line

```
2309 \def\STC@read{%
2310 \read\@inputcheck to\STC@line
```

\STC@test The ..... make sure that \STC@test has sufficient arguments:

\STC@line

```
2311 \expandafter\STC@test\STC@line.....\STC@% %%H0: . added
2312 }%
```

\STC@test The \STC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to  
\STC@contentsline delimit sections;

\mtc@string

\STC@list 2313 \long\def\STC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\STC@{% %%H0: #6 added

\STC@toc 2314 \ifx#1\contentsline

\STC@read 2315 \let\mtc@string\string

\sectend 2316 \STC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added

\sectbegin 2317 \let\mtc@string\relax

2318 \else\ifx#1\@input

2319 \edef\STC@list{\STC@list#2\relax}%

2320 \else\ifx#1\sectend

2321 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

2322 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc

2323 \else\ifx#1\sectbegin

2324 \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%

2325 \fi\fi\fi\fi

2326 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\STC@toc

2327 \else\expandafter\STC@read\fi}%

\SLF@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

\SLF@list

\SLF@loop 2328 \def\SLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%

2329 \edef\SLF@list{#2}%

2330 \SLF@loop{#1}}

\SLF@lof Check if the list is empty:

\SLF@list

\SLF@explist 2331 \def\SLF@lof{%

2332 \ifx\SLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\SLF@explist\fi}

\SLF@contentsline The macro \SLF@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOF file. If \section  
\section is found, the stc counter is incremented and a new sectlof file is created.

\thestc

\tf@mtc

2333 \def\SLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: #4 added

\slfname

\MTC@WriteContentsLine

```

2334 \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}% %%H0: space removed
2335 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xsect
2336 \stepcounter{stc}%
2337 %% \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}} %%H0: removed

```

`\if@longextensions@` We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then  
`\slfname` open it:

```

2338 \if@longextensions@%
2339 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
2340 {Writing\space\jobname.slf\thestc}%
2341 \def\slfname{\jobname.slf\thestc}%
2342 \else
2343 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
2344 {Writing\space\jobname.H\thestc}%
2345 \def\slfname{\jobname.H\thestc}%
2346 \fi
2347 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2348 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\slfname
2349 \fi

```

`\mtc@toks` Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:

```

\MTc@WriteContentsline
\figure 2350 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
\subfigure 2351 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
2352 \MTc@WriteContentsline{#1}{slf}{#3}{#4}%
2353 \fi
2354 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
2355 \MTc@WriteContentsline{#1}{slfS}{#3}{#4}%
2356 \fi
2357 }

```

`\SLF@explist` The loop to read the lines of the LOF file; expands the list of entries and call `\SLF@next`  
`\SLF@next` to process the first one.

```

\SLF@list
2358 \def\SLF@explist{\expandafter\SLF@next\SLF@list\}

```

`\SLF@loop` If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,  
`\SLF@lof` process the next entry in the list.

```

\SLF@read
2359 \def\SLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
2360 \ifeof\@inputcheck
2361 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0014>]{minitoc}%
2362 {No file #1\MessageBreak SECTLOFS NOT PREPARED}%
2363 \expandafter\SLF@lof
2364 \else

```

```

2365 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0036>]{minitoc}%
2366 {PREPARING SECTLOFS FROM #1}%
2367 \expandafter\SLF@read\fi}

```

Read the next entry of the .lof file.

\SLF@read The . . . . . make sure that \SLF@test has sufficient arguments:

\SLF@test

```

\SLF@line 2368 \def\SLF@read{%
2369 \read\@inputcheck to\SLF@line
2370 \expandafter\SLF@test\SLF@line. . . . \SLF@% %%H0: . added
2371 }%

```

\SLF@test The \SLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to  
 \SLF@contentsline delimit sections;

```

\mtc@string
\SLF@list 2372 \long\def\SLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\SLF@{% %%H0: #6 added
\SLF@lof 2373 \ifx#1\contentsline
\SLF@read 2374 \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 2375 \SLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
\sectbegin 2376 \let\mtc@string\relax
2377 \else\ifx#1\@input
2378 \edef\SLF@list{\SLF@list#2\relax}%
2379 \else\ifx#1\sectend
2380 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2381 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
2382 \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
2383 \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
2384 \fi\fi\fi\fi
2385 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\SLF@lof
2386 \else\expandafter\SLF@read\fi}%

```

\SLT@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

\SLT@list

```

\SLT@loop 2387 \def\SLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
2388 \edef\SLT@list{#2}%
2389 \SLT@loop{#1}}

```

\SLT@lot Check if the list is empty:

\SLT@list

```

\SLT@explist 2390 \def\SLT@lot{%
2391 \ifx\SLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\SLT@explist\fi}

```



```

\SLT@contentsline The macro \SLT@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOT file. If \section
\section is found, the stc counter is incremented and a new sectlot file is created.
\thestc
\tf@mtc 2392 \def\SLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: #4 added
\sltname 2393 \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}} %%H0: space removed
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 2394 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xsect
2395 \stepcounter{stc}%
2396 %% \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}} %%H0: removed

```

```

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then
\sltname open it:

```

```

2397 \if@longextensions@%
2398 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
2399 {Writing\space\jobname.slt\thestc}%
2400 \def\sltname{\jobname.slt\thestc}%
2401 \else
2402 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
2403 {Writing\space\jobname.V\thestc}%
2404 \def\sltname{\jobname.V\thestc}%
2405 \fi
2406 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2407 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\sltname
2408 \fi

```

```

\mtc@toks Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
\MTC@WriteContentsline
\table 2409 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
\subtable 2410 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
2411 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slt}{#3}{#4}%
2412 \fi
2413 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
2414 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{sltS}{#3}{#4}%
2415 \fi
2416 }

```

```

\SLT@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOT file; expands the list of entries and call \SLT@next
\SLT@next to process the first one.
\SLT@list
2417 \def\SLT@explist{\expandafter\SLT@next\SLT@list\}

```

```

\SLT@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
\SLT@lot process the next entry in the list.
\SLT@read
2418 \def\SLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
2419 \ifeof\@inputcheck

```

```

2420 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0015>]{minitoc}%
2421 {No file #1\MessageBreak SECTLOTS NOT PREPARED}%
2422 \expandafter\SLT@lot
2423 \else
2424 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0039>]{minitoc}%
2425 {PREPARING SECTLOTS FROM #1}%
2426 \expandafter\SLT@read\fi}

```

Read the next entry of the .lot file.

\SLT@read The . . . . make sure that \SLT@test has sufficient arguments:

\SLT@test

```

\SLT@line 2427 \def\SLT@read{%
2428 \read\@inputcheck to\SLT@line
2429 \expandafter\SLT@test\SLT@line. . . . \SLT@ %%H0: . added
2430 }%

```

\SLT@test The \SLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to  
\SLT@contentsline delimit sections;

```

\mtc@string
\SLT@list 2431 \long\def\SLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\SLT@{% %%H0: #6 added
\SLT@lot 2432 \ifx#1\contentsline
\SLT@read 2433 \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 2434 \SLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
\sectbegin 2435 \let\mtc@string\relax
2436 \else\ifx#1\@input
2437 \edef\SLT@list{\SLT@list#2\relax}%
2438 \else\ifx#1\sectend
2439 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2440 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
2441 \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
2442 \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
2443 \fi\fi\fi\fi
2444 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\SLT@lot
2445 \else\expandafter\SLT@read\fi}%

```

## 8.62 End of section-level commands

We terminate the *else* branch of the test \@ifundefined{section}, the *true* branch of the test \@ifundefined{chapter} and add an empty *else* branch to the test \@ifundefined{chapter}:

```

2446 \fi% end of \if@mtc@section@def@
2447 \fi% end of \if@mtc@chapter@undef@

```

### 8.63 The `\mtcprepare` command

`\mtcprepare` This command tests the availability of the `\do...` minitoc preparation commands and of the contents files, then calls as much as possible of these preparation commands. A hint is given.

`\@ifundefined`

`\IfFileExists` 2448 `\def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[{\mtcprepare@}{\mtcprepare@[1]}}%`  
                   `\jobname` 2449 `\def\mtcprepare@{#1}{%`  
                   `\doparttoc` 2450 `\@ifundefined{part}{}{%`  
                   `\dopartlof` 2451 `\IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\doparttoc[#1]}}%`  
                   `\dopartlot` 2452 `\IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dopartlof[#1]}}%`  
                   `\dominitoc` 2453 `\IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dopartlot[#1]}}%`  
                   `\dominilof` 2454 `}%`  
                   `\dominilot` 2455 `\@ifundefined{chapter}{%`  
                   `\dosecttoc` 2456 `\@ifundefined{section}{}%`  
                   `\dosectlof` 2457 `{%`  
                   `\dosectlot` 2458 `\IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\dosecttoc[#1]}}%`  
                   `\mtcPackageInfo` 2459 `\IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dosectlof[#1]}}%`  
                   2460 `\IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dosectlot[#1]}}%`  
                   2461 `}%`  
                   2462 `}%`  
                   2463 `\IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\dominitoc[#1]}}%`  
                   2464 `\IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dominilof[#1]}}%`  
                   2465 `\IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dominilot[#1]}}%`  
                   2466 `}%`  
                   2467 `\if@mtc@hints@`  
                   2468 `\@mtc@hints@given@true`  
                   2469 `\mtcPackageInfo[<I0048>]{minitoc(hints)}%`  
                   2470 `{Using \string\mtcprepare\space may induce some\MessageBreak`  
                   2471 `hints about the preparation commands,\MessageBreak`  
                   2472 `because it invokes ALL the preparation\MessageBreak`  
                   2473 `commands allowed by the document class,\MessageBreak`  
                   2474 `without any previous check.\MessageBreak}%`  
                   2475 `\fi`  
                   2476 `}`

### 8.64 Necessary `\l@...` commands

`\l@listof` Some `\l@...` commands (analog to `\l@section` or `\l@paragraph`) are required to  
`\l@startpart` format some entries in the mini-tables, for starred sectionning commands essentially:

`\l@starchapter`

`\l@starsection` 2477 `\@ifundefined{section}{\let\l@listof\l@section}`  
`\l@starsubsection` 2478 `\@ifundefined{chapter}{\let\l@listof\l@chapter}`  
`\l@starsubsubsection` 2479 `\@ifundefined{part}{\let\l@startpart\l@part}`  
`\l@starparagraph` 2480 `\@ifundefined{chapter}{\let\l@starchapter\l@chapter}`  
`\l@starsubparagraph` 2481 `\@ifundefined{section}{\let\l@starsection\l@section}`  
                   2482 `\@ifundefined{subsection}{\let\l@starsubsection\l@subsection}`  
                   2483 `\@ifundefined{subsubsection}{\let\l@starsubsubsection\l@subsubsection}`

```

2484 \@ifundefined{paragraph}{}{\let\l@starparagraph\l@paragraph}
2485 \@ifundefined{subparagraph}{}{\let\l@starsubparagraph\l@subparagraph}

```

## 8.65 The horizontal rules and their default values

```

\noptcrule We define here the various commands to activate ou inhibit the horizontal rules in
\nomtcrule the various kinds of mini-tables. Each such command is an indirect definition of the
\nostcrule corresponding horizontal rule. The rules are .4 pt high horizontal rules.
\ptcrule
\mtcrule 2486 \def\noptcrule{\let\ptc@rule\relax}
\stcrule 2487 \def\nomtcrule{\let\mtc@rule\relax}
\noplfrule 2488 \def\nostcrule{\let\stc@rule\relax}
\nomlfrule 2489 \def\ptc@rule{\def\ptc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\noslfrule 2490 \def\mtc@rule{\def\mtc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\plfrule 2491 \def\stc@rule{\def\stc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\mlfrule 2492 \def\ptc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
\slfrule 2493 \def\mtc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
2494 \def\stc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
\nopltrule
\nomltrule
\nosltrule 2495 \def\noplfrule{\let\plf@rule\relax}
2496 \def\nomlfrule{\let\mlf@rule\relax}
\pltrule 2497 \def\noslfrule{\let\slf@rule\relax}
\mltrule 2498 \def\plfrule{\def\plf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\sltrule 2499 \def\mlfrule{\def\mlf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\columnwidth 2500 \def\slfrule{\def\slf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
2501 \def\plf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
2502 \def\mlf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
2503 \def\slf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}

2504 \def\nopltrule{\let\plt@rule\relax}
2505 \def\nomltrule{\let\mlt@rule\relax}
2506 \def\nosltrule{\let\slt@rule\relax}
2507 \def\pltrule{\def\plt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
2508 \def\mltrule{\def\mlt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
2509 \def\sltrule{\def\slt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
2510 \def\plt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
2511 \def\mlt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
2512 \def\slt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}

```

## 8.66 The \mtcset... commands

These commands <sup>7</sup> have been introduced to build a nicer user interface, and each of them replaces numerous user commands, offering a rather unified and logical syntax.

<sup>7</sup> The general concept of the \mtcset... commands was proposed by Benjamin BAYART.

### 8.66.1 Keywords for the `\mtcset...` commands

`\@namedef` We define some common keywords for the `\mtcset...` commands. A keyword is  
`\@nameuse` created via the `\@namedef – \@nameuse` mechanism the following way:

```
\@namedef{mtc@family@name}{abbreviation}
```

where *family* is the name of a group of keywords relative to one or several `\mtcset...` macros, *name* is the keyword that the user gives as argument to the `\mtcset...` macro, and *abbreviation* is a string used to build the name of the macro effectively used. As some `\mtcset...` macros have several keyword parameters, this method can reduce the number of macros at the user level, at the cost of few keyword families.

`\@namedef` We define a family (typetable) of keywords for the types of mini-tables:

```
2513 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@parttoc}{ptc}\def\mtc@typetable@parttoc{ptc}
2514 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@partlof}{plf}\def\mtc@typetable@partlof{plf}
2515 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@partlot}{plt}\def\mtc@typetable@partlot{plt}
2516 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minitoc}{mtc}\def\mtc@typetable@minitoc{mtc}
2517 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minilof}{mlf}\def\mtc@typetable@minilof{mlf}
2518 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minilot}{mlt}\def\mtc@typetable@minilot{mlt}
2519 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@secttoc}{stc}\def\mtc@typetable@secttoc{stc}
2520 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@sectlof}{slf}\def\mtc@typetable@sectlof{slf}
2521 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@sectlot}{slt}\def\mtc@typetable@sectlot{slt}
```

`\@namedef` Then another family (typetitle) for the titles of the mini-tables:

```
2522 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@parttoc}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@parttoc{pti}
2523 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@partlof}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@partlof{pti}
2524 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@partlot}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@partlot{pti}
2525 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minitoc}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minitoc{mti}
2526 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minilof}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minilof{mti}
2527 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minilot}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minilot{mti}
2528 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@secttoc}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@secttoc{sti}
2529 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@sectlof}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@sectlof{sti}
2530 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@sectlot}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@sectlot{sti}
```

`\@namedef` We define a family (YN) of keywords to recognize the keywords “off” and “on”, with their many synonyms<sup>8</sup> and meaning false or true:

```
2531 \@namedef{mtc@YN@off}{no}\def\mtc@YN@off{no}
2532 \@namedef{mtc@YN@OFF}{no}\def\mtc@YN@OFF{no}
```

<sup>8</sup> This (deliberately extreme) case shows the easyness for creating synonyms of frequently used keywords. Note also that when a keyword contains a non-letter character, we must use a hack with `\expandafter \csname ... \endcsname`.

```

2533 \@namedef{mtc@YN@no}{no}\def\mtc@YN@no{no}
2534 \@namedef{mtc@YN@NO}{no}\def\mtc@YN@NO{no}
2535 \@namedef{mtc@YN@n}{no}\def\mtc@YN@n{no}
2536 \@namedef{mtc@YN@N}{no}\def\mtc@YN@N{no}
2537 \@namedef{mtc@YN@false}{no}\def\mtc@YN@false{no}
2538 \@namedef{mtc@YN@FALSE}{no}\def\mtc@YN@FALSE{no}
2539 \@namedef{mtc@YN@faux}{no}\def\mtc@YN@faux{no}
2540 \@namedef{mtc@YN@FAUX}{no}\def\mtc@YN@FAUX{no}
2541 \@namedef{mtc@YN@f}{no}\def\mtc@YN@f{no}
2542 \@namedef{mtc@YN@F}{no}\def\mtc@YN@F{no}
2543 \@namedef{mtc@YN@NON}{no}\def\mtc@YN@NON{no}
2544 \@namedef{mtc@YN@non}{no}\def\mtc@YN@non{no}
2545 \@namedef{mtc@YN@0}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@0\endcsname{no}
2546 \@namedef{mtc@YN@on}{no}\def\mtc@YN@on{no}
2547 \@namedef{mtc@YN@ON}{no}\def\mtc@YN@ON{no}
2548 \@namedef{mtc@YN@yes}{no}\def\mtc@YN@yes{no}
2549 \@namedef{mtc@YN@YES}{no}\def\mtc@YN@YES{no}
2550 \@namedef{mtc@YN@y}{no}\def\mtc@YN@y{no}
2551 \@namedef{mtc@YN@Y}{no}\def\mtc@YN@Y{no}
2552 \@namedef{mtc@YN@true}{no}\def\mtc@YN@true{no}
2553 \@namedef{mtc@YN@TRUE}{no}\def\mtc@YN@TRUE{no}
2554 \@namedef{mtc@YN@t}{no}\def\mtc@YN@t{no}
2555 \@namedef{mtc@YN@T}{no}\def\mtc@YN@T{no}
2556 \@namedef{mtc@YN@vrai}{no}\def\mtc@YN@vrai{no}
2557 \@namedef{mtc@YN@VRAI}{no}\def\mtc@YN@VRAI{no}
2558 \@namedef{mtc@YN@v}{no}\def\mtc@YN@v{no}
2559 \@namedef{mtc@YN@V}{no}\def\mtc@YN@V{no}
2560 \@namedef{mtc@YN@OUI}{no}\def\mtc@YN@OUI{no}
2561 \@namedef{mtc@YN@oui}{no}\def\mtc@YN@oui{no}
2562 \@namedef{mtc@YN@O}{no}\def\mtc@YN@O{no}
2563 \@namedef{mtc@YN@o}{no}\def\mtc@YN@o{no}
2564 \@namedef{mtc@YN@1}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@1\endcsname{no}

```

## 8.66.2 The \mtcsetfont command

\@namedef We define the sectionning level keywords (note that part is not a member of this family (sectlevel), because no contents line for a part can appear in a mini-table, part being the highest sectionning level); “\*” represents “any level”, and is used to set the global default font for a given kind of mini-table.

```

2565 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@chapter}{C}\def\mtc@sectlevel@chapter{C}
2566 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@section}{S}\def\mtc@sectlevel@section{S}
2567 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subsection}{SS}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subsection{SS}
2568 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection}{SSS}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection{SSS}
2569 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@paragraph}{P}\def\mtc@sectlevel@paragraph{P}
2570 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph}{SP}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph{SP}
2571 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@*}{*}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@sectlevel@*\endcsname{*}
2572 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@figure}{F}\def\mtc@sectlevel@figure{F}
2573 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@table}{T}\def\mtc@sectlevel@table{T}
2574 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subfigure}{SF}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subfigure{SF}
2575 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subtable}{ST}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subtable{ST}

```

`\mtcsetfont` The `\mtcsetfont` command has the following syntax:

```
\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{level-name}{font commands}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`, the *level-name* is a sectioning level like `subsection` (no backslash). The *font commands* are a font specification, using NFSS [135] basic commands usually.

`\if@mtc@setfont@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
2576 \newif\if@mtc@setfont@\@mtc@setfont@true
```

`\mtcsetfont` Then, we begin the command, which has three arguments:

```
2577 \newcommand{\mtcsetfont}[3]{%
```

`\mtc@mta@abbrev` The two first arguments of this command are keywords. They must be translated into the effective strings. We process the first argument, a keyword from the `typetable` family.  
`\if@mtc@setfont@`  
`\@nameuse` The result is stored in `\mtc@mta@abbrev`. Example: if #1 is `minitoc`, we get `mtc`.

```
2578 \def\mtc@mta@abbrev{X}
2579 \@mtc@setfont@true
2580 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
2581 \@mtc@setfont@false
2582 \def\mtc@mta@abbrev{X}
2583 \mtcPackageError[<E0013>]{minitoc}%
2584 {\string\mtcsetfont \space has a wrong first argument
2585 \MessageBreak
2586 (#1).
2587 \MessageBreak
2588 It should be a mini-table type
2589 \MessageBreak
2590 (parttoc...sectlot)}%
2591 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2592 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2593 \else
2594 \edef\mtc@mta@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
2595 \fi
```

`\mtc@level@abbrev` The second argument, a keyword from the family `sectlevel`, is processed the same way  
`\if@mtc@setfont@` and the result is stored into `\mtc@level@abbrev`. Example: if #2 is the `subparagraph`  
`\@nameuse` keyword, we get `SP`.

```
2596 \def\mtc@level@abbrev{X}
2597 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@sectlevel@#2\endcsname\relax
```

```

2598 \@mtc@setfont@false
2599 \def\mtc@level@abbrev{X}
2600 \mtcPackageError[<E0014>]{minitoc}%
2601 {\string\mtcsetfont \space has a wrong second argument
2602 \MessageBreak
2603 (#2).
2604 \MessageBreak
2605 It should be a sectionning level
2606 \MessageBreak
2607 (part...subparagraph) or * }%
2608 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2609 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2610 \else
2611 \edef\mtc@level@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@sectlevel@#2}}
2612 \fi

```

```

\mtc@tmp@name Then, we construct the effective macro to be applied:
\mtc@mta@abbrev
\mtc@level@abbrev 2613 \def\mtc@tmp@name{\mtc@mta@abbrev\mtc@level@abbrev font}

```

Example: if #1 is minitoc and #2 is subsection, we get mtcSSfont, which is the name of the command for the font of a subsection entry in a minitoc (the backslash is missing, but we will use a \csname ... \endcsname pair to apply the constructed command).

```

\if@mtc@setfont@ But all combinaisons are not legal (the level of the entry must be lower than the level of
the mini-table), so we must test. Special care must be taken for testing via internal defined
commands (quarks) with @mtcqk at the end of their names).

```

```

2614 \def\parttoc@mtcqk{parttoc@mtcqk}
2615 \def\minitoc@mtcqk{minitoc@mtcqk}
2616 \def\secttoc@mtcqk{secttoc@mtcqk}
2617 \def\partlof@mtcqk{partlof@mtcqk}
2618 \def\minilof@mtcqk{minilof@mtcqk}
2619 \def\sectlof@mtcqk{sectlof@mtcqk}
2620 \def\partlot@mtcqk{partlot@mtcqk}
2621 \def\minilot@mtcqk{minilot@mtcqk}
2622 \def\sectlot@mtcqk{sectlot@mtcqk}
2623 \def\part@mtcqk{part@mtcqk}
2624 \def\chapter@mtcqk{chapter@mtcqk}
2625 \def\section@mtcqk{section@mtcqk}
2626 \def\subsection@mtcqk{subsection@mtcqk}
2627 \def\subsubsection@mtcqk{subsubsection@mtcqk}
2628 \def\paragraph@mtcqk{paragraph@mtcqk}
2629 \def\subparagraph@mtcqk{subparagraph@mtcqk}
2630 \def\figure@mtcqk{figure@mtcqk}
2631 \def\table@mtcqk{table@mtcqk}
2632 \def\subfigure@mtcqk{subfigure@mtcqk}
2633 \def\subtable@mtcqk{subtable@mtcqk}
2634 \@mtc@setfont@true
2635 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\parttoc@mtcqk\relax

```



```

2636 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2637 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2638 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2639 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2640 \fi
2641 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\partlof@mtcck\relax
2642 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2643 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2644 \fi
2645 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\partlot@mtcck\relax
2646 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2647 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2648 \fi
2649 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\minitoc@mtcck\relax
2650 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2651 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2652 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2653 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2654 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2655 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2656 \fi
2657 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\minilof@mtcck\relax
2658 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2659 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2660 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2661 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2662 \fi
2663 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\minilot@mtcck\relax
2664 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2665 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2666 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2667 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2668 \fi
2669 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\secttoc@mtcck\relax
2670 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2671 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2672 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2673 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2674 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2675 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2676 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2677 \fi
2678 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\sectlof@mtcck\relax
2679 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2680 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2681 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2682 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2683 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2684 \fi
2685 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\sectlot@mtcck\relax
2686 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2687 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2688 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2689 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi

```

```

2690 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subfigure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2691 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@setfont@` If the combinaison is legal, we apply it, i.e., we redefine the meaning of the constructed macro with the sequence of commands given as third argument of `\mtcsetfont` and we

`\mtc@tmp@name` log that event (we store the third argument in a token register to can print it *verbatim*).

`\mtc@mta@abbrev`

`\mtc@level@abbrev`

`\mtc@toks` If the combinaison is not legal, an error message is displayed.

```

2692 \if@mtc@setfont@
2693 \def\mtc@tmp@name{\mtc@mta@abbrev\mtc@level@abbrev font}
2694 \mtc@toks{#3}
2695 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0015>]{minitoc}%
2696 {\string\mtcsetfont\space redefines the macro\MessageBreak
2697 "\mtc@tmp@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}
2698 \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmp@name\endcsname{#3}
2699 \else
2700 \mtcPackageError[<E0024>]{minitoc}%
2701 {The macro \string\mtcsetfont\space has incompatible\MessageBreak
2702 first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
2703 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2704 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2705 \fi
2706 }

```

### 8.66.3 The `\mtcsetttitlefont` command

`\mtcsetttitlefont` This command is very similar to the `\mtcsetfont` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsetttitlefont{mini-table}{font commands}
```

`\if@mtc@setttitlefont@` The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`. The *font commands* are a font specification, using NFSS [135] basic commands usually. The difference is the absence of the second keyword argument, because the *font commands* will be applied to the title of each mini-table of the given kind.

First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
2707 \newif\if@mtc@setttitlefont@\@mtc@setttitlefont@true
```

`\mtcsettitlefont` And we begin the definition of the `\mtcsettitlefont` command, which has two arguments:

```
2708 \newcommand{\mtcsettitlefont}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtatf@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetitle` family, then the result is stored into `\mtc@mtatf@abbrev`:  
`\if@mtc@settitlefont@`  
`\@nameuse`

```
2709 \def\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{X}
2710 \@mtc@settitlefont@true
2711 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetitle@#1\endcsname\relax
2712 \mtc@settitlefont@false
2713 \def\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{X}
2714 \mtcPackageError[<E0022>]{minitoc}%
2715 {\string\mtcsettitlefont \space has a wrong first argument
2716 \MessageBreak
2717 (#1).
2718 \MessageBreak
2719 It should be a mini-table type
2720 \MessageBreak
2721 (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
2722 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2723 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2724 \else
2725 \edef\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetitle@#1}}
2726 \fi
```

`\if@mtc@settitlefont@` Then we build the name of the effective command and apply this command:

```
\mtc@tmptf@name
\mtc@mtatf@abbrev 2727 \if@mtc@settitlefont@
\mtc@toks 2728 \def\mtc@tmptf@name{\mtc@mtatf@abbrev font}
2729 \mtc@toks{#2}
2730 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0018>]{minitoc}%
2731 {\string\mtcsettitlefont\space redefines the macro
2732 \MessageBreak "\mtc@tmptf@name" as
2733 \MessageBreak "\the\mtc@toks"}
2734 \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmptf@name\endcsname{#2}
2735 \else
2736 \mtcPackageError[<E0034>]{minitoc}%
2737 {The macro \string\mtcsettitlefont\space uses\MessageBreak
2738 an illegal type of table (#1)}}%
2739 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2740 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
2741 \fi
2742 }
```

### 8.66.4 The `\mtcsettitle` command

`\mtcsettitle` This command is very similar to the `\mtcsettitlefont` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{text}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`. The *text* is the text for a mini-table title.

`\if@mtc@settitle@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
2743 \newif\if@mtc@settitle@\@mtc@settitle@true
```

`\mtcsettitle` Then we define the `\mtcsettitle` command, which has two arguments:

```
2744 \newcommand{\mtcsettitle}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtati@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family. The result is stored in `\mtc@mtati@abbrev`:

```
\if@mtc@settitle@
 \@nameuse
2745 \def\mtc@mtati@abbrev{X}
2746 \@mtc@settitle@true
2747 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
2748 \@mtc@settitle@false
2749 \def\mtc@mtati@abbrev{X}
2750 \mtcPackageError[<E0021>]{minitoc}%
2751 {\string\mtcsettitle \space has a wrong first argument
2752 \MessageBreak
2753 (#1).
2754 \MessageBreak
2755 It should be a mini-table type
2756 \MessageBreak
2757 (parttoc...sectlot)}%
2758 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2759 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2760 \else
2761 \edef\mtc@mtati@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
2762 \fi
```

`\if@mtc@settitle@` And we construct the name of the effective macro and apply it:

```
\mtc@tmpti@name
\mtc@mtati@abbrev 2763 \if@mtc@settitle@
\mtc@toks 2764 \def\mtc@tmpti@name{\mtc@mtati@abbrev title}
2765 \mtc@toks{#2}
2766 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0017>]{minitoc}%
```

```

2767 {\string\mtcsettitle\space redefines the macro\MessageBreak
2768 "\mtc@tmpti@name" as
2769 \MessageBreak "\the\mtc@toks"}
2770 \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmpti@name\endcsname{#2}
2771 \else
2772 \mtcPackageError[<E0033>]{minitoc}%
2773 {The macro \string\mtcsettitle\space uses\MessageBreak
2774 an illegal type of table (#1)}%
2775 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2776 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
2777 \fi
2778 }

```

### 8.66.5 The \mtcsetformat command

\@namedef We define first the keywords (family formatparam) for the three formatting parameters that this command can alter:

```

2779 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@dotinterval}{dotsep}%
2780 \def\mtc@arg@dotinterval{dotsep}
2781 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@tocrightmargin}{tocrmarg}%
2782 \def\mtc@arg@tocrightmargin{tocrightmargin}
2783 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@pagenumwidth}{pnumwidth}%
2784 \def\mtc@arg@pagenumwidth{\mtc@arg@pagenumwidth}
2785 %% \@namedef{mtc@arg@numwidth}{numwidth} %not yet available
2786 %% \def\mtc@arg@numwidth{\mtc@arg@numwidth} %not yet available

```

\AtBeginDocument The \mtcsetformat command needs an initialization to be done at the beginning of the document, to set the defaults values of the formatting parameters:

```

2787 \AtBeginDocument{%

```

\@pnumwidth We take, if possible, the default value of \@pnumwidth for each type of mini-tables:

```

\ptcpnumwidth
\mtcpnumwidth 2788 \@ifundefined{ptcpnumwidth}{\let\ptcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\stcpnumwidth 2789 \@ifundefined{stcpnumwidth}{\let\stcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\plfpnumwidth 2790 \@ifundefined{mtcpnumwidth}{\let\mtcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\mlfpnumwidth 2791 \@ifundefined{plfpnumwidth}{\let\plfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\slfpnumwidth 2792 \@ifundefined{mlfpnumwidth}{\let\mlfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\pltpnumwidth 2793 \@ifundefined{slfpnumwidth}{\let\slfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\mltpnumwidth 2794 \@ifundefined{pltpnumwidth}{\let\pltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\sltpnumwidth 2795 \@ifundefined{mltpnumwidth}{\let\mltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
2796 \@ifundefined{sltpnumwidth}{\let\sltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%

```

```

\@tocrmarg We take, if possible, the default value of \@tocrmarg for each type of mini-tables:
\ptctocrmarg
\mtclofrmarg 2797 \@ifundefined{ptctocrmarg}{\let\ptctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\stclotrarg 2798 \@ifundefined{mtctocrmarg}{\let\mtctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\plftocrmarg 2799 \@ifundefined{stctocrmarg}{\let\stctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\mlflofrmarg 2800 \@ifundefined{plftocrmarg}{\let\plftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\slflotrarg 2801 \@ifundefined{mlftocrmarg}{\let\mlftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\plttocrmarg 2802 \@ifundefined{slftocrmarg}{\let\slftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\mltlofrmarg 2803 \@ifundefined{plttocrmarg}{\let\plttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\sltlotrarg 2804 \@ifundefined{mlttocrmarg}{\let\mlttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
2805 \@ifundefined{slttocrmarg}{\let\slttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%

```

```

\@dotsep We take, if possible, the default value of \@dotsep for each type of mini-tables:
\ptcdotsep
\mtcdotsep 2806 \@ifundefined{ptcdotsep}{\let\ptcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\stcdotsep 2807 \@ifundefined{mtcdotsep}{\let\mtcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\plfdotsep 2808 \@ifundefined{stcdotsep}{\let\stcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\mlfdotsep 2809 \@ifundefined{plfdotsep}{\let\plfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\slfdotsep 2810 \@ifundefined{mlfdotsep}{\let\mlfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\pltdotsep 2811 \@ifundefined{slfdotsep}{\let\slfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\mltdotsep 2812 \@ifundefined{pltdotsep}{\let\pltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\sltdotsep 2813 \@ifundefined{mltdotsep}{\let\mltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
2814 \@ifundefined{sltdotsep}{\let\sltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%

```

And we terminate the \AtBeginDocument block:

```
2815 }
```

\mtcsetformat The executive part is done via the following macros, which are invoked in the \mtc@verse-like environments for each kind of mini-table. These commands activate the values recorded by \mtcsetformat.

\ptc@setform The \ptc@setform macro is invoked in ptc@verse to set format parameters:

```

ptc@verse
2816 \def\ptc@setform{%
2817 \let\@pnumwidth\ptcpnumwidth\relax
2818 \let\@tocrmarg\ptctocrmarg\relax
2819 \let\@dotsep\ptcdotsep\relax
2820 }

```

\mtc@setform The \mtc@setform macro is invoked in mtc@verse to set format parameters:

```

mtc@verse
2821 \def\mtc@setform{%
2822 \let\@pnumwidth\mtcpnumwidth\relax
2823 \let\@tocrmarg\mtctocrmarg\relax
2824 \let\@dotsep\mtcdotsep\relax
2825 }

```

`\stc@setform` The `\stc@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`stc@verse`

```
2826 \def\stc@setform{%
2827 \let\@pnumwidth\stcpnumwidth\relax
2828 \let\@tocrmarg\stctocrmarg\relax
2829 \let\@dotsep\stcdotsep\relax
2830 }
```

`\plf@setform` The `\plf@setform` macro is invoked in `ptc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`ptc@verse`

```
2831 \def\plf@setform{%
2832 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
2833 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
2834 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
2835 }
```

`\mlf@setform` The `\mlf@setform` macro is invoked in `mtc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`mtc@verse`

```
2836 \def\mlf@setform{%
2837 \let\@pnumwidth\mlfpnumwidth\relax
2838 \let\@tocrmarg\mlftocrmarg\relax
2839 \let\@dotsep\mlfdotsep\relax
2840 }
```

`\slf@setform` The `\slf@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`stc@verse`

```
2841 \def\slf@setform{%
2842 \let\@pnumwidth\slfpnumwidth\relax
2843 \let\@tocrmarg\slftocrmarg\relax
2844 \let\@dotsep\slfdotsep\relax
2845 }
```

`\plt@setform` The `\plt@setform` macro is invoked in `ptc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`ptc@verse`

```
2846 \def\plt@setform{%
2847 \let\@pnumwidth\pltpnumwidth\relax
2848 \let\@tocrmarg\plttocrmarg\relax
2849 \let\@dotsep\pltdotsep\relax
2850 }
```

`\mlt@setform` The `\mlt@setform` macro is invoked in `mtc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`mtc@verse`

```
2851 \def\mlt@setform{%
2852 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
```

```

2853 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
2854 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
2855 }

```

`\slt@setform` The `\slt@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:

```

stc@verse
2856 \def\slt@setform{%
2857 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
2858 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
2859 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
2860 }

```

`\if@mtc@setformat@` We now define a flag and the `\mtcsetformat` command, which has the following syntax:

```
\mtcsetformat{mini-table}{parameter-name}{value}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword of the `typetable` family, *parameter-name* is a keyword of the `formatparam` family and *value*, the value of this parameter for the given kind of mini-table.

```

2861 \newif\if@mtc@setformat@\@mtc@setformat@true
2862 \newcommand{\mtcsetformat}[3]{%

```

`\mtc@mtf@abbrev` We now process the first argument and store the result in `\mtc@mtf@abbrev`:

`\mtc@fparam@abbrev`

```

2863 \def\mtc@mtf@abbrev{X}
2864 \def\mtc@fparam@abbrev{X}
2865 \@mtc@setformat@true
2866 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
2867 \@mtc@setformat@false
2868 \def\mtc@mtf@abbrev{X}
2869 \mtcPackageError[<E0015>]{minitoc}%
2870 {\string\mtcsetformat \space has a wrong first argument
2871 \MessageBreak
2872 (#1).
2873 \MessageBreak
2874 It should be a mini-table type
2875 \MessageBreak
2876 (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
2877 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2878 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2879 \else
2880 \edef\mtc@mtf@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
2881 \fi

```



`\mtc@fparam@abbrev` Then the second argument is processed and the result is stored in `\mtc@fparam@abbrev`:  
`\@nameuse`

```

2882 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@formatparam@#2\endcsname\relax
2883 \@mtc@setformat@false
2884 \def\mtc@fparam@abbrev{X}
2885 \mtcPackageError[<E0016>]{minitoc}%
2886 {\string\mtcsetformat \space has a wrong second argument
2887 \MessageBreak
2888 (#2).
2889 \MessageBreak
2890 It should be a formatting param choosen from:\MessageBreak
2891 pagenumwidth, tocrightmargin, dotinterval}%
2892 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2893 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2894 \else
2895 \edef\mtc@fparam@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@formatparam@#2}}
2896 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@setformat@` The name of the storage macro is built and it receives the third parameter as value:

```

\mtc@tmpfm@name
\mtc@mtf@abbrev
\mtc@fparam@abbrev
2897 \if@mtc@setformat@
2898 \def\mtc@tmpfm@name{\mtc@mtf@abbrev\mtc@fparam@abbrev}
2899 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0016>]{minitoc}%
2900 {\string\mtcsetformat\space redefines the macro\MessageBreak
2901 "\mtc@tmpfm@name" as "\string#3"}
2902 \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmpfm@name\endcsname{#3}
2903 \else
2904 \mtcPackageError[<E0025>]{minitoc}%
2905 {The macro \string\mtcsetformat\space has incompatible\MessageBreak
2906 first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
2907 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2908 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2909 \fi
2910 }

```

### 8.66.6 The `\mtcsetpagenumbers` command

This command activates or inhibits page numbers in the mini-tables of a given kind. Its syntax is the following:

```
\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword for a kind of mini-table (`parttoc`, ... `sectlot`), or `on` and `off` a keyword to activate (`on`) or inhibit (`off`) the page numbers. `on` and `off` have many synonyms.

`\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@` We define some flags:

`\if@mtc@spn@ok@`

2911 `\newif\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false`

2912 `\newif\if@mtc@spn@ok@`

`\mtcsetpagenumbers` We define the user-level macro. If the first argument is a star, we call the internal macro `\@ifundefined` `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` for each type of mini-table available; else, we call this internal `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` macro only once, for the specified type of mini-table.

```

2913 \newcommand{\mtcsetpagenumbers}[2]{%
2914 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname *\relax
2915 \@ifundefined{part}{}%
2916 {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{parttoc}{#2}}
2917 {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{partlof}{#2}}
2918 {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{partlot}{#2}}
2919 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
2920 {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{minitoc}{#2}}
2921 {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{minilof}{#2}}
2922 {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{minilot}{#2}}
2923 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
2924 {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{secttoc}{#2}}
2925 {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{sectlof}{#2}}
2926 {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{sectlot}{#2}}
2927 \else
2928 \mtcsetpagenumbers@{#1}{#2}%
2929 \fi
2930 }
```

`\mtcsetpagenumber@` Then the `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` internal macro, with two arguments:

2931 `\newcommand{\mtcsetpagenumbers@}[2]{%`

`\mtc@mttpn@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family, and store the result in `\mtc@pns@abbrev`:

`\mtc@pns@abbrev`

```

2932 \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
2933 \@mtc@setpagenumbers@true
2934 \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{}
2935 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
2936 \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
2937 \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{X}
2938 \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
2939 \mtcPackageError[<E0017>]{minitoc}%
2940 {\string\mtcsetpagenumbers \space has a wrong first
2941 \MessageBreak
2942 argument (#1)}%
2943 {It should be a mini-table type
2944 \MessageBreak
2945 (parttoc...sectlot)\MessageBreak
```

```

2946 Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2947 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2948 \else
2949 \edef\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
2950 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@spn@ok@ Then the second argument, a keyword of the YN family, and store the result in
\mtc@pns@abbrev \mtc@pns@abbrev. The name of the effective macro is built and the macro executed.
\mtc@mttpn@abbrev
\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ 2951 \@mtc@spn@ok@true
\mtc@tmppn@name 2952 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@YN@#2\endcsname\relax
2953 \@mtc@spn@ok@false
2954 \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{X}
2955 \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
2956 \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
2957 \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
2958 \mtcPackageError[<E0018>]{minitoc}%
2959 {\string\mtcsetpagenumbers \space has a wrong second
2960 \MessageBreak
2961 argument (#2)}%
2962 {It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off)\MessageBreak
2963 Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2964 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2965 \else
2966 \edef\mtc@pns@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@YN@#2}}
2967 \def\mtc@pns@abbrevX{X}
2968 \def\mtc@noX{mtc@noX}
2969 \def\mtc@tmppn@name{\mtc@pns@abbrev\mtc@mttpn@abbrev pagenumbers}
2970 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@\mtc@pns@abbrev X\endcsname\mtc@noX
2971 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0022>]{minitoc}%
2972 {Page numbers are inhibited\MessageBreak for the #1s}
2973 \else
2974 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0021>]{minitoc}%
2975 {Page numbers are activated\MessageBreak for the #1s}
2976 \fi
2977 \csname\mtc@tmppn@name\endcsname{}
2978 \fi
2979 }

```

### 8.66.7 The \mtcsetrules command

This macro is very similar to \mtcsetpagenumbers and its syntax is the same:

```
\mtcsetrules{mini-table}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword for a kind of mini-table (*parttoc*, ... *sectlot*), or *on* and *off* a keyword to activate (*on*) or inhibit (*off*) the horizontal rules. *on* and *off* have many synonyms.

Hence the code is similar.

`\if@mtc@setrules@` We define some flags:

`\if@mtc@sru@ok@`

2980 `\newif\if@mtc@setrules@ \@mtc@setrules@false`

2981 `\newif\if@mtc@sru@ok@`

`\mtcsetrules` We define the user-level macro. If the first argument is a star, we call the internal macro `\@ifundefined` `\mtcsetrules@` for each type of mini-table available; else, we call this internal macro `\mtcsetrules@` only once, for the specified type of mini-table.

```
2982 \newcommand{\mtcsetrules}[2]{%
2983 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname*\relax
2984 \@ifundefined{part}{}%
2985 {\mtcsetrules@{parttoc}{#2}
2986 \mtcsetrules@{partlof}{#2}
2987 \mtcsetrules@{partlot}{#2}}
2988 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
2989 {\mtcsetrules@{minitoc}{#2}
2990 \mtcsetrules@{minilof}{#2}
2991 \mtcsetrules@{minilot}{#2}}
2992 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
2993 {\mtcsetrules@{secttoc}{#2}
2994 \mtcsetrules@{sectlof}{#2}
2995 \mtcsetrules@{sectlot}{#2}}
2996 \else
2997 \mtcsetrules@{#1}{#2}%
2998 \fi
2999 }
```

`\mtcsetrules@` Then the `\mtcsetrules@` internal macro, which has two arguments:

3000 `\newcommand{\mtcsetrules@}[2]{%`

`\mtc@mttru@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family and store the result in

`\if@mtc@setrules@` `\mtc@mttru@abbrev`:

`\mtc@rusw@abbrev`

```
\@nameuse 3001 \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
3002 \@mtc@setrules@true
3003 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{}
3004 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
3005 \@mtc@setrules@false
3006 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{X}
3007 \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
3008 \mtcPackageError[<E0019>]{minitoc}%
3009 {\string\mtcsetrules \space has a wrong first argument
3010 \MessageBreak
```

```

3011 (#1)}%
3012 {It should be a mini-table type
3013 \MessageBreak
3014 (parttoc...sectlot)
3015 \MessageBreak
3016 Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
3017 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
3018 \else
3019 \edef\mtc@mttru@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
3020 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@sru@ok@ Then the second argument, a keyword of the YN family, and store the result in
\mtc@rusw@abbrev \mtc@rusw@abbrev. The name of the effective macro is built and the macro executed.
\mtc@mttru@abbrev
if@setrules@false 3021 \@mtc@sru@ok@true
\mtc@noX 3022 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@YN@#2\endcsname\relax
\mtc@tmppn@name 3023 \@mtc@sru@ok@false
3024 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{X}
3025 \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
3026 \@mtc@setrules@false
3027 \mtcPackageError[<E0020>]{minitoc}%
3028 {string\mtcsetrules \space has a wrong second argument
3029 \MessageBreak
3030 (#2)}%
3031 {It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off)
3032 \MessageBreak
3033 Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
3034 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
3035 \else
3036 \edef\mtc@rusw@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@YN@#2}}
3037 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrevX{X}
3038 \def\mtc@noX{mtc@noX}
3039 \def\mtc@tmppn@name{\mtc@rusw@abbrev\mtc@mttru@abbrev rule}
3040 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@\mtc@rusw@abbrev X\endcsname\mtc@noX
3041 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0008>]{minitoc}%
3042 {Horizontal rules are inhibited\MessageBreak for the #1s}
3043 \else
3044 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0007>]{minitoc}%
3045 {Horizontal rules are activated\MessageBreak for the #1s}
3046 \fi
3047 \csname\mtc@tmppn@name\endcsname{}
3048 \fi
3049 }

```

### 8.66.8 The `\mtcsetfeature` command

For this command, we must define three families of keywords, but the third is just used to add the word “style” for the “pagestyle” when “thispage” is used.

A family (`ltypetable`) for the long names of the types of mini-tables:

```

3050 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@parttoc}{parttoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@parttoc{parttoc}
3051 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@partlot}{partlot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@partlot{partlot}
3052 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@partlof}{partlof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@partlof{partlof}
3053 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minitoc}{minitoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minitoc{minitoc}
3054 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minilot}{minilot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minilot{minilot}
3055 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minilof}{minilof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minilof{minilof}
3056 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@secttoc}{secttoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@secttoc{secttoc}
3057 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@sectlof}{sectlof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@sectlof{sectlof}
3058 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@sectlot}{sectlot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@sectlot{sectlot}

```

A family (`featureparam`) for the type of feature:

```

3059 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@before}{before}%
3060 \def\mtc@featureparam@before{before}
3061 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@after}{after}%
3062 \def\mtc@featureparam@after{after}
3063 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@pagestyle}{thispage}%
3064 \def\mtc@featureparam@pagestyle{thispage}

```

And a family (`ft3`) to add “style” if it is a “pagestyle” feature:

```

3065 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@before}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@before\endcsname{}
3066 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@after}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@after\endcsname{}
3067 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@pagestyle}{style}%
3068 \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@pagestyle\endcsname{style}

```

The `\mtcsetfeature` command has the following syntax:

```
\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{feature-name}{commands}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword of the `ltypetable` family, *feature-name* is a keyword of the `featureparam` family (but also of the `ft3` family), and *commands* are the commands which constitute the selected feature.

`\if@mtc@setfeature@` We define a flag and the `\mtcsetfeature` command, with three arguments:  
`\mtcsetfeature`

```

3069 \newif\if@mtc@setfeature@\@mtc@setfeature@true
3070 \newcommand{\mtcsetfeature}[3]{%

```

`\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `ltypetable` family, and store the result  
`\mtc@featparam@abbrev` in `\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev`:

```

3071 \def\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{X}
3072 \def\mtc@featparam@abbrev{X}
3073 \@mtc@setfeature@true

```

```

3074 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@ltypetable@#1\endcsname\relax
3075 \@mtc@setfeature@false
3076 \def\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{X}
3077 \mtcPackageError[<E0011>]{minitoc}%
3078 {\string\mtcsetfeature \space has a wrong first argument
3079 \MessageBreak
3080 (#1).
3081 \MessageBreak
3082 It should be a mini-table type
3083 \MessageBreak
3084 (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
3085 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
3086 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
3087 \else
3088 \edef\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@ltypetable@#1}}
3089 \fi

```

\if@mtc@setfeature@ The second argument is a keyword of the featureparam family, the result is stored in  
 \mtc@featparam@abbrev \mtc@featparam@; and the complement is computed from the first argument, interpreted  
 \mtc@featparam@third as a keyword of the ft3 family and whose result is stored in \mtc@featparam@third.  
 \@nameuse

```

3090 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@featureparam@#2\endcsname\relax
3091 \@mtc@setfeature@false
3092 \def\mtc@featparam@abbrev{X}
3093 \def\mtc@featparam@third{X}
3094 \mtcPackageError[<E0012>]{minitoc}%
3095 {\string\mtcsetfeature \space has a wrong second argument
3096 \MessageBreak
3097 (#2).
3098 \MessageBreak
3099 It should be a feature param
3100 \MessageBreak
3101 (before, after, pagestyle)}}%
3102 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
3103 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
3104 \else
3105 \edef\mtc@featparam@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@featureparam@#2}}
3106 \edef\mtc@featparam@third{\@nameuse{mtc@ft3@#2}}
3107 \fi

```

\if@mtc@setfeature@ The name of the effective macro is built by concatenating these three pieces (named  
 \mtc@tmpfeat@name \mtc@featparam@abbrev, \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev, and \mtc@featparam@third  
 \mtc@featparam@abbrev respectively), then this macro is executed:  
 \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev  
 \mtc@featparam@third

```

3108 \if@mtc@setfeature@
3109 \def\mtc@tmpfeat@name%
3110 {\mtc@featparam@abbrev\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev\mtc@featparam@third}
3111 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0014>]{minitoc}%
3112 {\string\mtcsetfeature\space redefines the macro\MessageBreak
3113 "\csname mtc@tmpfeat@name\endcsname" as\MessageBreak "\string#3"}

```

```

3114 \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmpfeat@name\endcsname{#3}
3115 \else
3116 \mtcPackageError[<E0023>]{minitoc}%
3117 {The macro \string\mtcsetfeature\space has incompatible\MessageBreak
3118 first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
3119 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
3120 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
3121 \fi}

```

### 8.66.9 The `\mtcsetdepth` command

This command is very similar to the `\mtcsettitle` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}
```



The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`. The *depth* is the depth for a mini-table. If it is a mini-table for a list of figures or tables, the corresponding depth counter *must be available*, i.e., must have been created (often by an adequate package, like the `subfig` package [83]).

`\if@mtc@setdepth@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
3122 \newif\if@mtc@setdepth@\@mtc@setdepth@true
```

`\mtcsetdepth` Then we define the `\mtcsetdepth` command, with two arguments:

```
3123 \newcommand{\mtcsetdepth}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtade@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `ltypetable` family. The result is stored in `\mtc@mtade@abbrev`:

`\if@mtc@setdepth@`

`\@nameuse`

```

3124 \def\mtc@mtade@abbrev{X}
3125 \@mtc@setdepth@true
3126 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@ltypetable@#1\endcsname\relax
3127 \@mtc@setdepth@false
3128 \def\mtc@mtade@abbrev{X}
3129 \mtcPackageError[<E0009>]{minitoc}%
3130 {\string\mtcsetdepth \space has a wrong first argument
3131 \MessageBreak (#1).
3132 \MessageBreak
3133 It should be a mini-table type
3134 \MessageBreak
3135 (parttoc...sectlot)}%
3136 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak

```



```

3137 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
3138 \else
3139 \edef\mtc@mtade@abbrev{\nameuse{mtc@ltypetable@#1}}
3140 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@setdepth@ And we construct the name of the effective counter and gave it the value:
\mtc@tmpde@name
\mtc@mtade@abbrev 3141 \if@mtc@setdepth@
\mtc@toks 3142 \def\mtc@tmpde@name{\mtc@mtade@abbrev depth}
\setcounter 3143 \expandafter\noexpand\@ifundefined{c@\mtc@mtade@abbrev depth}%
3144 {\mtcPackageError[<E0008>]{minitoc}%
3145 {\string\mtcsetdepth \space attempts to use\MessageBreak
3146 an undefined counter (#1depth).}%
3147 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
3148 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}}}%
3149 \mtc@toks{#2} % trick for explicit message using \the.
3150 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0013>]{minitoc}%
3151 {\string\mtcsetdepth\space redefines the counter\MessageBreak
3152 "\mtc@tmpde@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}%
3153 \expandafter\setcounter{\mtc@tmpde@name}{#2}}%
3154 \else
3155 \mtcPackageError[<E0010>]{minitoc}%
3156 {\string\mtcsetdepth:\space Illegal type of table (#1)}%
3157 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
3158 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
3159 \fi}% end of \mtcsettitle

```

## 8.67 The `mtchideinmaintoc` environment and siblings

`\if@mtc@Himtoc@` The flag `\if@mtc@Himtoc@` is used to detect an incorrect imbrication of this environment:

```

3160 \newif\if@mtc@Himtoc@ \@mtc@Himtoc@false

```

```

\mtc@savetocdepth We define a macro \mtc@savetocdepth to save the current value of the counter
\mtc@restoretocdepth tocdepth. Then we define this environment, which inserts into the TOC file this com-
mtchideinmaintoc mand and commands of the form \setcounter{tocdepth}{...}. Note that \xdef is
\if@mtc@Himtoc@ necessary! It also save and restore the value of the counter tocdepth, as the optional
\mtc@sv@tocdepth argument is the hiding depth of the entries in the main TOC.
\arabic
\addtocontents 3161 \newcommand{\mtc@savetocdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}}%
\setcounter 3162 \newcommand{\mtc@restoretocdepth}{\setcounter{tocdepth}{\mtc@sv@tocdepth}}%
3163 \newenvironment{mtchideinmaintoc}[1][-1]%
3164 {\if@mtc@Himtoc@\mtcPackageError[<E0005>]{minitoc}%
3165 {Imbrication of mtchideinmaintoc environments}%
3166 {The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect}\fi

```

```

3167 \global\@mtc@Himtoc@true
3168 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
3169 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
3170 {\if@mtc@Himtoc@else\mtcPackageError[<E0031>]{minitoc}%
3171 {Unbalanced mtchideinmaintoc environment}%
3172 {The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect}\fi
3173 \global\@mtc@Himtoc@false
3174 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}%

```

\AtBeginDocument The mtchideinmainlof and mtchideinmainlot environments are similar, but we must verify the presence of the associated depth counter, so we have two versions of each of these environments. This must be done *after* the loading of the packages.

```

\mtc@sv@lofdepth
\mtc@sv@tocdepth First, for the list of figures:
\mtc@svf@tocdepth
\arabic 3175 \newif\if@mtc@Himlof@ \@mtc@Himlof@false
\addtocontents 3176 \AtBeginDocument{%
\setcounter 3177 \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{%
3178 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
3179 {\if@mtc@Himlof@\mtcPackageError[<E0003>]{minitoc}%
3180 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments}%
3181 {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
3182 \global\@mtc@Himlof@true
3183 \def\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
3184 \def\mtc@sv@lofdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
3185 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
3186 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
3187 {\if@mtc@Himlof@else\mtcPackageError[<E0029>]{minitoc}%
3188 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment}%
3189 {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
3190 \global\@mtc@Himtoc@false
3191 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}%
3192 }}%
3193 {%
3194 \newcommand{\mtc@savelofdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@lofdepth{\arabic{lofdepth}}}%
3195 \newcommand{\mtc@restorelofdepth}{\setcounter{lofdepth}{\mtc@sv@lofdepth}}%
3196 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
3197 {\if@mtc@Himlof@\mtcPackageError[<E0003>]{minitoc}%
3198 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments}%
3199 {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
3200 \global\@mtc@Himlof@true
3201 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@savelofdepth}%
3202 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
3203 {\if@mtc@Himlof@else\mtcPackageError[<E0029>]{minitoc}%
3204 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment}%
3205 {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
3206 \global\@mtc@Himlof@false
3207 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}}%

```

```

\AtBeginDocument Then for the list of tables:
\if@mtc@Himlot@
mtchideinmainlot 3208 \newif\if@mtc@Himlot@ \@mtc@Himlot@false
\mtc@sv@lotdepth 3209 \AtBeginDocument{%
\mtc@sv@tocdepth 3210 \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{%
\mtc@svt@tocdepth 3211 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
3212 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\mtcPackageError[<E0004>]{minitoc}%
\arabic 3213 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments}%
\addtocontents 3214 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
\setcounter 3215 \global\@mtc@Himlot@true
3216 \def\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
3217 \def\mtc@sv@lotdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
3218 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
3219 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
3220 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\else\mtcPackageError[<E0030>]{minitoc}%
3221 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment}%
3222 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
3223 \global\@mtc@Himlot@false
3224 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}%
3225 }}%
3226 {%
3227 \newcommand{\mtc@savelotdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@lotdepth{\arabic{lotdepth}}}%
3228 \newcommand{\mtc@restorelotdepth}{\setcounter{lotdepth}{\mtc@sv@lotdepth}}%
3229 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
3230 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\mtcPackageError[<E0004>]{minitoc}%
3231 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments}%
3232 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
3233 \global\@mtc@Himlot@true
3234 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@savelotdepth}%
3235 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\setcounter{lotdepth}{#1}}}%
3236 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\else\mtcPackageError[<E0030>]{minitoc}%
3237 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment}%
3238 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
3239 \global\@mtc@Himlot@false
3240 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@restorelotdepth}}}

```

## 8.68 Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixglossary[part|chapter|section]
```

\@ifundefined Depending of the document class, the “Glossary” entry in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro \mtc@glofix@level. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

```

3241 \ifundefined{chapter}{%
3242 \ifundefined{section}%
3243 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0001>]{minitoc}%
3244 {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
3245 \MessageBreak Cannot use \string\mtcfixglossary \space
3246 without\MessageBreak optional argument [part]}}%
3247 \@ifundefined{part}%
3248 {\mtcPackageError[<E0001>]{minitoc}%
3249 {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
3250 {\string\mtcfixglossary\space not usable}}}%
3251 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0006>]{minitoc}%
3252 {\string\mtcfixglossary\space can only be used\MessageBreak
3253 with the [part] optional argument,\MessageBreak
3254 which becomes the default}}%
3255 \def\mtc@glofix@level{part}%
3256 }%
3257 {\def\mtc@glofix@level{section}}}%
3258 {\def\mtc@glofix@level{chapter}}

```

\if@mtcfixglossary@ Then we define a flag (\if@mtcfixglossary@) and the command \mtcfixglossary, which adds the necessary lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT.  
 \mtcfixglossary  
 \addcontentsline

```

3259 \newif\if@mtcfixglossary@ \mtcfixglossary@false
3260 \newcommand{\mtcfixglossary}[1][\mtc@glofix@level]{%
3261 \mtcfixglossary@false
3262 \expandafter%
3263 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\mtcfixglossary@true\fi
3264 \expandafter%
3265 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\mtcfixglossary@true\fi
3266 \expandafter%
3267 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\mtcfixglossary@true\fi
3268 \if@mtcfixglossary@
3269 \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@glofix@level}{}%
3270 \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@glofix@level}{}%
3271 \csname mtcadd\mtc@glofix@level\endcsname\relax
3272 \else
3273 \mtcPackageError[<E0026>]{minitoc}%
3274 {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixglossary
3275 \MessageBreak
3276 is wrong}%
3277 {It must be omitted (\mtc@glofix@level),
3278 or be part, chapter or section}%
3279 \fi
3280 }%

```

## 8.69 Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

`\mtcfixindex[part|chapter|section]`

`\@ifundefined` Depending of the document class, the “Index” entry in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the `\mtc@ixfix@level` optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro `\mtc@ixfix@level`. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

```

3281 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
3282 \@ifundefined{section}%
3283 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0002>]{minitoc}%
3284 {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
3285 \MessageBreak Cannot use \string\mtcfixindex \space
3286 without\MessageBreak optional argument [part]}}%
3287 \@ifundefined{part}%
3288 {\mtcPackageError[<E0002>]{minitoc}%
3289 {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
3290 {\string\mtcfixindex\space not usable}}%
3291 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0007>]{minitoc}%
3292 {\string\mtcfixindex\space can only be used with\MessageBreak
3293 the [part] optional argument,\MessageBreak
3294 which becomes the default}}%
3295 \def\mtc@ixfix@level{part}%
3296 }%
3297 {\def\mtc@ixfix@level{section}}}%
3298 {\def\mtc@ixfix@level{chapter}}
```

`\if@mtcfixindex@` Then we define a flag and the command `\mtcfixindex`, which adds the necessary lines  
`\mtcfixindex` in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT.  
`\addcontentsline`

```

3299 \newif\if@mtcfixindex@ \@mtcfixindex@false
3300 \newcommand{\mtcfixindex}[1][\mtc@ixfix@level]{%
3301 \@mtcfixindex@false
3302 \expandafter%
3303 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
3304 \expandafter%
3305 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
3306 \expandafter%
3307 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
3308 \if@mtcfixindex@
3309 \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@ixfix@level}{}%
3310 \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@ixfix@level}{}%
3311 \csname mtcadd\mtc@ixfix@level\endcsname\relax
3312 \else
3313 \mtcPackageError[<E0027>]{minitoc}%

```

```

3314 {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixindex
3315 \MessageBreak
3316 is wrong}%
3317 {It must be omitted (\mtc@ixfix@level),
3318 or be part, chapter or section}%
3319 \fi
3320 }%

```

## 8.70 The \mtcselectlanguage command

`\mtcselectlanguage` This command loads a minitoc language definition file *language.mld* to set the language-dependent titles for the mini-tables. But first, we verify that this file exists. The flag `\if@mtc@insellang@` `\IfFileExists` `\if@mtc@insellang@` is true while we are in this macro.

```

\@input
3321 \newif\if@mtc@insellang@ \@mtc@insellang@false
3322 \def\mtcselectlanguage#1{%
3323 \InputIfFileExists{#1.mld}%
3324 {\mtcPackageInfo[<I0010>]{minitoc}{The #1 language is selected.%
3325 \MessageBreak}}%
3326 {\mtcPackageError[<E0006>]{minitoc}%
3327 {#1 is not a known language, \MessageBreak
3328 #1.mld not found. \MessageBreak
3329 Command ignored}}%
3330 {See the minitoc documentation. \MessageBreak
3331 Correct the source using a valid language name. \MessageBreak
3332 Press RETURN}}%
3333 }

```

## 8.71 The \mtcloadmlo internal command

`\mtcloadmlo` This command loads a minitoc language object file *language.mlo* to set the language-dependent titles for the mini-tables when exotic characters are needed. This command is used only in some .mld files when the title strings can not be generated by the normal processing of minitoc.dtx. The .mlo files are generated by filecontents environments in the minitoc.ins file. But first, we verify that this .mlo file exists.



This command should not be directly invoked by the user. This is verified via the flag `\if@mtc@insellang@`.

```

3334 \def\mtcloadmlo#1{%
3335 \if@mtc@insellang@
3336 \InputIfFileExists{#1.mlo}%
3337 {\mtcPackageInfo[<I0011>]{minitoc}%
3338 {#1 minitoc language object selected.\MessageBreak}}%
3339 {\mtcPackageError[<E0007>]{minitoc}%

```

```

3340 {#1 is not a known minitoc\MessageBreak
3341 language object file (.mlo), \MessageBreak
3342 #1.mlo not found. \MessageBreak
3343 Command ignored}%
3344 {See the minitoc documentation. \MessageBreak
3345 Correct the source using a valid language name. \MessageBreak
3346 Press RETURN}}%
3347 \else
3348 \mtcPackageError[<E0032>]{minitoc}%
3349 {You are using the \string\mtcloadmlo\space command\MessageBreak
3350 outside of a .mld file}%
3351 {It will be ignored}
3352 \@mtc@insellang@false
3353 \fi
3354 }

```

## 8.72 The “coffee breaks”

`\addcoffeeline` For the minutes package [139] (by Knut LICKERT), we need some commands to insert special entries, undotted, in the TOC to mark “coffee breaks” ☕ in a conference. Hence `\addtocontents` we define `\addcoffeeline`, `\coffeeline` and `\l@coffee`, and internal commands `\coffeeline` `\l@coffee` analog to the standard internal commands to format the TOC.

```

\@Undottedtocline
3355 \def\addcoffeeline#1#2#3{%
3356 \addtocontents{#1}{\protect\coffeeline{#2}{#3}{\null}}}
3357 \def\coffeeline#1{\csname l@#1\endcsname}
3358 \newcommand*\l@coffee{\@Undottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}

```

## 8.73 Initialization of counters

`\AtBeginDocument` At the beginning of the document, we initialize the absolute counters for parts, chapters and sections, if they are defined.

```

\@ifundefined
\setcounter
3359 \AtBeginDocument{%
3360 \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{}{\setcounter{ptc}{0}}
3361 \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{}{\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
3362 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{}{\setcounter{stc}{0}}}

```

## 8.74 Declarations for simple options

These options are just setting a flag.

### 8.74.1 Options **tight** and **loose**, **k-tight** and **k-loose**

```
\DeclareOption These options influence the interline separation in the mini-tables.
 \iftightmtc
 \kiftightmtc 3363 \DeclareOption{tight}{\tightmtctrue}
 3364 \DeclareOption{loose}{\tightmtcfalse} % default
 3365 \DeclareOption{k-tight}{\ktightmtctrue}
 3366 \DeclareOption{k-loose}{\ktightmtcfalse} % default
```

### 8.74.2 Options **checkfiles** and **nocheckfiles**

```
\DeclareOption These options activate or inhibit the checking for empty mini-table files.
\if@mtc@checkfiles
 3367 \DeclareOption{checkfiles}{\@mtc@checkfilestrue} % default
 3368 \DeclareOption{nocheckfiles}{\@mtc@checkfilesfalse}
```

### 8.74.3 Options **dotted** and **undotted**

```
\DeclareOption These options activate or inhibit the leaders (lines of dots) in the mini-tables.
\ifundottedmtc
 3369 \DeclareOption{undotted}{\undottedmtctrue}
 3370 \DeclareOption{dotted}{\undottedmtcfalse} % default
```

### 8.74.4 Option **notoccite**

This option will later load the notoccite package [7].

```
\DeclareOption
\if@mtc@notoccite@
 3371 \DeclareOption{notoccite}{\@mtc@notoccite@true}
```

### 8.74.5 Option **shorttext**

```
\DeclareOption This option forces the use of short extensions.
\if@longextensions@
 3372 \DeclareOption{shorttext}{\@longextensions@false}
 3373 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0020>]{minitoc}%
 3374 {You have forced the use of short extensions}}
```



## 8.75 The `insection` option

`\if@mtc@ss@insection@` This option is available only if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` defined. It is to  
`\@ifundefined` be revised when chapter/section level commands will ever be allowed together, sometime  
`\DeclareOption` in the far away future.

```
3375 \newif\if@mtc@ss@insection@ \@mtc@ss@insection@false
3376 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
3377 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
3378 {%
3379 \DeclareOption{insection}%
3380 {\@mtc@ss@insection@true}%
3381 }%
3382 {}}
```

## 8.76 The `listfiles` and `nolistfiles` options

`\if@mtc@listfiles@` The `listfiles` option creates a file containing a list of the auxiliary files created by  
`\DeclareOption` the minitoc package. This file is named `<document>.maf`. The `nolistfiles` option  
inhibits this listing (default).

```
3383 \newif\if@mtc@listfiles@ \@mtc@listfiles@false
3384 \DeclareOption{listfiles}{\@mtc@listfiles@true}
3385 \DeclareOption{nolistfiles}{\@mtc@listfiles@false}
```

## 8.77 Language options

`\DeclareOption` Each language option reads the corresponding `language.mld` file via the specialized  
`\mtcselectlanguage` macro `\mtcselectlanguage`. If the file does not exist, a standard error message is  
displayed. The language options are (should be) in alphabetical order (to make maintenance easier). Several options could load the same file, but, by convention, there should  
be a `language.mld` file for each language option, given that this file can load another one  
(as `american.mld` loads `english.mld`).

```
3386 \DeclareOption{acadian}{\mtcselectlanguage{acadian}}%
3387 \DeclareOption{acadien}{\mtcselectlanguage{acadien}}%
3388 \DeclareOption{afrikaan}{\mtcselectlanguage{afrikaan}}%
3389 \DeclareOption{afrikaans}{\mtcselectlanguage{afrikaans}}%
3390 \DeclareOption{albanian}{\mtcselectlanguage{albanian}}%
3391 \DeclareOption{american}{\mtcselectlanguage{american}}%
3392 \DeclareOption{arab}{\mtcselectlanguage{arab}}%
3393 \DeclareOption{arab2}{\mtcselectlanguage{arab2}}%
3394 \DeclareOption{arabic}{\mtcselectlanguage{arabic}}%
```

```

3395 \DeclareOption{armenian}{\mtcselectlanguage{armenian}}%
3396 \DeclareOption{australian}{\mtcselectlanguage{australian}}%
3397 \DeclareOption{austrian}{\mtcselectlanguage{austrian}}%
3398 \DeclareOption{bahasa}{\mtcselectlanguage{bahasa}}%
3399 \DeclareOption{bahasai}{\mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}}%
3400 \DeclareOption{bahasam}{\mtcselectlanguage{bahasam}}%
3401 \DeclareOption{bangla}{\mtcselectlanguage{bangla}}%
3402 \DeclareOption{basque}{\mtcselectlanguage{basque}}%
3403 \DeclareOption{bicig}{\mtcselectlanguage{bicig}}%
3404 \DeclareOption{bicig2}{\mtcselectlanguage{bicig2}}%
3405 \DeclareOption{bicig3}{\mtcselectlanguage{bicig3}}%
3406 \DeclareOption{bihe}{\mtcselectlanguage{bihe}}%
3407 \DeclareOption{brazil}{\mtcselectlanguage{brazil}}%
3408 \DeclareOption{brazilian}{\mtcselectlanguage{brazilian}}%
3409 \DeclareOption{breton}{\mtcselectlanguage{breton}}%
3410 \DeclareOption{british}{\mtcselectlanguage{british}}%
3411 \DeclareOption{bulgarian}{\mtcselectlanguage{bulgarian}}%
3412 \DeclareOption{bulgarianb}{\mtcselectlanguage{bulgarianb}}%
3413 \DeclareOption{buryat}{\mtcselectlanguage{buryat}}%
3414 \DeclareOption{buryat2}{\mtcselectlanguage{buryat2}}%
3415 \DeclareOption{canadian}{\mtcselectlanguage{canadian}}%
3416 \DeclareOption{canadien}{\mtcselectlanguage{canadien}}%
3417 \DeclareOption{castillan}{\mtcselectlanguage{castillan}}%
3418 \DeclareOption{castillian}{\mtcselectlanguage{castillian}}%
3419 \DeclareOption{catalan}{\mtcselectlanguage{catalan}}%
3420 \DeclareOption{chinese1}{\mtcselectlanguage{chinese1}}%
3421 \DeclareOption{chinese2}{\mtcselectlanguage{chinese2}}%
3422 \DeclareOption{croatian}{\mtcselectlanguage{croatian}}%
3423 \DeclareOption{czech}{\mtcselectlanguage{czech}}%
3424 \DeclareOption{danish}{\mtcselectlanguage{danish}}%
3425 \DeclareOption{dutch}{\mtcselectlanguage{dutch}}%
3426 \DeclareOption{english}{\mtcselectlanguage{english}}%
3427 \DeclareOption{english1}{\mtcselectlanguage{english1}}%
3428 \DeclareOption{english2}{\mtcselectlanguage{english2}}%
3429 \DeclareOption{esperant}{\mtcselectlanguage{esperant}}%
3430 \DeclareOption{esperanto}{\mtcselectlanguage{esperanto}}%
3431 \DeclareOption{estonian}{\mtcselectlanguage{estonian}}%
3432 \DeclareOption{ethiopia}{\mtcselectlanguage{ethiopia}}%
3433 \DeclareOption{ethiopian}{\mtcselectlanguage{ethiopian}}%
3434 \DeclareOption{ethiopian2}{\mtcselectlanguage{ethiopian2}}%
3435 \DeclareOption{farsi1}{\mtcselectlanguage{farsi1}}%
3436 \DeclareOption{farsi2}{\mtcselectlanguage{farsi2}}%
3437 \DeclareOption{finnish}{\mtcselectlanguage{finnish}}%
3438 \DeclareOption{finnish2}{\mtcselectlanguage{finnish2}}%
3439 \DeclareOption{français}{\mtcselectlanguage{français}}%
3440 \DeclareOption{french}{\mtcselectlanguage{french}}%
3441 \DeclareOption{french1}{\mtcselectlanguage{french1}}%
3442 \DeclareOption{french2}{\mtcselectlanguage{french2}}%
3443 \DeclareOption{frenchb}{\mtcselectlanguage{frenchb}}%
3444 \DeclareOption{frenchle}{\mtcselectlanguage{frenchle}}%
3445 \DeclareOption{frenchpro}{\mtcselectlanguage{frenchpro}}%
3446 \DeclareOption{galician}{\mtcselectlanguage{galician}}%
3447 \DeclareOption{german}{\mtcselectlanguage{german}}%
3448 \DeclareOption{germanb}{\mtcselectlanguage{germanb}}%

```

```

3449 \DeclareOption{germanb2}{\mtcselectlanguage{germanb2}}%
3450 \DeclareOption{greek}{\mtcselectlanguage{greek}}%
3451 \DeclareOption{greek-mono}{\mtcselectlanguage{greek-mono}}%
3452 \DeclareOption{greek-polydemo}{\mtcselectlanguage{greek-polydemo}}%
3453 \DeclareOption{greek-polykatha}{\mtcselectlanguage{greek-polykatha}}%
3454 \DeclareOption{guarani}{\mtcselectlanguage{guarani}}%
3455 \DeclareOption{hangul1}{\mtcselectlanguage{hangul1}}%
3456 \DeclareOption{hangul2}{\mtcselectlanguage{hangul2}}%
3457 \DeclareOption{hangul3}{\mtcselectlanguage{hangul3}}%
3458 \DeclareOption{hangul4}{\mtcselectlanguage{hangul4}}%
3459 \DeclareOption{hangul-u8}{\mtcselectlanguage{hangul-u8}}%
3460 \DeclareOption{hanja1}{\mtcselectlanguage{hanja1}}%
3461 \DeclareOption{hanja2}{\mtcselectlanguage{hanja2}}%
3462 \DeclareOption{hanja-u8}{\mtcselectlanguage{hanja-u8}}%
3463 \DeclareOption{hebrew}{\mtcselectlanguage{hebrew}}%
3464 \DeclareOption{hebrew2}{\mtcselectlanguage{hebrew2}}%
3465 \DeclareOption{hungarian}{\mtcselectlanguage{hungarian}}%
3466 \DeclareOption{icelandic}{\mtcselectlanguage{icelandic}}%
3467 \DeclareOption{indon}{\mtcselectlanguage{indon}}%
3468 \DeclareOption{indonesian}{\mtcselectlanguage{indonesian}}%
3469 \DeclareOption{interlingua}{\mtcselectlanguage{interlingua}}%
3470 \DeclareOption{irish}{\mtcselectlanguage{irish}}%
3471 \DeclareOption{italian}{\mtcselectlanguage{italian}}%
3472 \DeclareOption{italian2}{\mtcselectlanguage{italian2}}%
3473 \DeclareOption{japanese}{\mtcselectlanguage{japanese}}%
3474 \DeclareOption{japanese2}{\mtcselectlanguage{japanese2}}%
3475 \DeclareOption{japanese3}{\mtcselectlanguage{japanese3}}%
3476 \DeclareOption{japanese4}{\mtcselectlanguage{japanese4}}%
3477 \DeclareOption{japanese5}{\mtcselectlanguage{japanese5}}%
3478 \DeclareOption{kannada}{\mtcselectlanguage{kannada}}%
3479 \DeclareOption{khalkha}{\mtcselectlanguage{khalkha}}%
3480 \DeclareOption{latin}{\mtcselectlanguage{latin}}%
3481 \DeclareOption{latin2}{\mtcselectlanguage{latin2}}%
3482 \DeclareOption{latvian}{\mtcselectlanguage{latvian}}%
3483 \DeclareOption{letton}{\mtcselectlanguage{letton}}%
3484 \DeclareOption{lithuanian}{\mtcselectlanguage{lithuanian}}%
3485 \DeclareOption{lowersorbian}{\mtcselectlanguage{lowersorbian}}%
3486 \DeclareOption{lsorbian}{\mtcselectlanguage{lsorbian}}%
3487 \DeclareOption{magyar}{\mtcselectlanguage{magyar}}%
3488 \DeclareOption{magyar2}{\mtcselectlanguage{magyar2}}%
3489 \DeclareOption{magyar3}{\mtcselectlanguage{magyar3}}%
3490 \DeclareOption{malay}{\mtcselectlanguage{malay}}%
3491 \DeclareOption{malayalam-keli}{\mtcselectlanguage{malayalam-keli}}%
3492 \DeclareOption{malayalam-omega}{\mtcselectlanguage{malayalam-omega}}%
3493 \DeclareOption{malayalam-rachana}{\mtcselectlanguage{malayalam-rachana}}%
3494 \DeclareOption{malayalam-rachana2}{\mtcselectlanguage{malayalam-rachana2}}%
3495 \DeclareOption{manju}{\mtcselectlanguage{manju}}%
3496 \DeclareOption{meyalu}{\mtcselectlanguage{meyalu}}%
3497 \DeclareOption{mongol}{\mtcselectlanguage{mongol}}%
3498 \DeclareOption{naustrian}{\mtcselectlanguage{naustrian}}%
3499 \DeclareOption{newzealand}{\mtcselectlanguage{newzealand}}%
3500 \DeclareOption{ngerman}{\mtcselectlanguage{ngerman}}%
3501 \DeclareOption{ngermanb}{\mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb}}%
3502 \DeclareOption{ngermanb2}{\mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb2}}%

```

```

3503 \DeclareOption{norsk}{\mtcselectlanguage{norsk}}%
3504 \DeclareOption{norsk2}{\mtcselectlanguage{norsk2}}%
3505 \DeclareOption{nynorsk2}{\mtcselectlanguage{nynorsk2}}%
3506 \DeclareOption{polish}{\mtcselectlanguage{polish}}%
3507 \DeclareOption{polish2}{\mtcselectlanguage{polish2}}%
3508 \DeclareOption{polski}{\mtcselectlanguage{polski}}%
3509 \DeclareOption{portuges}{\mtcselectlanguage{portuges}}%
3510 \DeclareOption{portuguese}{\mtcselectlanguage{portuguese}}%
3511 \DeclareOption{romanian}{\mtcselectlanguage{romanian}}%
3512 \DeclareOption{romanian2}{\mtcselectlanguage{romanian2}}%
3513 \DeclareOption{romanian3}{\mtcselectlanguage{romanian3}}%
3514 \DeclareOption{russian}{\mtcselectlanguage{russian}}%
3515 \DeclareOption{russianb}{\mtcselectlanguage{russianb}}%
3516 \DeclareOption{russianc}{\mtcselectlanguage{russianc}}%
3517 \DeclareOption{russian2m}{\mtcselectlanguage{russian2m}}%
3518 \DeclareOption{russian2o}{\mtcselectlanguage{russian2o}}%
3519 \DeclareOption{russian-cca}{\mtcselectlanguage{russian-cca}}%
3520 \DeclareOption{russian-cca1}{\mtcselectlanguage{russian-cca1}}%
3521 \DeclareOption{russian-lh}{\mtcselectlanguage{russian-lh}}%
3522 \DeclareOption{russian-lhcyralt}{\mtcselectlanguage{russian-lhcyralt}}%
3523 \DeclareOption{russian-lhcyrkoi}{\mtcselectlanguage{russian-lhcyrkoi}}%
3524 \DeclareOption{russian-lhcyrwin}{\mtcselectlanguage{russian-lhcyrwin}}%
3525 \DeclareOption{samin}{\mtcselectlanguage{samin}}%
3526 \DeclareOption{scottish}{\mtcselectlanguage{scottish}}%
3527 \DeclareOption{serbian}{\mtcselectlanguage{serbian}}%
3528 \DeclareOption{serbianc}{\mtcselectlanguage{serbianc}}%
3529 \DeclareOption{slovak}{\mtcselectlanguage{slovak}}%
3530 \DeclareOption{slovene}{\mtcselectlanguage{slovene}}%
3531 \DeclareOption{spanish}{\mtcselectlanguage{spanish}}%
3532 \DeclareOption{spanish2}{\mtcselectlanguage{spanish2}}%
3533 \DeclareOption{spanish3}{\mtcselectlanguage{spanish3}}%
3534 \DeclareOption{spanish4}{\mtcselectlanguage{spanish4}}%
3535 \DeclareOption{swedish}{\mtcselectlanguage{swedish}}%
3536 \DeclareOption{swedish2}{\mtcselectlanguage{swedish2}}%
3537 \DeclareOption{thai}{\mtcselectlanguage{thai}}%
3538 \DeclareOption{turkish}{\mtcselectlanguage{turkish}}%
3539 \DeclareOption{uighur}{\mtcselectlanguage{uighur}}%
3540 \DeclareOption{uighur2}{\mtcselectlanguage{uighur2}}%
3541 \DeclareOption{uighur3}{\mtcselectlanguage{uighur3}}%
3542 \DeclareOption{UKenglish}{\mtcselectlanguage{UKenglish}}%
3543 \DeclareOption{ukraineb}{\mtcselectlanguage{ukraineb}}%
3544 \DeclareOption{ukrainian}{\mtcselectlanguage{ukrainian}}%
3545 \DeclareOption{uppersorbian}{\mtcselectlanguage{uppersorbian}}%
3546 \DeclareOption{USenglish}{\mtcselectlanguage{USenglish}}%
3547 \DeclareOption{usorbian}{\mtcselectlanguage{usorbian}}%
3548 \DeclareOption{vietnam}{\mtcselectlanguage{vietnam}}%
3549 \DeclareOption{vietnamese}{\mtcselectlanguage{vietnamese}}%
3550 \DeclareOption{welsh}{\mtcselectlanguage{welsh}}%
3551 \DeclareOption{xalx}{\mtcselectlanguage{xalx}}%
3552 \DeclareOption{xalx2}{\mtcselectlanguage{xalx2}}%
3553 \DeclareOption{xalx3}{\mtcselectlanguage{xalx3}}%

```

## 8.78 The hints option

`\DeclareOption` We declare the hints (default) and nohints options:  
`\if@mtc@hints@`

```
3554 \DeclareOption{hints}{\@mtc@hints@true}
3555 \DeclareOption{nohints}{\@mtc@hints@false}
```

`\mtc@hints@begindoc` The hints option is made of three parts: the first, `\mtc@hints@begindoc`, is executed  
`\AtBeginDocument` via `\AtBeginDocument` and looks if some packages or classes are loaded and gives warnings about their compatibility with minitoc.

The second part is made of tiny pieces of code inserted in the minitoc code, to verify that some macros are called in the right order.

`\mtc@hints@enddoc` The third and last part, `\mtc@hints@enddoc`, is executed via `\AtEndDocument` and  
`\AtEndDocument` examines some flags set by the first and the second parts. Then, if necessary, it writes some infos in the .log file and/or warnings on the screen and in the .log file. Note that the hints option does not signal errors, only infos and warnings, so it does not stop the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X run.

### 8.78.1 First part: `\mtc@hints@begindoc`

`\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@` We declare some flags and the first part of the hints option (for `\AtBeginDocument`):  
`\mtc@hints@begindoc`

```
\if@mtc@toc@used@ 3556 \newif\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@ \@mtc@abstract@loaded@false
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 3557 \newif\if@mtc@toc@used@ \global\@mtc@toc@used@false
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 3558 \newif\if@mtc@lof@used@ \global\@mtc@lof@used@false
3559 \newif\if@mtc@lot@used@ \global\@mtc@lot@used@false
3560 \def\mtc@hints@begindoc{%
3561 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0049>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3562 {==> You requested the hints option\MessageBreak
3563 Some hints are eventually given below\@gobble}%
```

#### 8.78.1.1 Hint about the alphanum package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the alphanum package (part of the jura class [76]), and emit a  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` warning, because this package is incompatible with minitoc:

```
3564 \@ifpackageloaded{alphanum}%
3565 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3566 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0025>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3567 {--- The alphanum package is loaded. \MessageBreak
3568 It is incompatible\MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}}%
```

**8.78.1.2 Hint about the appendix package**

```

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the appendix package [196]:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
3569 \@ifpackageloaded{appendix}{%
3570 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3571 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0042>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3572 {--- The appendix package is loaded. \MessageBreak
3573 See the minitoc package documentation\MessageBreak
3574 for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

**8.78.1.3 Hint about the tocibind package**

```

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the tocibind package [197]:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
3575 \@ifpackageloaded{tocibind}%
3576 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3577 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0046>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3578 {--- The tocibind package is loaded. \MessageBreak
3579 See the minitoc package documentation\MessageBreak
3580 for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

**8.78.1.4 Hint about the KOMA-Script classes**

```

\@ifclassloaded We test the presence of each minitoc-compatible KOMA-Script class [157]:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
3581 \@ifclassloaded{scrbook}%
3582 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3583 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0043>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3584 {--- The KOMAScript scrbook class is loaded. \MessageBreak
3585 See the minitoc package documentation\MessageBreak
3586 for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
3587 \@ifclassloaded{scrreprt}%
3588 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3589 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0043>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3590 {--- The KOMAScript scrreprt class is loaded. \MessageBreak
3591 See the minitoc package documentation\MessageBreak
3592 for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
3593 \@ifclassloaded{scrartcl}%
3594 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3595 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0043>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3596 {--- The KOMAScript scrartcl class is loaded. \MessageBreak
3597 See the minitoc package documentation\MessageBreak
3598 for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

**8.78.1.5 Hint about the tocloft package**

```

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the tocloft package [194]:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
3599 \@ifpackageloaded{tocloft}%
3600 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3601 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0047>]{minitoc(hints)}}%
3602 {--- The tocloft package is loaded. \MessageBreak
3603 See the minitoc package documentation\MessageBreak
3604 for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

**8.78.1.6 Hint about the titletoc package**

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the titletoc package [26], and emit a warning, because this package is incompatible with minitoc:

```

3605 \@ifpackageloaded{titletoc}%
3606 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3607 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0040>]{minitoc(hints)}}%
3608 {--- The titletoc package is loaded. \MessageBreak
3609 It is incompatible\MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}}%

```

**8.78.1.7 Hint about the placeins package**

\@ifpackageloaded We test if the placeins package [8] is loaded and, if yes, we check that the right options are selected:

```

\if@mtc@ss@insection@
 \@ifpackagewith
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 3610 \@ifpackageloaded{placeins}%
3611 {\if@mtc@ss@insection@
3612 \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{section}}}%
3613 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3614 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0031>]{minitoc(hints)}}%
3615 {--- The placeins package is loaded
3616 \MessageBreak
3617 without the section option,
3618 \MessageBreak
3619 but minitoc used the insection option
3620 \MessageBreak
3621 which implies it. Try to inverse the
3622 \MessageBreak
3623 loading order and use coherent options.
3624 \MessageBreak
3625 You may have got a message\MessageBreak
3626 ! LaTeX Error: Option clash for package placeins}%
3627 }%
3628 \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{above}%

```

```

3629 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3630 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0084>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3631 {--- The placeins package is loaded
3632 \MessageBreak
3633 with the above option,
3634 \MessageBreak
3635 but minitoc used the insection option
3636 \MessageBreak
3637 which is incompatible with it.
3638 \MessageBreak
3639 Try to remove the above option
3640 \MessageBreak
3641 and use coherent options}%
3642 }{}%
3643 \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{below}%
3644 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3645 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0085>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3646 {--- The placeins package is loaded
3647 \MessageBreak
3648 with the below option,
3649 \MessageBreak
3650 but minitoc used the insection option
3651 \MessageBreak
3652 which is incompatible with it.
3653 \MessageBreak
3654 Try to remove the below option
3655 \MessageBreak
3656 and use coherent options}%
3657 }{}%
3658 \fi
3659 \@ifpackagelater{placeins}{2005/04/18}{}{}%
3660 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3661 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0032>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3662 {--- The placeins package loaded is
3663 \MessageBreak
3664 too old. It should have a version
3665 \MessageBreak
3666 date of 2005/04/18 at least}%
3667 }%
3668 }{}%

```

### 8.78.1.8 Hint about the memoir class

\@ifclassloaded We test if the memoir class [200, 201] is loaded:  
\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

3669 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}%
3670 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3671 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0044>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3672 {--- The memoir class is loaded. \MessageBreak
3673 See the minitoc package documentation\MessageBreak
3674 for specific precautions\@gobble}{}%

```



```
3675 }{}%
```

### 8.78.1.9 Hint about the amsart and amsproc classes

`\@ifclassloaded` We test if the amsart or amsproc class is loaded and emit a warning, because these  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` classes are incompatible with minitoc:

```
3676 \@ifclassloaded{amsart}%
3677 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3678 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0026>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3679 {--- The amsart class is loaded. \MessageBreak
3680 It is incompatible\MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}{}%
3681 \@ifclassloaded{amsproc}%
3682 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3683 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0027>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3684 {--- The amsproc class is loaded. \MessageBreak
3685 It is incompatible\MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}{}%
```

### 8.78.1.10 Hint about the amsbook class

`\@ifclassloaded` We test if the amsbook class is loaded:  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```
3686 \@ifclassloaded{amsbook}%
3687 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3688 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0041>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3689 {--- The amsbook class is loaded. \MessageBreak
3690 See the minitoc package documentation\MessageBreak
3691 for specific precautions\@gobble}}{}%
3692 }{}%
```

### 8.78.1.11 Hint about the abstract package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the abstract package [195], then its options:  
`\@ifpackagewith`  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```
3693 \@ifpackageloaded{abstract}%
3694 {\@mtc@abstract@loaded@true%
3695 \@ifpackagewith{abstract}{addtotoc}%
3696 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3697 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0040>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3698 {The ‘‘abstract’’ package has been\MessageBreak
3699 loaded with the ‘‘addtotoc’’ option.\MessageBreak
3700 You need to look at the\MessageBreak
3701 documentation to adjust.
3702 \MessageBreak}
3703 }{}%
```

**8.78.1.12 Hint about the jura class**

`\@ifclassloaded` We test if the `jura` class is loaded and emit a warning, because this class is incompatible  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` with `minitoc`:

```

3704 \@ifclassloaded{jura}%
3705 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3706 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0029>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3707 {--- The jura class is loaded. \MessageBreak
3708 It is incompatible\MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}}%

```

**8.78.1.13 Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands**

`\part` To check if the sectionning commands `\part`, `\chapter` or `\section` have  
`\chapter` been altered by some package or in the preamble, we compare them (when  
`\section` executing a `\AtBeginDocument` block) with their saved versions (saved by the  
`\AtBeginDocument` `minitoc` package when it is loaded) `\mtc@hints@part`, `\mtc@hints@chapter`  
`\mtc@hints@part` and `\mtc@hints@section`. For each sectionning command, we must perform the  
`\mtc@hints@chapter` comparaison for the command itself, its unstarred branch and its starred branch. But the  
`\mtc@hints@section` `hyperref` package [172] may interfere, hence the formal precautions in the messages.

**8.78.1.13.1 Alteration of `\part` :**

`\if@mtc@hints@w@` We check the alteration of `\part`, `\@part` and `\@spart`:  
`\@ifundefined`

```

\part 3709 \@mtc@hints@w@false
\mtc@hints@part 3710 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\part\mtc@hints@part\relax
\@part 3711 \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\mtc@hints@@@part 3712 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\@part\mtc@hints@@@part\relax
\@spart 3713 \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\mtc@hints@@@spart 3714 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\@spart\mtc@hints@@@spart\relax
3715 \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 3716 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 3717 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0030>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3718 {--- The \string\part\space command is altered\MessageBreak after minitoc}
3719 \if@mtc@hyper@used@
3720 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0023>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3721 {--- It may be the consequence\MessageBreak
3722 of loading the ‘‘hyperref’’ package}
3723 \fi
3724 \fi

```

**8.78.1.13.2 Alteration of \chapter :**

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \chapter, \@chapter and \@schapter:
\ifundefined
 \chapter 3725 \@mtc@hints@w@false
\mtc@hints@chapter 3726 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\ifx\chapter\mtc@hints@chapter\relax
 \@chapter 3727 \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\mtc@hints@@chapter 3728 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\ifx\@chapter\mtc@hints@@chapter\relax
 \@schapter 3729 \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\mtc@hints@@schapter 3730 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\ifx\@schapter\mtc@hints@@schapter\relax
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 3731 \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 3732 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
3733 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0028>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3734 {--- The \string\chapter\space command is altered\MessageBreak after minitoc}
3735 \if@mtc@hyper@used@
3736 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0023>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3737 {--- It may be the consequence\MessageBreak
3738 of loading the ‘hyperref’ package}
3739 \fi
3740 \fi

```

**8.78.1.13.3 Alteration of \section :**

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \section, \@sect and \@ssect:
\ifundefined
 \section 3741 \@mtc@hints@w@false
\mtc@hints@section 3742 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
 \@sect 3743 {\@ifundefined{section}{}{\ifx\section\mtc@hints@section\relax\else
\mtc@hints@@sect 3744 \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
 \@ssect 3745 {\@ifundefined{section}{}{\ifx\@sect\mtc@hints@@sect\relax\else
\mtc@hints@@ssect 3746 \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 3747 {\@ifundefined{section}{}{\ifx\@ssect\mtc@hints@@ssect\relax\else
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 3748 \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
3749 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
3750 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0039>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3751 {--- The \string\section\space command is altered\MessageBreak after minitoc}
3752 \if@mtc@hyper@used@
3753 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0023>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3754 {--- It may be the consequence\MessageBreak
3755 of loading the ‘hyperref’ package}
3756 \fi
3757 \relax\else\fi}%

```

**8.78.1.14 Hint about the coherence of the calling sequences of some commands**

And finally, we prepare the coherence tests about the calling sequences of triplets of associated commands like \doparttoc, \parttoc and \[fake]listofcontents, and

similar: to be able to use `\parttoc`, a table of contents file must have been created via `\[fake]listofcontents` and splitted into `parttoc` files via `\doparttoc`.

```
\if@mtc@hints@ Hence we initialize some flags:
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 3758 \if@mtc@hints@
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 3759 \global\@mtc@toc@used@false
 3760 \global\@mtc@lof@used@false
 3761 \global\@mtc@lot@used@false
```

`\mtc@sv@tableofcontents` Then we patch the involved commands to set the corresponding flag when they are used.  
`\tableofcontents` First, the commands for the main summaries:

```
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\mtc@sv@listoffigures 3762 \let\mtc@sv@tableofcontents\tableofcontents
\listoffigures 3763 \def\tableofcontents%
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 3764 {\global\@mtc@toc@used@true\mtc@sv@tableofcontents}
\mtc@sv@listoftables 3765 \let\mtc@sv@listoffigures\listoffigures
\listoftables 3766 \def\listoffigures%
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 3767 {\global\@mtc@lof@used@true\mtc@sv@listoffigures}
 3768 \let\mtc@sv@listoftables\listoftables
 3769 \def\listoftables%
 3770 {\global\@mtc@lot@used@true\mtc@sv@listoftables}
```

`\mtc@sv@faketableofcontents` Then, their “fake” siblings:

```
\faketableofcontents
\if@mtc@toc@used@ 3771 \let\mtc@sv@faketableofcontents\faketableofcontents
\mtc@sv@fakelistoffigures 3772 \def\faketableofcontents%
\fakelistoffigures 3773 {\global\@mtc@toc@used@true\mtc@sv@faketableofcontents}
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 3774 \let\mtc@sv@fakelistoffigures\fakelistoffigures
\mtc@sv@fakelistoftables 3775 \def\fakelistoffigures%
\fakelistoftables 3776 {\global\@mtc@lof@used@true\mtc@sv@fakelistoffigures}
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 3777 \let\mtc@sv@fakelistoftables\fakelistoftables
 3778 \def\fakelistoftables%
 3779 {\global\@mtc@lot@used@true\mtc@sv@fakelistoftables}
 3780 \fi
```

`\mtc@hints@begindoc` And the `\mtc@hints@begindoc` definition is finished (it begins in section 8.78.1 on page 309):

```
3781 }
```

## 8.78.2 Final part: `\mtc@hints@enddoc`

`\mtc@hints@enddoc` The final part of the hints option is executed via `\AtEndDocument`. Its code is in the `\AtEndDocument` `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro. It is a sequence of tests on the packages or classes loaded

and the flags set during the first and the second parts of this option. First, we declare the `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro:

```
3782 \def\mtc@hints@enddoc{%
```

### 8.78.2.1 Hint about `\sect-lof|lot` and the `insection` option

```
\if@mtc@sect@floats@ We look if some section-level lists of figures or tables have been requested.
\if@dosectlof@used@
\if@dosectlot@used@ 3783 \if@dosectlof@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@sectlof@used@ 3784 \if@dosectlot@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@sectlot@used@ 3785 \if@sectlof@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@mtc@section@def@ 3786 \if@sectlot@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
3787 \if@mtc@section@def@

\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ If yes, we verify that the placeins package [8] has been loaded with the correct options
\if@mtc@sect@floats@ or that the insection option of the minitoc package has been invoked. If not, a warning
\if@mtc@hints@w@ is given.
\if@mtc@hints@given@

3788 \if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ \else
3789 \if@mtc@sect@floats@%
3790 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0056>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3791 {You are using \string\dosectlof\space and/or \MessageBreak
3792 \string\dosectlot, \string\sectlof\space and/or \string\sectlot,
3793 \MessageBreak
3794 hence the ‘‘insection’’ package\MessageBreak
3795 option is recommended}%
3796 \@mtc@hints@w@true \@mtc@hints@given@true
3797 \fi
3798 \fi
```

### 8.78.2.2 Final part of the coherence tests

We test if `\parttoc` has been used without `\doparttoc`, etc., for each pair of preparation/insertion commands.

```
\if@mtc@part@def@ For the part level commands:
\if@parttoc@used@
\if@doparttoc@used@ 3799 \if@mtc@part@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 3800 \if@parttoc@used@
\if@partlof@used@ 3801 \if@doparttoc@used@\else
\if@dopartlof@used@ 3802 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0062>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@partlot@used@ 3803 {You have used \string\parttoc,\MessageBreak
\if@dopartlot@used@ 3804 but not \string\doparttoc}
```

```

3805 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3806 \fi
3807 \fi
3808 \if@partlof@used@
3809 \if@dopartlof@used@\else
3810 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0060>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3811 {You have used \string\partlof,\MessageBreak
3812 but not \string\dopartlof}
3813 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3814 \fi
3815 \fi
3816 \if@partlot@used@
3817 \if@dopartlot@used@\else
3818 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0061>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3819 {You have used \string\partlot,\MessageBreak
3820 but not \string\dopartlot}
3821 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3822 \fi
3823 \fi
3824 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ For the chapter level commands:
\if@minitoc@used@
\if@dominitoc@used@ 3825 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 3826 \if@minitoc@used@
\if@minilof@used@ 3827 \if@dominitoc@used@\else
\if@dominilof@used@ 3828 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0059>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@minilot@used@ 3829 {You have used \string\minitoc,\MessageBreak
\if@dominilot@used@ 3830 but not \string\dominitoc}
3831 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3832 \fi
3833 \fi
3834 \if@minilof@used@
3835 \if@dominilof@used@\else
3836 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0057>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3837 {You have used \string\minilof,\MessageBreak
3838 but not \string\dominilof}
3839 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3840 \fi
3841 \fi
3842 \if@minilot@used@
3843 \if@dominilot@used@\else
3844 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0058>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3845 {You have used \string\minilot,\MessageBreak
3846 but not \string\dominilot}
3847 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3848 \fi
3849 \fi
3850 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ For the section level commands:
 \if@secttoc@used@
 \if@dosecttoc@used@ 3851 \if@mtc@section@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 3852 \if@secttoc@used@
 \if@sectlof@used@ 3853 \if@dosecttoc@used@\else
\if@dosectlof@used@ 3854 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0065>]{minitoc(hints)}%
 \if@sectlot@used@ 3855 {You have used \string\secttoc,\MessageBreak
3856 but not \string\dosecttoc}
\if@dosectlot@used@ 3857 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3858 \fi
3859 \fi
3860 \if@sectlof@used@
3861 \if@dosectlof@used@\else
3862 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0063>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3863 {You have used \string\sectlof,\MessageBreak
3864 but not \string\dosectlof}
3865 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3866 \fi
3867 \fi
3868 \if@sectlot@used@
3869 \if@dosectlot@used@\else
3870 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0064>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3871 {You have used \string\sectlot,\MessageBreak
3872 but not \string\dosectlot}
3873 \fi
3874 \fi
3875 \fi

```

### 8.78.2.3 Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)

Now, we test if a `\doparttoc` macro has been called but without any matching `\parttoc`, hence its a vain call. We do the same for each analog command.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ Part level commands:
\if@doparttoc@used@
 \if@parttoc@used@ 3876 \if@mtc@part@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 3877 \if@doparttoc@used@
\if@dopartlof@used@ 3878 \if@parttoc@used@\else
 \if@partlof@used@ 3879 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0075>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dopartlot@used@ 3880 {You have used \string\doparttoc,\MessageBreak
 \if@partlot@used@ 3881 but not \string\parttoc}
3882 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3883 \fi
3884 \fi
3885 \if@dopartlof@used@
3886 \if@partlof@used@\else
3887 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0076>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3888 {You have used \string\dopartlof,\MessageBreak
3889 but not \string\partlof}
3890 \@mtc@hints@given@true

```

```

3891 \fi
3892 \fi
3893 \if@dopartlot@used@
3894 \if@partlot@used@\else
3895 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0077>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3896 {You have used \string\dopartlot,\MessageBreak
3897 but not \string\partlot}
3898 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3899 \fi
3900 \fi
3901 \fi

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ Chapter level commands:

```

\if@dominitoc@used@
\if@minitoc@used@ 3902 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 3903 \if@dominitoc@used@
\if@dominilof@used@ 3904 \if@minitoc@used@\else
\if@minilof@used@ 3905 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0078>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dominilot@used@ 3906 {You have used \string\dominitoc,\MessageBreak
\if@minilot@used@ 3907 but not \string\minitoc}
3908 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3909 \fi
3910 \fi
3911 \if@dominilof@used@
3912 \if@minilof@used@\else
3913 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0079>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3914 {You have used \string\dominilof,\MessageBreak
3915 but not \string\minilof}
3916 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3917 \fi
3918 \fi
3919 \if@dominilot@used@
3920 \if@minilot@used@\else
3921 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0080>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3922 {You have used \string\dominilot,\MessageBreak
3923 but not \string\minilot}
3924 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3925 \fi
3926 \fi
3927 \fi

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ Section level commands:

```

\if@dosecttoc@used@
\if@secttoc@used@ 3928 \if@mtc@section@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 3929 \if@dosecttoc@used@
\if@dosectlof@used@ 3930 \if@secttoc@used@\else
\if@sectlof@used@ 3931 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0081>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dosectlot@used@ 3932 {You have used \string\dosecttoc,\MessageBreak
\if@sectlot@used@ 3933 but not \string\secttoc}
3934 \@mtc@hints@given@true

```



```

3935 \fi
3936 \fi
3937 \if@dosectlof@used@
3938 \if@sectlof@used@\else
3939 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0082>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3940 {You have used \string\dosectlof,\MessageBreak
3941 but not \string\sectlof}
3942 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3943 \fi
3944 \fi
3945 \if@dosectlot@used@
3946 \if@sectlot@used@\else
3947 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0083>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3948 {You have used \string\dosectlot,\MessageBreak
3949 but not \string\sectlot}
3950 \fi
3951 \fi
3952 \fi
3953 \fi

```

#### 8.78.2.4 Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)

Another coherence test verifies that if \parttoc has been called, then the macro \tableofcontents or \faketableofcontents has also been called (to create the necessary contents file); and similar tests are made for the other mini-table commands.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ Part level commands:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@parttoc@used@ 3954 \if@mtc@part@def@
\ifmtc@toc@used@ 3955 \if@parttoc@used@
\if@partlof@used@ 3956 \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
\ifmtc@lof@used@ 3957 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0071>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@partlot@used@ 3958 {You have used \string\parttoc\space but not\MessageBreak
\ifmtc@lot@used@ 3959 \string\tableofcontents\MessageBreak nor
3960 \string\faketableofcontents}
3961 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3962 \fi
3963 \fi
3964 \if@partlof@used@
3965 \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
3966 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0069>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3967 {You have used \string\partlof\space but not\MessageBreak
3968 \string\listoffigures\MessageBreak nor
3969 \string\fake\listoffigures}
3970 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3971 \fi
3972 \fi
3973 \if@partlot@used@
3974 \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
3975 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0070>]{minitoc(hints)}%

```

```

3976 {You have used \string\partlot\space but not\MessageBreak
3977 \string\listoftables\MessageBreak nor
3978 \string\fake\listoftables}
3979 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3980 \fi
3981 \fi
3982 \fi

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ Chapter level commands:

\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

\if@minitoc@used@ 3983 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\ifmtc@toc@used@ 3984 \if@minitoc@used@
\if@minilof@used@ 3985 \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
\ifmtc@lof@used@ 3986 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0068>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@minilot@used@ 3987 {You have used \string\minitoc\space but not\MessageBreak
\ifmtc@lot@used@ 3988 \string\tableofcontents\MessageBreak nor
3989 \string\fake\tableofcontents}
3990 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3991 \fi
3992 \fi
3993 \if@minilof@used@
3994 \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
3995 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0066>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3996 {You have used \string\minilof\space but not\MessageBreak
3997 \string\listoffigures\MessageBreak nor
3998 \string\fake\listoffigures}
3999 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4000 \fi
4001 \fi
4002 \if@minilot@used@
4003 \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
4004 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0067>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4005 {You have used \string\minilot\space but not\MessageBreak
4006 \string\listoftables\MessageBreak nor
4007 \string\fake\listoftables}
4008 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4009 \fi
4010 \fi
4011 \fi

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ Section level commands:

\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

\if@secttoc@used@ 4012 \if@mtc@section@def@
\ifmtc@toc@used@ 4013 \if@secttoc@used@
\if@sectlof@used@ 4014 \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
\ifmtc@lof@used@ 4015 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0074>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@sectlot@used@ 4016 {You have used \string\secttoc\space but not\MessageBreak
\ifmtc@lot@used@ 4017 \string\tableofcontents\MessageBreak nor
4018 \string\fake\tableofcontents}
4019 \@mtc@hints@given@true

```

```

4020 \fi
4021 \fi
4022 \if@sectlof@used@
4023 \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
4024 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0072>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4025 {You have used \string\sectlof\space but not\MessageBreak
4026 \string\listoffigures\MessageBreak nor
4027 \string\fake\listoffigures}
4028 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4029 \fi
4030 \fi
4031 \if@sectlot@used@
4032 \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
4033 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0073>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4034 {You have used \string\sectlot\space but not\MessageBreak
4035 \string\listoftables\MessageBreak nor
4036 \string\fake\listoftables}
4037 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4038 \fi
4039 \fi
4040 \fi

```

### 8.78.2.5 Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions

```

\mtc@hints@checklongext If short extensions are used, you can use only 99 mini-tables of each kind. If more are
\if@longextensions@ created, the auxiliary files can be overwritten: the hundredth minitoc file \jobname.U100
\if@mtc@part@def@ has its name truncated to \jobname.U10, which is already the tenth minitoc file. Thus,
\value we need a hint to signal this situation. The code is rather simple, but the remedy is bitter
\if@mtc@hints@given@true and costly: either use a better operating system 9, either redesign the document.
\if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@mtc@section@def@
4041 \def\mtc@hints@checklongext{%
4042 \if@longextensions@
4043 \else
4044 \if@mtc@part@def@
4045 \ifnum 99 < \value{ptc}
4046 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4047 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0054>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4048 {You have used short extensions\MessageBreak
4049 and more than 99 parts (\arabic{ptc})}
4050 \fi
4051 \fi
4052 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
4053 \ifnum 99 < \value{mtc}
4054 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4055 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0053>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4056 {You have used short extensions\MessageBreak
4057 and more than 99 chapters (\arabic{mtc})}
4058 \fi
4059 \else

```

---

<sup>9</sup> On the long term, a good investment.

```

4060 \if@mtc@section@def@
4061 \ifnum 99 < \value{stc}
4062 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4063 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0055>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4064 {You have used short extensions\MessageBreak
4065 and more than 99 sections (\arabic{stc})}
4066 \fi
4067 \fi
4068 \fi
4069 \fi}
4070 \mtc@hints@checklongext

```

#### 8.78.2.6 Final part of the hint about the sectsty package

```

\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ We test if sectsty has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ section 8.9.1 on page 182.
\if@mtc@hints@given@
4071 \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@else
4072 \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@
4073 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0037>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4074 {The sectsty package should be\MessageBreak
4075 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4076 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4077 \fi
4078 \fi

```

#### 8.78.2.7 Final part of the hint about the varsects package

```

\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ We test if varsects has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ section 8.9.2 on page 182.
\if@mtc@hints@given@
4079 \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@else
4080 \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
4081 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0038>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4082 {The varsects package should be\MessageBreak
4083 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4084 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4085 \fi
4086 \fi

```

#### 8.78.2.8 Final part of the hint about the fncychap package

```

\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ We test if fncychap has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ section 8.9.3 on page 182.
\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

```

4087 \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ \else
4088 \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@
4089 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0086>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4090 {The fncychap package should be\MessageBreak
4091 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4092 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4093 \fi
4094 \fi

```

### 8.78.2.9 Final part of the hint about the quotchap package

\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ We test if quotchap has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See  
 \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ section 8.9.4 on page 182.  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

4095 \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ \else
4096 \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@
4097 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0087>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4098 {The quotchap package should be\MessageBreak
4099 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4100 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4101 \fi
4102 \fi

```

### 8.78.2.10 Final part of the hint about the romannum package

\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ We test if romannum has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See  
 \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ section 8.9.5 on page 183.  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

4103 \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ \else
4104 \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@
4105 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0088>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4106 {The romannum package should be\MessageBreak
4107 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4108 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4109 \fi
4110 \fi

```

### 8.78.2.11 Final part of the hint about the sfheaders package

\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ We test if sfheaders has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See  
 \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ section 8.9.6 on page 183.  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

4111 \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ \else
4112 \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@

```

```

4113 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0089>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4114 {The sfheaders package should be\MessageBreak
4115 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4116 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4117 \fi
4118 \fi

```

#### 8.78.2.12 Final part of the hint about the alnumsec package

\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ We test if alnumsec has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 8.9.7 on page 183.  
 \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

4119 \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@\else
4120 \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@
4121 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0090>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4122 {The alnumsec package should be\MessageBreak
4123 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4124 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4125 \fi
4126 \fi

```

#### 8.78.2.13 Final part of the hint about the captcont package

\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ We test if captcont has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 8.9.8 on page 183.  
 \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

4127 \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@\else
4128 \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@
4129 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0091>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4130 {The captcont package should be\MessageBreak
4131 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4132 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4133 \fi
4134 \fi

```

#### 8.78.2.14 Final part of the hint about the caption package

\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ We test if caption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 8.9.9 on page 184.  
 \if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

4135 \if@mtc@captionLoaded@\else
4136 \if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@
4137 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0033>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4138 {The caption package should be\MessageBreak

```

```

4139 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4140 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4141 \fi
4142 \fi

```

#### 8.78.2.15 Final part of the hint about the caption2 package

\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ We test if caption2 has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 8.9.10 on page 184.

```

\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@
\if@mtc@hints@given@
4143 \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@\\else
4144 \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@
4145 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0034>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4146 {The caption2 package should be\MessageBreak
4147 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4148 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4149 \fi
4150 \fi

```

#### 8.78.2.16 Final part of the hint about the ccaption package

\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ We test if ccaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 8.9.11 on page 184.

```

\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@hints@given@
4151 \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@\\else
4152 \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@
4153 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0035>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4154 {The ccaption package should be\MessageBreak
4155 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4156 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4157 \fi
4158 \fi

```

#### 8.78.2.17 Final part of the hint about the mcaption package

\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ We test if mcaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 8.9.12 on page 184.

```

\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@hints@given@
4159 \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@\\else
4160 \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@
4161 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0036>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4162 {The mcaption package should be\MessageBreak
4163 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4164 \@mtc@hints@given@true

```

```

4165 \fi
4166 \fi

```

### 8.78.2.18 Check if empty mini-tables have been detected

We test for each kind of mini-tables.

`\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@` For parttocs:

```

4167 \if@mtc@empty@parttoc@
4168 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0046>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4169 {You have attempted to insert\MessageBreak empty parttocs}
4170 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4171 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@partlof@` For partlofs:

```

4172 \if@mtc@empty@partlof@
4173 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0044>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4174 {You have attempted to insert\MessageBreak empty partlofs}
4175 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4176 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@partlot@` For partlots:

```

4177 \if@mtc@empty@partlot@
4178 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4179 {You have attempted to insert\MessageBreak empty partlots}
4180 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4181 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@` For minitocs:

```

4182 \if@mtc@empty@minitoc@
4183 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0043>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4184 {You have attempted to insert\MessageBreak empty minitocs}
4185 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4186 \fi

```



\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ For minilofs:

```
4187 \if@mtc@empty@minilof@
4188 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0041>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4189 {You have attempted to insert\MessageBreak empty minilofs}
4190 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4191 \fi
```

\if@mtc@empty@minilot@ For minilots:

```
4192 \if@mtc@empty@minilot@
4193 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0042>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4194 {You have attempted to insert\MessageBreak empty minilots}
4195 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4196 \fi
```

\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@ For secttocs:

```
4197 \if@mtc@empty@secttoc@
4198 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0049>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4199 {You have attempted to insert\MessageBreak empty secttocs}
4200 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4201 \fi
```

\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ For sectlofs:

```
4202 \if@mtc@empty@sectlof@
4203 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0047>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4204 {You have attempted to insert\MessageBreak empty sectlofs}
4205 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4206 \fi
```

\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ For sectlots:

```
4207 \if@mtc@empty@sectlot@
4208 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0042>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4209 {You have attempted to insert\MessageBreak empty sectlots}
4210 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4211 \fi
```

### 8.78.2.19 Check if obsolete commands have been used

This hint is just a reminder if you have used obsolete commands, which are also signalled in the .log file.

`\if@firstpartis@used@` Obsolete macro `\firstpartis`:

```
4212 \if@firstpartis@used@
4213 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0051>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4214 {You have invoked an obsolete\MessageBreak command: \string\firstpartis}
4215 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4216 \fi
```

`\if@firstchapteris@used@` Obsolete macro `\firstchapteris`:

```
4217 \if@firstchapteris@used@
4218 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0050>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4219 {You have invoked an obsolete\MessageBreak command: \string\firstchapteris}
4220 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4221 \fi
```

`\if@firstsectionis@used@` Obsolete macro `\firstsectionis`:

```
4222 \if@firstsectionis@used@
4223 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0052>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4224 {You have invoked an obsolete\MessageBreak command: \string\firstsectionis}
4225 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4226 \fi
```

### 8.78.2.20 Check if some hints have been written

`\if@mtc@hints@given@` We come at the end of the third part of the hints option: if problems have been detected, a warning is displayed; the warning is not displayed but only written in the .log file if no problems have been detected. And we terminate the `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro by a closing brace.

```
4227 \if@mtc@hints@given@
4228 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0024>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4229 {Some hints have been written\MessageBreak
4230 in the \jobname.log file}
4231 \else
4232 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0019>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4233 {No hints have been written\MessageBreak
4234 in the \jobname.log file.\@gobble}
4235 \fi
4236 }
```

## 8.79 Processing of options

`\ExecuteOptionsenglish` First, we apply the default language option, `english`:

```
4237 \ExecuteOptions{english}
```

`\ProcessOptions*` Then, we execute all requested options: for most options, it is just setting a flag, or loading a file for the language options.

```
4238 \ProcessOptions*
```

We now examine the flags for some options and execute the necessary actions.

### 8.79.1 Processing the `insection` option

`\if@mtc@ss@insection@` For the `insection` option, we load the `placeins` package [8] with its options `verbose` and `section`, after the `flafter` package (described in [132] and [152, page 286]); the correct loading is verified:  
`\RequirePackage`  
`\@ifpackageloaded`  
`\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@`

```
4239 \if@mtc@ss@insection@
4240 \RequirePackage{flafter}[2000/07/23]%
4241 \RequirePackage[section,verbose]{placeins}[2005/04/18]%
4242 \@ifpackageloaded{placeins}%
4243 {\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@true}%
4244 {\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false}%
4245 \fi
```

### 8.79.2 Processing the `notoccite` option

`\if@mtc@notoccite@` For the `notoccite` option, we just load the `notoccite` package [7]:  
`\RequirePackage`

```
4246 \if@mtc@notoccite@
4247 \RequirePackage{notoccite}%
4248 \fi
```

### 8.79.3 Processing the listfiles option

```

\mtc@maf We define the \mtc@maf macro which closes \tf@mtc and reopens it to write into
\tf@mtc <document>.maf. It calls \mtc@maf@long or \mtc@maf@short (long or short exten-
\if@longextensions@ sions), then closes \tf@mtc. \mtc@maf@long or \mtc@maf@short writes the names
\mtc@maf@long of the existing auxiliary files using decrementing loops on the associated counters, and
\mtc@maf@short includes <document>.mtc in the list (but not <document>.maf 10).
\mtc@addtomaf
\IfFileExists 4249 \def\mtc@maf{%
\jobname 4250 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0009>]{minitoc}%
4251 {Listing minitoc auxiliary files\MessageBreak
4252 Creating the \jobname.maf file\@gobble}
4253 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4254 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.maf
4255 \if@longextensions@\mtc@maf@long\else\mtc@maf@short\fi
4256 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
4257 \def\mtc@addtomaf#1{%
4258 \IfFileExists{#1}{\immediate\write\tf@mtc{#1}}{}}
4259 \def\mtc@maf@long{%
4260 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc}
4261 \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{\loop\ifnum\c@ptc>\z@\relax
4262 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.ptc\arabic{ptc}}
4263 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.plf\arabic{ptc}}
4264 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.plt\arabic{ptc}}
4265 \advance\c@ptc\m@ne\repeat}
4266 \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{\loop\ifnum\c@mtc>\z@\relax
4267 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc\arabic{mtc}}
4268 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mlf\arabic{mtc}}
4269 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mlt\arabic{mtc}}
4270 \advance\c@mtc\m@ne\repeat}
4271 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{\loop\ifnum\c@stc>\z@\relax
4272 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.stc\arabic{stc}}
4273 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.slf\arabic{stc}}
4274 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.slt\arabic{stc}}
4275 \advance\c@stc\m@ne\repeat}}
4276 \def\mtc@maf@short{%
4277 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc}
4278 \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{\loop\ifnum\c@ptc>\z@\relax
4279 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.P\arabic{ptc}}
4280 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.G\arabic{ptc}}
4281 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.U\arabic{ptc}}
4282 \advance\c@ptc\m@ne\repeat}
4283 \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{\loop\ifnum\c@mtc>\z@\relax
4284 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.M\arabic{mtc}}
4285 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.F\arabic{mtc}}
4286 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.T\arabic{mtc}}
4287 \advance\c@mtc\m@ne\repeat}
4288 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{\loop\ifnum\c@stc>\z@\relax
4289 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.S\arabic{stc}}
4290 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.H\arabic{stc}}
4291 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.V\arabic{stc}}

```

<sup>10</sup>Some users could made a cleanup using this file as a list of files to delete, so it should not be in the list.

```
4292 \advance\c@stc\m@ne\repeat}}
```

```
\if@mtc@listfiles@ If this option is active, we call \mtc@maf in a \AtEndDocument block.
\AtEndDocument
\mtc@maf 4293 \if@mtc@listfiles@{\AtEndDocument{\mtc@maf}}\else\fi
```

### 8.79.4 Processing the hints option

```
\if@mtc@hints@ For the hints option, we set its first part in a \AtBeginDocument block and its third
\AtBeginDocument (last) part in a \AtEndDocument block:
\mtc@hints@begindoc
\AtEndDocument 4294 \if@mtc@hints@
\mtc@hints@enddoc 4295 \AtBeginDocument{\mtc@hints@begindoc}%
4296 \AtEndDocument{\mtc@hints@enddoc}%
4297 \fi
```

### 8.79.5 Saving the sectionning commands

And, at least, we save the definitions of sectionning commands (and of their unstarred and starred branches), for comparaisons (this is a part of the hints option executed in the preamble):

```
\@ifundefined For the \part command:
\mtc@hints@part
\part 4298 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\let\mtc@hints@part\part
\mtc@hints@@part 4299 \let\mtc@hints@@part\@part
\@part 4300 \let\mtc@hints@@spart\@spart}
\mtc@hints@@spart
\@spart
```

```
\@ifundefined For the \chapter command:
\mtc@hints@chapter
\chapter 4301 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\mtc@hints@chapter\chapter
\mtc@hints@@chapter 4302 \let\mtc@hints@@chapter\@chapter
\@chapter 4303 \let\mtc@hints@@schapter\@schapter}
\mtc@hints@@schapter
\@schapter
```

```

\@ifundefined For the \section command:
\mtc@hints@section
\section 4304 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\mtc@hints@section\section
\mtc@hints@@sect 4305 \let\mtc@hints@@sect\@sect
\@sect 4306 \let\mtc@hints@@ssect\@ssect}
\mtc@hints@@ssect
\@ssect

```

And the package is terminated.

```
4307 </minitoc>
```

## 8.80 The `fminitoc.dtx` file

`\jobname` This short file is necessary to create the french documentation. Its rôle is to set `\jobname`  
`\input` to `fminitoc` in place of `minitoc`. As `minitoc.ins` generates the files `minitoc.lan` and `fminitoc.lan` which sets a language number `\LANG`, and `minitoc.dtx` reads `\jobname.lan`, the documentation can be in several languages (english and french) in `minitoc.dtx`, the language being selected by `\ifcase\LANG\relax ... \or\relax ... \fi` constructs. The `\relax` primitives are necessary to avoid bad surprises.

```

4308 <fminitoc>
4309 \ProvidesFile{fminitoc.dtx}[2006/06/08 minitoc french documentation start file]
4310 \input{minitoc.dtx}
4311 </fminitoc>

```

## Chapter 9

# Commented code of `mtcoff.sty`

### Contents

---

|      |                                                                                                              |     |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 9.1  | Why <code>mtcoff.sty</code> ? . . . . .                                                                      | 336 |
| 9.2  | Identification of the package . . . . .                                                                      | 336 |
| 9.3  | Faking counters and dimensions . . . . .                                                                     | 337 |
| 9.4  | Faking simple user commands . . . . .                                                                        | 337 |
| 9.5  | Faking user commands with one optional argument . . . . .                                                    | 338 |
| 9.6  | Disabling the internal commands . . . . .                                                                    | 339 |
| 9.7  | Disabling the font commands . . . . .                                                                        | 339 |
| 9.8  | Disabling the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands . . . . .                                                     | 340 |
| 9.9  | Disabling the new <code>\l@...</code> commands . . . . .                                                     | 341 |
| 9.10 | Ignore the obsolete commands . . . . .                                                                       | 341 |
| 9.11 | Disabling the <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code> command . . . . .                                              | 341 |
| 9.12 | Disabling the <code>\mtcloadmlo</code> command . . . . .                                                     | 341 |
| 9.13 | Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules . . . . .                                                    | 342 |
| 9.14 | Disabling the commands for the page numbers . . . . .                                                        | 342 |
| 9.15 | Disabling the mini-table features commands . . . . .                                                         | 343 |
| 9.16 | Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands . . . . .                                                         | 344 |
| 9.17 | Caution for some commands . . . . .                                                                          | 344 |
| 9.18 | Disabling commands for “coffee” . . . . .                                                                    | 345 |
| 9.19 | Disabling the <code>mtchideinmain...</code> environments . . . . .                                           | 345 |
| 9.20 | Inhibition of the <code>\mtc@saveXXXdepth</code> and<br><code>\mtc@restoreXXXdepth</code> commands . . . . . | 346 |
| 9.21 | Disabling the <code>\mtcfixglossary</code> command . . . . .                                                 | 346 |
| 9.22 | Disabling the <code>\mtcfixindex</code> command . . . . .                                                    | 346 |
| 9.23 | Disabling the <code>\addstarred...</code> commands . . . . .                                                 | 346 |

---

## 9.1 Why `mtcoff.sty`?

The `minitoc` package [91, 90] requires that the user inserts many commands in the source code of her/his document, and not only into the preamble of the document. Hence the concept of a replacement package, `mtcoff` (means “minitoc off”), which substitutes to all commands and environments of the `minitoc` package some alternative commands and environments with the same names and syntaxes, but doing nothing (except emitting some harmless warnings, for special cases). This way, to turn off easily the `minitoc` package, you just have to write, in the preamble of your document, something like:

```
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
%\usepackage{mtcoff}
```

then the `minitoc` package is activated with the specified options. If you modify this two lines this way:

```
%\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
\usepackage{mtcoff}
```

then the `minitoc` package is deactivated and all its commands and environments are ignored. This is much easier, faster and safer than commenting out all the commands and environments of `minitoc`. Moreover, this operation is reversible.

## 9.2 Identification of the package

`\NeedsTeXFormat` First, we identify the package and check the version of  $\text{\LaTeX}$ <sup>1</sup>; we need the `mtcmess`  
`\ProvidesPackage` package to write messages with unique identifiers.

```
4312 *mtcoff)
4313 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}%
4314 \ProvidesPackage{mtcoff}[2006/06/08 v45 The mtcoff package]
4315 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
```

---

<sup>1</sup> This checking is not really useful for the `mtcoff` package itself, but it is good to check that your version of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  is not too old to support `minitoc`.



### 9.3 Faking counters and dimensions

`\count@` As `minitoc` declares some counters and dimensions registers, we fake them using  
`\dimen@` `\count@` or `\dimen@`. For `\mtcskipamount`, we must use its default definition,  
`\c@minitocdepth` `\bigskipamount`.

```
\mtcindent
\mtcskipamount 4316 \let\c@minitocdepth\count@
\bigskipamount 4317 \let\mtcindent\dimen@
\c@parttocdepth 4318 \let\mtcskipamount\bigskipamount
\mtcindent 4319 \let\c@parttocdepth\count@
\c@secttocdepth 4320 \let\ptcindent\dimen@
\stcindent 4321 \let\c@secttocdepth\count@
4322 \let\stcindent\dimen@
```

```
\c@mtc
\c@ptc
\c@stc 4323 \let\c@mtc\count@
4324 \let\c@ptc\count@
4325 \let\c@stc\count@
```

```
\mtcgapbeforeheads
\mtcgapafterheads
```

```
4326 \def\mtcgapbeforeheads{50\p@}
4327 \def\mtcgapafterheads{40\p@}
```

### 9.4 Faking simple user commands

```
\mtcskip Some user commands are easy to fake:
\fakeableofcontents
\fakelistoffigures 4328 \let\mtcskip\relax
\fakelistoftables 4329 \let\fakeableofcontents\relax
\adjustptc 4330 \let\fakelistoffigures\relax
\adjustmtc 4331 \let\fakelistoftables\relax
\adjuststc 4332 \newcommand{\adjustptc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementptc 4333 \newcommand{\adjustmtc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementmtc 4334 \newcommand{\adjuststc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementstc 4335 \let\decrementptc\relax
\incrementptc 4336 \let\decrementmtc\relax
\incrementmtc 4337 \let\decrementstc\relax
\incrementstc 4338 \let\incrementptc\relax
4339 \let\incrementmtc\relax
4340 \let\incrementstc\relax
```

```

\partend The following commands are not directly called by the user, in normal circumstances, but
\partbegin must be faked:
\chapterend
\chapterbegin 4341 \let\partend\relax
\sectend 4342 \let\partbegin\relax
\sectbegin 4343 \let\chapterend\relax
 4344 \let\chapterbegin\relax
 4345 \let\sectend\relax
 4346 \let\sectbegin\relax

```

## 9.5 Faking user commands with one optional argument

`\gobbleopt@` The user commands with an optional argument are faked using the internal  $\text{\LaTeX}$  macro `\@ifnextchar` (to get the optional argument) and the new utility command `\gobbleopt@`.

```
4347 \def\gobbleopt@[#1]{\relax}
```

```

\@ifnextchar Commands for part level mini-tables:
\doarttoc
\doartlof 4348 \def\doarttoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\doartlot 4349 \def\doartlof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\parttoc 4350 \def\doartlot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\partlof 4351 \def\parttoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\partlot 4352 \def\partlof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
 4353 \def\partlot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

```

```

\@ifnextchar Commands for chapter level mini-tables:
\dominitoc
\dominilof 4354 \def\dominitoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dominilot 4355 \def\dominilof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\minitoc 4356 \def\dominilot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\minilof 4357 \def\minitoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\minilot 4358 \def\minilof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
 4359 \def\minilot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

```

```

\@ifnextchar Commands for section level mini-tables:
\dosecttoc
\dosectlof 4360 \def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dosectlot 4361 \def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\secttoc 4362 \def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\sectlof 4363 \def\secttoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\sectlot 4364 \def\sectlof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
 4365 \def\sectlot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

```

```

\@ifnextchar Command \mtcprepare:
\mtcprepare
4366 \def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

```

## 9.6 Disabling the internal commands

```

\@gobbletwo We need also to disable some minitoc commands, with \relax (macros with no
\tf@mtc argument) or \@gobbletwo (macros with two arguments):
\mtc@string
\appendixmtc 4367 \let\tf@mtc\count@
\l@xchapter 4368 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapter 4369 \let\appendixmtc\relax
\pchapter 4370 \let\l@xchapter\@gobbletwo
\psect 4371 \let\chapter\relax
\l@xpart 4372 \let\pchapter\relax
\part 4373 \let\psect\relax
\l@xsect 4374 \let\l@xpart\@gobbletwo
\sect 4375 \let\part\relax
\l@xsect 4376 \let\l@xsect\@gobbletwo
\sect 4377 \let\sect\relax

```

## 9.7 Disabling the font commands

\empty We disable the minitoc font commands (like \mtcSSfont) with \empty, because some users might have used:

```
\renewcommand{\mtcSSfont}{...}
```

which will not work if we use \relax here.

```

\ptcfont Fonts for part level mini-tables:
\ptcCfont
\ptcSfont 4378 \let\ptcfont\empty
\ptcSSfont 4379 \let\ptcCfont\empty
\ptcSSSfont 4380 \let\ptcSfont\empty
\ptcPfont 4381 \let\ptcSSfont\empty
\ptcSPfont 4382 \let\ptcSSSfont\empty
\plffont 4383 \let\ptcPfont\empty
\plfSfont 4384 \let\ptcSPfont\empty
\pltfont 4385 \let\plffont\empty
\pltSfont 4386 \let\plfSfont\empty
\ptifont 4387 \let\pltfont\empty
\ptifont 4388 \let\pltSfont\empty
\ptifont 4389 \let\ptifont\empty

```

```

\mtcfont Fonts for chapter level mini-tables:
\mtcSfont
\mtcSSfont 4390 \let\mtcfont\empty
\mtcSSSfont 4391 \let\mtcSfont\empty
\mtcPfont 4392 \let\mtcSSfont\empty
\mtcSPfont 4393 \let\mtcSSSfont\empty
\mlffont 4394 \let\mtcPfont\empty
\mlfSfont 4395 \let\mtcSPfont\empty
\mltfont 4396 \let\mlffont\empty
\mltSfont 4397 \let\mlfSfont\empty
\mtifont 4398 \let\mltfont\empty
 4399 \let\mltSfont\empty
 4400 \let\mtifont\empty

```

```

\stcfont Fonts for section level mini-tables:
\stcSSfont
\stcSSSfont 4401 \let\stcfont\empty
\stcPfont 4402 \let\stcSSfont\empty
\stcSPfont 4403 \let\stcSSSfont\empty
\slffont 4404 \let\stcPfont\empty
\slfSfont 4405 \let\stcSPfont\empty
\sltfont 4406 \let\slffont\empty
\sltSfont 4407 \let\slfSfont\empty
\stifont 4408 \let\sltfont\empty
 4409 \let\sltSfont\empty
 4410 \let\stifont\empty

```

```

\coffeeont Font for “coffee” lines:

```

```

4411 \let\coffeeont\empty

```

## 9.8 Disabling the \mtcset... commands

```

\@gobbletwo These commands use two or three mandatory arguments:
\mtcsetdepth
\mtcsetfont 4412 \let\mtcsetdepth\@gobbletwo
\mtcsettitlefont 4413 \def\mtcsetfont#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsettitle 4414 \let\mtcsettitlefont\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetformat 4415 \let\mtcsettitle\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetfeature 4416 \def\mtcsetformat#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsetpagenumbers 4417 \def\mtcsetfeature#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsetrules 4418 \let\mtcsetpagenumbers\@gobbletwo
 4419 \let\mtcsetrules\@gobbletwo

```

## 9.9 Disabling the new \l@... commands

```

\l@starpart The minitoc package defines the \l@starXXX commands to format TOC entries for
\l@starchapter starred sectioning commands. We reset to the unstarred version, when necessary:
\l@starsection
\l@starsubsection 4420 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\let\l@starpart\l@part}
\l@starsubsubsection 4421 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@starchapter\l@chapter}
\l@starparagraph 4422 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@starsection\l@section}
\l@starsubparagraph 4423 \@ifundefined{subsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsection\l@subsection}
4424 \@ifundefined{subsubsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsubsection\l@subsubsection}
4425 \@ifundefined{paragraph}{}{\let\l@starparagraph\l@paragraph}
4426 \@ifundefined{subparagraph}{}{\let\l@starsubparagraph\l@subparagraph}

```

## 9.10 Ignore the obsolete commands

```

\@gobble We just ignore the obsolete commands (with one mandatory argument):
\firstpartis
\firstchapteris 4427 \let\firstpartis\@gobble
\firstsectionis 4428 \let\firstchapteris\@gobble
4429 \let\firstsectionis\@gobble

```

## 9.11 Disabling the \mtcselectlanguage command

```

\@gobble This command has one mandatory argument:
\mtcselectlanguage
4430 \let\mtcselectlanguage\@gobble

```

## 9.12 Disabling the \mtcloadmlo command

```

\@gobble This command has one mandatory argument:
\mtcloadmlo
4431 \let\mtcloadmlo\@gobble

```

### 9.13 Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules

```

\ptcrule These commands have no argument:
\noptcrule
\mtcrule 4432 \let\ptcrule\relax
\nomtcrule 4433 \let\noptcrule\relax
\stcrule 4434 \let\mtcrule\relax
\nostcrule 4435 \let\nomtcrule\relax
\plfrule 4436 \let\stcrule\relax
\noplfrule 4437 \let\nostcrule\relax
\mlfrule 4438 \let\plfrule\relax
\nomlfrule 4439 \let\noplfrule\relax
\slfrule 4440 \let\mlfrule\relax
\noslfrule 4441 \let\nomlfrule\relax
\pltrule 4442 \let\slfrule\relax
\nopltrule 4443 \let\noslfrule\relax
\mltrule 4444 \let\pltrule\relax
\nomltrule 4445 \let\nopltrule\relax
\sltrule 4446 \let\mltrule\relax
\nosltrule 4447 \let\nomltrule\relax
 4448 \let\sltrule\relax
 4449 \let\nosltrule\relax

```

### 9.14 Disabling the commands for the page numbers

```

\ptcpagenumbers These commands have no argument:
\noptcpagenumbers
\mtcpagenumbers 4450 \let\mtcpagenumbers\relax
\nomtcpagenumbers 4451 \let\nomtcpagenumbers\relax
\stcpagenumbers 4452 \let\mtcpagenumbers\relax
\nostcpagenumbers 4453 \let\nostcpagenumbers\relax
\plfpagenumbers 4454 \let\ptcpagenumbers\relax
\noplfpagenumbers 4455 \let\noptcpagenumbers\relax
\mlfpagenumbers 4456 \let\mlfpagenumbers\relax
\nomlfpagenumbers 4457 \let\nomlfpagenumbers\relax
\slfpagenumbers 4458 \let\slfpagenumbers\relax
\noslfpagenumbers 4459 \let\noslfpagenumbers\relax
\pltpagenumbers 4460 \let\plfpagenumbers\relax
\nopltpagenumbers 4461 \let\noplfpagenumbers\relax
\mltpagenumbers 4462 \let\mltpagenumbers\relax
\nomltpagenumbers 4463 \let\nomltpagenumbers\relax
\sltpagenumbers 4464 \let\sltpagenumbers\relax
\nosltpagenumbers 4465 \let\nosltpagenumbers\relax
 4466 \let\pltpagenumbers\relax
 4467 \let\nopltpagenumbers\relax

```

## 9.15 Disabling the mini-table features commands

We disable the commands for features (like `\beforeparttoc`) with `\empty`, because some users may have used:

```
\renewcommand{\beforeparttoc}{...}
```

which will not work if we use `\relax` here. These commands have no argument,

|                                    |                                                   |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <code>\beforeparttoc</code>        | Commands for part level mini-tables:              |
| <code>\beforepartlof</code>        |                                                   |
| <code>\beforepartlot</code>        | 4468 <code>\let\beforeparttoc\empty</code>        |
| <code>\afterparttoc</code>         | 4469 <code>\let\beforepartlof\empty</code>        |
| <code>\afterpartlof</code>         | 4470 <code>\let\beforepartlot\empty</code>        |
| <code>\afterpartlot</code>         | 4471 <code>\let\afterparttoc\empty</code>         |
| <code>\thispageparttocstyle</code> | 4472 <code>\let\afterpartlof\empty</code>         |
| <code>\thispagepartlofstyle</code> | 4473 <code>\let\afterpartlot\empty</code>         |
| <code>\thispagepartlotstyle</code> | 4474 <code>\let\thispageparttocstyle\empty</code> |
|                                    | 4475 <code>\let\thispagepartlofstyle\empty</code> |
|                                    | 4476 <code>\let\thispagepartlotstyle\empty</code> |

```

\beforeminitoc Commands for chapter level mini-tables:
\beforeminilof
\beforeminilot 4477 \let\beforeminitoc\empty
\afterminitoc 4478 \let\beforeminilof\empty
\afterminilof 4479 \let\beforeminilot\empty
\afterminilot 4480 \let\afterminitoc\empty
\thispageminitocstyle 4481 \let\afterminilof\empty
\thispageminilofstyle 4482 \let\afterminilot\empty
\thispageminilotstyle 4483 \let\thispageminitocstyle\empty
 4484 \let\thispageminilofstyle\empty
 4485 \let\thispageminilotstyle\empty

```

|                                    |                                                   |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <code>\beforesecttoc</code>        | Commands for section level mini-tables:           |
| <code>\beforesectlof</code>        |                                                   |
| <code>\beforesectlot</code>        | 4486 <code>\let\beforesecttoc\empty</code>        |
| <code>\aftersecttoc</code>         | 4487 <code>\let\beforesectlof\empty</code>        |
| <code>\aftersectlof</code>         | 4488 <code>\let\beforesectlot\empty</code>        |
| <code>\aftersectlot</code>         | 4489 <code>\let\aftersecttoc\empty</code>         |
| <code>\thispagesecttocstyle</code> | 4490 <code>\let\aftersectlof\empty</code>         |
| <code>\thispagesectlofstyle</code> | 4491 <code>\let\aftersectlot\empty</code>         |
| <code>\thispagesectlotstyle</code> | 4492 <code>\let\thispagesecttocstyle\empty</code> |
|                                    | 4493 <code>\let\thispagesectlofstyle\empty</code> |
|                                    | 4494 <code>\let\thispagesectlotstyle\empty</code> |

## 9.16 Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands

`\if@longextensions@` There are some flags and commands that it is wise to declare:

```

\iftightmtc
\ifktightmtc 4495 \newif\if@longextensions@ \@longextensions@true
\ifundottedmtc 4496 \newif\iftightmtc \tightmtcfalse
\l@listof 4497 \newif\ifktightmtc \ktightmtcfalse
\ifmtcsecondpart 4498 \newif\ifundottedmtc \undottedmtcfalse
\chapter 4499 \newif\ifmtcsecondpart \mtcsecondpartfalse
4500 \let\l@listof\chapter

```



## 9.17 Caution for some commands

`\AtBeginDocument` Some minitoc commands should eventually be replaced if you decide to *definitely*  
`\ifmtcoffwarn@` stop using the minitoc package with your document. So we declare a flag and a  
`\AtEndDocument` block to signal that you have used these commands:

```

4501 \newif\ifmtcoffwarn@ \mtcoffwarn@false
4502 \AtEndDocument{\ifmtcoffwarn@
4503 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<F0007>]{mtcoff}%
4504 {You should scan (backwards) your .log
4505 \MessageBreak
4506 file to find some commands needing
4507 \MessageBreak
4508 to be replaced if you decide to
4509 \MessageBreak
4510 DEFINITELY stop using minitoc for this
4511 \MessageBreak
4512 document. It is more wise to keep the
4513 \MessageBreak
4514 \string\usepackage\space lines for minitoc and mtcoff
4515 \MessageBreak
4516 and to comment out only one of them}
4517 \fi}

```

`\mtcaddchapter` Then these commands are disabled and they set the flag and give a warning (useful to get  
`\mtcaddsection` the line number):

```

\mtcaddpart
\ifmtcoffwarn@ 4518 \newcommand{\mtcaddchapter}[1][\ifmtcoffwarn@true
\mtc@ck 4519 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0004>]{mtcoff}%
\addcontentsline 4520 {\protect\mtcaddchapter{...} should be replaced\MessageBreak
4521 by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}\MessageBreak}
4522 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
4523 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
4524 \else
4525 \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}%

```



```

4526 \fi}
4527 \newcommand{\mtcaddsection}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
4528 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0006>]{mtcoff}%
4529 {\protect\mtcaddsection{...} should be replaced\MessageBreak
4530 by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}\MessageBreak}
4531 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
4532 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
4533 \else
4534 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
4535 \fi}
4536 \newcommand{\mtcaddpart}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
4537 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0005>]{mtcoff}%
4538 {\protect\mtcaddpart{...} should be replaced\MessageBreak
4539 by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}\MessageBreak}
4540 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
4541 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
4542 \else
4543 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
4544 \fi}

```

## 9.18 Disabling commands for “coffee”

```

\addcoffeeline We disable the commands relative to “coffee” lines, and the specific version of contents
\coffeeline lines without leaders of dots:
\@gobble
\@Undottedtocline 4545 \def\addcoffeeline#1#2#3{\relax}
\@Undottedtoclinep 4546 \let\coffeeline\@gobble
 4547 \let\l@coffee\relax
 4548 \def\@Undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{\relax}
 4549 \def\@Undottedtoclinep#1#2#3#4#5{\relax}

```

## 9.19 Disabling the mtchideinmain... environments

```

mtchideinmaintoc These environments accept one optional argument:
mtchideinmainlof
mtchideinmainlot 4550 \newenvironment{mtchideinmaintoc}[1][-1]%
 4551 {\empty}{\empty}
 4552 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
 4553 {\empty}{\empty}
 4554 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
 4555 {\empty}{\empty}

```

## 9.20 Inhibition of the `\mtc@saveXXXdepth` and `\mtc@restoreXXXdepth` commands

```

\mtc@savetocdepth
\mtc@savelofdepth
\mtc@savelotdepth 4556 \let\mtc@savetocdepth\empty
\mtc@restoretocdepth 4557 \let\mtc@savelofdepth\empty
\mtc@restorelofdepth 4558 \let\mtc@savelotdepth\empty
\mtc@restorelotdepth 4559 \let\mtc@restoretocdepth\empty
4560 \let\mtc@restorelofdepth\empty
4561 \let\mtc@restorelotdepth\empty

```

## 9.21 Disabling the `\mtcfixglossary` command

`\mtcfixglossary` This command accepts one optional argument:

```
4562 \newcommand{\mtcfixglossary}[1][\relax]
```

## 9.22 Disabling the `\mtcfixindex` command

`\mtcfixindex` This command accepts one optional argument:

```
4563 \newcommand{\mtcfixindex}[1][\relax]
```

## 9.23 Disabling the `\addstarred...` commands

`\ifmtcoffwarn@` These commands should be replaced by standard commands, but `mtcoff` simulates and gives a warning, which will be reminded at the end of document:

```

\addstarredpart
\addstarredchapter
\addstarredsection 4564 \def\addstarredpart#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
\addcontentsline 4565 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0002>]{mtcoff}%
4566 {\protect\addstarredpart{...} should be replaced by\MessageBreak
4567 \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}\MessageBreak}
4568 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}}
4569 \def\addstarredchapter#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
4570 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0001>]{mtcoff}%
4571 {\protect\addstarredchapter{...} should be replaced by\MessageBreak
4572 \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}\MessageBreak}
4573 \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}}

```

```
4574 \def\addstarredsection#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
4575 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0003>]{mtcoff}%
4576 {\protect\addstarredsection{...} should be replaced by\MessageBreak
4577 \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}\MessageBreak}
4578 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{#1}}
```

And the `mtcoff` package is terminated.

```
4579 \end{mtcoff}
```

## Chapter 10

# Commented code of `mtcmess.sty`

```
\mtcPackageInfo To make easier the search of a message in the documentation1, we will assign an unique
\PackageInfo identifier to each message of the minitoc and mtcoff packages. As the standard com-
\MessageBreak mands for such messages do not include this feature, we make extended versions, with
\mtcPackageWarning \PackageWarning the same syntax, plus a first optional argument:
\PackageWarning
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine 4580 <*mtcmess>
\PackageWarningNoLine 4581 \ProvidesPackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]%
\mtcPackageError 4582 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/01]%
\PackageError 4583 \newcommand{\mtcPackageInfo}[3][[]%
4584 {\PackageInfo{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
4585 \newcommand{\mtcPackageWarning}[3][[]%
4586 {\PackageWarning{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
4587 \newcommand{\mtcPackageWarningNoLine}[3][[]%
4588 {\PackageWarningNoLine{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
4589 \newcommand{\mtcPackageError}[4][[]%
4590 {\PackageError{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}{#4}}%
4591 </mtcmess>
```

Hence the first line of the message will contain the package name and the unique identifier of the message.

These macros are defined in a separate package because they will be used by at least two packages (minitoc and mtcoff) and because they could be useful for other packages.

---

<sup>1</sup> By example, using the search facility of some PDF reader utility.

# Chapter 11

## Patch for the memoir class

This code must be loaded to fix an incompatibility of the minitoc package with some recent versions of the memoir.cls class. This correction is no more necessary after the 2005/09/25 version of memoir.cls.

```
4592 (*mtcpatchmem)
4593 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/01]%
4594 \ProvidesPackage{mtcpatchmem}%
4595 [2005/09/30 v45 Package mtcpatchmem]
4596 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
4597 \mtcPackageInfo[<M0001>]{mtcpatchmem}%
4598 {mtcpatchmem package to patch the memoir class\@gobble}
4599 \renewcommand{\@m@mchapter}[1][]{%
4600 \def\ch@pt@c{#1}% capture first optional arg
4601 \@ifnextchar[{\@chapter}{\@chapter[]}%
4602 }
4603 \def\@chapter[#1]#2{%
4604 % if |\ch@pt@c| is empty, no [was found at all. Use #2| as
4605 % entry for all fields.
4606 \ifx\ch@pt@c\@empty
4607 \def\f@rtoc{#2}%
4608 \def\f@rhdr{#2}%
4609 \else
4610 % otherwise at least one [was found. If |#1| is empty then only
4611 % one was found.
4612 \let\f@rtoc\ch@pt@c
4613 \ifx\@empty#1\@empty
4614 \let\f@rhdr\ch@pt@c
4615 \else
4616 \def\f@rhdr{#1}%
4617 \fi
4618 \fi
4619 \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
4620 \if@mainmatter
4621 \refstepcounter{chapter}%
```

```

4622 \fi
4623 \fi
4624 \chaptermark{\f@rhdr}%
4625 \ifartopt
4626 \@makechapterhead{#2}%
4627 \@afterheading
4628 \else
4629 \insertchapterspace
4630 \if@twocolumn
4631 \@topnewpage[\@makechapterhead{#2}]%
4632 \else
4633 \@makechapterhead{#2}%
4634 \fi
4635 \@afterheading
4636 \fi
4637 \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
4638 \if@mainmatter
4639 \ifanappendix
4640 \addcontentsline{toc}{appendix}{%
4641 \protect\chapternumberline{\thechapter}\f@rtoc}%
4642 \else
4643 \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{%
4644 \protect\chapternumberline{\thechapter}\f@rtoc}%
4645 \fi
4646 \else
4647 \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\f@rtoc}%
4648 \fi
4649 \else
4650 \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\f@rtoc}%
4651 \fi
4652 \ifheadnameref\M@gettitle{\f@rhdr}\else\M@gettitle{\f@rtoc}\fi
4653 }
4654 </mtcpatchmem>

```

## Chapter 12

# The minitoc language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files

### Contents

|       |                                                              |     |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 12.1  | “Acadian” language: <code>acadian.mld</code> . . . . .       | 355 |
| 12.2  | “Acadien” language: <code>acadien.mld</code> . . . . .       | 356 |
| 12.3  | “Afrikaan” language: <code>afrikaan.mld</code> . . . . .     | 356 |
| 12.4  | “Afrikaans” language: <code>afrikaans.mld</code> . . . . .   | 356 |
| 12.5  | “Albanian” language: <code>albanian.mld</code> . . . . .     | 357 |
| 12.6  | “American” language: <code>american.mld</code> . . . . .     | 357 |
| 12.7  | “Arab” language: <code>arab.mld</code> . . . . .             | 357 |
| 12.8  | “Arab2” language: <code>arab2.mld</code> . . . . .           | 358 |
| 12.9  | “Arabic” language: <code>arabic.mld</code> . . . . .         | 358 |
| 12.10 | “Armenian” language: <code>armenian.mld</code> . . . . .     | 359 |
| 12.11 | “Australian” language: <code>australian.mld</code> . . . . . | 359 |
| 12.12 | “Austrian” language: <code>austrian.mld</code> . . . . .     | 359 |
| 12.13 | “Bahasa” language: <code>bahasa.mld</code> . . . . .         | 360 |
| 12.14 | “Bahasai” language: <code>bahasai.mld</code> . . . . .       | 360 |
| 12.15 | “Bahasam” language: <code>bahasam.mld</code> . . . . .       | 361 |
| 12.16 | “Bangla” language: <code>bangla.mld</code> . . . . .         | 361 |
| 12.17 | “Basque” language: <code>basque.mld</code> . . . . .         | 362 |
| 12.18 | “Bicig” language: <code>bicig.mld</code> . . . . .           | 362 |
| 12.19 | “Bicig2” language: <code>bicig2.mld</code> . . . . .         | 363 |
| 12.20 | “Bicig3” language: <code>bicig3.mld</code> . . . . .         | 363 |
| 12.21 | “Bithe” language: <code>bithe.mld</code> . . . . .           | 364 |
| 12.22 | “Brazil” language: <code>brazil.mld</code> . . . . .         | 365 |
| 12.23 | “Brazilian” language: <code>brazilian.mld</code> . . . . .   | 365 |
| 12.24 | “Breton” language: <code>breton.mld</code> . . . . .         | 365 |
| 12.25 | “British” language: <code>british.mld</code> . . . . .       | 366 |
| 12.26 | “Bulgarian” language: <code>bulgarian.mld</code> . . . . .   | 366 |
| 12.27 | “Bulgarianb” language: <code>bulgarianb.mld</code> . . . . . | 367 |
| 12.28 | “Buryat” language: <code>buryat.mld</code> . . . . .         | 368 |
| 12.29 | “Buryat2” language: <code>buryat2.mld</code> . . . . .       | 368 |
| 12.30 | “Canadian” language: <code>canadian.mld</code> . . . . .     | 369 |

|       |                                                                                           |     |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 12.31 | “Canadien” language: <code>canadien.mld</code> . . . . .                                  | 369 |
| 12.32 | “Castillan” language: <code>castillan.mld</code> . . . . .                                | 369 |
| 12.33 | “Castillian” language: <code>castillian.mld</code> . . . . .                              | 370 |
| 12.34 | “Catalan” language: <code>catalan.mld</code> . . . . .                                    | 370 |
| 12.35 | “Chinese1” language: <code>chinese1.mld</code> and <code>chinese1.mlo</code> . . . . .    | 370 |
| 12.36 | “Chinese2” language: <code>chinese2.mld</code> and <code>chinese2.mlo</code> . . . . .    | 371 |
| 12.37 | “Croatian” language: <code>croatian.mld</code> . . . . .                                  | 371 |
| 12.38 | “Czech” language: <code>czech.mld</code> . . . . .                                        | 372 |
| 12.39 | “Danish” language: <code>danish.mld</code> . . . . .                                      | 372 |
| 12.40 | “Dutch” language: <code>dutch.mld</code> . . . . .                                        | 373 |
| 12.41 | “English” language: <code>english.mld</code> . . . . .                                    | 373 |
| 12.42 | “English1” language: <code>english1.mld</code> . . . . .                                  | 374 |
| 12.43 | “English2” language: <code>english2.mld</code> . . . . .                                  | 375 |
| 12.44 | “Esperant” language: <code>esperant.mld</code> . . . . .                                  | 375 |
| 12.45 | “Esperanto” language: <code>esperanto.mld</code> . . . . .                                | 376 |
| 12.46 | “Estonian” language: <code>estonian.mld</code> . . . . .                                  | 376 |
| 12.47 | “Ethiopia” language: <code>ethiopia.mld</code> . . . . .                                  | 377 |
| 12.48 | “Ethiopian” language: <code>ethiopian.mld</code> . . . . .                                | 377 |
| 12.49 | “Ethiopian2” language: <code>ethiopian2.mld</code> . . . . .                              | 378 |
| 12.50 | “Farsi1” language: <code>farsi1.mld</code> and <code>farsi1.mlo</code> . . . . .          | 378 |
| 12.51 | “Farsi2” language: <code>farsi2.mld</code> and <code>farsi2.mlo</code> . . . . .          | 379 |
| 12.52 | “Finnish” language: <code>finnish.mld</code> . . . . .                                    | 379 |
| 12.53 | “Finnish2” language: <code>finnish2.mld</code> . . . . .                                  | 380 |
| 12.54 | “Francais” language: <code>francais.mld</code> . . . . .                                  | 380 |
| 12.55 | “French” language: <code>french.mld</code> . . . . .                                      | 380 |
| 12.56 | “French1” language: <code>french1.mld</code> . . . . .                                    | 381 |
| 12.57 | “French2” language: <code>french2.mld</code> . . . . .                                    | 382 |
| 12.58 | “Frenchb” language: <code>frenchb.mld</code> . . . . .                                    | 382 |
| 12.59 | “Frenchle” language: <code>frenchle.mld</code> . . . . .                                  | 383 |
| 12.60 | “Frenchpro” language: <code>frenchpro.mld</code> . . . . .                                | 383 |
| 12.61 | “Galician” language: <code>galician.mld</code> . . . . .                                  | 383 |
| 12.62 | “German” language: <code>german.mld</code> . . . . .                                      | 384 |
| 12.63 | “Germanb” language: <code>germanb.mld</code> . . . . .                                    | 384 |
| 12.64 | “Germanb2” language: <code>germanb2.mld</code> . . . . .                                  | 385 |
| 12.65 | “Greek” language: <code>greek.mld</code> . . . . .                                        | 385 |
| 12.66 | “Greek-mono” language: <code>greek-mono.mld</code> . . . . .                              | 386 |
| 12.67 | “Greek-polydemo” language: <code>greek-polydemo.mld</code> . . . . .                      | 387 |
| 12.68 | “Greek-polykatha” language: <code>greek-polykatha.mld</code> . . . . .                    | 388 |
| 12.69 | “Guarani” language: <code>guarani.mld</code> . . . . .                                    | 389 |
| 12.70 | “Hangul1” language: <code>hangul1.mld</code> and <code>hangul1.mlo</code> . . . . .       | 389 |
| 12.71 | “Hangul2” language: <code>hangul2.mld</code> and <code>hangul2.mlo</code> . . . . .       | 390 |
| 12.72 | “Hangul3” language: <code>hangul3.mld</code> and <code>hangul3.mlo</code> . . . . .       | 390 |
| 12.73 | “Hangul4” language: <code>hangul4.mld</code> and <code>hangul4.mlo</code> . . . . .       | 391 |
| 12.74 | “Hangul-u8” language: <code>hangul-u8.mld</code> and <code>hangul-u8.mlo</code> . . . . . | 392 |
| 12.75 | “Hanja1” language: <code>hanja1.mld</code> and <code>hanja1.mlo</code> . . . . .          | 392 |
| 12.76 | “Hanja2” language: <code>hanja2.mld</code> and <code>hanja2.mlo</code> . . . . .          | 393 |
| 12.77 | “Hanja-u8” language: <code>hanja-u8.mld</code> and <code>hanja-u8.mlo</code> . . . . .    | 393 |
| 12.78 | “Hebrew” language: <code>hebrew.mld</code> . . . . .                                      | 394 |
| 12.79 | “Hebrew2” language: <code>hebrew2.mld</code> . . . . .                                    | 394 |
| 12.80 | “Hungarian” language: <code>hungarian.mld</code> . . . . .                                | 395 |
| 12.81 | “Icelandic” language: <code>icelandic.mld</code> . . . . .                                | 396 |
| 12.82 | “Indon” language: <code>indon.mld</code> . . . . .                                        | 396 |
| 12.83 | “Indonesian” language: <code>indonesian.mld</code> . . . . .                              | 396 |



|        |                                                                                      |     |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 12.84  | “Interlingua” language: interlingua.mld . . . . .                                    | 397 |
| 12.85  | “Irish” language: irish.mld . . . . .                                                | 397 |
| 12.86  | “Italian” language: italian.mld . . . . .                                            | 398 |
| 12.87  | “Italian2” language: italian2.mld . . . . .                                          | 398 |
| 12.88  | “Japanese” language: japanese.mld and japanese.mlo . . . . .                         | 399 |
| 12.89  | “Japanese2” language: japanese2.mld and japanese2.mlo . . . . .                      | 399 |
| 12.90  | “Japanese3” language: japanese3.mld and japanese3.mlo . . . . .                      | 400 |
| 12.91  | “Japanese4” language: japanese4.mld and japanese4.mlo . . . . .                      | 400 |
| 12.92  | “Japanese5” language: japanese5.mld and japanese.mlo . . . . .                       | 401 |
| 12.93  | “Kannada” language: kannada.mld . . . . .                                            | 401 |
| 12.94  | “Khalka” language: khalkha.mld . . . . .                                             | 402 |
| 12.95  | “Latin” language: latin.mld . . . . .                                                | 402 |
| 12.96  | “Latin2” language: latin2.mld . . . . .                                              | 403 |
| 12.97  | “Latvian” language: latvian.mld . . . . .                                            | 403 |
| 12.98  | “Letton” language: letton.mld . . . . .                                              | 404 |
| 12.99  | “Lithuanian” language: lithuanian.mld . . . . .                                      | 404 |
| 12.100 | “Lowersorbian” language: lowersorbian.mld . . . . .                                  | 405 |
| 12.101 | “Lsorbian” language: lsorbian.mld . . . . .                                          | 405 |
| 12.102 | “Magyar” language: magyar.mld . . . . .                                              | 406 |
| 12.103 | “Magyar2” language: magyar2.mld . . . . .                                            | 406 |
| 12.104 | “Magyar3” language: magyar.mld . . . . .                                             | 407 |
| 12.105 | “Malay” language: malay.mld . . . . .                                                | 407 |
| 12.106 | “Malayalam-keli” language: malayalam-keli.mld . . . . .                              | 407 |
| 12.107 | “Malayalam-omega” language: malayalam-omega.mld and<br>malayalam-omega.mlo . . . . . | 408 |
| 12.108 | “Malayalam-rachana” language: malayalam-rachana.mld . . . . .                        | 408 |
| 12.109 | “Malayalam-rachana2” language: malayalam-rachana2.mld . . . . .                      | 409 |
| 12.110 | “Manju” language: manju.mld . . . . .                                                | 410 |
| 12.111 | “Meyalu” language: meyalu.mld . . . . .                                              | 410 |
| 12.112 | “Mongol” language: mongol.mld . . . . .                                              | 410 |
| 12.113 | “Naustrian” language: naustrian.mld . . . . .                                        | 411 |
| 12.114 | “Newzealand” language: newzealand.mld . . . . .                                      | 411 |
| 12.115 | “Ngerman” language: ngerman.mld . . . . .                                            | 411 |
| 12.116 | “Ngermanb” language: ngermanb.mld . . . . .                                          | 411 |
| 12.117 | “Ngermanb2” language: ngermanb2.mld . . . . .                                        | 412 |
| 12.118 | “Norsk” language: norsk.mld . . . . .                                                | 413 |
| 12.119 | “Norsk2” language: norsk2.mld . . . . .                                              | 413 |
| 12.120 | “Nynorsk” language: nynorsk.mld . . . . .                                            | 414 |
| 12.121 | “Nynorsk2” language: nynorsk2.mld . . . . .                                          | 414 |
| 12.122 | “Polish” language: polish.mld . . . . .                                              | 415 |
| 12.123 | “Polish2” language: polish2.mld . . . . .                                            | 415 |
| 12.124 | “Polski” language: polski.mld . . . . .                                              | 416 |
| 12.125 | “Portuges” language: portuges.mld . . . . .                                          | 416 |
| 12.126 | “Portuguese” language: portuguese.mld . . . . .                                      | 417 |
| 12.127 | “Romanian” language: romanian.mld . . . . .                                          | 417 |
| 12.128 | “Romanian2” language: romanian2.mld . . . . .                                        | 418 |
| 12.129 | “Romanian3” language: romanian3.mld . . . . .                                        | 418 |
| 12.130 | “Russian” language: russian.mld . . . . .                                            | 419 |
| 12.131 | “Russian2m” language: russian2m.mld . . . . .                                        | 419 |
| 12.132 | “Russian2o” language: russian2o.mld . . . . .                                        | 420 |
| 12.133 | “Russianb” language: russianb.mld . . . . .                                          | 421 |
| 12.134 | “Russianc” language: russianc.mld . . . . .                                          | 422 |
| 12.135 | “Russian-cca” language: russian-cca.mld and russian-cca.mlo . . . . .                | 423 |

|        |                                                                                         |     |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 12.136 | “Russian-cca1” language: russian-cca1.mld and<br>russian-cca1.mlo . . . . .             | 423 |
| 12.137 | “Russian-lh” language: russian-lh.mld and russian-lh.mlo . . . . .                      | 424 |
| 12.138 | “Russian-lhcyralt” language: russian-lhcyralt.mld and<br>russian-lhcyralt.mlo . . . . . | 424 |
| 12.139 | “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language: russian-lhcyrkoi.mld and<br>russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo . . . . . | 425 |
| 12.140 | “Russian-lhcyrwin” language: russian-lhcyrwin.mld and<br>russian-lhcyrwin.mlo . . . . . | 425 |
| 12.141 | “Samin” language: samin.mld . . . . .                                                   | 426 |
| 12.142 | “Scottish” language: scottish.mld . . . . .                                             | 426 |
| 12.143 | “Serbian” language: serbian.mld . . . . .                                               | 427 |
| 12.144 | “Serbianc” language: serbianc.mld . . . . .                                             | 427 |
| 12.145 | “Slovak” language: slovak.mld . . . . .                                                 | 428 |
| 12.146 | “Slovene” language: slovene.mld . . . . .                                               | 428 |
| 12.147 | “Spanish” language: spanish.mld . . . . .                                               | 429 |
| 12.148 | “Spanish2” language: spanish2.mld . . . . .                                             | 430 |
| 12.149 | “Spanish3” language: spanish3.mld . . . . .                                             | 430 |
| 12.150 | “Spanish4” language: spanish4.mld . . . . .                                             | 431 |
| 12.151 | “Swedish” language: swedish.mld . . . . .                                               | 431 |
| 12.152 | “Swedish2” language: swedish2.mld . . . . .                                             | 432 |
| 12.153 | “Thai” language: thai.mld and thai.mlo . . . . .                                        | 432 |
| 12.154 | “Turkish” language: turkish.mld . . . . .                                               | 433 |
| 12.155 | “Uighur” language: uighur.mld . . . . .                                                 | 433 |
| 12.156 | “Uighur2” language: uighur2.mld . . . . .                                               | 433 |
| 12.157 | “Uighur3” language: uighur3.mld . . . . .                                               | 434 |
| 12.158 | “UKenglish” language: UKenglish.mld . . . . .                                           | 434 |
| 12.159 | “Ukraineb” language: ukraineb.mld . . . . .                                             | 434 |
| 12.160 | “Ukrainian” language: ukrainian.mld . . . . .                                           | 434 |
| 12.161 | “Uppersorbian” language: uppersorbian.mld . . . . .                                     | 435 |
| 12.162 | “USenglish” language: USenglish.mld . . . . .                                           | 436 |
| 12.163 | “Usorbian” language: usorbian.mld . . . . .                                             | 436 |
| 12.164 | “Vietnam” language: vietnam.mld . . . . .                                               | 436 |
| 12.165 | “Vietnamese” language: vietnamese.mld . . . . .                                         | 437 |
| 12.166 | “Welsh” language: welsh.mld . . . . .                                                   | 437 |
| 12.167 | “Xalx” language: xalx.mld . . . . .                                                     | 438 |
| 12.168 | “Xalx2” language: xalx2.mld . . . . .                                                   | 438 |
| 12.169 | “Xalx3” language: xalx3.mld . . . . .                                                   | 439 |

This chapter shows the code of each .mld file. A .mld file is a *minitoc language definition* file, which defines the titles of the mini-tables for a given language. It contains often some comments about its origin, if you need further details. It is loaded either via a package option <sup>1</sup> in the \usepackage command for the minitoc package, either via the command:

```
\mtcselectlanguage \mtcselectlanguage{\language}
```

<sup>1</sup> It can also be a global option for the document.

`\ptctitle` Each .mld file must define the nine following commands (for the mini-tables of contents, mini-lists of figures and mini-lists of tables, at the part, chapter and section levels):

|                         |                          |                           |                           |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| <code>\plftitle</code>  |                          |                           |                           |
| <code>\plttitle</code>  |                          |                           |                           |
| <code>\mtctitle</code>  | • <code>\ptctitle</code> | • <code>\mtctitle</code>  | • <code>\stctitle</code>  |
| <code>\mlftitle</code>  | • <code>\plftitle</code> | • <code>\mlftitle</code>  | • <code>\slftitle</code>  |
| <code>\mltttitle</code> |                          |                           |                           |
| <code>\stctitle</code>  | • <code>\plttitle</code> | • <code>\mltttitle</code> | • <code>\sltttitle</code> |
| <code>\slftitle</code>  |                          |                           |                           |
| <code>\sltttitle</code> |                          |                           |                           |

Many .mld files require special fonts adequate for the corresponding language; as this is a language-dependent issue, the user must set up the correct language and font context for each language, like using the `babel` package [28, 29, 30, 47], the CJK system [137, 138], the  $\mathcal{L}\text{A}\text{T}\text{E}\text{X}$  system [118], the ANTOMEGA system [121], the ArabTeX [124, 125], BangTeX [162], ethiop [22], FarsiTeX<sup>2</sup>, guarani [25], Malayalam [3, 4], MonTeX [84, 86], or ArmTeX [87] packages. Note that it is often the *english* name of the language which is used to name the corresponding .mld file.



But for some oriental languages<sup>3</sup>, the source of the titles use some *exotic encodings*, difficult to manipulate in a .dtx file, the .mld file is then just a wrapper loading a .mlo file<sup>4</sup>, not generated by the .dtx files in the current version of minitoc package. The adequate input encoding must be set up by the user *before* loading the .mld file via `\mtcselectlanguage`.



`filecontents` To go around this limitation, the `minitoc.ins` file uses `filecontents` environments to generate the .mlo files.

## 12.1 “Acadian” language: `acadian.mld`

The `acadian` language<sup>5</sup> is just french, so we load the `french.mld` file (see section 12.55 on page 380):

```
4655 *acadian>
4656 \ProvidesFile{acadian.mld}[2004/12/14]
4657 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
4658 \</acadian>
```

<sup>2</sup> By Mohammad GHODSI (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and FarsiTeX Project Group. See the FarsiTeX site at <http://www.farsitex.org>

<sup>3</sup> Mainly for chinese, farsi (iranian), hangûl (korean), hanja (korean), japanese, malayalam-omega, thai, and russian variants.

<sup>4</sup> The extension .mlo means *minitoc language object*.

<sup>5</sup> Spoken in some parts of the south of the USA, like Louisiane.

## 12.2 “Acadien” language: `acadien.mld`

The “acadien” language<sup>6</sup> is just french (“acadien” is the french term for “acadian”), so we load the `french.mld` file (see section 12.55 on page 380):

```
4659 <*acadien>
4660 \ProvidesFile{acadien.mld}[2004/12/14]
4661 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
4662 </acadien>
```

## 12.3 “Afrikaan” language: `afrikaan.mld`

The titles for the “afrikaan” language<sup>7</sup> are taken from the `dutch.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 31]:

```
4663 <*afrikaan>
4664 \ProvidesFile{afrikaan.mld}[2006/01/13]
4665 %% Afrikaan(s) titles for minitoc.sty
4666 %% from dutch.dtx (babel)
4667 %% Braams, Johannes
4668 \def\ptctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
4669 \def\plftitle{Lys van figure}%
4670 \def\plttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
4671 %%
4672 \def\mtctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
4673 \def\mlftitle{Lys van figure}%
4674 \def\mlttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
4675 %%
4676 \def\stctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
4677 \def\slftitle{Lys van figure}%
4678 \def\slttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
4679 </afrikaan>
```

## 12.4 “Afrikaans” language: `afrikaans.mld`

“Afrikaans” is a synonym of “afrikaan”, so we just load `afrikaan.mld` (see section 12.3):

```
4680 <*afrikaans>
4681 \ProvidesFile{afrikaans.mld}[2004/12/14]
4682 \mtcselectlanguage{afrikaan}%
4683 </afrikaans>
```

<sup>6</sup> Spoken in some parts of the south of the USA, like Louisiane.

<sup>7</sup> Spoken in South Africa, it has dutch origins; compare with section 12.40 on page 373.

## 12.5 “Albanian” language: `albanian.mld`

The titles for the “albanian” language are taken from the `albanian.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 74]:

```

4684 <*albanian>
4685 \ProvidesFile{albanian.mld}[2006/01/13]
4686 %% Albanian titles for minitoc.sty.
4687 %% from albabian.dtx (babel)
4688 %% Contribution of Adi Zaimi (zamilst at yahoo.com).
4689 \def\ptctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
4690 \def\plftitle{Figurat}%
4691 \def\pltttitle{Tabelat}%
4692 %%
4693 \def\mtctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
4694 \def\mlftitle{Figurat}%
4695 \def\mltttitle{Tabelat}%
4696 %%
4697 \def\stctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
4698 \def\slftitle{Figurat}%
4699 \def\slttitle{Tabelat}%
4700 </albanian>

```

## 12.6 “American” language: `american.mld`

The “american” language is just like “english”<sup>8</sup>, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 12.41 on page 373):

```

4701 <*american>
4702 \ProvidesFile{american.mld}[2004/12/14]
4703 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
4704 </american>

```

## 12.7 “Arab” language: `arab.mld`

The titles for the “arab” language are taken from the ArabT<sub>E</sub>X package [124, 125], which should be used, with the associated fonts.

```

4705 <*arab>
4706 \ProvidesFile{arab.mld}[1999/03/16]
4707 %% Arabic titles for minitoc.sty

```

---

<sup>8</sup> It should be true for the mini-table titles; the languages themselves have some differences, like the hyphenation rules.

```

4708%% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of arabtex)
4709%% (strings taken from arabtex; to be used with arabtex)
4710\def\ptctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
4711\def\plftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
4712\def\plttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}
4713%%
4714\def\mtctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
4715\def\mlftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
4716\def\mlttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
4717%%
4718\def\stctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
4719\def\slftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
4720\def\slttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
4721</arab>

```

## 12.8 “Arab2” language: arab2.mld

The titles for the “arab2” language are taken from the Arab $\TeX$  package [124, 125], which should be used, with the associated fonts. It is a variant of the “arab” language.

```

4722<*arab2>
4723\ProvidesFile{arab2.mld}[2006/03/31]
4724%% Arabic titles for minitoc.sty. Variant.
4725%% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of arabtex)
4726%% (strings taken from arabtex; to be used with arabtex)
4727{\makeatletter\global\let\mtcArabTok\@tok}%
4728\def\ptctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
4729\def\plftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
4730\def\plttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
4731%%
4732\def\mtctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
4733\def\mlftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
4734\def\mlttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
4735%%
4736\def\stctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
4737\def\slftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
4738\def\slttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
4739</arab2>

```

## 12.9 “Arabic” language: arabic.mld

“Arabic” is a synonym for “arab”, so we just load arab.mld (see section 12.7 on the page before):

```

4740 <*arabic>
4741 \ProvidesFile{arabic.mld}[2005/02/10]
4742 \mtcselectlanguage{arab}%
4743 </arabic>

```

## 12.10 “Armenian” language: armenian.mld

The titles for the “armenian” language are taken from the ArmTeX package [87], which should be used, with the associated fonts.

```

4744 <*armenian>
4745 \ProvidesFile{armenian.mld}[1999/06/28]
4746 %% Armenian titles for minitoc.sty
4747 %% from ArmTeX
4748 %% Sergei Dachian (Serguei.Dachian@univ-lemans.fr)
4749 \def\ptctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
4750 \def\plftitle{Patkerner i cank}%
4751 \def\pltttitle{Aghyusakner i cank}%
4752 %%
4753 \def\mtctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
4754 \def\mlftitle{Patkerner i cank}%
4755 \def\mltttitle{Aghyusakner i cank}%
4756 %%
4757 \def\stctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
4758 \def\slftitle{Patkerner i cank}%
4759 \def\sltttitle{Aghyusakner i cank}%
4760 </armenian>

```

## 12.11 “Australian” language: australian.mld

The “australian” language is just like “english”, so we just load english.mld (see section 12.41 on page 373):

```

4761 <*australian>
4762 \ProvidesFile{australian.mld}[2006/01/11]
4763 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
4764 </australian>

```

## 12.12 “Austrian” language: austrian.mld

For the mini-table titles, the “austrian” language is like the “german” language, so we load german.mld (see section 12.62 on page 384):

```

4765 <*austrian>
4766 \ProvidesFile{austrian.mld}[2004/12/14]
4767 \mtcselectlanguage{german}%
4768 </austrian>

```

## 12.13 “Bahasa” language: bahasa.mld

The “bahasa” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load bahasai.mld (see section 12.14):

```

4769 <*bahasa>
4770 \ProvidesFile{bahasa.mld}[2006/01/11]
4771 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
4772 </bahasa>

```

## 12.14 “Bahasai” language: bahasai.mld

The titles of the mini-tables for the “bahasai” language<sup>9</sup> (bahasa indonesia / bahasa meyalu) are taken from the file bahasa.dtx in the babel package [29, 30, 55]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 12.15 on the next page. The word “bahasa” means “language” in bahasa. For other names for this language, see sections 12.13, 12.82 on page 396, and 12.83 on page 396.

```

4773 <*bahasai>
4774 \ProvidesFile{bahasai.mld}[2006/01/13]
4775 %% Bahasa Indonesia titles for minitoc.sty
4776 %% From bahasa.dtx in the babel package
4777 %% Knappen, Jörg and Mart, Terry
4778 \def\ptctitle{Daftar Isi}%
4779 \def\plftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
4780 \def\pltttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
4781 %%
4782 \def\mtctitle{Daftar Isi}%
4783 \def\mlftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
4784 \def\mltttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
4785 %%
4786 \def\stctitle{Daftar Isi}%
4787 \def\slftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
4788 \def\slttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
4789 </bahasai>

```

---

<sup>9</sup> Bahasa is spoken in Indonesia and Malaysia, with different pronunciations and titles but the same writing. Bahasai is the indonesian variant.



## 12.15 “Bahasam” language: `bahasam.mld`

The titles of the mini-tables for the “bahasam” language (Bahasa Malaysia)<sup>10</sup> are taken from the file `bahasam.dtx` in the `babel` package [29, 30, 56]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 12.13 on the page before. For other names for this language, see sections 12.105 on page 407 and 12.111 on page 410.

```

4790 <(*bahasam)
4791 \ProvidesFile{bahasam.mld}[2006/01/13]
4792 %% Bahasa Malaysia titles for minitoc.sty
4793 %% From bahasam.dtx in the babel package
4794 %% Knappen, Jörg and Mart, Terry
4795 \def\ptctitle{Kandungan}%
4796 \def\plftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
4797 \def\plttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
4798 %%
4799 \def\mtctitle{Kandungan}%
4800 \def\mlftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
4801 \def\mlttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
4802 %%
4803 \def\stctitle{Kandungan}%
4804 \def\slftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
4805 \def\slttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
4806 </bahasam>

```

## 12.16 “Bangla” language: `bangla.mld`

The titles for the “bangla” language<sup>11</sup> are taken from the `BangTeX` package [162]; they need specific fonts.

```

4807 <(*bangla)
4808 \ProvidesFile{bangla.mld}[2006/03/31]
4809 %% Bangla titles for minitoc.sty
4810 %% from BangTeX
4811 %% Needs specific fonts
4812 \def\ptctitle{suu*c*ipotRo}%
4813 \def\plftitle{cho*b*ir ta*l*ika}%
4814 \def\plttitle{cho*k*er ta*l*ika}%
4815 %%
4816 \def\mtctitle{suu*c*i}%
4817 \def\mlftitle{cho*b*ir ta*l*ika}%
4818 \def\mlttitle{cho*k*er ta*l*ika}%
4819 %%
4820 \def\stctitle{suu*c*i}%
4821 \def\slftitle{cho*b*ir ta*l*ika}%

```

<sup>10</sup>Spoken in Indonesia and Malaysia, with different pronunciations and titles but the same writing. Bahasam is the malaysian variant.

<sup>11</sup>Spoken in Bangladesh and some parts of India.

```

4822 \def\sltttitle{cho*k*er ta*l*ika}%
4823 </bangla>

```

## 12.17 “Basque” language: basque.mld

The titles for the “basque” language<sup>12</sup> are taken from the basque.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 36]. It seems that 8 bits fonts are preferable.

```

4824 <*basque>
4825 \ProvidesFile{basque.mld}[2006/01/13]
4826 %% Basque titles for minitoc.sty
4827 %% from basque.dtx (babel)
4828 %% Aguirregabiria, Juan M. and Sanchez, Julio
4829 %% Needs special fonts
4830 \def\ptcttitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
4831 \def\plfttitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
4832 \def\pltttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
4833 %%
4834 \def\mtcttitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
4835 \def\mlfttitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
4836 \def\mltttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
4837 %%
4838 \def\stcttitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
4839 \def\slfttitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
4840 \def\sltttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
4841 </basque>

```

## 12.18 “Bicig” language: bicig.mld

The titles for the “bicig” language<sup>13</sup> are taken from the MonTeX package [84, 86]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 12.112 on page 410, 12.19 on the following page, and 12.20 on the next page.

```

4842 <*bicig>
4843 \ProvidesFile{bicig.mld}[1999/03/16]
4844 %% Mongol (Bicig) titles for minitoc.sty
4845 %% needs mongol fonts
4846 \def\ptcttitle{\bcg{Garcig}}%
4847 \def\plfttitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaalt}}%
4848 \def\pltttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"in jagsaaalt}}%
4849 %%
4850 \def\mtcttitle{\bcg{Garcig}}%

```

<sup>12</sup>Spoken in the Basque country, in the north of Spain and south-west of France.

<sup>13</sup>Bicig is a written form of the mongolian language. It is also known as Uighur. See also section 12.155 on page 433.

```

4851 \def\mlfttitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaalt}}%
4852 \def\mltttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"in jagsaaalt}}%
4853 %%
4854 \def\stcttitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
4855 \def\slfttitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaalt}}%
4856 \def\sltttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"in jagsaaalt}}%
4857 </bicig>

```

## 12.19 “Bicig2” language: bicig2.mld

The titles for the “bicig2” language <sup>14</sup> are taken from the MonTeX package [84, 86]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 12.112 on page 410, 12.18 on the preceding page, and 12.20.

```

4858 < *bicig2>
4859 \ProvidesFile{bicig2.mld}[2005/11/16]
4860 %% Mongol (Bicig2) titles for minitoc.sty
4861 %% needs mongol fonts
4862 \def\ptcttitle{garcag}%
4863 \def\plfttitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
4864 \def\pltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
4865 %%
4866 \def\mtcttitle{garcag}%
4867 \def\mlfttitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
4868 \def\mltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
4869 %%
4870 \def\stcttitle{garcag}%
4871 \def\slfttitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
4872 \def\sltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
4873 </bicig2>

```

## 12.20 “Bicig3” language: bicig3.mld

The titles for the “bicig3” language <sup>15</sup> are taken from the MonTeX package [84, 86]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 12.112 on page 410, 12.18 on the preceding page and 12.19.

```

4874 < *bicig3>
4875 \ProvidesFile{bicig3.mld}[2006/03/31]
4876 %% Mongol (Bicig3) titles for minitoc.sty
4877 %% needs mongol fonts

```

<sup>14</sup>Bicig, or uighur, is a written form of the mongolian language, bicig2 is a variant. See also section 12.156 on page 433.

<sup>15</sup>Bicig, or uighur, is a written form of the mongolian language, bicig3 is a variant. See also section 12.157 on page 434.

```

4878 \def\ptctitle{aguulag=a}%
4879 \def\plftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
4880 \def\plttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
4881 %%
4882 \def\mtctitle{aguulag=a}%
4883 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
4884 \def\mlttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
4885 %%
4886 \def\stctitle{aguulag=a}%
4887 \def\slftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
4888 \def\slttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
4889 </bicig3>

```

## 12.21 “Bithe” language: `bithe.mld`

The titles for the “bithe” language<sup>16</sup> are taken from the MonT<sub>E</sub>X package [84, 86]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 12.112 on page 410 and 12.110 on page 410.

The Manju writing, or *bithe* system is a close relative of the Mongolian system; the basic letter shapes are the same. Yet for Manju, a set of diacritics (*dots and circles*) was designed to the effect that all the ambiguities of Mongolian are eliminated.

```

4890 < *bithe>
4891 \ProvidesFile{bithe.mld}[2005/11/16]
4892 %% Manju (bithe) titles for minitoc.sty
4893 %% needs mongol fonts
4894 \def\ptctitle{garcag}%
4895 \def\plftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
4896 \def\plttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
4897 %%
4898 \def\mtctitle{garcag}%
4899 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
4900 \def\mlttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
4901 %%
4902 \def\stctitle{garcag}%
4903 \def\slftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
4904 \def\slttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
4905 </bithe>

```

---

<sup>16</sup>Bithe is a written form of the manju variant of the mongolian language.

## 12.22 “Brazil” language: `brazil.mld`

The titles for the “brazil” language<sup>17</sup> are taken from the `portuges.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 66]:

```
4906 <*brazil>
4907 \ProvidesFile{brazil.mld}[2006/01/13]
4908 %% Portugues (brazil) titles for minitoc.sty
4909 %% from portuges.dtx (babel)
4910 %% Ramalhete, Jose Pedro and "de Lima", Arnaldo Viegas
4911 \def\ptctitle{Sum\'ario}%
4912 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
4913 \def\pltttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
4914 %%
4915 \def\mtctitle{Sum\'ario}%
4916 \def\mlftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
4917 \def\mltttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
4918 %%
4919 \def\stctitle{Sum\'ario}%
4920 \def\slftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
4921 \def\sltttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
4922 </brazil>
```

## 12.23 “Brazilian” language: `brazilian.mld`

The “brazilian” language is just like “brazil”, so we just load `brazil.mld` (see section 12.22):

```
4923 <*brazilian>
4924 \ProvidesFile{brazilian.mld}[2005/07/11]
4925 \mtcselectlanguage{brazil}%
4926 </brazilian>
```

## 12.24 “Breton” language: `breton.mld`

The titles for the “breton” language<sup>18</sup> are taken from `breton.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 67]:

```
4927 <*breton>
4928 \ProvidesFile{breton.mld}[2006/01/13]
```

<sup>17</sup>It is the portuguese dialect spoken in Brazil. These titles are *different* in Brazil and in Portugal. Arnaldo VIEGAS DE LIMA contributed brasilian translations. See section 12.126 on page 417.

<sup>18</sup>Spoken as a local celtic dialect in french Brittany.

```

4929%% Breton titles for minitoc.sty
4930%% from breton.dtx (babel)
4931%% Rolland, Christian
4932\def\ptctitle{Taolenn}%
4933\def\plftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\'u}%
4934\def\pltttitle{Listenn an taolenno\'u}%
4935%%
4936\def\mtctitle{Taolenn}%
4937\def\mlftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\'u}%
4938\def\mltttitle{Listenn an taolenno\'u}%
4939%%
4940\def\stctitle{Taolenn}%
4941\def\slftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\'u}%
4942\def\sltttitle{Listenn an taolenno\'u}%
4943</breton>

```

## 12.25 “British” language: british.mld

The “british” language is just like “english”, so we just load english.mld (see section 12.41 on page 373):

```

4944<{*british}>
4945\ProvidesFile{british.mld}[2005/07/11]
4946\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
4947</british>

```

## 12.26 “Bulgarian” language: bulgarian.mld

The titles for the “bulgarian” language are taken from the bulgarian.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 41]; they require specific cyrillic fonts. See also section 12.27 on the next page.

```

4948<{*bulgarian}>
4949\ProvidesFile{bulgarian.mld}[2006/01/13]
4950%% Bulgarian titles for minitoc.sty
4951%% from bulgarian.dtx (babel)
4952%% Boshnakov, Georgi
4953%% Needs special fonts
4954\def\ptctitle{%
4955 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
4956\def\plftitle{%
4957 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
4958 \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
4959\def\pltttitle{%
4960 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %

```

```

4961 \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
4962 %%
4963 \def\mtctitle{%
4964 {\cyr\CYRS\cyhrdsn\cyrd\cyhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
4965 \def\mlftitle{%
4966 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyhrdsn\cyrk\ %
4967 \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
4968 \def\mltttitle{%
4969 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyhrdsn\cyrk\ %
4970 \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
4971 %%
4972 \def\stctitle{%
4973 {\cyr\CYRS\cyhrdsn\cyrd\cyhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
4974 \def\slftitle{%
4975 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyhrdsn\cyrk\ %
4976 \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
4977 \def\sltttitle{%
4978 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyhrdsn\cyrk\ %
4979 \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
4980 </bulgarian>

```

## 12.27 “Bulgarianb” language: bulgarianb.mld

The titles for the “bulgarianb” (upper bulgarian) language are taken from the `russianb.dtx` file of the `babel` package [29, 30, 57, 129]; they require specific cyrillic fonts. See also section 12.26 on the preceding page.

```

4981 (*bulgarianb)
4982 \ProvidesFile{bulgarianb.mld}[2006/03/06]
4983 %% Upper bulgarian titles for minitoc.sty
4984 %% From russianb.dtx
4985 %% Needs cyrillic fonts for upper bulgarian
4986 \def\ptctitle{%
4987 {\cyr\CYRS\cyhrdsn\cyrd\cyhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
4988 \def\plftitle{% Figuri
4989 {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
4990 \def\pltttitle{% Tablici
4991 {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
4992 %%
4993 \def\mtctitle{% Sydyrzhanie
4994 {\cyr\CYRS\cyhrdsn\cyrd\cyhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
4995 \def\mlftitle{% Figurite
4996 {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
4997 \def\mltttitle{% Tablici
4998 {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
4999 %%
5000 \def\stctitle{% Sydyrzhanie
5001 {\cyr\CYRS\cyhrdsn\cyrd\cyhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
5002 \def\slftitle{% Figuri
5003 {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%

```

```

5004 \def\sltttitle{% Tablici
5005 {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyr1\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
5006 </bulgarianb>

```

## 12.28 “Buryat” language: buryat.mld

The titles for the “buryat” language<sup>19</sup> are taken from the MonTeX package [84, 86]. This language requires specific fonts. See also section 12.112 on page 410.

```

5007 <{*buryat}
5008 \ProvidesFile{buryat.mld}[1999/03/16]
5009 %% Buryat titles for minitoc.sty
5010 %% Needs special fonts
5011 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
5012 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
5013 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
5014 %%
5015 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
5016 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
5017 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
5018 %%
5019 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
5020 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
5021 \def\sltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
5022 </buryat>

```

## 12.29 “Buryat2” language: buryat2.mld

The titles for the “buryat2” language (a variant for the buryat language, see section 12.28) are taken from the MonTeX package [84, 86]. This language requires specific fonts. See also section 12.112 on page 410.

```

5023 <{*buryat2}
5024 \ProvidesFile{buryat2.mld}[1999/03/16]
5025 %% Buryat2 titles for minitoc.sty
5026 %% Needs special fonts
5027 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
5028 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
5029 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
5030 %%
5031 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
5032 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
5033 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
5034 %%

```

---

<sup>19</sup>Spoken in some regions of Mongolia, in the Buryat republic, near Lake Baikal.



```

5035 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
5036 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
5037 \def\sltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
5038 </buryat2>

```

## 12.30 “Canadian” language: canadian.mld



The “canadian” language (note the final “ian”) is just the *english* language spoken in Canada. We just load the file `english.mld` (see section 12.41 on page 373):

```

5039 <{*canadian}
5040 \ProvidesFile{canadian.mld}[2004/12/14]
5041 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
5042 </canadian>

```

## 12.31 “Canadien” language: canadien.mld



The “canadien” language (note the final “ien”) is just the *french* language spoken in Canada. We just load the file `french.mld` (see section 12.55 on page 380):

```

5043 <{*canadien}
5044 \ProvidesFile{canadien.mld}[2004/12/14]
5045 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
5046 </canadien>

```

## 12.32 “Castillan” language: castillan.mld

The “castillan” language is more known as “spanish”, but is spoken mainly in Castile, a part of central Spain. We just load the `spanish.mld` file (see section 12.147 on page 429):

```

5047 <{*castillan}
5048 \ProvidesFile{castillan.mld}[2004/12/14]
5049 %% Castillan (spanish) titles for minitoc.sty
5050 \mtcselectlanguage{spanish}%
5051 </castillan>

```

### 12.33 “Castillian” language: `castillian.mld`

The “castillian” language is more known as “spanish”, but is spoken mainly in Castile, a part of central Spain. “Castillian” is the english name for “castillan”. We just load the `spanish.mld` file (see section 12.147 on page 429):

```
5052 <*castillian>
5053 \ProvidesFile{castillian.mld}[2005/07/01]
5054 %% Castillian (spanish) titles for minitoc.sty
5055 \mtcselectlanguage{spanish}%
5056 </castillian>
```

### 12.34 “Catalan” language: `catalan.mld`

The titles for the “catalan” language<sup>20</sup> are taken from the `catalan.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 38]:

```
5057 <*catalan>
5058 \ProvidesFile{catalan.mld}[2006/01/13]
5059 %% Catalan titles for minitoc.sty
5060 %% from catalan.dtx (babel)
5061 %% Badenes, Goncal
5062 \def\ptctitle{\`Index}%
5063 \def\plftitle{\`Index de figures}%
5064 \def\pltttitle{\`Index de taules}%
5065 %%
5066 \def\mtctitle{\`Index}%
5067 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
5068 \def\mltttitle{Taules}%
5069 %%
5070 \def\stctitle{\`Index}%
5071 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
5072 \def\slttitle{Taules}%
5073 </catalan>
```

### 12.35 “Chinese1” language: `chinese1.mld` and `chinese1.mlo`

There are several variants for the chinese language. The “chinese1” language uses titles taken from the `Bg5.cap` file in the CJK system [137, 138]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 12.36 on the following page.

<sup>20</sup>Spoken in Catalunya, the eastern part of Spain, around Barcelona.

The titles for the “chinese1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `chinese1.mlo`.

```

5074 <*chinese1>
5075 \ProvidesFile{chinese1.mld}[2005/01/28]
5076 %% From the file file Bg5.cap of the CJK package
5077 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
5078 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
5079 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
5080 %% Chinese captions: character set: Big 5, encoding: Big 5
5081 %%
5082 \mtcloadmlo{chinese1}%
5083 </chinese1>

```

### 12.36 “Chinese2” language: `chinese2.mld` and `chinese2.mlo`

The “chinese2” language uses titles taken from the `Bg5.cpx` file in the CJK system [137, 138]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 12.35 on the page before.

The titles for the “chinese2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `chinese2.mlo`.

```

5084 <*chinese2>
5085 \ProvidesFile{chinese2.mld}[2005/01/28]
5086 %% From the file Bg5.cpx of the CJK package
5087 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
5088 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
5089 %%
5090 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
5091 %% Chinese captions: character set: Big 5, encoding: Big 5, preprocessed
5092 %%
5093 \mtcloadmlo{chinese2}%
5094 </chinese2>

```

### 12.37 “Croatian” language: `croatian.mld`

The titles for the “croatian” language are taken from the file `croatian.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 63]:

```

5095 <*croatian>
5096 \ProvidesFile{croatian.mld}[2006/01/13]
5097 %% Croatian titles for minitoc.sty
5098 %% from croatian.dtx (babel)

```

```

5099%% Pai\{c}, Alan
5100\def\ptctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
5101\def\plftitle{Slike}%
5102\def\plttitle{Tablice}%
5103%%
5104\def\mtctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
5105\def\mlftitle{Slike}%
5106\def\mlttitle{Tablice}%
5107%%
5108\def\stctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
5109\def\slftitle{Slike}%
5110\def\slttitle{Tablice}%
5111</croatian>

```

## 12.38 “Czech” language: czech.mld

The titles for the “czech” language are taken from the file czech.dtx in the babel package [29, 30, 60]:

```

5112<*czech>
5113\ProvidesFile{czech.mld}[2006/01/13]
5114%% Czech titles for minitoc.sty
5115%% from czech.dtx (babel)
5116%% Lokajicek, Milos
5117%% Warning: defines \w as a ring accent
5118\def\w#1{\accent'27 #1}
5119\def\ptctitle{Obsah}%
5120\def\plftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\w{u}}%
5121\def\plttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
5122%%
5123\def\mtctitle{Obsah}%
5124\def\mlftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\w{u}}%
5125\def\mlttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
5126%%
5127\def\stctitle{Obsah}%
5128\def\slftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\w{u}}%
5129\def\slttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
5130</czech>

```

## 12.39 “Danish” language: danish.mld

The titles for the “danish” language are taken from the danish.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 58]:

```

5131 < *danish>
5132 \ProvidesFile{danish.mld}[2006/01/13]
5133 %% Danish titles for minitoc.sty
5134 %% from danish.dtx (babel)
5135 %% Larsen, Henning
5136 \def\ptctitle{Indholdsfortegnelse}%
5137 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
5138 \def\plttitle{Tabeller}%
5139 %%
5140 \def\mtctitle{Indholdsfortegnelse}%
5141 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
5142 \def\mlttitle{Tabeller}%
5143 %%
5144 \def\stctitle{Indholdsfortegnelse}%
5145 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
5146 \def\slttitle{Tabeller}%
5147 < /danish>

```

## 12.40 “Dutch” language: dutch.mld

The titles for the “dutch” language are taken from the dutch.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 31]:

```

5148 < *dutch>
5149 \ProvidesFile{dutch.mld}[2006/01/13]
5150 % Dutch titles for minitoc.sty
5151 %% from dutch.dtx (babel)
5152 %% Braams, Johannes
5153 \def\ptctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
5154 \def\plftitle{Lijst van figuren}%
5155 \def\plttitle{Lijst van tabellen}%
5156 %%
5157 \def\mtctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
5158 \def\mlftitle{Lijst van figuren}%
5159 \def\mlttitle{Lijst van tabellen}%
5160 %%
5161 \def\stctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
5162 \def\slftitle{Lijst van figuren}%
5163 \def\slttitle{Lijst van tabellen}%
5164 < /dutch>

```

## 12.41 “English” language: english.mld

The titles for the “english” language are taken from the english.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 32]. *It is the default language.*



See also sections 12.6 on page 357, 12.11 on page 359, 12.25 on page 366, 12.30 on page 369, 12.114 on page 411, 12.158 on page 434, and 12.162 on page 436.

```

5165 <*english>
5166 \ProvidesFile{english.mld}[2006/01/13]
5167 %% English titles for minitoc.sty
5168 %% from english.dtx (babel)
5169 %% Braams, Johannes
5170 \def\ptctitle{Table of Contents}%
5171 \def\plftitle{List of Figures}%
5172 \def\plttitle{List of Tables}%
5173 %%
5174 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
5175 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
5176 \def\mlttitle{Tables}%
5177 %%
5178 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
5179 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
5180 \def\slttitle{Tables}%
5181 </english>

```

## 12.42 “English1” language: english1.mld

The titles for the “english1” language are taken from the english.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 32], with some adaptations for the part-level titles.

```

5182 <*english1>
5183 \ProvidesFile{english1.mld}[2006/03/30]
5184 %% English titles for minitoc.sty
5185 %% from english.dtx (babel) Braams, Johannes
5186 %% ptctitle, plftitle and plttitle modified (JPFD)
5187 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
5188 Table of Contents of the First Part\relax
5189 \else Table of Contents of Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
5190 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
5191 List of Figures in the First Part\relax
5192 \else List of Figures in Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
5193 \def\plttitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
5194 List of Tables in the First Part\relax
5195 \else List of Tables in Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
5196 %%
5197 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
5198 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
5199 \def\mlttitle{Tables}%
5200 %%
5201 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
5202 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
5203 \def\slttitle{Tables}%
5204 </english1>

```

## 12.43 “English2” language: english2.mld

The titles for the “english2” language are taken from the `english.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 32], with some adaptations for the part-level titles.

```

5205 <*english2>
5206 \ProvidesFile{english2.mld}[2006/03/30]
5207 %% English titles for minitoc.sty
5208 %% from english.dtx (babel) Braams, Johannes
5209 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JPFD)
5210 \def\mtcEnglishIIpart{\ifcase\value{part}%
5211 \or the First Part\or the Second Part\or
5212 the Third Part\or the Fourth Part\or the Fifth Part\or
5213 the Sixth Part\or the Seventh Part\or the Eighth Part\or
5214 the Ninth Part\or the Tenth Part\or the Eleventh Part\or
5215 the Twelfth Part\or the Thirteenth Part\or the Fourteenth Part\or
5216 the Fifteenth Part\or the Sixteenth Part\or the Seventeenth Part\or
5217 the Eighteenth Part\or the Nineteenth Part\or
5218 the Twentieth Part\else Part~\Roman{part}\fi}
5219 \def\ptctitle{Contents of \mtcEnglishIIpart}
5220 \def\plftitle{List of Figures in \mtcEnglishIIpart}
5221 \def\pltttitle{List of Tables in \mtcEnglishIIpart}
5222 %%
5223 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
5224 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
5225 \def\mltttitle{Tables}%
5226 %%
5227 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
5228 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
5229 \def\slttitle{Tables}%
5230 </english2>

```

## 12.44 “Esperant” language: esperant.mld

The titles for the “esperant” (espéranto) language are taken from the `esperanto.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 61]. The esperanto (artificial) language was created in 1887 by Lejzer Ludwig ZAMENOF<sup>21</sup> (1859–1917).

```

5231 <*esperant>
5232 \ProvidesFile{esperant.mld}[2006/01/13]
5233 %% Esperanto titles for minitoc.sty
5234 %% from esperanto.dtx (babel)
5235 %% Marti, Ruiz-Altaba and Knappen. Jörg
5236 \def\ptctitle{Enhavo}%
5237 \def\plftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
5238 \def\pltttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%

```

<sup>21</sup> See <http://uea.org/> and <http://www.esperanto-france.org/> for more information.

```

5239 %%
5240 \def\mtctitle{Enhavo}%
5241 \def\mlftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
5242 \def\mltttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
5243 %%
5244 \def\stctitle{Enhavo}%
5245 \def\slftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
5246 \def\slttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
5247 </esperant>

```

## 12.45 “Esperanto” language: `esperanto.mld`

The “esperanto” and “esperant” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `esperant.mld` file (see section 12.44 on the page before):

```

5248 <(*esperanto)
5249 \ProvidesFile{esperanto.mld}[2004/12/14]
5250 \mtcselectlanguage{esperant}%
5251 </esperanto>

```

## 12.46 “Estonian” language: `estonian.mld`

The titles for the “estonian” language are taken from the `estonian.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 68]:

```

5252 <(*estonian)
5253 \ProvidesFile{estonian.mld}[2006/01/13]
5254 %% Estonian titles for minitoc.sty
5255 %% from estonian.dtx (babel)
5256 %% Saar, Enn
5257 \def\ptctitle{Sisukord}%
5258 \def\plftitle{Joonised}%
5259 \def\pltttitle{Tabelid}%
5260 %%
5261 \def\mtctitle{Sisukord}%
5262 \def\mlftitle{Joonised}%
5263 \def\mltttitle{Tabelid}%
5264 %%
5265 \def\stctitle{Sisukord}%
5266 \def\slftitle{Joonised}%
5267 \def\slttitle{Tabelid}%
5268 </estonian>

```



## 12.47 “Ethiopia” language: `ethiopia.mld`

The titles for the “ethiopia” language are taken from the `ethiop` package [22]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 12.49 on the following page.

```

5269 <ethiopia>
5270 \ProvidesFile{ethiopia.mld}[1999/03/16]
5271 %% Ethiopian titles for minitoc.sty
5272 %% Needs special fonts
5273 \def\ptctitle{yezate}%
5274 \def\plftitle{%
5275 ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109}
5276 mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
5277 \def\plttitle{%
5278 yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149}
5279 mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
5280 %%
5281 \def\mtctitle{yezate}%
5282 \def\mlftitle{%
5283 ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109}
5284 mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
5285 \def\mlttitle{%
5286 yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149}
5287 mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
5288 %%
5289 \def\stctitle{yezate}%
5290 \def\slftitle{%
5291 ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109}
5292 mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
5293 \def\slttitle{%
5294 yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149}
5295 mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
5296 </ethiopia>

```

## 12.48 “Ethiopian” language: `ethiopian.mld`

The “ethiopian” language is just a synonym for the “ethiopia” language, so we just load the `ethiopia.mld` file (see section 12.47). See also section 12.47.

```

5297 <ethiopian>
5298 \ProvidesFile{ethiopian.mld}[2004/12/14]
5299 %% Needs ethiopian special fonts
5300 \mtcselectlanguage{ethiopia}%
5301 </ethiopian>

```

## 12.49 “Ethiopian2” language: `ethiopian2.mld`

The titles for the “ethiopian2” language (for Omega) are taken from the `ethiop` package [22]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 12.47 on the page before.

```

5302 <*ethiopian2>
5303 \ProvidesFile{ethiopian2.mld}[2006/01/30]
5304 %% Ethiopian titles for minitoc.sty with Omega.
5305 %% Needs special fonts
5306 \def\ptctitle{^^^^12ed^^^^12d8^^^^1275}%
5307 \def\plftitle{^^^^12e8^^^^1225^^^^12d5^^^^120e^^^^127d
5308 ^^^^121b^^^^12cd^^^^132b}%
5309 \def\pltttitle{^^^^12e8^^^^1230^^^^1295^^^^1320^^^^1228^^^^12e5
5310 ^^^^121b^^^^12cd^^^^132b}%
5311 %%
5312 \def\mtctitle{^^^^12ed^^^^12d8^^^^1275}%
5313 \def\mlftitle{^^^^12e8^^^^1225^^^^12d5^^^^120e^^^^127d
5314 ^^^^121b^^^^12cd^^^^132b}%
5315 \def\mltttitle{^^^^12e8^^^^1230^^^^1295^^^^1320^^^^1228^^^^12e5
5316 ^^^^121b^^^^12cd^^^^132b}%
5317 %%
5318 \def\stctitle{^^^^12ed^^^^12d8^^^^1275}%
5319 \def\slftitle{^^^^12e8^^^^1225^^^^12d5^^^^120e^^^^127d
5320 ^^^^121b^^^^12cd^^^^132b}%
5321 \def\sltttitle{^^^^12e8^^^^1230^^^^1295^^^^1320^^^^1228^^^^12e5
5322 ^^^^121b^^^^12cd^^^^132b}%
5323 </ethiopian2>

```

## 12.50 “Farsi1” language: `farsi1.mld` and `farsi1.mlo`

There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran. The “farsi1” language uses titles taken from the `farsi.sty` file in the FarsiTeX system<sup>22</sup>, by Mohammad GHODSI, Roozbeh POURNADER, Hassan ABOLHASSANI, and others. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 12.51 on the following page.

The titles for the “farsi1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `farsi1.mlo`.

```

5324 <*farsi1>
5325 \ProvidesFile{farsi1.mld}[2005/09/13]
5326 %% From farsi.sty of the FarsiTeX project
5327 %% by Dr Mohammad Ghodsi,
5328 %% Roozbeh Pournader (roozbeh@sharif.edu),
5329 %% Hassan Abolhassani, and others.
5330 %% http://www.farsitex.org

```

<sup>22</sup>By Mohammad GHODSI (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and FarsiTeX Project Group. See the FarsiTeX site at <http://www.farsitex.org>

```
5331 \mtcloadmlo{farsi1}%
5332 </farsi1>
```

## 12.51 “Farsi2” language: farsi2.mld and farsi2.mlo

There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran. The “farsi2” language uses titles taken from the `farsi.sty` file in the FarsiTeX system<sup>23</sup>, by Mohammad GHODSI, Roozbeh POURNADER, Hassan ABOLHASSANI, and others. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 12.50 on the page before.

The titles for the “farsi2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `farsi2.mlo`.

```
5333 <{*farsi2}>
5334 \ProvidesFile{farsi2.mld}[2005/09/13]
5335 %% From farsi.sty of the FarsiTeX project
5336 %% by Dr Mohammad Ghodsi,
5337 %% Roozbeh Pournader (roozbeh@sharif.edu),
5338 %% Hassan Abolhassani, and others.
5339 %% http://www.farsitex.org
5340 \mtcloadmlo{farsi2}%
5341 </farsi2>
```

## 12.52 “Finnish” language: finnish.mld

The titles for the “finnish” language are taken from the `finnish.dtx` file in the babel package [29, 30, 53]. See also section 12.53 on the following page.

```
5342 <{*finnish}>
5343 \ProvidesFile{finnish.mld}[2006/03/20]
5344 %% Finnish titles for minitoc.sty
5345 %% from finnish.dtx (babel)
5346 %% Kanerva, Mikko and Reino, Keranen
5347 \def\ptctitle{Sis\alt{o}}%
5348 \def\plftitle{Kuvat}%
5349 \def\pltttitle{Taulukot}%
5350 %%
5351 \def\mtctitle{Sis\alt{o}}%
5352 \def\mlftitle{Kuvat}%
5353 \def\mltttitle{Taulukot}%
5354 %%
5355 \def\stctitle{Sis\alt{o}}%
5356 \def\slftitle{Kuvat}%

```

<sup>23</sup> By Mohammad GHODSI (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and FarsiTeX Project Group. See the FarsiTeX site at <http://www.farsitex.org>

```
5357 \def\sltttitle{Taulukot}%
5358 </finnish>
```

## 12.53 “Finnish2” language: `finnish2.mld`

The titles for the “finnish2” language are taken from a variant proposed by the `finnish.dtx` in the `babel` package [29, 30, 53]. See also section 12.52 on the page before.

```
5359 <(*finnish2)
5360 \ProvidesFile{finnish2.mld}[2006/01/13]
5361 %% Finnish titles for minitoc.sty (variant)
5362 %% from finnish.dtx (babel)
5363 %% Kanerva, Mikko and Reino, Keranen
5364 \def\ptctitle{Sis\ "allys}%
5365 \def\plftitle{Kuvat}%
5366 \def\pltttitle{Taulukot}%
5367 %%
5368 \def\mtctitle{Sis\ "allys}%
5369 \def\mlftitle{Kuvat}%
5370 \def\mltttitle{Taulukot}%
5371 %%
5372 \def\stctitle{Sis\ "allys}%
5373 \def\slftitle{Kuvat}%
5374 \def\sltttitle{Taulukot}%
5375 </finnish2>
```

## 12.54 “Francais” language: `francais.mld`

The “francais”<sup>24</sup> language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the file `french.mld` (see section 12.55):

```
5376 <(*francais)
5377 \ProvidesFile{francais.mld}[2004/12/14]
5378 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
5379 </francais>
```

## 12.55 “French” language: `french.mld`

The titles for the “french” language are taken from the `frenchb.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 48]. See also sections 12.1 on page 355, 12.2 on page 356, 12.31 on page 369, 12.54, 12.58 on page 382, 12.59 on page 383, and 12.60 on page 383.

<sup>24</sup>The right spelling is “français”, but we do not dare using a cedilla in a file name.

```

5380 <(*french)
5381 \ProvidesFile{french.mld}[2006/03/21]
5382 %% French titles for minitoc.sty
5383 %% from frenchb.dtx (babel)
5384 %% Flipo, Daniel
5385 \def\ptctitle{Table des mati\`eres}%
5386 \def\plftitle{Liste des figures}%
5387 \def\plttitle{Liste des tableaux}%
5388 %%
5389 \def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
5390 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
5391 \def\mlttitle{Tableaux}%
5392 %%
5393 \def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
5394 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
5395 \def\slttitle{Tableaux}%
5396 </french>

```

## 12.56 “French1” language: french1.mld

The titles for the “french1” language are taken from the frenchb.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 48], with some adaptations for the part-level titles.

```

5397 <(*french1)
5398 \ProvidesFile{french1.mld}[2006/03/29]
5399 %% French titles for minitoc.sty
5400 %% from frenchb.dtx (babel) Flipo, Daniel
5401 %% ptctitle, plftitle and plttitle modified (JPFD)
5402 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
5403 Sommaire de la premi\`ere partie\relax
5404 \else Sommaire de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
5405 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
5406 Liste des figures de la premi\`ere partie\relax
5407 \else Liste des figures de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
5408 \def\plttitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
5409 Liste des tableaux de la premi\`ere partie\relax
5410 \else Liste des tableaux de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
5411 %%
5412 \def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
5413 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
5414 \def\mlttitle{Tableaux}%
5415 %%
5416 \def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
5417 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
5418 \def\slttitle{Tableaux}%
5419 </french1>

```

## 12.57 “French2” language: french2.mld

The titles for the “french2” language are taken from the frenchb.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 48], with some adaptations for the part-level titles. See also section 8.5.6 on page 180, for the subtle distinction between “deuxième” and “seconde”.

```

5420 (*french2)
5421 \ProvidesFile{french2.mld}[2006/06/08]
5422 %% French titles for minitoc.sty
5423 %% from frenchb.dtx (babel) Flipo, Daniel
5424 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JFPD)
5425 \def\mtcFrenchIIpart{\ifcase\value{part}%
5426 \or premi\`ere partie\or
5427 {\ifmtcsecondpart seconde\else deuxi\`eme\fi} partie\or
5428 troisi\`eme partie\or quatri\`eme partie\or cinqui\`eme partie\or
5429 sixi\`eme partie\or septi\`eme partie\or huiti\`eme partie\or
5430 neuvi\`eme partie\or dixi\`eme partie\or onzi\`eme partie\or
5431 douzi\`eme partie\or treizi\`eme partie\or quatorzi\`eme partie\or
5432 quinzi\`eme partie\or seizi\`eme partie\or dix-septi\`eme partie\or
5433 dix-huiti\`eme partie\or dix-neuvi\`eme partie\or
5434 vingti\`eme partie\else partie~\Roman{part}\fi}
5435 \def\ptctitle{Sommaire de la \mtcFrenchIIpart}
5436 \def\plftitle{Liste des figures de la \mtcFrenchIIpart}
5437 \def\pltttitle{Liste des tableaux de la \mtcFrenchIIpart}
5438 %%
5439 \def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
5440 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
5441 \def\mltttitle{Tableaux}%
5442 %%
5443 \def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
5444 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
5445 \def\slttitle{Tableaux}%
5446 \end{french2}

```

## 12.58 “Frenchb” language: frenchb.mld

The “frenchb” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 12.55 on page 380.

```

5447 (*frenchb)
5448 \ProvidesFile{frenchb.mld}[2003/02/11]
5449 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
5450 \end{frenchb}

```

## 12.59 “Frenchle” language: frenchle.mld

The “frenchle” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 12.55 on page 380.

```
5451 <{*frenchle}
5452 \ProvidesFile{frenchle.mld}[2003/02/20]
5453 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
5454 </frenchle>
```

## 12.60 “Frenchpro” language: frenchpro.mld

The “frenchpro” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 12.55 on page 380.

```
5455 <{*frenchpro}
5456 \ProvidesFile{frenchpro.mld}[2003/02/20]
5457 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
5458 </frenchpro>
```

## 12.61 “Galician” language: galician.mld

The titles for the “galician” language<sup>25</sup> are taken from the galician.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 44]:

```
5459 <{*galician}
5460 \ProvidesFile{galician.mld}[2006/01/13]
5461 %% Galician titles for minitoc.sty
5462 %% from galician.dtx (babel)
5463 %% Carriba, Manuel
5464 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice Xeral}%
5465 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
5466 \def\pltttitle{\'Indice de T\'aboas}%
5467 %%
5468 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice Xeral}%
5469 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
5470 \def\mltttitle{\'Indice de T\'aboas}%
5471 %%
5472 \def\stctitle{\'Indice Xeral}%
5473 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
5474 \def\sltttitle{\'Indice de T\'aboas}%
5475 </galician>
```

---

<sup>25</sup>Spoken in Galice, in the north-west part of Spain, around Santiago de Compostela.

## 12.62 “German” language: `german.mld`

The titles for the “german” language are taken from the babel package [29, 30]. See also the section 12.12 on page 359.

```

5476 <*german>
5477 \ProvidesFile{german.mld}[1999/03/16]
5478 %% German titles for minitoc.sty
5479 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
5480 \def\plftitle{Figuren}%
5481 \def\plttitle{Tabellen}%
5482 %%
5483 \def\mtctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
5484 \def\mlftitle{Figuren}%
5485 \def\mlttitle{Tabellen}%
5486 %%
5487 \def\stctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
5488 \def\slftitle{Figuren}%
5489 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
5490 </german>

```

## 12.63 “Germanb” language: `germanb.mld`

The “germanb” language is a variant for the “german” language. The titles are taken from the `germanb.dtx` file in the babel package [29, 30, 64]:

```

5491 <*germanb>
5492 \ProvidesFile{germanb.mld}[2006/01/13]
5493 %% German titles (variant) for minitoc.sty
5494 %% from germanb.dtx (babel)
5495 %% Braams, Johannes and Raichle, Bernd
5496 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%
5497 \def\plftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
5498 \def\plttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
5499 %%
5500 \def\mtctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%
5501 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
5502 \def\mlttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
5503 %%
5504 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
5505 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
5506 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
5507 </germanb>

```



## 12.64 “Germanb2” language: `germanb2.mld`

The “germanb2” language is a variant for the “german” language, with short titles. See also section 12.63 on the page before. The titles are taken from the `babel` package [29, 30]:

```

5508 <*germanb2>
5509 \ProvidesFile{germanb2.mld}[2005/09/27]
5510 %% German titles (variant) for minitoc.sty
5511 \def\ptctitle{Inhalt}%
5512 \def\plftitle{Abbildungen}%
5513 \def\pltttitle{Tabellen}%
5514 %%
5515 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
5516 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungen}%
5517 \def\mltttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
5518 %%
5519 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
5520 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
5521 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
5522 </germanb2>

```

## 12.65 “Greek” language: `greek.mld`

The titles for the “greek” language (modern greek) are taken from the `greek.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 71]. Greek fonts are required.

```

5523 <*greek>
5524 \ProvidesFile{greek.mld}[2006/01/13]
5525 %% Greek titles for minitoc.sty
5526 %% from greek.dtx (babel)
5527 %% Syropoulos, Apostolos
5528 %% Needs greek fonts.
5529 \def\ptctitle{Perieq'omena}%
5530 \def\plftitle{Kat'alogoc Sqhm'atwn}%
5531 \def\pltttitle{Kat'alogoc Pin'akwn}%
5532 %%
5533 \def\mtctitle{Perieq'omena}%
5534 \def\mlftitle{Kat'alogoc Sqhm'atwn}%
5535 \def\mltttitle{Kat'alogoc Pin'akwn}%
5536 %%
5537 \def\stctitle{Perieq'omena}%
5538 \def\slftitle{Kat'alogoc Sqhm'atwn}%
5539 \def\slttitle{Kat'alogoc Pin'akwn}%
5540 </greek>

```

## 12.66 “Greek-mono” language: greek-mono.mld

The titles for the “greek-mono” language<sup>26</sup> are taken from the ANTOMEGA project [121]:

```

5541 <*greek – mono>
5542 \ProvidesFile{greek-mono.mld}[2005/02/08]
5543 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project)
5544 %% Needs Omega
5545 %% Alexej M. Kryokov
5546 %% Dmitry Ivanov
5547 %%
5548 \def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
5549 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
5550 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
5551 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
5552 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5553 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
5554 ^03bd}}%
5555 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
5556 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5557 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
5558 %%
5559 \def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
5560 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
5561 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
5562 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
5563 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5564 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
5565 ^03bd}}%
5566 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
5567 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5568 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
5569 %%
5570 \def\stctitle{\localgreek%
5571 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
5572 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
5573 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
5574 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5575 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
5576 ^03bd}}%
5577 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
5578 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5579 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
5580 </greek – mono>

```

<sup>26</sup>Monotonic greek, from a recent (1982) but strongly contested – and contestable – reform of the greek language.

## 12.67 “Greek-polydemo” language: greek-polydemo.mld

The titles for the “greek-polydemo” language<sup>27</sup> are taken from the ANTOMEGA project [121]:

```

5581 (*greek – polydemo)
5582 \ProvidesFile{greek-polydemo.mld}[2005/02/08]
5583 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project)
5584 %% Needs Omega
5585 %% Alexej M. Kryokov
5586 %% Dmitry Ivanov
5587 %%
5588 \def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
5589 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
5590 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
5591 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
5592 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5593 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
5594 ^03bd}}%
5595 \def\plttitle{\localgreek%
5596 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5597 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
5598 %%
5599 \def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
5600 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
5601 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
5602 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
5603 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5604 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
5605 ^03bd}}%
5606 \def\mlttitle{\localgreek%
5607 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5608 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
5609 %%
5610 \def\stctitle{\localgreek%
5611 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
5612 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
5613 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
5614 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5615 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
5616 ^03bd}}%
5617 \def\slttitle{\localgreek%
5618 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5619 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
5620 (/greek – polydemo)

```

<sup>27</sup> Polytonic demotic (popular) greek, for classical greek.

## 12.68 “Greek-polykatha” language: greek-polykatha.mld

The titles for the “greek-polykatha” language<sup>28</sup> are taken from the ANTOMEGA project [121]:

```

5621 (*greek – polykatha)
5622 \ProvidesFile{greek-polykatha.mld}[2005/02/08]
5623 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project)
5624 %% Needs Omega
5625 %% Alexej M. Kryokov
5626 %% Dmitry Ivanov
5627 %%
5628 \def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
5629 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
5630 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
5631 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
5632 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5633 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
5634 ^03bd}}%
5635 \def\plttitle{\localgreek%
5636 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5637 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
5638 %%
5639 \def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
5640 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
5641 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
5642 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
5643 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5644 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
5645 ^03bd}}%
5646 \def\mlttitle{\localgreek%
5647 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5648 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
5649 %%
5650 \def\stctitle{\localgreek%
5651 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
5652 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
5653 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
5654 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5655 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
5656 ^03bd}}%
5657 \def\slttitle{\localgreek%
5658 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5659 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
5660 /greek – polykatha)

```

<sup>28</sup> Polytonic greek, « kathaverousa » (purified) style, a form of the Greek language created during the early 19th century by Adamantios KORAI, to purify the language from the Byzantine and non-greek vocabulary. It has now been obsoleted by the demotic (popular) greek, but it has left a very noticeable trace in the modern Greek language.

## 12.69 “Guarani” language: guarani.mld

The “guarani” language is the main language spoken in Paraguay. Very often, a mixture of Guarani and Spanish, known as Jopara, is spoken. The titles are taken from the guarani.ldf file by Javier Bezos [25]. A special input encoding (win-gn.def) is needed. These files are available on the CTAN archives.

```

5661 <*guarani>
5662 \ProvidesFile{guarani.mld}[2005/08/26]
5663 %% Guarani titles for minitoc.sty
5664 %% from guarani.ldf by Javier Bezos.
5665 %% Input encoding win-gn.def is needed.
5666 %%
5667 \def\ptctitle{\`Indice general}%
5668 \def\plftitle{\`Indice de figuras}%
5669 \def\plttitle{\`Indice de cuadros}%
5670 %%
5671 \def\mtctitle{\`Indice general}%
5672 \def\mlftitle{\`Indice de figuras}%
5673 \def\mlttitle{\`Indice de cuadros}%
5674 %%
5675 \def\stctitle{\`Indice general}%
5676 \def\slftitle{\`Indice de figuras}%
5677 \def\slttitle{\`Indice de cuadros}%
5678 </guarani>

```

## 12.70 “Hangul1” language: hangul1.mld and hangul1.mlo

The Korean language was originally written using the Chinese characters; it is now mainly written in Hang l, the Korean writing system, optionally incorporating Hanja to write Sino-Korean words [186]. See [102, page 150] and [163].

The titles for the “hangul1” language (korean in hangûl script, first variant) are taken from the file hangul.cap of the CJK system [137, 138]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 12.71 on the following page, 12.72 on the next page, 12.73 on page 391, 12.74 on page 392, 12.75 on page 392, 12.76 on page 393, and 12.77 on page 393.

The titles for the “hangul1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul1.mlo.

```

5679 <*hangul1>
5680 \ProvidesFile{hangul1.mld}[2005/01/28]
5681 %% From the file hangul.cap of the CJK package
5682 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e

```

```

5683 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
5684 %%
5685 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
5686 %% Hangul captions
5687 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
5688 %%
5689 \mtcloadmlo{hangul1}%
5690 </hangul1>

```

## 12.71 “Hangul2” language: hangul2.mld and hangul2.mlo

The titles for the “hangul2” language (korean in hangûl script, second variant) are taken from the file hangul.cpx of the CJK system [137, 138]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 12.70 on the page before, 12.72, 12.73 on the next page, 12.74 on page 392, 12.75 on page 392, 12.76 on page 393, and 12.77 on page 393.

The titles for the “hangul2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul2.mlo.

```

5691 (*hangul2)
5692 \ProvidesFile{hangul2.mld}[2005/01/28]
5693 %% From the file hangul.cpx of the CJK package
5694 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
5695 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
5696 %%
5697 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
5698 %% Hangul captions
5699 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
5700 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
5701 %%
5702 \mtcloadmlo{hangul2}%
5703 </hangul2>

```

## 12.72 “Hangul3” language: hangul3.mld and hangul3.mlo

The titles for the “hangul3” language (korean in hangûl script, third variant) are taken from the file hangul2.cap of the CJK system [137, 138]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 12.70 on the preceding page, 12.71, 12.73 on the following page, 12.74 on page 392, 12.75 on page 392, 12.76 on page 393, and 12.77 on page 393.

The titles for the “hangul3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul3.mlo.

```

5704 (*hangul3)
5705 \ProvidesFile{hangul3.mld}[2005/01/28]
5706 %% From the file hangul2.cap of the CJK package
5707 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
5708 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
5709 %%
5710 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
5711 %% Hangul captions set 2
5712 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
5713 %%
5714 \mtcloadmlo{hangul3}%
5715 \end{hangul3}

```

### 12.73 “Hangul4” language: hangul4.mld and hangul4.mlo

The titles for the “hangul4” language (korean in hangûl script, fourth variant) are taken from the file hangul2.cpx of the CJK system [137, 138]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 12.70 on page 389, 12.71 on the preceding page, 12.72 on the page before, 12.74 on the following page, 12.75 on the next page, 12.76 on page 393, and 12.77 on page 393.

The titles for the “hangul4” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul4.mlo.

```

5716 (*hangul4)
5717 \ProvidesFile{hangul4.mld}[2005/01/28]
5718 %% From the file hangul2.cpx of the CJK package
5719 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
5720 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
5721 %%
5722 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
5723 %% Hangul captions set 2, character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
5724 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
5725 %%
5726 \mtcloadmlo{hangul4}%
5727 \end{hangul4}

```

## 12.74 “Hangul-u8” language: `hangul-u8.mld` and `hangul-u8.mlo`

The titles for the “hangul-u8” language (korean in hangûl script, for Lambda) are taken from the file `u8hangul.tex` of the HLaTeX system [118, in korean] by KOAUNGHU Un. Special fonts are needed, of course. Input encoding is UTF-8. See also sections 12.70 on page 389, 12.71 on page 390, 12.72 on page 390, 12.73 on the page before, 12.75, 12.76 on the next page, and 12.77 on the following page. See [102, page 150] and [163].

The titles for the “hangul-u8” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hangul-u8.mlo`.

```
5728 (*hangul - u8)
5729 \ProvidesFile{hangul-u8.mld}[2006/02/21]
5730 %% From the file u8hangul.tex of the HLaTeX package
5731 %% by Koaunghi Un (koaunghi@kornet.net)
5732 %%
5733 %% Hangul captions for Lambda
5734 %%
5735 \mtcloadmlo{hangul-u8}%
5736 \end{hangul - u8}
```

## 12.75 “Hanja1” language: `hanja1.mld` and `hanja1.mlo`

The titles for the “hanja1” language (korean in the old script hanja, first variant) are taken from the file `hanja.cpx` of the CJK system [137, 138]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 12.70 on page 389, 12.71 on page 390, 12.72 on page 390, 12.73 on the preceding page, 12.74, 12.76 on the following page, and 12.77 on the next page.

The titles for the “hanja1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hanja1.mlo`.

```
5737 (*hanja1)
5738 \ProvidesFile{hanja1.mld}[2005/01/28]
5739 %% From the file hanja.cpx of the CJK package
5740 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
5741 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
5742 %%
5743 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
5744 %% Hanja captions, character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
5745 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
5746 %%
5747 \mtcloadmlo{hanja1}%
```



5748 </hanja1>

## 12.76 “Hanja2” language: hanja2.mld and hanja2.mlo

The titles for the “hanja2” language (Korean in the old script hanja, second variant) are taken from the file `hanja.cap` of the CJK system [137, 138]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 12.70 on page 389, 12.71 on page 390, 12.72 on page 390, 12.73 on page 391, 12.74 on the preceding page, 12.75 on the page before, and 12.77.

The titles for the “hanja2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hanja2.mlo`.

```
5749 < *hanja2>
5750 \ProvidesFile{hanja2.mld}[2005/01/28]
5751 %% From the file hanja.cap of the CJK package
5752 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
5753 %% created by Werner Lemberg <a7971428@unet.univie.ac.at>
5754 %%
5755 %% Version 4.1.3 (20-Jun-1997)
5756 %% Hanja captions, character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
5757 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
5758 %%
5759 \mtcloadmlo{hanja2}%
5760 </hanja2>
```

## 12.77 “Hanja-u8” language: hanja-u8.mld and hanja-u8.mlo

The titles for the “hanja-u8” language (korean in hanja script, for Lambda) are taken from the file `u8hanja.tex` of the HLaTeX system [in korean][118] by KOAUNghi Un. Special fonts are needed, of course. Input encoding is UTF-8. See also section 12.70 on page 389, 12.71 on page 390, 12.72 on page 390, 12.73 on page 391, 12.74 on the page before, 12.75 on the preceding page, and 12.76. See [102, page 150] and [163].

The titles for the “hanja-u8” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hanja-u8.mlo`.

```
5761 < *hanja - u8>
5762 \ProvidesFile{hanja-u8.mld}[2006/02/21]
5763 %% From the file hanja-u8.tex of the HLaTeX package
5764 %% by Koaunghi Un (koaunghi@kornet.net)
```

```

5765 %%
5766 %% Hanja captions for Lambda
5767 %%
5768 \mtcloadmlo{hanja-u8}%
5769 </hanja – u8>

```

## 12.78 “Hebrew” language: hebrew.mld

The titles for the “hebrew” language are taken from the ArabTeX package [124, 125], which should be used, with the associated fonts. See also section 12.79.

```

5770 <{*hebrew}>
5771 \ProvidesFile{hebrew.mld}[2001/02/28]
5772 %% Hebrew titles for minitoc.sty
5773 %% Need hebrew fonts (see arabtex documentation)
5774 \def\ptctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\
5775 \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
5776 \def\plftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
5777 \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
5778 \def\plttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
5779 \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
5780 %%
5781 \def\mtctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\
5782 \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
5783 \def\mlftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
5784 \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
5785 \def\mlttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
5786 \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
5787 %%
5788 \def\stctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\
5789 \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
5790 \def\slftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
5791 \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
5792 \def\slttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
5793 \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
5794 </hebrew>

```

## 12.79 “Hebrew2” language: hebrew2.mld

The titles for the “hebrew2” language are taken from the file hebrew.dtx (by Boris LAVVA) in the Babel package [29, 30, 59], which should be used, with the associated fonts and encodings. See also section 12.78.

```

5795 <{*hebrew2}>
5796 \ProvidesFile{hebrew2.mld}[2006/01/11]

```

```

5797%% From hebrew.dtx in the Babel package.
5798%% Boris Lavva (lavva@tx.technion.ac.il)
5799%% Need hebrew fonts.
5800 \def\ptctitle{\@ensure@R{%
5801 \hebtav\hebvav\hebkafe\hebfinafnun\ %
5802 \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinafnem}}%
5803 \def\plftitle{\@ensure@R{%
5804 \hebrehe\hebshin\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\ %
5805 \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebrehe\hebyod\hebfinafnem}}%
5806 \def\plttitle{\@ensure@R{%
5807 \hebrehe\hebshin\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\
5808 \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
5809%%
5810 \def\mtctitle{\@ensure@R{%
5811 \hebtav\hebvav\hebkafe\hebfinafnun\ %
5812 \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinafnem}}%
5813 \def\mlftitle{\@ensure@R{%
5814 \hebrehe\hebshin\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\ %
5815 \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebrehe\hebyod\hebfinafnem}}%
5816 \def\mlttitle{\@ensure@R{%
5817 \hebrehe\hebshin\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\
5818 \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
5819%%
5820 \def\stctitle{\@ensure@R{%
5821 \hebtav\hebvav\hebkafe\hebfinafnun\ %
5822 \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinafnem}}%
5823 \def\slftitle{\@ensure@R{%
5824 \hebrehe\hebshin\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\ %
5825 \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebrehe\hebyod\hebfinafnem}}%
5826 \def\slttitle{\@ensure@R{%
5827 \hebrehe\hebshin\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\
5828 \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
5829 </hebrew2>

```

## 12.80 “Hungarian” language: hungarian.mld

The “hungarian” language is a synonym of the “magyar” language, so we load magyar.mld. See section 12.102 on page 406.

```

5830 <{*hungarian}
5831 \ProvidesFile{hungarian.mld}[2004/12/14]
5832 \mtcselectlanguage{magyar}%
5833 </hungarian>

```

## 12.81 “Icelandic” language: icelandic.mld

The titles for the “icelandic” language are taken from the icelandic.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 37]:

```

5834 <*icelandic>
5835 \ProvidesFile{icelandic.mld}[2006/01/13]
5836 %% Icelandic titles for minitoc.sty
5837 %% from icelandic.dtx (babel)
5838 %% Árnason, Einar
5839 %% need inputenc with 8-bits encoding
5840 \def\ptctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
5841 \def\plftitle{Myndaskrá}%
5842 \def\plttitle{Töfluskrá}%
5843 %%
5844 \def\mtctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
5845 \def\mlftitle{Myndaskrá}%
5846 \def\mlttitle{Töfluskrá}%
5847 %%
5848 \def\stctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
5849 \def\slftitle{Myndaskrá}%
5850 \def\slttitle{Töfluskrá}%
5851 </icelandic>

```

## 12.82 “Indon” language: indon.mld

The “indon” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load bahasai.mld (see section 12.14 on page 360):

```

5852 <*indon>
5853 \ProvidesFile{indon.mld}[2006/01/13]
5854 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
5855 </indon>

```

## 12.83 “Indonesian” language: indonesian.mld

The “indonesian” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load bahasai.mld (see section 12.14 on page 360):

```

5856 <*indonesian>
5857 \ProvidesFile{indonesian.mld}[2006/01/13]
5858 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
5859 </indonesian>

```

## 12.84 “Interlingua” language: `interlingua.mld`

The titles for the “interlingua” language are taken from the `interlingua.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 54]. Interlingua is an auxiliary language, built from the common vocabulary of Spanish/Portuguese, English, Italian and French, with some normalisation of spelling. The grammar is very easy, more similar to English’s than to neolatin languages. The site <http://www.interlingua.com> is mostly written in interlingua (as is <http://interlingua.altervista.org>), in case you want to read some sample of it. You can have a look at the grammar at <http://www.geocities.com/linguablau>

```

5860 <*interlingua>
5861 \ProvidesFile{interlingua.mld}[2006/01/13]
5862 %% Interlingua titles for minitoc.sty
5863 %% from interlingua.dtx (babel)
5864 %% Kleiweg, Peter
5865 \def\ptctitle{Contento}%
5866 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
5867 \def\plttitle{Lista de Tabellas}%
5868 %%
5869 \def\mtctitle{Contento}%
5870 \def\mlftitle{Figuras}%
5871 \def\mlttitle{Tabellas}%
5872 %%
5873 \def\stctitle{Contento}%
5874 \def\slftitle{Figuras}%
5875 \def\slttitle{Tabellas}%
5876 </interlingua>

```

## 12.85 “Irish” language: `irish.mld`

The titles for the “irish” language are taken from the `irish.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 33]:

```

5877 <*irish>
5878 \ProvidesFile{irish.mld}[2006/02/28]
5879 %% Irish titles for minitoc.sty
5880 %% from irish.dtx (babel)
5881 %% Braams, Johannes and Gunn, Marion and Grant, Fraser
5882 \def\ptctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
5883 \def\plftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%
5884 \def\plttitle{T\'abla\'{\i}}%
5885 %%
5886 \def\mtctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
5887 \def\mlftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%
5888 \def\mlttitle{T\'abla\'{\i}}%
5889 %%
5890 \def\stctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
5891 \def\slftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%

```

```
5892 \def\sltttitle{T\'abla\'\{i}}%
5893 </irish>
```

## 12.86 “Italian” language: `italian.mld`

The titles for the “italian” language are taken from the file `italian.dtx` in the `babel` package [29, 30, 46]. See also section 12.87.

```
5894 <*italian>
5895 \ProvidesFile{italian.mld}[2006/01/13]
5896 %% Italian titles for minitoc.sty
5897 %% from italian.dtx (babel)
5898 %% Maurizio Codogno, (mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it)
5899 %% and Claudio Beccari, (beccari@polito.it)
5900 \def\ptctitle{Indice}%
5901 \def\plftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
5902 \def\plttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
5903 %%
5904 \def\mtctitle{Indice}%
5905 \def\mlftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
5906 \def\mlttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
5907 %%
5908 \def\stctitle{Indice}%
5909 \def\slftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
5910 \def\sltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
5911 </italian>
```

## 12.87 “Italian2” language: `italian2.mld`

The titles for the “italian2” language are the same as for the “italian” language, except at the part level (“Contenuto”). See also section 12.86.

```
5912 <*italian2>
5913 \ProvidesFile{italian2.mld}[2006/01/13]
5914 %% Italian titles for minitoc.sty. Variant.
5915 %% from italian.dtx (babel)
5916 %% Maurizio Codogno, (mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it)
5917 %% and Claudio Beccari, (beccari@polito.it)
5918 \def\ptctitle{Contenuto}%
5919 \def\plftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
5920 \def\plttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
5921 %%
5922 \def\mtctitle{Contenuto}%
5923 \def\mlftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
5924 \def\mlttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
5925 %%
```

```

5926 \def\stctitle{Contenuto}%
5927 \def\slftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
5928 \def\sltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
5929 \</italian2>

```

## 12.88 “Japanese” language: `japanese.mld` and `japanese.mlo`

They are several variants for the `japanese` titles. The titles for a first variant of the “`japanese`” language have been found (by a Google search) on the Web site of Professor Toshiki KUMAZAWA<sup>29</sup>. See also sections 12.89, 12.90 on the following page, 12.91 on the next page, and 12.92 on page 401.

The titles for the “`japanese`” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese.mlo`.

```

5930 \<*japanese>
5931 \ProvidesFile{japanese.mld}[2006/01/13]
5932 %% Japanese titles for minitoc.sty
5933 %% Needs japanese fonts (CJK) and special input encoding.
5934 %% From Kumazawa Toshiki
5935 %% kumazawa@biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp
5936 %% http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html
5937 \mtcloadmlo{japanese}%
5938 \</japanese>

```

## 12.89 “Japanese2” language: `japanese2.mld` and `japanese2.mlo`

The titles for the “`japanese2`” language (`japanese`, second variant) are taken from file `JIS.cap` of the CJK system [137, 138]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 12.88, 12.90 on the following page, 12.91 on the next page, and 12.92 on page 401.

The titles for the “`japanese2`” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese2.mlo`.

```

5939 \<*japanese2>
5940 \ProvidesFile{japanese2.mld}[2006/01/13]
5941 %% From the file JIS.cap of the CJK package
5942 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
5943 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>

```

<sup>29</sup> <http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html>

```

5944 %%
5945 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
5946 %% Japanese captions, character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990),
5947 %% encoding: EUC
5948 %%
5949 \mtcloadmlo{japanese2}%
5950 </japanese2>

```

## 12.90 “Japanese3” language: `japanese3.mld` and `japanese3.mlo`

The titles for the “japanese3” language (japanese, third variant) are taken from file JIS.cpx of the CJK system [137, 138]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 12.88 on the page before, 12.89 on the preceding page, 12.91, and 12.92 on the following page.

The titles for the “japanese3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese3.mlo`.

```

5951 <*japanese3>
5952 \ProvidesFile{japanese3.mld}[2006/01/13]
5953 %% From the file JIS.cpx of the CJK package
5954 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
5955 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
5956 %%
5957 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
5958 %% Japanese captions, character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990)
5959 %% encoding: EUC, preprocessed
5960 %%
5961 \mtcloadmlo{japanese3}%
5962 </japanese3>

```

## 12.91 “Japanese4” language: `japanese4.mld` and `japanese4.mlo`

The titles for the “japanese4” language (japanese, fourth version) are taken from file SJIS.cap of the CJK system [137, 138]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 12.88 on the page before, 12.89 on the preceding page, 12.90, and 12.92 on the following page.

The titles for the “japanese4” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese4.mlo`.



```

5963 <*japanese4>
5964 \ProvidesFile{japanese4.mld}[2006/01/13]
5965 %% From the file SJIS.cap of the CJK package
5966 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
5967 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
5968 %%
5969 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
5970 %% Japanese captions
5971 %% character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990), encoding: SJIS
5972 %%
5973 \mtcloadmlo{japanese4}%
5974 </japanese4>

```

## 12.92 “Japanese5” language: `japanese5.mld` and `japanese.mlo`

The titles for the “japanese5” (japanese, fifth variant) language are taken from file `SJIS.cpx` of the CJK system [137, 138]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 12.88 on page 399, 12.89 on page 399, 12.90 on the page before, and 12.91 on the preceding page.

The titles for the “japanese5” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese5.mlo`.

```

5975 <*japanese5>
5976 \ProvidesFile{japanese5.mld}[2006/01/13]
5977 %% From the file SJIS.cpx of the CJK package
5978 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
5979 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
5980 %%
5981 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
5982 %% Japanese captions
5983 %% character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990),
5984 %% encoding: SJIS, preprocessed
5985 %%
5986 \mtcloadmlo{japanese5}%
5987 </japanese5>

```

## 12.93 “Kannada” language: `kannada.mld`

The Kannada (or Kannara) is a dravidian language spoken in the Karnataka state of India. The titles are taken from the `kanlel.sty` package file from the Kannadatex project<sup>30</sup> by C.S. YOGANANDA. Specific fonts are required.

---

<sup>30</sup> <http://Sarovar.org/projects/kannadatex>

```

5988 <*kannada>
5989 \ProvidesFile{kannada.mld}[2006/02/14]
5990 %% from kanlel.sty of Kannadatex (C.S. Yogananda yoga@math.iisc.ernet.in)
5991 %%
5992 \def\ptctitle{pariviDi}
5993 \def\plftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}
5994 \def\plftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}
5995 %%
5996 \def\mtctitle{pariviDi}
5997 \def\mlftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}
5998 \def\mlftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}
5999 %%
6000 \def\stctitle{pariviDi}
6001 \def\slftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}
6002 \def\slftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}
6003 </kannada>

```

## 12.94 “Khalka” language: khalkha.mld

“khalkha” is a synonym for “xalx”, so we just load xalx.mld (see sections 12.167 on page 438, 12.168 on page 438, and 12.169 on page 439):

```

6004 <*khalkha>
6005 \ProvidesFile{khalkha.mld}[2005/11/16]
6006 \mtcselectlanguage{xalx}%
6007 </khalkha>

```

## 12.95 “Latin” language: latin.mld

The titles for the “latin” language are taken from the latin.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 39]. See also section 12.96 on the following page.

```

6008 <*latin>
6009 \ProvidesFile{latin.mld}[2006/01/13]
6010 %% Latin titles for minitoc.sty
6011 %% from latin.dtx (babel)
6012 %% Beccari, Claudio
6013 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
6014 \def\plftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
6015 \def\pltttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
6016 %%
6017 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
6018 \def\mlftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
6019 \def\mltttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
6020 %%
6021 \def\stctitle{Index}%

```

```

6022 \def\slfttitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
6023 \def\sltttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
6024 \</latin>

```

## 12.96 “Latin2” language: latin2.mld

The titles for the “latin2” language (latin, abbreviated variant) are taken from the latin.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 39], but abbreviated. See also section 12.95 on the page before.

```

6025 \<latin2>
6026 \ProvidesFile{latin2.mld}[2006/01/13]
6027 %% Latin titles (shortened) for minitoc.sty
6028 %% from latin.dtx (babel)
6029 %% Beccari, Claudio
6030 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
6031 \def\plfttitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
6032 \def\pltttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
6033 %%
6034 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
6035 \def\mlfttitle{Descriptiones}%
6036 \def\mltttitle{Tabulae}%
6037 %%
6038 \def\stctitle{Index}%
6039 \def\slfttitle{Descriptiones}%
6040 \def\sltttitle{Tabulae}%
6041 \</latin2>

```

## 12.97 “Latvian” language: latvian.mld

The titles for the “latvian” language<sup>31</sup> are taken from the ANTOMEGA project [121]. See also section 12.98 on the following page:

```

6042 \<latvian>
6043 \ProvidesFile{latvian.mld}[2005/02/08]
6044 %% from latvian.ldf (Antomega project)
6045 %% Needs Omega
6046 %% Alexej M. Kryokov
6047 %% Dmitry Ivanov
6048 %%
6049 \def\ptctitle{\locallatvian{Saturs}}%
6050 \def\plfttitle{\locallatvian{Att^^^0113lu saraksts}}%
6051 \def\pltttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
6052 %%

```

---

<sup>31</sup> “Latvian” is the original name for “letton”.

```

6053 \def\mtctitle{\locallatvian{Saturdays}}%
6054 \def\mlftitle{\locallatvian{Att113lu saraksts}}%
6055 \def\mltttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
6056 %%
6057 \def\stctitle{\locallatvian{Saturdays}}%
6058 \def\slftitle{\locallatvian{Att113lu saraksts}}%
6059 \def\sltttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
6060 \end{latvian}

```

## 12.98 “Letton” language: `letton.mld`

The “letton” language is a synonym for the “latvian” language, so we just load `latvian.mld`. See section 12.97 on the page before.

```

6061 \let\letton\let\latvian
6062 \ProvidesFile{letton.mld}[2005/02/08]
6063 \mtcselectlanguage{latvian}%
6064 \end{letton}

```

## 12.99 “Lithuanian” language: `lithuanian.mld`

The titles for the “lithuanian” language are taken from the `lithuanian.ldf` file<sup>32</sup> for the `babel` package [29, 30]:

```

6065 \let\lithuanian\let\lithuanian
6066 \ProvidesFile{lithuanian.mld}[2006/01/13]
6067 %% Lithuanian titles for minitoc.sty
6068 %% from lithuanian.ldf
6069 %% in http://www.vtex.lt/tex/download/texinput/babel/babel.zip
6070 %% Tolusis, Sigitas (sigitas@vtex.lt)
6071 \def\ptctitle{Turinys}%
6072 \def\plftitle{Paveiksl\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
6073 \def\pltttitle{Lentel\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
6074 %%
6075 \def\mtctitle{Turinys}%
6076 \def\mlftitle{Paveiksl\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
6077 \def\mltttitle{Lentel\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
6078 %%
6079 \def\stctitle{Turinys}%
6080 \def\slftitle{Paveiksl\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
6081 \def\sltttitle{Lentel\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
6082 \end{lithuanian}

```

---

<sup>32</sup>Found in <http://www.vtex.lt/tex/download/texinput/babel/babel.zip>.

## 12.100 “Lowersorbian” language: lowersorbian.mld

The titles for the “lowsorbian” language<sup>33</sup> are taken from the `lsorbian.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 72]. See also section 12.161 on page 435. A shorter language name is `lsorbian` (see section 12.101).

```
6083 (*lowsorbian)
6084 \ProvidesFile{lowsorbian.mld}[2006/02/28]
6085 %% Lower sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
6086 %% from lsorbian.dtx (babel)
6087 %% Werner, Eduard
6088 \def\ptctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
6089 \def\plftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
6090 \def\pltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
6091 %%
6092 \def\mtctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
6093 \def\mlftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
6094 \def\mltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
6095 %%
6096 \def\stctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
6097 \def\slftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
6098 \def\slttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
6099 \end{lowsorbian}
```

## 12.101 “Lsorbian” language: lsorbian.mld

The “lsorbian” language is a synonym for “lowsorbian”, so we just load `lowsorbian.mld`. See section 12.100.

```
6100 (*lsorbian)
6101 \ProvidesFile{lsorbian.mld}[2006/01/23]
6102 %% Lower sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
6103 %% from lsorbian.dtx (babel)
6104 %% Werner, Eduard
6105 \selectlanguage{lowsorbian}%
6106 \end{lsorbian}
```

---

<sup>33</sup>Lower sorbian. Sorbian, or wendisch, is a member of the west slavic subgroup of indo-european languages spoken in Lower Lusatia in the german *länder* of Saxony and Brandenburg. The Sorbs are descendents of the Wends, the german name for the slavic tribes who occupied the area between the Elbe and Saale rivers in the west and the Odra (Oder) river in the east during the medieval period (VIth century).

## 12.102 “Magyar” language: magyar.mld

The titles for the “magyar” language are taken from the magyar.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 40]. A synonym of “magyar” is “hungarian” (see section 12.80 on page 395). See also sections 12.103 and 12.104 on the next page for variants (it seems that magyar.dtx might have evolved).

```

6107 <*magyar>
6108 \ProvidesFile{magyar.mld}[2006/03/08]
6109 %% Magyar titles for minitoc.sty
6110 %% from magyar.dtx (babel)
6111 %% Bíró, Árpád and Bérces, József
6112 \def\ptctitle{Tartalom}%
6113 \def\plftitle{\`Abr\`ak}%
6114 \def\pltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok}%
6115 %%
6116 \def\mtctitle{Tartalom}%
6117 \def\mlftitle{\`Abr\`ak}%
6118 \def\mltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok}%
6119 %%
6120 \def\stctitle{Tartalom}%
6121 \def\slftitle{\`Abr\`ak}%
6122 \def\slttitle{T\`abl\`azatok}%
6123 </magyar>

```

## 12.103 “Magyar2” language: magyar2.mld

The titles for the “magyar2” language are taken from a variant proposed in the babel package [29, 30]. See also sections 12.102 and 12.104 on the next page.

```

6124 <*magyar2>
6125 \ProvidesFile{magyar.mld}[2006/03/08]
6126 %% Magyar2 titles for minitoc.sty (variant)
6127 %% from magyar.dtx (babel)
6128 %% Bíró, Árpád and Bérces, József
6129 \def\ptctitle{Tartalom}%
6130 \def\plftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
6131 \def\pltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
6132 %%
6133 \def\mtctitle{Tartalom}%
6134 \def\mlftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
6135 \def\mltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
6136 %%
6137 \def\stctitle{Tartalom}%
6138 \def\slftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
6139 \def\slttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
6140 </magyar2>

```

### 12.104 “Magyar3” language: magyar.mld

The titles for the “magyar3” language (third variant of magyar) are taken from the magyar.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 40]. See also sections 12.102 on the preceding page and 12.103 on the page before.

```

6141 <*magyar3>
6142 \ProvidesFile{magyar3.mld}[2006/03/08]
6143 %% Magyar3 titles for minitoc.sty (variant)
6144 %% from magyar.dtx (babel)
6145 %% Bíró, Árpád and Bérces, József
6146 \def\ptctitle{Tartalomjegyz\’ek}%
6147 \def\plftitle{\’Abr\’ak jegyz\’eke}%
6148 \def\pltttitle{T\’abl\’azatok jegyz\’eke}%
6149 %%
6150 \def\mtctitle{Tartalomjegyz\’ek}%
6151 \def\mlftitle{\’Abr\’ak jegyz\’eke}%
6152 \def\mltttitle{T\’abl\’azatok jegyz\’eke}%
6153 %%
6154 \def\stctitle{Tartalomjegyz\’ek}%
6155 \def\slftitle{\’Abr\’ak jegyz\’eke}%
6156 \def\sltttitle{T\’abl\’azatok jegyz\’eke}%
6157 </magyar3>

```

### 12.105 “Malay” language: malay.mld

The “malay” language is just like “bahasam”, so we just load bahasam.mld (see section 12.15 on page 361):

```

6158 <*malay>
6159 \ProvidesFile{malay.mld}[2006/01/11]
6160 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasam}%
6161 </malay>

```

### 12.106 “Malayalam-keli” language: malayalam-keli.mld

The titles for the “malayalam” language<sup>34</sup>, with the “Keli” fonts, are taken from the malayalam package [3]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 12.108 on the next page and 12.109 on page 409.

<sup>34</sup>The Malayalam language is spoken from the western coast of Malabar to the extreme southern India, mainly in the Kerala state. It is one of the dravidian languages strongly bound to the Tamil language. The alphabet and the script are dated from the 8th or 9th centuries.

```

6162 ⟨*malayalam – keli⟩
6163 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-keli.mld}[2006/01/13]
6164 %%
6165 %% Malayalam: Keli fonts
6166 %%
6167 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
6168 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
6169 \def\pltttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
6170 %%
6171 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
6172 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
6173 \def\mltttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
6174 %%
6175 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
6176 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
6177 \def\sltttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
6178 ⟨/malayalam – keli⟩

```

### 12.107 “Malayalam-omega” language: malayalam-omega.mld and malayalam-omega.mlo

This is the Malayalam language implementation when you use Lambda ( $\Lambda$ ) (the version of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  for Omega) via the `omal` package [4] of the Malayalam-Omega project<sup>35</sup>. As the titles contain characters in a special encoding, we must load a `.mlo` file. A lot of fonts are available via options of the `omal` package.

```

6179 ⟨*malayalam – omega⟩
6180 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-omega.mld}[2006/02/13]
6181 % from omal.sty (Alex A.J. indicTeX@gmail.com)
6182 \mtcloadmlo{malayalam-omega}
6183 %
6184 ⟨/malayalam – omega⟩

```

### 12.108 “Malayalam-rachana” language: malayalam-rachana.mld

The titles for the “malayalam” language, with the traditionnal “Rachana” fonts (old lipi), are taken from the `malayalam` package [3]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 12.106 on the page before and 12.109 on the following page.

<sup>35</sup> <http://Sarovar.org/projects/malayalam>



```

6185 (*malayalam – rachana)
6186 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana.mld}[2005/06/07]
6187 %%
6188 %% Malayalam: Rachana fonts, traditionnal.
6189 %%
6190 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
6191 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<C<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
6192 \def\plttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<F<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
6193 %%
6194 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
6195 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<C<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
6196 \def\mlttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<F<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
6197 %%
6198 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
6199 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<C<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
6200 \def\slttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<F<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
6201 \end{malayalam – rachana}

```

## 12.109 “Malayalam-rachana2” language: malayalam-rachana2.mld

The titles for the “malayalam” language, with the reformed “Rachana” fonts (new lipi), are taken from the malayalam package [3]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 12.106 on page 407 and 12.108 on the preceding page.

```

6202 (*malayalam – rachana2)
6203 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana2.mld}[2006/01/13]
6204 %%
6205 %% Malayalam: Rachana fonts, reformed.
6206 %%
6207 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
6208 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
6209 \def\plttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
6210 %%
6211 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
6212 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
6213 \def\mlttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
6214 %%
6215 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
6216 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
6217 \def\slttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
6218 \end{malayalam – rachana2}

```

### 12.110 “Manju” language: manju.mld

“Manju” is a synonym for “bithe”, so we just load bithe.mld (see section 12.21 on page 364):

```
6219 <*manju>
6220 \ProvidesFile{manju.mld}[2005/11/16]
6221 \mtcselectlanguage{bithe}%
6222 </manju>
```

### 12.111 “Meyalu” language: meyalu.mld

The “meyalu” language is just like “bahasam”, so we just load bahasam.mld (see section 12.15 on page 361):

```
6223 <*meyalu>
6224 \ProvidesFile{meyalu.mld}[2006/01/13]
6225 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasam}%
6226 </meyalu>
```

### 12.112 “Mongol” language: mongol.mld

The titles for the “mongol” language are taken from the MonTeX package [84, 86]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 12.18 on page 362, 12.19 on page 363, 12.20 on page 363, 12.21 on page 364, 12.28 on page 368, 12.29 on page 368, 12.167 on page 438, 12.168 on page 438, and 12.169 on page 439.

```
6227 <*mongol>
6228 \ProvidesFile{mongol.mld}[1999/03/16]
6229 %% Mongol (xalx) titles for minitoc.sty
6230 %% Needs mongol fonts
6231 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
6232 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
6233 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
6234 %%
6235 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
6236 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
6237 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
6238 %%
6239 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
6240 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
6241 \def\sltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
6242 </mongol>
```

### 12.113 “Naustrian” language: `naustrian.mld`

The “naustrian” language is a synonym of the “ngermanb” language (a revised version of the `germanb` variant of the german language), so we load `ngermanb.mld`. See also section 12.116.

```
6243 < *naustrian>
6244 \ProvidesFile{naustrian.mld}[2004/12/14]
6245 \mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb}%
6246 < /naustrian>
```

### 12.114 “Newzealand” language: `newzealand.mld`

The “newzealand” language is just like “english”, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 12.41 on page 373):

```
6247 < *newzealand>
6248 \ProvidesFile{newzealand.mld}[2006/01/11]
6249 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
6250 < /newzealand>
```

### 12.115 “Ngerman” language: `ngerman.mld`

The “ngerman” language is a synonym of the “ngermanb” language<sup>36</sup>, so we load `ngermanb.mld`. See also section 12.116.

```
6251 < *ngerman>
6252 \ProvidesFile{ngerman.mld}[2004/12/14]
6253 \mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb}%
6254 < /ngerman>
```

### 12.116 “Ngermanb” language: `ngermanb.mld`

The titles for the “ngermanb” language<sup>37</sup> are taken from the file `ngermanb.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 65]. See also sections 12.113, and 12.115.

---

<sup>36</sup> A revised version of the `germanb` variant of the german language.

<sup>37</sup> A variant of the german language, with revised spelling.

```

6255 <*ngermanb>
6256 \ProvidesFile{ngermanb.mld}[2006/01/13]
6257 %% New german (B) titles for minitoc.sty
6258 %% from ngermanb.dtx (babel)
6259 %% Raichle, Bernd and Schmidt, Walter
6260 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}% % oder nur: Inhalt
6261 \def\plftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
6262 \def\plttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
6263 %%
6264 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
6265 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
6266 \def\mlttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
6267 %%
6268 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
6269 \def\slftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
6270 \def\slttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
6271 </ngermanb>

```

### 12.117 “Ngermanb2” language: ngermanb2.mld

The titles for the “ngermanb2” language<sup>38</sup> are taken from the babel package [29, 30, 65]. See also section 12.116 on the page before.

```

6272 <*ngermanb2>
6273 \ProvidesFile{ngermanb2.mld}[2005/09/27]
6274 %% New german (B) short (2) titles for minitoc.sty
6275 \def\ptctitle{Inhalt}%
6276 \def\plftitle{Abbildungen}%
6277 \def\plttitle{Tabellen}%
6278 %%
6279 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
6280 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungen}%
6281 \def\mlttitle{Tabellen}%
6282 %%
6283 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
6284 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
6285 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
6286 </ngermanb2>

```

---

<sup>38</sup> A variant of the german language, with revised spelling and short titles.

## 12.118 “Norsk” language: norsk.mld

The titles for the “norsk” language (or bokmål, language of the kingdom) are taken from the norsk.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 34], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. See also section 12.120 on the following page.

```

6287 <*norsk>
6288 \ProvidesFile{norsk.mld}[2006/01/13]
6289 %% Norsk titles for minitoc.sty
6290 %% from noesk.dtx (babel)
6291 %% Braams, Johannes and Helstrup, Haavard and Holme, Alv Kjetil and
6292 %% Iversen, Per Steinar and Petterst, Terje Engeset and Kleveland, Rune
6293 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
6294 \def\ptctitle{Innhold}%
6295 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
6296 \def\plttitle{Tabeller}%
6297 %%
6298 \def\mtctitle{Innhold}%
6299 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
6300 \def\mlttitle{Tabeller}%
6301 %%
6302 \def\stctitle{Innhold}%
6303 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
6304 \def\slttitle{Tabeller}%
6305 </norsk>

```

## 12.119 “Norsk2” language: norsk2.mld

The titles for the “norsk2” language (or bokmål, language of the kingdom) are taken from the babel package [29, 30, 34], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. These are variants of the titles of section 12.118.

```

6306 <*norsk2>
6307 \ProvidesFile{norsk2.mld}[2005/09/27]
6308 %% Short norsk titles for minitoc.sty
6309 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
6310 \def\ptctitle{Innhold}%
6311 \def\plftitle{Figurliste}%
6312 \def\plttitle{Tabelliste}%
6313 %%
6314 \def\mtctitle{Innhold}%
6315 \def\mlftitle{Figurliste}%
6316 \def\mlttitle{Tabelliste}%
6317 %%
6318 \def\stctitle{Innhold}%
6319 \def\slftitle{Figurliste}%
6320 \def\slttitle{Tabelliste}%
6321 </norsk2>

```

## 12.120 “Nynorsk” language: nynorsk.mld

The titles for the “nynorsk” language<sup>39</sup> are taken from norsk.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 34], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. See also section 12.118 on the preceding page.

```

6322 <*nynorsk>
6323 \ProvidesFile{nynorsk.mld}[2006/01/13]
6324 %% Nynorsk titles for minitoc.sty
6325 %% from norsk.dtx (babel)
6326 %% Braams, Johannes and Helstrup, Haavard and Holme, Alv Kjetil and
6327 %% Iversen, Per Steinar and Petterst, Terje Engeset and Kleveland, Rune
6328 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
6329 \def\mtctitle{Innhald}%
6330 \def\mlftitle{Figurar}%
6331 \def\mltttitle{Tabellar}%
6332 %%
6333 \def\ptctitle{Innhald}%
6334 \def\plftitle{Figurar}%
6335 \def\pltttitle{Tabellar}%
6336 %%
6337 \def\stctitle{Innhald}%
6338 \def\slftitle{Figurar}%
6339 \def\sltttitle{Tabellar}%
6340 </nynorsk>

```

## 12.121 “Nynorsk2” language: nynorsk2.mld

The titles for the “nynorsk2” language are variants of the titles of the “nynorsk” language. See also section 12.120.

```

6341 <*nynorsk2>
6342 \ProvidesFile{nynorsk.mld}[1999/03/16]
6343 %% Nynorsk titles for minitoc.sty
6344 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
6345 \def\mtctitle{Innhald}%
6346 \def\mlftitle{Figurliste}%
6347 \def\mltttitle{Tabelliste}%
6348 %%
6349 \def\ptctitle{Innhald}%
6350 \def\plftitle{Figurliste}%
6351 \def\pltttitle{Tabelliste}%
6352 %%
6353 \def\stctitle{Innhald}%
6354 \def\slftitle{Figurliste}%

```

---

<sup>39</sup>Created around 1800 by Ivar ÅSSEN to make a real independent and national norwegian language, in reaction to danish, from the various dialect spoken in the country.

```
6355 \def\sltttitle{Tabelliste}%
6356 </nynorsk2>
```

## 12.122 “Polish” language: polish.mld

The titles for the “polish” language are taken from the polish.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 69]. See also sections 12.123 and 12.124 on the next page.

```
6357 <{*polish}>
6358 \ProvidesFile{polish.mld}[2006/01/13]
6359 %% Polish titles for minitoc.sty
6360 %% from polish.dtx (babel)
6361 %% Schalueck, Elmar and Janich, Michael
6362 \def\ptctitle{Spis rzeczy}%
6363 \def\plfttitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
6364 \def\pltttitle{Spis tablic}%
6365 %%
6366 \def\mtctitle{Spis rzeczy}%
6367 \def\mlfttitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
6368 \def\mltttitle{Spis tablic}%
6369 %%
6370 \def\stctitle{Spis rzeczy}%
6371 \def\slfttitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
6372 \def\sltttitle{Spis tablic}%
6373 </polish>
```

## 12.123 “Polish2” language: polish2.mld

The titles for the “polish2” language<sup>40</sup> are taken from the ANTOMEGA project [121]. See also sections 12.122 and 12.124 on the next page.

```
6374 <{*polish2}>
6375 \ProvidesFile{polish2.mld}[2005/02/08]
6376 %% from omega-polish.ldf (Antomega project)
6377 %% Needs Omega
6378 %% Alexej M. Kryokov
6379 %% Dmitry Ivanov
6380 %%
6381 \def\ptctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
6382 \def\plfttitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
6383 \def\pltttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
6384 %%
6385 \def\mtctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
6386 \def\mlfttitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
```

---

<sup>40</sup>“Polish2” is a variant of “polish”.

```

6387 \def\mltttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
6388 %%
6389 \def\stcttitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
6390 \def\slfttitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
6391 \def\sltttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
6392 </polish2>

```

## 12.124 “Polski” language: polski.mld

The titles for the “polski” language (variant for polish) are taken from the `polski.dtx` file in the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  package [161, 191]. See also sections 12.122 on the preceding page and 12.123 on the page before.

```

6393 <{*polski}>
6394 \ProvidesFile{polski.mld}[2006/02/28]
6395 %% Polski titles for minitoc.sty
6396 %% from polski.dtx (PLaTeX)
6397 %% Mariusz Olko, Marcin Woli\'nski.
6398 %%
6399 \def\ptcttitle{Spis tre\'sci}%
6400 \def\plfttitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
6401 \def\pltttitle{Spis tabel}%
6402 %%
6403 \def\mtcttitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
6404 \def\mlfttitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
6405 \def\mltttitle{Spis tabel}%
6406 %%
6407 \def\stcttitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
6408 \def\slfttitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
6409 \def\sltttitle{Spis tabel}%
6410 </polski>

```

## 12.125 “Portuges” language: portuges.mld

This is another spelling for “portuguese” (see section 12.126 on the following page), so we just load `portuguese.mld`:

```

6411 <{*portuges}>
6412 \ProvidesFile{portuges.mld}[2005/06/07]
6413 \mtcselectlanguage{portuguese}%
6414 </portuges>

```



**12.126 “Portuguese” language: portuguese.mld**

The titles for the “portuguese” language are taken from the `portuges.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 66]. See also section 12.22 on page 365, because the titles are different in Brazil, even if the language is also portuguese.

```

6415 (*portuguese)
6416 \ProvidesFile{portuguese.mld}[2006/01/13]
6417 %% Portuguese titles for minitoc.sty
6418 %% from portuges.dtx (babel)
6419 %% Ramalhete, Jose Pedro
6420 \def\ptctitle{Conte\'udo}%
6421 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
6422 \def\plttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
6423 %%
6424 \def\mtctitle{Conte\'udo}%
6425 \def\mlftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
6426 \def\mlttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
6427 %%
6428 \def\stctitle{Conte\'udo}%
6429 \def\slftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
6430 \def\slttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
6431 \end{portuguese}

```

**12.127 “Romanian” language: romanian.mld**

The titles for the “romanian” language are taken from the `romanian.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 51].

```

6432 (*romanian)
6433 \ProvidesFile{romanian.mld}[2006/01/13]
6434 %% Romanian titles for minitoc.sty
6435 %% from romanian.dtx (babel)
6436 %% Horst, Umstatter and Juhasz, Robert
6437 \def\ptctitle{Cuprins}%
6438 \def\plftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
6439 \def\plttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
6440 %%
6441 \def\mtctitle{Cuprins}%
6442 \def\mlftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
6443 \def\mlttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
6444 %%
6445 \def\stctitle{Cuprins}%
6446 \def\slftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
6447 \def\slttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
6448 \end{romanian}

```

**12.128 “Romanian2” language: romanian2.mld**

The titles for the “romanian2” language are taken from the `romanian.dtx` file in the RomanianT<sub>E</sub>X package [175]. See also sections 12.127 on the preceding page and 12.129. Alas, RomanianT<sub>E</sub>X is not compatible with the `babel` package [29, 30].

```

6449 <*romanian2>
6450 \ProvidesFiles{romanian2.mld}[2006/01/19]
6451 %% Romanian titles for minitoc.sty
6452 %% from RomanianTeX (romanian.dtx)
6453 %% Adrian Rezus (adriaan@cs.kun.nl)
6454 %% Bernd Raichle
6455 \def\ptctitle{Cuprins}%
6456 \def\plftitle{Lista de figuri}%
6457 \def\plttitle{Lista de tabele}%
6458 %%
6459 \def\mtctitle{Cuprins}%
6460 \def\mlftitle{Lista de figuri}%
6461 \def\mlttitle{Lista de tabele}%
6462 %%
6463 \def\stctitle{Cuprins}%
6464 \def\slftitle{Lista de figuri}%
6465 \def\slttitle{Lista de tabele}%
6466 </romanian2>

```

**12.129 “Romanian3” language: romanian3.mld**

The titles for the “romanian3” language are taken from the `romanian.dtx` file in the RomanianT<sub>E</sub>X package [175]. See also sections 12.127 on the preceding page and 12.128. Alas, RomanianT<sub>E</sub>X is not compatible with the `babel` package [29, 30].

```

6467 <*romanian3>
6468 \ProvidesFiles{romanian3.mld}[2006/01/19]
6469 %% Romanian titles for minitoc.sty
6470 %% from RomanianTeX (romanian.dtx) variant.
6471 %% Adrian Rezus (adriaan@cs.kun.nl)
6472 %% Bernd Raichle
6473 \def\ptctitle{Tabla de materii}%
6474 \def\plftitle{Indice de figuri}%
6475 \def\plttitle{Tabele}%
6476 %%
6477 \def\mtctitle{Tabla de materii}%
6478 \def\mlftitle{Indice de figuri}%
6479 \def\mlttitle{Tabele}%
6480 %%
6481 \def\stctitle{Tabla de materii}%
6482 \def\slftitle{Indice de figuri}%
6483 \def\slttitle{Tabele}%

```

```
6484 </romanian3>
```

### 12.130 “Russian” language: `russian.mld`

The titles for the “russian” language are taken from the babel package [29, 30]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required.

```
6485 <*russian>
6486 \ProvidesFile{russian.mld}[1999/03/16]
6487 %% Russian titles for minitoc.sty
6488 \def\ptctitle{Oglavlenie}%
6489 \def\plftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
6490 \def\plttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
6491 %%
6492 \def\mtctitle{Oglavlenie}%
6493 \def\mlftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
6494 \def\mlttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
6495 %%
6496 \def\stctitle{Oglavlenie}%
6497 \def\slftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
6498 \def\slttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
6499 </russian>
```

### 12.131 “Russian2m” language: `russian2m.mld`

The titles for the “russian2m” language (“russian2m” is a modern variant of “russian”) are taken from the ANTOMEGA project [121]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 12.130.

```
6500 <*russian2m>
6501 \ProvidesFile{russian2m.mld}[2005/02/08]
6502 %% from russian2m.ldf (Antomega project, russian modern)
6503 %% Needs Omega and cyrillic fonts
6504 %% Alexej M. Kryokov
6505 %% Dmitry Ivanov
6506 %%
6507 \def\ptctitle{\localrussian%
6508 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
6509 ^0438^0435}}%
6510 \def\plftitle{\localrussian%
6511 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0438^043b%
6512 ^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446^0438%
6513 ^0439}}%
6514 \def\plttitle{\localrussian%
6515 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0442^0430%
```

```

6516 ^^^^0431^^^^043b^^^^0438^^^^0446}}}%
6517 %%
6518 \def\mtctitle{\localrussian%
6519 {^^^^041e^^^^0433^^^^043b^^^^0430^^^^0432^^^^043b^^^^0435^^^^043d%
6520 ^^^^0438^^^^0435}}}%
6521 \def\mlftitle{\localrussian%
6522 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a ^^^^0438^^^^043b%
6523 ^^^^043b^^^^044e^^^^0441^^^^0442^^^^0440^^^^0430^^^^0446^^^^0438%
6524 ^^^^0439}}}%
6525 \def\mltttitle{\localrussian%
6526 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a ^^^^0442^^^^0430%
6527 ^^^^0431^^^^043b^^^^0438^^^^0446}}}%
6528 %%
6529 \def\stctitle{\localrussian%
6530 {^^^^041e^^^^0433^^^^043b^^^^0430^^^^0432^^^^043b^^^^0435^^^^043d%
6531 ^^^^0438^^^^0435}}}%
6532 \def\slftitle{\localrussian%
6533 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a ^^^^0438^^^^043b%
6534 ^^^^043b^^^^044e^^^^0441^^^^0442^^^^0440^^^^0430^^^^0446^^^^0438%
6535 ^^^^0439}}}%
6536 \def\sltttitle{\localrussian%
6537 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a ^^^^0442^^^^0430%
6538 ^^^^0431^^^^043b^^^^0438^^^^0446}}}%
6539 </russian2m>

```

## 12.132 “Russian2o” language: russian2o.mld

The titles for the “russian2o” language (“russian2o” is an old variant of “russian”) are taken from the ANTOMEGA project [121]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 12.130 on the page before.

```

6540 <*russian2o>
6541 \ProvidesFile{russian2o.mld}[2005/02/08]
6542 %% from russian2o.mld (Antomega project - russian old)
6543 %% Needs Omega and cyrillic fonts
6544 %% Alexej M. Kryokov
6545 %% Dmitry Ivanov
6546 %%
6547 \def\ptctitle{\localrussian%
6548 {^^^^041e^^^^0433^^^^043b^^^^0430^^^^0432^^^^043b^^^^0435^^^^043d%
6549 ^^^^0456^^^^0435}}}%
6550 \def\plftitle{\localrussian%
6551 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a ^^^^0438%
6552 ^^^^043b^^^^043b^^^^044e^^^^0441^^^^0442^^^^0440^^^^0430^^^^0446%
6553 ^^^^0456^^^^0439}}}%
6554 \def\pltttitle{\localrussian%
6555 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a ^^^^0442%
6556 ^^^^0430^^^^0431^^^^043b^^^^0438^^^^0446^^^^044a}}}%
6557 %%
6558 \def\mtctitle{\localrussian%

```

```

6559 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
6560 ^0456^0435}}%
6561 \def\mlftitle{\localrussian%
6562 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0438%
6563 ^043b^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446%
6564 ^0456^0439}}%
6565 \def\mltttitle{\localrussian%
6566 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0442%
6567 ^0430^0431^043b^0438^0446^044a}}%
6568 %
6569 \def\stctitle{\localrussian%
6570 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
6571 ^0456^0435}}%
6572 \def\slftitle{\localrussian%
6573 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0438%
6574 ^043b^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446%
6575 ^0456^0439}}%
6576 \def\sltttitle{\localrussian%
6577 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0442%
6578 ^0430^0431^043b^0438^0446^044a}}%
6579 </russian2o>

```

### 12.133 “Russianb” language: russianb.mld

The titles for the “russianb” language (“russianb” is a variant of “russian”) are taken from the russianb.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 57, 129]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 12.130 on page 419. The parttoc title varies depending if chapters are defined or not by the document class.

```

6580 (*russianb)
6581 \ProvidesFile{russianb.mld}[2006/02/15]
6582 %% Russian (russianb) titles for minitoc.sty
6583 %% from russianb.dtx (babel)
6584 %% Lapko, Olga and Volovitch, Vladimir and Lemberg, Werner
6585 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
6586 \def\ptctitle{%
6587 {\cyr\CYRS\cyro\cyrd\cyre\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
6588 \else
6589 \def\ptctitle{%
6590 {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRL\CYRa\CYRv\CYRL\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
6591 \fi
6592 \def\plftitle{%
6593 {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
6594 \CYRi\CYRL\CYRL\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
6595 \def\pltttitle{%
6596 {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
6597 \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRL\CYRi\CYRc}}%
6598 %%
6599 \def\mtctitle{%
6600 {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRL\CYRa\CYRv\CYRL\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%

```

```

6601 \def\mlfttitle{%
6602 {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
6603 \CYRi\CYRl\CYRl\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
6604 \def\mltttitle{%
6605 {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
6606 \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
6607 %%
6608 \def\stctitle{%
6609 {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRl\CYRa\CYRv\CYRl\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
6610 \def\slfttitle{%
6611 {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
6612 \CYRi\CYRl\CYRl\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
6613 \def\slttitle{%
6614 {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
6615 \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
6616 </russianb>

```

### 12.134 “Russiananc” language: russianc.mld

The titles for the “russianc” language (“russianc” is a variant of “russian”, used in the part of Mongolia under russian influence) are taken from the file `russian.def` in the `MonTeX` package [84, 86]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 12.130 on page 419.

```

6617 <*\russianc>
6618 \ProvidesFile{russianc.mld}[1999/03/16]
6619 %% Russian titles for minitoc.sty
6620 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
6621 \def\ptctitle{\xalx{Oglawlenie}}%
6622 \def\plfttitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
6623 \def\pltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
6624 %%
6625 \def\mtctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
6626 \def\mlfttitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
6627 \def\mltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
6628 %%
6629 \def\stctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
6630 \def\slfttitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
6631 \def\slttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
6632 </russianc>

```

### 12.135 “Russian-cca” language: `russian-cca.mld` and `russian-cca.mlo`

They are several variants for the russian titles with the cmcyralt fonts. The titles for a first variant of the “russian-cca” are taken from the `russian.sty` file in the cmcyralt package [27].

The titles for the “russian-cca” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-cca.mlo`.

```
6633 <*russian – cca>
6634 \ProvidesFile{russian-cca.mld}[2006/03/08]
6635 %% Russian-cca titles for minitoc.sty
6636 %% From russian.sty in the cmcyralt package
6637 %% Vadim Maslov (vadik@cs.umd.edu)
6638 %% Victor Boyko (vb1890@cs.nyu.edu)
6639 %% Needs cmcyralt fonts and special input encoding.
6640 \mtcloadmlo{russian-cca}%
6641 </russian – cca>
```

### 12.136 “Russian-cca1” language: `russian-cca1.mld` and `russian-cca1.mlo`

They are several variants for the russian titles with the cmcyralt fonts. The titles for the “russian-cca1” language are taken from the `cmcyralt.sty` file in the cmcyralt package [107].

The titles for the “russian-cca1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-cca1.mlo`.

```
6642 <*russian – cca1>
6643 \ProvidesFile{russian-cca1.mld}[2006/03/08]
6644 %% Russian-cca1 titles for minitoc.sty
6645 %% From cmcyralt.sty in the cmcyralt package
6646 %% cmcyr fonts in alt encoding
6647 %% Vadim Maslov (vadik@cs.umd.edu)
6648 %% Alexander Harin (harin@lourie.und.ac.za)
6649 %% and Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@phy.ncu.edu.tw)
6650 \mtcloadmlo{russian-cca1}%
6651 </russian – cca1>
```

### 12.137 “Russian-lh” language: **russian-lh.mld** and **russian-lh.mlo**

The russian titles for the LH fonts (“russian-lh” language) are taken from the `russian.sty` file in the LH package [156].

The titles for the “russian-lh” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-lh.mlo`.

```
6652 <*russian – lh>
6653 \ProvidesFile{russian-lh.mld}[2006/03/08]
6654 %% Russian-lh titles for minitoc.sty
6655 %% From russian.sty in the LH package
6656 %% LH fonts in special encoding
6657 %% Sergei O. Naoumov (serge@astro.unc.edu)
6658 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lh}%
6659 </russian – lh>
```

### 12.138 “Russian-lhcyralt” language: **russian-lhcyralt.mld** and **russian-lhcyralt.mlo**

The russian titles for the LHCYRALT fonts (“russian-lhcyralt” language) are taken from the `lhcyralt.sty` file in the lhcyr package [204].

The titles for the “russian-lhcyralt” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-lhcyralt.mlo`. The input encoding is ALT (code page CP866).

```
6660 <*russian – lhcyralt>
6661 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyralt.mld}[2006/03/10]
6662 %% Russian-lhcyralt titles for minitoc.sty
6663 %% From lhcyralt.sty in the LHCYR package
6664 %% LHCYRALT fonts in special encoding ALT (CP866)
6665 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
6666 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyralt}%
6667 </russian – lhcyralt>
```



### 12.139 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language: russian-lhcyrkoi.mld and russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo

The russian titles for the LHCYRKOI fonts (“russian-lhcyrkoi” language) are taken from the lhcyrkoi.sty file in the lhcyr package [204].

The titles for the “russian-lhcyrkoi” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo. The input encoding is KOI-8.

```
6668 ⟨*russian – lhcyrkoi⟩
6669 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyrkoi.mld}[2006/03/13]
6670 %% Russian-lhcyrkoi titles for minitoc.sty
6671 %% From lhcyrkoi.sty in the LHCYR package
6672 %% LHCYRKOI fonts in special encoding KOI-8
6673 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
6674 \mloadmlo{russian-lhcyrkoi}%
6675 ⟨/russian – lhcyrkoi⟩
```

### 12.140 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language: russian-lhcyrwin.mld and russian-lhcyrwin.mlo

The russian titles for the LHCYRWIN fonts (“russian-lhcyrwin” language) are taken from the lhcyrwin.sty file in the lhcyr package [204].

The titles for the “russian-lhcyrwin” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-lhcyrwin.mlo. The input encoding is the code page CP1251.

```
6676 ⟨*russian – lhcyrwin⟩
6677 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyrwin.mld}[2006/03/13]
6678 %% Russian-lhcyrwin titles for minitoc.sty
6679 %% From lhcyrwin.sty in the LHCYR package
6680 %% LHCYRWIN fonts in special encoding CP1251
6681 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
6682 \mloadmlo{russian-lhcyrwin}%
6683 ⟨/russian – lhcyrwin⟩
```

### 12.141 “Samin” language: `samin.mld`

The titles for the “samin” language<sup>41</sup> are taken from the `samin.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 52]. Specific fonts are required.

```

6684 (*samin)
6685 \ProvidesFile{samin.mld}[2006/01/13]
6686 %% North Sami (samin) titles for minitoc.sty
6687 %% from samin.dtx (babel)
6688 %% Jernsletten, Regnor
6689 \def\ptctitle{Sisdoallu}%
6690 \def\plftitle{Govvosat}%
6691 \def\plttitle{Tabeallat}%
6692 %%
6693 \def\mtctitle{Sisdoallu}%
6694 \def\mlftitle{Govvosat}%
6695 \def\mlttitle{Tabeallat}%
6696 %%
6697 \def\stctitle{Sisdoallu}%
6698 \def\slftitle{Govvosat}%
6699 \def\slttitle{Tabeallat}%
6700 </samin>

```

### 12.142 “Scottish” language: `scottish.mld`

The titles for the “scottish” language are taken from the `scottish.dtx` file in the `babel` language [29, 30, 49]:

```

6701 (*scottish)
6702 \ProvidesFile{scottish.mld}[2006/01/13]
6703 %% Scottish titles for minitoc.sty
6704 %% from scottish.dtx (babel)
6705 %% Grant, Fraser
6706 \def\ptctitle{Cl\‘ar-obrach}%
6707 \def\plftitle{LiostaDhealbh}%
6708 \def\plttitle{LiostaChl\‘ar}%
6709 %%
6710 \def\mtctitle{Cl\‘ar-obrach}%
6711 \def\mlftitle{LiostaDhealbh}%
6712 \def\mlttitle{LiostaChl\‘ar}%
6713 %%
6714 \def\stctitle{Cl\‘ar-obrach}%
6715 \def\slftitle{LiostaDhealbh}%
6716 \def\slttitle{LiostaChl\‘ar}%

```

<sup>41</sup>Several Sami dialects/languages are spoken in Finland, Norway, Sweden, and on the Kola Peninsula (Russia). The alphabets differ, so there will eventually be a need for more `.dtx` files for, e.g., Lule and South Sami. Hence the name `samin.dtx` (and not `sami.dtx` or the like) in the North Sami case. This note is copied from the `samin.dtx` file.

```
6717 </scottish>
```

## 12.143 “Serbian” language: `serbian.mld`

The titles for the “serbian” (serbocroatian) language are taken from the `serbian.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 62]. Serbocroatian is spoken by Serbs, Croats and Chernogors, but only Serbs and Chernogors use the cyrillic alphabet (a variant). See also section 12.144.

```
6718 <*serbian>
6719 \ProvidesFile{serbian.mld}[2006/01/13]
6720 %% Serbian titles for minitoc.sty
6721 %% from serbian.dtx (babel)
6722 %% Muhamedagi\'{c}, Dejan and Slobodan, Jankovic
6723 \def\ptctitle{Sadr\{v\z}aj}%
6724 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
6725 \def\pltttitle{Tabele}%
6726 %%
6727 \def\mtctitle{Sadr\{v\z}aj}%
6728 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%
6729 \def\mltttitle{Tabele}%
6730 %%
6731 \def\stctitle{Sadr\{v\z}aj}%
6732 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
6733 \def\sltttitle{Tabele}%
6734 </serbian>
```

## 12.144 “Serbianc” language: `serbianc.mld`

The titles for the “serbianc” language<sup>42</sup> have been gently provided by Marko ÈEHAJA and Frank KÜSTER. Cyrillic fonts are required. Serbocroatian is spoken by Serbs, Croats and Chernogors, but only Serbs and Chernogors use the cyrillic alphabet (a variant). See also section 12.143.

```
6735 <*serbianc>
6736 \ProvidesFile{serbianc.mld}[2006/01/13]
6737 %% Provides titles for minitoc.sty in Serbian Cyrillic
6738 %%
6739 %% Marko Èehaja Internut@Thetaworld.Org
6740 %% Frank Küster, Biozentrum der Univ. Basel, frank@kuesterei.ch
6741 %% Abt. Biophysikalische Chemie
6742 \def\ptctitle{%
6743 {\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
```

---

<sup>42</sup>The “serbianc” language is written with cyrillic characters.

```

6744 \def\plftitle{%
6745 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
6746 \def\plttitle{\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
6747 %%
6748 \def\mtctitle{%
6749 {\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
6750 \def\mlftitle{%
6751 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
6752 \def\mlttitle{\cyr\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
6753 %%
6754 \def\stctitle{%
6755 {\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
6756 \def\slftitle{%
6757 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
6758 \def\slttitle{\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
6759 </serbianc>

```

## 12.145 “Slovak” language: slovak.mld

The titles for the “slovak” language are taken from the slovak.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 45]. Using the T1 font encoding is recommended.

```

6760 <*slovak>
6761 \ProvidesFile{slovak.mld}[2006/01/13]
6762 %% Slovak titles for minitoc.sty
6763 %% from slovak.dtx (babel)
6764 %% Chlebikova, Jana and Schlemmer, Tobias
6765 \def\ptctitle{Obsah}%
6766 \def\plftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
6767 \def\plttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
6768 %%
6769 \def\mtctitle{Obsah}%
6770 \def\mlftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
6771 \def\mlttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
6772 %%
6773 \def\stctitle{Obsah}%
6774 \def\slftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
6775 \def\slttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
6776 </slovak>

```

## 12.146 “Slovene” language: slovene.mld

The titles for the “slovene” language are taken from the slovene.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 75]:

```

6777 <*slovene>
6778 \ProvidesFile{slovene.mld}[2006/01/13]
6779 %% Slovene titles for minitoc.sty
6780 %% from slovene.dtx (babel)
6781 %% Zavrtanik, Danilo and \v{Z}lajpah, Leon
6782 \def\ptctitle{Kazalo}%
6783 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
6784 \def\plttitle{Tabele}%
6785 %%
6786 \def\mtctitle{Kazalo}%
6787 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%
6788 \def\mlttitle{Tabele}%
6789 %%
6790 \def\stctitle{Kazalo}%
6791 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
6792 \def\slttitle{Tabele}%
6793 </slovene>

```

## 12.147 “Spanish” language: spanish.mld

The titles for the “spanish” language are taken from the `spanish.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 24]. Note that the “spanish” is in fact “castillan” (see section 12.32 on page 369). Other languages are spoken in Spain: “basque” (section 12.17 on page 362), “catalan” (section 12.34 on page 370), and “galician” (section 12.61 on page 383). “Spanish2” is a version of “spanish” with shorter titles (see section 12.148 on the following page). “Spanish3” (see section 12.149 on the next page) is a version for the ANTOMEGA [121] project; some titles are different. “Spanish4” is a variant of “spanish” where `\ptctitle` is shorter for articles (section 12.150 on page 431).

```

6794 <*spanish>
6795 \ProvidesFile{spanish.mld}[2006/02/15]
6796 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty
6797 %% from spanish.dtx (babel)
6798 %% Bezoz, Javier
6799 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
6800 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice}%
6801 \else
6802 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice General}%
6803 \fi
6804 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
6805 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
6806 %%
6807 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
6808 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
6809 \def\mlttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
6810 %%
6811 \def\stctitle{\'Indice}%
6812 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
6813 \def\slttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%

```

```
6814 </spanish>
```

## 12.148 “Spanish2” language: spanish2.mld

The titles for the “spanish2” language are taken from the spanish.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 24], but made shorter for chapter and section levels. See section 12.147 on the page before.

```
6815 <*spanish2>
6816 \ProvidesFile{spanish2.mld}[2005/03/31]
6817 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty
6818 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice General}%
6819 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
6820 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
6821 %%
6822 \def\mtctitle{Contenido}%
6823 \def\mlftitle{Figuras}%
6824 \def\mltttitle{Tablas}%
6825 %%
6826 \def\stctitle{Contenido}%
6827 \def\slftitle{Figuras}%
6828 \def\slttitle{Tablas}%
6829 </spanish2>
```

## 12.149 “Spanish3” language: spanish3.mld

The titles for the “spanish3” language are taken from the omega-spanish.ldf file of the ANTOMEGA project [121]. See section 12.147 on the preceding page.

```
6830 <*spanish3>
6831 \ProvidesFile{spanish3.mld}[2005/09/06]
6832 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty
6833 %% from omega-spanish.ldf of the ANTOMEGA project.
6834 \def\ptctitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice general}}%
6835 \def\plftitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
6836 \def\plttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
6837 %%
6838 \def\mtctitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice general}}%
6839 \def\mlftitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
6840 \def\mltttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
6841 %%
6842 \def\stctitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice general}}%
6843 \def\slftitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
6844 \def\slttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
6845 </spanish3>
```

## 12.150 “Spanish4” language: spanish4.mld

The titles for the “spanish4” language are taken from the `spanish.dtx` file from `CervanTeX` [23]. The title of the parttocs is shorter for articles. See also section 12.147 on page 429.

```

6846 <*spanish4>
6847 \ProvidesFile{spanish4.mld}[2006/01/19]
6848 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty
6849 %% from spanish.dtx (CervanTeX)
6850 %% Bezos, Javier
6851 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
6852 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice}%
6853 \else
6854 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice general}%
6855 \fi
6856 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
6857 \def\pltttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
6858 %%
6859 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
6860 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
6861 \def\mltttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
6862 %%
6863 \def\stctitle{\'Indice}%
6864 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
6865 \def\slttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
6866 </spanish4>

```

## 12.151 “Swedish” language: swedish.mld

The titles for the “swedish” language are taken from the `swedish.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 50]. See also section 12.152 on the following page.

```

6867 <*swedish>
6868 \ProvidesFile{swedish.mld}[2006/01/13]
6869 %% Swedish titles for minitoc.sty
6870 %% from swedish.dtx (babel)
6871 %% Hellman, Sten and Östhols, Erik
6872 \def\ptctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
6873 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
6874 \def\pltttitle{Tabeller}%
6875 %%
6876 \def\mtctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
6877 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
6878 \def\mltttitle{Tabeller}%
6879 %%
6880 \def\stctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
6881 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%

```

```
6882 \def\sltttitle{Tabeller}%
6883 \</swedish>
```

## 12.152 “Swedish2” language: `swedish2.mld`

The titles for the “swedish2” language (variant for `swedish`) are taken from the `rapport.doc` file in the `SLATEX` package [146]. See also section 12.151 on the page before.

```
6884 \<*swedish2>
6885 \ProvidesFile{swedish2.mld}[2006/04/04]
6886 %% Swedish2 titles for minitoc.sty
6887 %% from rapport.doc (slatex)
6888 %% Mattisson, Sven
6889 \def\ptctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
6890 \def\plftitle{Figurf\"orteckning}%
6891 \def\pltttitle{Tabellf\"orteckning}%
6892 %%
6893 \def\mtctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
6894 \def\mlftitle{Figurf\"orteckning}%
6895 \def\mltttitle{Tabellf\"orteckning}%
6896 %%
6897 \def\stctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
6898 \def\slftitle{Figurf\"orteckning}%
6899 \def\sltttitle{Tabellf\"orteckning}%
6900 \</swedish2>
```

## 12.153 “Thai” language: `thai.mld` and `thai.mlo`

The titles for the “thai” language are taken from the `thaicjk.ldf` file and use fonts of the CJK system [137, 138].

The titles for the “thai” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `thai.mlo`.

```
6901 \<*thai>
6902 \ProvidesFile{thai.mld}[2005/01/28]
6903 %% from thaicjk.ldf CJK 4.5.2 Thai support for the babel system
6904 %% by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
6905 %%
6906 \mtcloadmlo{thai}%
6907 \</thai>
```



### 12.154 “Turkish” language: `turkish.mld`

The titles for the “turkish” language are taken from the `turkish.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 42]:

```

6908 ⟨*turkish⟩
6909 \ProvidesFile{turkish.mld}[2006/01/13]
6910 %% Turkish titles for minitoc.sty
6911 %% from turkish.dtx (babel)
6912 %% Burc, Mustafa
6913 \def\ptctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
6914 \def\plftitle{\c Sekiller Listesi}%
6915 \def\pltttitle{Tablolar\in Listesi}%
6916 %%
6917 \def\mtctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
6918 \def\mlftitle{\c Sekiller Listesi}%
6919 \def\mltttitle{Tablolar\in Listesi}%
6920 %%
6921 \def\stctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
6922 \def\slftitle{\c Sekiller Listesi}%
6923 \def\slttitle{Tablolar\in Listesi}%
6924 ⟨/turkish⟩

```

### 12.155 “Uighur” language: `uighur.mld`

The “uighur” and “bicig” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `bicig.mld` file (see section 12.18 on page 362):

```

6925 ⟨*uighur⟩
6926 \ProvidesFile{uighur.mld}[2006/05/31]
6927 \mtcselectlanguage{bicig}%
6928 ⟨/uighur⟩

```

### 12.156 “Uighur2” language: `uighur2.mld`

The “uighur2” and “bicig2” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `bicig2.mld` file (see section 12.19 on page 363):

```

6929 ⟨*uighur2⟩
6930 \ProvidesFile{uighur2.mld}[2006/05/31]
6931 \mtcselectlanguage{bicig2}%
6932 ⟨/uighur2⟩

```

**12.157 “Uighur3” language: uighur3.mld**

The “uighur3” and “bicig3” languages are synonyms, so we just load the bicig3.mld file (see section 12.18 on page 362):

```
6933 < *uighur3>
6934 \ProvidesFile{uighur3.mld}[2006/05/31]
6935 \mtcselectlanguage{bicig3}%
6936 < /uighur3>
```

**12.158 “UKenglish” language: UKenglish.mld**

The “UKenglish” language is just like “english” (“UK” is for “United Kingdom”), so we just load english.mld (see section 12.41 on page 373):

```
6937 < *UKenglish>
6938 \ProvidesFile{UKenglish.mld}[2005/07/11]
6939 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
6940 < /UKenglish>
```

**12.159 “Ukraineb” language: ukraineb.mld**

The “ukraineb” language is a synonym for “ukrainian”, so we just load ukrainian.mld. See section 12.160.

```
6941 < *ukraineb>
6942 \ProvidesFile{ukraineb.mld}[2006/01/23]
6943 %% Ukranian titles for minitoc.sty
6944 %% from ukraineb.dtx (babel)
6945 %% Werner, Eduard
6946 \selectlanguage{ukrainian}%
6947 < /ukraineb>
```

**12.160 “Ukrainian” language: ukrainian.mld**

The titles for the “ukrainian” language are taken from the ukraineb.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 70]. Cyrillic fonts are required. Another language name is ukraineb (see section 12.159).

```

6948 ⟨*ukrainian⟩
6949 \ProvidesFile{ukrainian.mld}[2006/01/33]
6950 %% Ukraine titles for minitoc.sty
6951 %% from ukraineb.dtx (babel)
6952 %% Shvaika, Andriy
6953 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
6954 \def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
6955 \def\mlftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
6956 \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
6957 \def\mltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
6958 \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsftsn}}%
6959 %%
6960 \def\ptctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
6961 \def\plftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
6962 \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
6963 \def\pltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
6964 \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsftsn}}%
6965 %%
6966 \def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
6967 \def\slftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
6968 \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
6969 \def\sltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
6970 \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsftsn}}%
6971 ⟨/ukrainian⟩

```

## 12.161 “Uppersorbian” language: `uppersorbian.mld`

The titles for the “uppersorbian” language<sup>43</sup> are taken from the `usorbian.dtx` file in the `babel` package [29, 30, 73]. See also section 12.100 on page 405. A shorter language name is `usorbian` (see section 12.163 on the next page).

```

6972 ⟨*uppersorbian⟩
6973 \ProvidesFile{uppersorbian.mld}[2006/02/38]
6974 %% Upper sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
6975 %% from usorbian.dtx (babel)
6976 %% Werner, Eduard
6977 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
6978 \def\ptctitle{Wobsah}%
6979 \def\plftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
6980 \def\pltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
6981 %%
6982 \def\mtctitle{Wobsah}%
6983 \def\mlftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
6984 \def\mltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
6985 %%
6986 \def\stctitle{Wobsah}%

```

<sup>43</sup> Upper sorbian. Sorbian, or wendisch, is a member of the west slavic subgroup of indo-european languages spoken in Upper Lusatia in the german *länder* of Saxony and Brandenburg. The Sorbs are descendents of the Wends, the german name for the slavic tribes who occupied the area between the Elbe and Saale rivers in the west and the Odra (Oder) river in the east during the medieval period (VIth century).

```

6987 \def\slfttitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
6988 \def\sltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
6989 </uppersorbian>

```

## 12.162 “USenglish” language: USenglish.mld

The “USenglish” language “US” is for “United States (of America)” is just like “english”<sup>44</sup>, so we just load english.mld (see section 12.41 on page 373):

```

6990 <*USenglish>
6991 \ProvidesFile{USenglish.mld}[2005/07/11]
6992 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
6993 </USenglish>

```

## 12.163 “Usorbian” language: usorbian.mld

The “usorbian” language is a synonym for “uppersorbian”, so we just load uppersorbian.mld. See section 12.161 on the page before.

```

6994 <*usorbian>
6995 \ProvidesFile{usorbian.mld}[2006/01/23]
6996 %% Upper sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
6997 %% from usorbian.dtx (babel)
6998 %% Werner, Eduard
6999 \selectlanguage{uppersorbian}%
7000 </usorbian>

```

## 12.164 “Vietnam” language: vietnam.mld

The titles for the “vietnam” language are taken from the vietnam.sty package. Vietnamese fonts are required. See also section 12.165 on the following page.

```

7001 <*vietnam>
7002 \ProvidesFile{vietnam.mld}[1999/03/16]
7003 %% vietnamese titles for minitoc.sty
7004 %%
7005 \def\ptcttitle{M\dc l\dc}%
7006 \def\plfttitle{Danh s\ach h\inh v\~e}%
7007 \def\pltttitle{Danh s\ach b\h{a}ng}%

```

<sup>44</sup>It should be true for the mini-table titles; the languages themselves have some differences, like the hyphenation rules.

```

7008 %%
7009 \def\mtctitle{M\d{u}c l\d{u}c}%
7010 \def\mlftitle{Danh s\'ach h\'inh v\~e}%
7011 \def\mltttitle{Danh s\'ach b\h{a}ng}%
7012 %%
7013 \def\stctitle{M\d{u}c l\d{u}c}%
7014 \def\slftitle{Danh s\'ach h\'inh v\~e}%
7015 \def\slttitle{Danh s\'ach b\h{a}ng}%
7016 </vietnam>

```

## 12.165 “Vietnamese” language: vietnamese.mld

The “vietnamese” language is just a synonym for the “vietnam” language. So we just load vietnam.mld. Vietnamese fonts are required. See also section 12.164 on the page before.

```

7017 <*vietnamese>
7018 \ProvidesFile{vietnamese.mld}[2004/12/14]
7019 \mtcselectlanguage{vietnam}%
7020 </vietnamese>

```

## 12.166 “Welsh” language: welsh.mld

The titles for the “welsh” language are taken from the welsh.dtx file in the babel package [29, 30, 35]:

```

7021 <*welsh>
7022 \ProvidesFile{welsh.mld}[1999/12/06]
7023 %% Welsh titles for minitoc.sty
7024 %% from welsh.dtx (babel)
7025 %% Braams, Johannes
7026 \def\ptctitle{Cynnwys}%
7027 \def\plftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
7028 \def\pltttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
7029 %%
7030 \def\mtctitle{Cynnwys}%
7031 \def\mlftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
7032 \def\mltttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
7033 %%
7034 \def\stctitle{Cynnwys}%
7035 \def\slftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
7036 \def\slttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
7037 </welsh>

```

## 12.167 “Xalx” language: xalx.mld

The titles for the “xalx” language are taken from the MonT<sub>E</sub>X package [84, 86]. Xalx or Khalkha is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Mongolia proper. Their dialect forms the basis of Mongolian written with Cyrillic letters. See also sections 12.94 on page 402, 12.168, and 12.169 on the following page.

```

7038 <*xalx>
7039 \ProvidesFile{xalx.mld}[2005/11/16]
7040 %% Mongol (xalx) titles for minitoc.sty
7041 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
7042 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
7043 \def\plttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
7044 %%
7045 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
7046 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
7047 \def\mlttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
7048 %%
7049 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
7050 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
7051 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
7052 </xalx>

```

## 12.168 “Xalx2” language: xalx2.mld

The titles for the “xalx2” language are taken from the MonT<sub>E</sub>X package [84, 86]. This is a variant for the “xalx” language (see section 12.167).

```

7053 <*xalx2>
7054 \ProvidesFile{xalx2.mld}[2006/03/31]
7055 %% Mongol (xalx2) titles for minitoc.sty
7056 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
7057 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
7058 \def\plttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
7059 %%
7060 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
7061 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
7062 \def\mlttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
7063 %%
7064 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
7065 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
7066 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
7067 </xalx2>

```

## 12.169 “Xalx3” language: xalx3.mld

The titles for the “xalx3” language are taken from the MonTeX package [84, 86]. This is an other variant for the “xalx” language (see section 12.167 on the preceding page).

```
7068 <*xalx3>
7069 \ProvidesFile{xalx3.mld}[2006/03/31]
7070 %% Mongol (xalx3) titles for minitoc.sty
7071 \def\ptctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
7072 \def\plftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
7073 \def\plttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
7074 %%
7075 \def\mtctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
7076 \def\mlftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
7077 \def\mlttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
7078 %%
7079 \def\stctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
7080 \def\slftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
7081 \def\slttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
7082 </xalx3>
```

## **Part III**

# **Complements**



**Contents of the Third Part**

|                        |            |
|------------------------|------------|
| <b>Bibliography</b>    | <b>442</b> |
| <b>Changes History</b> | <b>459</b> |
| <b>Index</b>           | <b>484</b> |

# Bibliography

- [1] Paul W. Abrahams, Karl Berry, and Kathryn A. Hargreaves.  $\text{\TeX}$  for the Impatient, September 2003. <mailto:impatient@tug.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/impatient/book.pdf>. 442
- [2] Paul W. Abrahams, Karl Berry, and Kathryn A. Hargreaves.  $\text{\TeX}$  pour l'Impatient, September 2004. Translation of [1] by Marc Chaudemanche. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/impatient/fr/fbook.pdf>.
- [3] Alex AJ. Typesetting Malayalam Using  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2 $\epsilon$ , April 2003. <mailto:alexaj@myrealbox.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/malayalam/doc/mm-usr.pdf>. 39, 126, 355, 407, 408, 409
- [4] Alex AJ. Typesetting Malayalam Using  $\Omega$ , January 2006. <mailto:indicTeX@gmail.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/omega/latex/contrib/malayalam-omega/doc/manual-malayalam.pdf>. 39, 126, 355, 408
- [5] American Mathematical Society. Instructions for Preparation of Papers and Monographs:  $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ - $\text{\LaTeX}$ . Providence, Rhode Island, 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/amslatex/classes/instr-l.pdf>.
- [6] Donald Arseneau. `chapterbib.sty`, February 2004. <mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cite/chapterbib.sty>. 55, 133, 144
- [7] Donald Arseneau. The `notoccite` package, July 2000. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/notoccite.sty>. 46, 147, 163, 181, 206, 209, 212, 304, 331
- [8] Donald Arseneau. The `placeins` package, June 2002. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/placeins/>. 27, 137, 139, 149, 163, 311, 317, 331
- [9] Helmer Aslaksen. Chinese  $\text{\TeX}$  Using the CJK  $\text{\LaTeX}$  Package, Unicode TrueType Fonts and `pdf\TeX` under Windows [online]. February 2006. Available from: <http://www.math.nus.edu.sg/aslaksen/cs/cjk.html>. <mailto:aslaksen@math.nus.edu.sg>.
- [10] Helmer Aslaksen. Reading and Writing Chinese Characters and Pinyin on the Web Using Unicode [online]. January 2006. Available from: <http://www.math.nus.edu.sg/aslaksen/read.html>. <mailto:aslaksen@math.nus.edu.sg>.

- [11] Pierre Basso and Stephan Ulrich. `bibtopic.sty`, August 2002. <mailto:Pierre.Basso@lim.univ-mrs.fr>, <mailto:stefanulrich@users.sourceforge.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/bibtopic/bibtopic.pdf>. 55, 131
- [12] Benjamin Bayart. *Joli manuel pour L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>*. Guide local pour l'ESIEE, December 1995. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/JMPL.ps.gz>. 44
- [13] Benjamin Bayart and al. Foire aux questions du groupe `fr.comp.text.tex`, November 2004. Version 3.0α. Available from: <http://faqfctt.fr.eu.org>.
- [14] Claudio Beccari and Apostolos Syropoulos. New Greek Fonts and the greek option of the `babel` package. *TUGboat*, 19(4):419–425, December 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-4/tb61becc.pdf>.
- [15] Emmanuel Beffara. Rubber Manual 1.0 [online]. July 2005. Available from: <http://www.pps.jussieu.fr/~beffara/soft/rubber/doc.html>. 56, 150
- [16] A. Berdnikov and O.A. Grineva. Some Problems with Accents in T<sub>E</sub>X: Letters with Multiple Accents and Accents Varying for Uppercase/Lowercase Letters. In *Congrès EuroT<sub>E</sub>X'98*, volume 28–29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 44–55, St. Malo, March 1998. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikovc.pdf>.
- [17] A. Berdnikov, O. Lapko, M. Kolodin, A. Janishevsky, and A. Burykin. Alphabets Necessary for Various Cyrillic Writing Systems (Towards X2 and T2 Encodings). In *Congrès EuroT<sub>E</sub>X'98*, volume 28–29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 33–43, St. Malo, March 1998. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikovb.pdf>.
- [18] A. Berdnikov, O. Lapko, M. Kolodin, A. Janishevsky, and A. Burykin. Cyrillic encoding for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> multi-language documents. *TUGboat*, 19(4):403–416, 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-4/tb61berd.pdf>.
- [19] A. Berdnikov, O. Lapko, M. Kolodin, A. Janishevsky, and A. Burykin. The Encoding Paradigm in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> and the Projected X2 Encoding for Cyrillic Texts. In *Congrès EuroT<sub>E</sub>X*, volume 28–29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 17–31, March 1998. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikova.pdf>.
- [20] Karl Berry. Filenames for fonts. *TUGboat*, 11(4):517–520, November 1990. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30berry.pdf>. 454
- [21] Karl Berry. Fontname, September 2005. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/fontname/fontname.pdf>.
- [22] Berhanu Beyene, Manfred Kudlek, Olaf Kummer, and Jochen Metzinger. Ethiopian Language Support for the `babel` Package, December 1998. Universität Hamburg. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/ethiopia/ethiop/doc/ethiodoc.ps>. 39, 136, 355, 377, 378

- [23] Javier Bezos. Estilo spanish para el sistema babel, September 2003. <mailto:jbezos@wanadoo.es>. Available from: <http://filemon.mecanica.upm.es/CervanTeX/spanish.dtx>. 431
- [24] Javier Bezos. Spanish support from the babel system, February 2004. <mailto:jbezos@wanadoo.es> or <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/spanish.dtx>. 429, 430
- [25] Javier Bezos. Typesetting Guaraní with T<sub>E</sub>X, July 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/guarani/guarani.pdf>. 39, 138, 355, 389
- [26] Javier Bezos. The titlesec and titletoc packages, January 2005. <http://www.txytipografia.com/contact.php>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/titlesec/titlesec.pdf>. 152, 311
- [27] Victor Boyko. The russian.sty file, January 1995. Available from: <ftp://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cmcyralt/russian.sty>. 423
- [28] Johannes Braams. Babel, a multilingual style-option system for use with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's standard document styles. *TUGboat*, 12(2):291–301, June 1991. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb12-2/tb32braa.pdf>. 355
- [29] Johannes Braams. Babel, a multilingual package for use with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's standard document classes, June 2004. <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/babel.pdf>. 34, 39, 69, 130, 136, 160, 355, 356, 357, 360, 361, 362, 365, 366, 367, 370, 371, 372, 373, 374, 375, 376, 379, 380, 381, 382, 383, 384, 385, 394, 396, 397, 398, 402, 403, 404, 405, 406, 407, 411, 412, 413, 414, 415, 417, 418, 419, 421, 426, 427, 428, 429, 430, 431, 433, 434, 435, 437
- [30] Johannes Braams. Babel, a multilingual package for use with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's standard document classes (user), June 2004. <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/user.pdf>. 34, 39, 69, 130, 136, 160, 355, 356, 357, 360, 361, 362, 365, 366, 367, 370, 371, 372, 373, 374, 375, 376, 379, 380, 381, 382, 383, 384, 385, 394, 396, 397, 398, 402, 403, 404, 405, 406, 407, 411, 412, 413, 414, 415, 417, 418, 419, 421, 426, 427, 428, 429, 430, 431, 433, 434, 435, 437
- [31] Johannes Braams. Dutch language support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/dutch.dtx>. 356, 373
- [32] Johannes Braams. English support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/english.dtx>. 373, 374, 375
- [33] Johannes Braams. Irish support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/irish.dtx>. 397
- [34] Johannes Braams. Norsk support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/norsk.dtx>. 413, 414

- [35] Johannes Braams. Welsh support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/welsh.dtx>. 437
- [36] Johannes Braams, Juan M. Aguirregabiria, and Julio Sanchez. Basque support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:lg.ehu.es>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/basque.dtx>. 362
- [37] Johannes Braams and Einar Árnason. Icelandic support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:einar@lif.hi.is>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/icelandic.dtx>. 396
- [38] Johannes Braams and Goncal Badenes. Catalan language support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:badenes@imec.be>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/catalan.dtx>. 370
- [39] Johannes Braams and Claudio Beccari. Latin support from the babel system, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:claudio.beccari@polito.it>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/latin.dtx>. 402, 403
- [40] Johannes Braams, Árpád Bíró, and József Bérces. Magyar support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/magyar.dtx>. 406, 407
- [41] Johannes Braams and Georgi Boshnakov. Bulgarian language support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:georgi.boshnakov@umist.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/bulgarian.dtx>. 366
- [42] Johannes Braams and Mustafa Burc. Turkish support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:rz6001@rziris01.rrz.uni-hamburg.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/turkish.dtx>. 433
- [43] Johannes Braams, David Carlisle, Alan Jeffrey, Leslie Lamport, Frank Mittelbach, Chris Rowley, and Rainer Schöpf. The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> sources, 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base>.
- [44] Johannes Braams and Manuel Carriba. Galician support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mcarriba@eunetcom.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/galician.dtx>. 383
- [45] Johannes Braams, Jana Chlebkova, and Tobias Schlemmer. Slovak support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:chlebkj@mff.uniba.cs>, <mailto:Tobias.Schlemmer@web.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/slovak.dtx>. 428

- [46] Johannes Braams, Maurizio Codogno, and Claudio Beccari. Italian support from the babel system, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it>, <mailto:beccari@polito.it>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/italian.dtx>. 398
- [47] Johannes Braams, Victor Eijkhout, and Nico Poppelier. The development of national L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X styles. *TUGboat*, 10(3):401–406, November 1989. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb10-3/tb25braams.pdf>. 355
- [48] Johannes Braams and Daniel Flipo. French support from the babel system, February 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Daniel.Flipo@univ-lille1.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/frenchb.dtx>. 380, 381, 382
- [49] Johannes Braams and Fraser Grant. Scottish support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:fraser@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/scottish.dtx>. 426
- [50] Johannes Braams and Sten Hellman. Swedish support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:hellman@cernvm.cern.ch>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/swedish.dtx>. 431
- [51] Johannes Braams, Umstatter Horst, and Robert Juhasz. Romanian support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:hhu@cernvm.cern.ch>, <mailto:robertj@uni-paderborn.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/romanian.dtx>. 417
- [52] Johannes Braams and Regnor Jernsletten. North Sami support from the babel system, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Regnor.Jernsletten@sami.uit.no> or <mailto:Regnor.Jernsletten@eunet.no>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/samin.dtx>. 426
- [53] Johannes Braams, Mikko Kanerva, and Keranen Reino. Finnish support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:kanerva@cernvm>, <mailto:keranen@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/finnish.dtx>. 379, 380
- [54] Johannes Braams and Peter Kleiweg. Interlingua support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:kleiweg@let.rug.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/interlingua.dtx>. 397
- [55] Johannes Braams, Jörg Knappen, and Terry Mart. Bahasa indonesia support from the babel system, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:joerg.knappen@alpha.ntp.springer.de>, <mailto:mart@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/bahasa.dtx>. 360
- [56] Johannes Braams, Jörg Knappen, Terry Mart, and Bob Margolis. Bahasa malaysia support from the babel system, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>.

- nl, <mailto:joerg.knappen@alpha.ntp.springer.de>, <mailto:mart@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>, <mailto:bob.margolis@ntlworld.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/bahasam.dtx>. 361
- [57] Johannes Braams, Olga Lapko, Vladimir Volovich, and Werner Lemberg. Russian support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:cyrtug@mir.msk.su>, <mailto:TeX@vvv.vsu.ru> et <mailto:wl@gnu.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/russianb.dtx>. 367, 421
- [58] Johannes Braams and Henning Larsen. Danish language support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:larsen@cernvm.cern.ch>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/danish.dtx>. 372
- [59] Johannes Braams and Boris Lavva. Hebrew language support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/hebrew.dtx>. 394
- [60] Johannes Braams and Milos Lokajicek. Czech language support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:lokajick@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/czech.dtx>. 372
- [61] Johannes Braams, Ruiz-Altaba Marti, and Knappen. Jörg. Esperanto support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:ruizaltb@cernvm.cern.ch>, <mailto:knappen@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/esperanto.dtx>. 375
- [62] Johannes Braams, Dejan Muhamedagić, and Jankovic Slobodan. Serbocroatian support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:dejan@yunix.com>, <mailto:slobodan@archimed.filfak.ac.ni.yu>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/serbian.dtx>. 427
- [63] Johannes Braams and Alan Paić. Croatian language support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:paica@cernvm.cern.ch>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/croatian.dtx>. 371
- [64] Johannes Braams and Bernd Raichle. German support from the babel system, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, [azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de](mailto:azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/germanb.dtx>. 384
- [65] Johannes Braams, Bernd Raichle, and Walter Schmidt. New german support from the babel system, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, [raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de](mailto:raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/ngermanb.dtx>. 411, 412
- [66] Johannes Braams and Jose Pedro Ramalhete. Portuguese support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:jramalhe@>

- cernvm or [mailto:Jose-Pedro\\_Ramalhete@macmail](mailto:Jose-Pedro_Ramalhete@macmail). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/portuges.dtx>. 365, 417
- [67] Johannes Braams and Christian Rolland. Breton language support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Christian.Rolland@univ-brest.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/breton.dtx>. 365
- [68] Johannes Braams and Enn Saar. Estonian support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:saar@aai.ee>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/estonian.dtx>. 376
- [69] Johannes Braams, Elmar Schalueck, and Michael Janich. Polish support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:elmar@uni-paderborn.de>, <mailto:massa@uni-paderborn.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/polish.dtx>. 415
- [70] Johannes Braams and Andrij Shvaika. Ukrainian support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:ashv@icmp.lviv.ua>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/ukraine.dtx>. 434
- [71] Johannes Braams and Apostolos Syropoulos. Greek support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:apostolo@platon.ee.duth.gr> or <mailto:apostolo@obelix.ee.duth.gr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/greek.dtx>. 385
- [72] Johannes Braams and Eduard Werner. Lower Sorbian support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:edi@kaihh.hanse.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/lsorbian.dtx>. 405
- [73] Johannes Braams and Eduard Werner. Upper Sorbian support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:edi@kaihh.hanse.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/usorbian.dtx>. 435
- [74] Johannes Braams and Adi Zaimi. Albanian support from the babel system, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:zami1st@yahoo.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/albanian.dtx>. 357
- [75] Johannes Braams, Danilo Zavrtanik, and Leon Žlajpah. Slovene support from the babel system, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:leon.zlajpah@ijs.si>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/slovene.dtx>. 428
- [76] Felix Braun. Die Documentklasse jura, July 1998. <mailto:fbraun@atdot.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/jura/>. 129, 139, 309



- [77] Peter Breitenlohner. *The  $\varepsilon$ -T<sub>E</sub>X manual*. The  $\mathcal{N}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{S}$  Team, Max-Planck-Institut für Physik, München, February 1998. Available from: [http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/systems/e-tex/v2/doc/etex\\_man.pdf](http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/systems/e-tex/v2/doc/etex_man.pdf). 134
- [78] David Carlisle. The `xr` package, May 1994. <mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/required/tools/xr.dtx>. 24, 153, 218
- [79] David Carlisle. The `xr-hyper` package, March 2000. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/xr-hyper.sty>. 154
- [80] Otfried Cheong. Using TrueType Fonts in PdfL<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X [online]. September 2005. Available from: <http://ipe.comp.geom.org/pdftex.html>. <mailto:otfried@tclab.kaist.ac.kr>.
- [81] Pai H. Chou. How to make L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X (teT<sub>E</sub>X) handle unicode and CJK in MacOSX [online]. December 2004. Available from: <http://www.ece.uci.edu/~chou/unicode-tex.html>. <mailto:chou@ece.uci.edu>.
- [82] Steven Douglas Cochran. The `captcont` package, February 2002. <mailto:sdcs@cs.cmu.edu>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/captcont/>. 48, 71, 131, 166, 183
- [83] Steven Douglas Cochran. The `subfig` Package, January 2004. <mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/subfig/subfig.pdf>. 29, 131, 152, 296
- [84] Oliver Corff. MonT<sub>E</sub>X – A Quick Guide (*draft*), July 2002. <mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/mongolian/montex/doc/mlsquick.pdf>. 39, 126, 143, 355, 362, 363, 364, 368, 410, 422, 438, 439
- [85] Oliver Corff. Infosystem Mongolei [online]. July 2004. Available from: <http://userpage.fu-berlin.de/~corff/infomong.html>. An Internet-based Journal on Mongolian Affairs. 143
- [86] Oliver Corff and Dorjpalam Dorj. MonT<sub>E</sub>X – mongolian for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>, Implementation Level System Documentation, July 2002. <mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/mongolian/montex/doc/montex.pdf>. 39, 126, 143, 355, 362, 363, 364, 368, 410, 422, 438, 439
- [87] Serguei Dachian, Arnak Dalalyan, and Vardan Vakopian. ArmT<sub>E</sub>X: a System for Writing in Armenian with T<sub>E</sub>X and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X (written in armenian), June 1999. <mailto:Serguei.Dachian@univ-lemans.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/armtex/v2.0/manual.ps>. 39, 130, 355, 359
- [88] Bernard Desgraupes. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, Apprentissage, guide et référence*. Vuibert, Paris, second edition, 2003.
- [89] Jean-Pierre F. Drucbert. The `shorttoc` package, August 2002. <mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/shorttoc/shorttoc.dtx>. 23, 151

- [90] Jean-Pierre F. Drucbert. Le paquetage `minitoc`, June 2006. <mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/fminitoc.pdf>. 336
- [91] Jean-Pierre F. Drucbert. The `minitoc` package, June 2006. <mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc.pdf>. 336
- [92] Victor Eijkhout. The `comment` package, October 1999. <mailto:victor@eijkhout.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/comment/>.
- [93] Mike Fabian. CJK Support in SuSe Linux, March 2005. Available from: <http://www.suse.de/~mfabian/suse-cjk.pdf>.
- [94] Robin Fairbairns. The UK  $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$  FAQ. Your 396 Questions Answered, November 2005. Version 3.15a. Available from: <ftp://cam.ctan.org/tex-archive/help/uk-tex-faq/newfaq.pdf>.
- [95] Michael J. Ferguson. Report on multilingual activities. *TUGboat*, 11(4):514–516, November 1990.
- [96] Chuck Genschte and John Warnock. PDF Reference, November 1004. Available from: <http://partners.adobe.com/public/developer/en/pdf/PDFReference16.pdf>. 149
- [97] Helen Gilhooly and Rozenn Etienne. *Lire et écrire le japonais*. Langues orientales. Larousse, Paris, March 2006. Translation and adaptation to french by Cécile DESPRAIRIES.
- [98] Michel Goossens and Sebastian Rahtz. *The  $\text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$  Web Companion: Integrating  $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ , HTML, and XML*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, May 1999. With Eitan M. GURARI, ROSS MOORE and Robert S. SUTOR.
- [99] Norman Gray. The `urlbst` package, June 2005. <http://www.astro.gla.ac.uk/users/norman/>. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/urlbst/urlbst.pdf>. 137, 149, 165, 480
- [100] Thorsten Hansen. The `bibunits` package, May 2004. <mailto:thorsten.hansen@psychol.uni-giessen.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/bibunits/bibunits.pdf>. 55, 131, 144
- [101] Thorsten Hansen. The `multibib` package, January 2004. <mailto:thorsten.hansen@psychol.uni-giessen.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/multibib/multibib.pdf>. 55, 144
- [102] Yannis Haralambous. *Fontes et codages*. O'Reilly France, April 2004. 389, 392, 393
- [103] Yannis Haralambous and John Plaice. First applications of  $\Omega$ : Greek. Arabic, Khmer, Poetica, ISO 10646/Unicode, etc. *TUGboat*, 15(3):344–352, 1994.

- [104] Yannis Haralambous and John Plaice.  $\Omega$ , a  $\TeX$  extension including Unicode and featuring lex-like filtering processes. In Wlodek Bzyl and Plata-Przechlewski, editors, *Proceedings of the European  $\TeX$  Conference*, pages 153–166, Gdnask, Poland, 1994. GUST. 451
- [105] Yannis Haralambous and John Plaice. The Design and Use of a Multiple-Alphabet Font with Omega. *MAPS*, 27:27–37, 2000. Available from: [http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/24\\_7.pdf](http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/24_7.pdf).
- [106] Yannis Haralambous, John Plaice, and Éric Picheral.  $\Omega$ , une extension de  $\TeX$  incluant UNICODE et des filtres de type lex. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 20:55–80, June 1995. French translation of [104].
- [107] Alexander Harin and Vadim V. Zhytnikov. The `cmcyralt.sty` file, December 1994. Available from: <ftp://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cmcyralt/cmcyralt.sty>. 423
- [108] Stephan Hennig. The `mcaption` package, September 2005. <mailto:stephanhennig@arcor.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/mcaption/mcaption.pdf>. 48, 67, 141, 184
- [109] Alan Hoenig.  *$\TeX$  Unbound*. Oxford University Press, 1998.
- [110] Ikeda.  $\text{p}\mathcal{L}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$  2 $\varepsilon$ , September 2001. In japanese, <mailto:ike@kobitosan.net>. Available from: <http://www.kobitosan.net/ike/latex/handhtml/index.html>. 149
- [111] Alan Jeffrey. PostScript font support in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$  2 $\varepsilon$ . *TUGboat*, 15(3):263–268, September 1994. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb15-3/tb44jeff.pdf>.
- [112] Zhuhan Jiang. The `vruler` package, October 1996. <mailto:zhuhan@neumann.une.edu.au>, and look at <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/help/Catalogue/entries/vruler.html>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/vruler.sty>.
- [113] David M. Jones. `hangcaption.sty`, August 1992. <mailto:dmjones@theory.lcs.mit.edu>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex209/contrib/misc/hangcaption.sty>. 138
- [114] Donald E. Knuth. *Computer Modern Typefaces*, volume E of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 1986. 32, 134
- [115] Donald E. Knuth. *The  $\TeX$ book*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 16th edition, 1989. Revised to cover  $\TeX$ 3, 1991. 132, 140, 152, 153, 451
- [116] Donald E. Knuth. *The METAFONTbook*, volume C of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 1993. With the final corrections of 1993. 134
- [117] Donald E. Knuth. *Le  $\TeX$ book, Composition informatique*. Vuibert, Paris, 2003. Translation in french of [115], by Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER. 140

- [118] Un Koaunghi. H $\LaTeX$ : a  $\LaTeX$  package for the Korean language support, April 2005. Written in korean. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/korean/HLaTeX/hlguide.pdf>. 126, 138, 355, 392, 393
- [119] Helmut Kopka and Patrick W. Daly. *Guide to  $\LaTeX$* . Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, fourth edition, 2004. 148
- [120] Siep Kroonenberg. NFSS: using font families in  $\LaTeX$  2 $\epsilon$ . *MAPS*, 11:52–54, 1999. <mailto:siepo@cybercomm.nl>. Available from: [http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/22\\_13.pdf](http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/22_13.pdf).
- [121] Alexej M. Kryukov. Typesetting multilingual documents with ANTOmega, September 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/systems/omega/contrib/antomega/doc/omega/antomega/antomega.pdf>. 39, 129, 355, 386, 387, 388, 403, 415, 419, 420, 429, 430
- [122] Frank Küster. `alnumsec.sty`: Using alphanumeric section numbering with standard sectioning commands, February 2005. [frank@kuesterei.ch](mailto:frank@kuesterei.ch). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/alnumsec/>. 48, 70, 129, 166, 183
- [123] Thomas Lachand-Robert. *La maîtrise de  $T_{\epsilon}X$  et  $E_{\epsilon}T_{\epsilon}X$* . Masson, Paris, 1995.
- [124] Klaus Lagally. Arab $T_{\epsilon}X$ —Typetting Arabic with vowels and ligatures. In *Proceedings of the 7th European  $T_{\epsilon}X$  Conference*, pages 153–172, Prague, 1992. CsTUG. <mailto:lagallyk@acm.org>. Available from: [http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/20\\_22.pdf](http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/20_22.pdf). 34, 39, 130, 355, 357, 358, 394
- [125] Klaus Lagally. Arab $T_{\epsilon}X$  Version 3, October 2003. <mailto:lagallyk@acm.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/arabtex/doc/html/arabtex.htm>. 34, 39, 130, 355, 357, 358, 394
- [126] Leslie Lamport.  *$\LaTeX$ : A Document Preparation System: User's Guide and Reference Manual*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, 1994. 52, 140
- [127] Leslie Lamport, Frank Mittelbach, and Johannes Braams. Standard Document Classes for  $\LaTeX$  version 2 $\epsilon$ , September 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/classes.dtx>. 126
- [128] Olga Lapko. The floatrow package, July 2005. <mailto:Lapko.O@g23.relcom.ru>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/floatrow/floatrow.pdf>. 27
- [129] Olga Lapko and Irina Makhovaya. The Style `russianb` for Babel: Problems and solutions. *TUGboat*, 16(4):364–372, 1995. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb16-4/tb49olga.pdf>. 34, 367, 421
- [130] Olga G. Lapko. Full Cyrillic: How Many Languages? In M. Burbank and C. Thiele, editors, *Proceedings of TUG'96*, pages 164–170, Dubna, 1996. JINR. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51olga.pdf>.

- [131] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 Project Team. Default docstrip headers. *TUGboat*, 19(2):137–138, June 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-2/tb59ldocstrip.pdf>.
- [132] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 Project Team. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> Kernel (Output Routine), July 2000. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/ltoutput.dtx>. 27, 149, 331
- [133] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 Project Team. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> for authors, July 2001. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/usrguide.pdf>. 126
- [134] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 Project Team. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> for class and package writers, December 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/clsguide.pdf>. 126
- [135] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 Project Team. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> font selection, February 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/fntguide.pdf>. 126, 145, 201, 279, 282
- [136] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 Project Team. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X font encodings, January 2006. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/encguide.pdf>. 136, 145
- [137] Werner Lemberg. The CJK package for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> — Multilingual support beyond babel. *TUGboat*, 18(3):214–224, 1997. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/cjkintro600.pdf>. 34, 39, 133, 151, 355, 370, 371, 389, 390, 391, 392, 393, 399, 400, 401, 432
- [138] Werner Lemberg. The CJK package [online]. August 2005. Available from: <http://cjk.ffii.org/>. 34, 39, 133, 151, 355, 370, 371, 389, 390, 391, 392, 393, 399, 400, 401, 432
- [139] Knut Lickert. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> for people in associations: `minutes.sty`, January 2001. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/minutes/>. 143, 202, 303
- [140] Ulf A. Lindgren. FncyChap V1.33, August 2005. <mailto:ulf.a.lindgren@ericsson.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/fncychap/fncychap.pdf>. 48, 70, 137, 166, 182
- [141] Anselm Lingnau. An Improved Environment for Floats, November 2001. <mailto:anselm@strathspey.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/float/float.dtx>. 27
- [142] Maurizio Loreti. The `sfheaders` package, September 1997. <mailto:loreti@padova.infn.it> and <http://wwwcdf.pd.infn.it/~loreti/mlo.html>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/sfheaders/>. 48, 70, 151, 166, 183
- [143] Ken Lunde. *Understanding Japanese Information Processing*. O’Reilly & Associates, Inc, September 1993. 126, 133, 453
- [144] Ken Lunde. Online companion of “Understanding Japanese Information Processing”, 1996. See [143]. Available from: <ftp://ftp.ora.com/pub/examples/nutshell/ujip/doc/cjk.inf>. 126, 133

- [145] Nicolas Markey. Tame the BeaST (The B to X of BibT<sub>E</sub>X). <mailto:markey@lsv.ens-cachan.fr>, June 2005. Available from: [http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/bibtex/tamethebeast/ttb\\_en.pdf](http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/bibtex/tamethebeast/ttb_en.pdf). 126, 131
- [146] Sven Mattisson. S<sub>L</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X: swedish speaking version of L<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X, November 1989. <mailto:sven@tde.lu.se>. Available from: <http://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/language/swedish/slatex/slatex.1>. 39, 151, 432
- [147] Rowland McDonnell. The sectsty package v2.0.2, April 2002. <mailto:mcdonnell@physics.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/sectsty/>. 48, 65, 151, 164, 182
- [148] Frank Mittelbach.  $\varepsilon$ -T<sub>E</sub>X: Guidelines for future T<sub>E</sub>X. *TUGboat*, 11(3):337–345, September 1990. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-3/tb29mitt.pdf>.
- [149] Frank Mittelbach. Comments on “Filenames for Fonts” [20]. *TUGboat*, 13(1):51–53, April 1992. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb13-1/tb34mittfont.pdf>.
- [150] Frank Mittelbach. The doc and shortverb packages, January 2004. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/doc.dtx>.
- [151] Frank Mittelbach, Denys Duchier, Johannes Braams, Marcin Woliński, and Mark Wooding. The docstrip program, January 2004. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/docstrip.dtx>.
- [152] Frank Mittelbach, Michel Goossens, Johannes Braams, David Carlisle, and Chris Rowley. *The L<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X Companion 2*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley Professional, Reading, Massachusetts, 2004. 27, 126, 141, 149, 331
- [153] Frank Mittelbach, Michel Goossens, Johannes Braams, David Carlisle, and Chris Rowley. *L<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X Companion*. Pearson Éducation France, Paris, second edition, 2005. French translation by Jacques ANDRÉ, Benoît BELET, Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, Jean-Michel HUFFLEN, and Yves SOULET. 474
- [154] Frank Mittelbach and Chris Rowley. Language Information in Structured Documents: A Model for Mark-up and Rendering. *TUGboat*, 18(3):199–205, September 1997. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/tb56lang.pdf>.
- [155] Young Joon Moon. How to make and view a Japanese PDF file, June 2002. <mailto:director@research-j.org>. Available from: <http://e-japanese-online.com/english/japanese-computing/platex/Free-Japanese-PDF-authoring-EV003.pdf>.
- [156] Sergei O. Naoumov. LaTeX2e support for LH family of fonts, April 1995. Available from: <http://web.mit.edu/textsrc/source/latex/LH/russian.sty>. 424
- [157] Frank Neukam, Markus Kohm, Axel Kielhorn, and Jens-Uwe Morawski. The KOMA-Script Bundle, March 2005. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/koma-script/scrguien.pdf>. 37, 45, 57, 69, 90, 126, 131, 139, 164, 165, 310

- [158] Heiko Oberdiek. PDF information and navigation elements with hyperref, pdfTeX, and thumbpdf. In *EuroTeX'99 Proceedings*. TUG, 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/paper.pdf>.
- [159] Tobias Oetiker, Hubert Partl, Helene Hyna, and Elisabeth Schlegl. Une courte (?) introduction à L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, Hors-série numéro 2, February 2003. French translation of [160] by Matthieu Herrb, adaptation and complements by Daniel Flipo. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/lshort/french/flshort-3.20.pdf>. 126
- [160] Tobias Oetiker, Hubert Partl, Helene Hyna, and Elisabeth Schlegl. The Not So Short Introduction to L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>, May 2006. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/lshort/english/lshort.pdf>. 126, 133, 140, 455
- [161] Mariuz Olko and Marcin Woliński. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> po polsku czyli P<sup>L</sup>A<sup>T</sup>E<sup>X</sup> (wersja 1.3.1), May 2003. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/platex/polski.dtx>. 39, 149, 416
- [162] Palash Baran Pal. Bangtex: a package for typesetting documents in Bangla using the T<sub>E</sub>X/L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X systems [online]. January 2001. Available from: <http://www.saha.ac.in/theory/palashbaran.pal/bangtex/bangtex.html>. 39, 130, 355, 361
- [163] Minje Byeng-sen Park. *Histoire de l'imprimerie coréenne des origines à 1910*. Maison-Neuve & Larose, Paris, 2003. 389, 392, 393
- [164] Oren Patashnik. B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>Xing, February 1988. Documentation for general B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X users. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxdoc.pdf>. 131
- [165] Oren Patashnik. Designing B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X styles, February 1988. The part of B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X's documentation that's not meant for general users. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxhak.pdf>. 131
- [166] Jonathan Pechta, Federico Zenith, Holger Danielsson, and Jeroen Wijnhout. CJK Support [online]. March 2006. Available from: <http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/cjk.html>. Part of [168].
- [167] Jonathan Pechta, Federico Zenith, Holger Danielsson, and Jeroen Wijnhout. Document Encoding [online]. March 2006. Available from: <http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/lang.html>. Part of [168].
- [168] Jonathan Pechta, Federico Zenith, Holger Danielsson, and Jeroen Wijnhout. The Kile Handbook [online]. March 2006. Available from: <http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/>. 455
- [169] Karel Píška. Cyrillic Alphabets. In M. Burbank and C. Thiele, editors, *Proceedings of TUG'96*, pages 1–7, Dubna, 1996. JINR. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51pisk.pdf>.
- [170] John Plaice and Yannis Haralambous. The latest developments in Ω. *TUGboat*, 17(2):181–183, June 1996. Available from: <http://omega.enstb.org/papers/latest-omega9papers/latest-omega96.pdf>.



- [171] John Plaice and Yannis Haralambous. Typesetting French, German and English in  $\Omega$ . In *Congrès EuroT<sub>E</sub>X'98*, volume 28–29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, St. Malo, March 1998.
- [172] Sebastian Rahtz and Heiko Oberdiek. The `hyperref` package [online]. August 2003. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/applications/hyperref>. This page points to the package documentation and its distribution. 57, 67, 138, 142, 154, 162, 181, 314
- [173] Sebastian Rahtz and Heiko Oberdiek. Hypertext marks in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X: a manual for `hyperref`, February 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/manual.pdf>.
- [174] Bernd Raichle, Rolf Niepraschk, and Thomas Hafner. Fragen und Antworten (FAQ) über das Textsatzsystem T<sub>E</sub>X und DANTE, Deutschsprachige Anwendervereinigung T<sub>E</sub>X e.V, September 2003. Version 72. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/faq/de-tex-faq/de-tex-faq.pdf>.
- [175] Adrian Rezuş and Bernd Raichle. Romanian T<sub>E</sub>X, October 1996. <mailto:adriaan@cs.kun.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/romanian/RomanianTeX/romanian.dtx>. 418
- [176] Chris Rowley. Models and languages for formatted documents. *TUGboat*, 20(3):189–195, September 1999. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb29-3/tb64rowl.pdf>.
- [177] Young Ryu. The TX Fonts, December 2000. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/fonts/txfonts/doc/txfontsdockA4.pdf>. 32
- [178] Axel Sommerfeldt. The `caption` package, November 2004. <mailto:caption@sommerfeldt.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption.pdf>. 48, 67, 131, 184
- [179] Axel Sommerfeldt. The `caption2` package, April 2004. <mailto:caption@sommerfeldt.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption2.pdf>. 48, 67, 131, 184
- [180] Daniel Taupin<sup>†</sup>. The `varsects` package, November 1998. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/taupin/varsects.sty>. 48, 67, 153, 165, 182
- [181] Thế Hàn Thành. The pdfT<sub>E</sub>X Program. In *EuroT<sub>E</sub>X'98 Proceedings*, volume 28–29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 197–219, March 1998. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-han.pdf>.
- [182] Thế Hàn Thành. Micro-typographic extensions to the T<sub>E</sub>X typesetting system. *TUGboat*, 21(4):317–434, October 2000. Doctoral dissertation (Faculty of Informatics, Masarik University, Brno, Czech Republic). Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-4/tb69thanh.pdf>.
- [183] Thế Hàn Thành, Sebastian Rahtz, Hans Hagen, Hartmut Henkel, and Paweł Jackowski. *The pdfT<sub>E</sub>X user manual*, February 2006. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/systems/pdftex/manual/pdftex-a.pdf>.



- [184] Karsten Tinnfeld. The quotchap document style, February 1998. [tinnfeld@irb.cs.uni-dortmund.de](mailto:tinnfeld@irb.cs.uni-dortmund.de). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/quotchap/>. 48, 70, 150, 166, 182
  - [185] The Unicode Standard [online]. February 2006. Available from: <http://unicode.org>.
  - [186] Suki K. Venkatesan. Moving from bytes to words to semantics. *TUGboat*, 26(2):165–169, August 2005. Proceedings of the 2005 Annual Meeting. 389
  - [187] C. F. Voegelin and F. M. Voegelin. *Classification and Index of the World Languages*. Academic Press, 1977.
  - [188] Vladimir Volovich, Werner Lemberg, and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 Project Team. Cyrillic language support in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, March 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/cyrguide.pdf>. 126
  - [189] Stephan P. von Bechtolsheim. T<sub>E</sub>X in practice: Comments on a 4-volumes, 1400-pages series on T<sub>E</sub>X. *TUGboat*, 11(3):409–412, September 1990. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-3/tb29bechtolsheim.pdf>.
  - [190] Stephan P. von Bechtolsheim. *T<sub>E</sub>X in Practice*. Springer Verlag, Berlin, Germany / Heidelberg, Germany / London, UK / etc., 1992.
 

|                                 |                     |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Basics.                      | 3. Tokens, Macros.  |
| 2. Paragraphs, Maths and Fonts. | 4. Output Routines. |
- (Une approche progressive des secrets de T<sub>E</sub>X). 185
- [191] Staszek Wawrykiewicz. PL<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X i pdfL<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, May 2005. In polish, <mailto:staw@gust.org.pl>. Available from: <http://www.gust.org.pl/doc/poczatki/platex.html>. 39, 149, 416
  - [192] Peter R. Wilson. The stdclsdv package, July 2000. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/stdclsdv/stdclsdv.pdf>. 150, 151
  - [193] Peter R. Wilson. The needspace package, January 2003. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/needspace.sty>. 52, 144
  - [194] Peter R. Wilson. The tocloft package, September 2003. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/tocloft/tocloft.pdf>. 39, 59, 66, 153, 311
  - [195] Peter R. Wilson. The abstract package, April 2004. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/abstract/abstract.pdf>. 48, 65, 128, 164, 313
  - [196] Peter R. Wilson. The appendix package, April 2004. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/appendix/appendix.pdf>. 58, 129, 163, 310

- [197] Peter R. Wilson. The tocbibind package, May 2004. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/tocbibind/tocbibind.pdf>. 45, 128, 152, 162, 310
- [198] Peter R. Wilson. The tocvsec2 package, May 2004. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/tocvsec2/tocvsec2.pdf>.
- [199] Peter R. Wilson. The ccaption package, March 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/ccaption/ccaption.pdf>. 48, 67, 132, 184
- [200] Peter R. Wilson. The Memoir Class, September 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/memoir/memman.pdf>. 60, 67, 141, 163, 164, 185, 194, 312
- [201] Peter R. Wilson. The Memoir Class (Addendum), December 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/memoir/memmanadd.pdf>. 60, 67, 141, 163, 164, 185, 194, 312
- [202] Peter R. Wilson. The romannum package, May 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/romannum/romannum.pdf>. 48, 70, 150, 166, 183
- [203] Peter R. Wilson and Donald Arseneau. The iftmarg package, March 2000. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>, <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/iftmarg.sty>. 138, 185
- [204] Vadim V. Zhytnikov. The LHCYR collection [online]. December 1998. Available from: <http://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/supported/lhcyrr/>. <mailto:vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru>. 424, 425

# Changes History

## ★ version 00

- 1990/10/01
  - Original version, by Nigel WARD.
- 1991/11/01
  - Revised to reuse `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection` commands transparently, generate toc-file-name automatically, assorted other cleanup (Dan JURAFSKY).

## ★ version 01

- 1993/06/01
  - New design, to avoid allocating a newwrite, or file descriptor, for each chapter (a deadly sin!) (Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT).
  - Added `\chapterend` to terminate the scope of a minitoc. (*If you forgot putting `\chapterend` at the end of each chapter, an entry for the next chapter will appear in each minitoc.*) (Thanks to Yufan Hu).
  - Replaced the `minipage` environment by a `verse` environment, to allow a minitoc being split across pages.
  - All the layout of the minitoc is in the `\minitableofcontents` command, so if someboby wants to redefine that layout, he has just to rewrite it (and only it).
  - You can inhibit the minitoc for the next chapter by preceding it with `\minitocno`. (`\minitocyes` is useless for the user, because it is implicit *after* the `\chapter*` pseudo-chapters).
  - Problems: you *must* have `\chapterend` to terminate each chapter with a minitoc. How about avoiding this constraint?
  - The depth of the minitoc is user-adjustable with the counter `minitocdepth` (similar to `tocdepth` for the table of contents).
  - At least three passes (3) of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  are necessary to get correct minitocs (the first pass creates the `.mtc(X)` files, the second uses them (but they may contain wrong page numbers) and recreates them, the third should be ok).
  - Works with `\chapter[xxx]{yyy}` and floating bodies. Works with two columns (but the minitoc is composed in one column; how to make it to spread over the two columns?).

- Some mods added to work with `xr.sty` (external references). `xr.sty` version 5 is much more tolerant.

★ version 02

- 1993/07/05
  - Added compatibility with `hangcaption.sty` (the package `hangcaption` (if present) must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package). *Beware* to options modifying `\@caption`.

★ version 03

- 1993/07/09
  - Version 3 not released (buggy).

★ version 04

- 1993/07/09
  - Added `\if@realch` to avoid contents lines from pseudo-chapters to go into the toc.
  - The package file `mtcoeff.sty` allows you to use a  $\LaTeX$  document with `minitoc` commands and to make them transparent: just replace the `minitoc` option by `mtcoeff`.

★ version 05

- 1993/07/13
  - Added a selection mechanism to not write spurious things in the minitocs.

★ version 06

- 1993/07/15
  - Fixed problems about chapters in the toc, removed obsolete `\caption` stuff (filters are better) added compatibility with `toch.sty` (`toch.sty` makes a table of chapters; if used, must be loaded *before* `minitoc.sty`).

★ version 07

- 1993/07/22
  - (*major differences*) Completely rewritten, using tricks from `xr.sty` (the version 5, by David CARLISLE). The info for minitocs is directly stolen from the `.toc` file. `\chapterend` and `\minitocno` are suppressed, `\minitoc`, `\dominitoc` and `\faketableofcontents` added.

★ version 08

- 1993/07/29
  - Spacing adjustments.

★ version 09

- 1993/08/04

- Added mods for MS-DOS (search for MS-DOS, uncomment; search for UNIX, comment out). MS-DOS allows only 3 characters for extensions in file names (what a pity!).

★ **version 10**

- 1993/08/05
  - Works now with appendices. Detects now the obsolete versions of `latex.tex` (`\@inputcheck` or `\reset@font` not defined).

★ **version 11**

- 1993/08/18
  - Added `\mtcSfont`, font for section entries, `\mtcSSfont` for subsection entries, `\mtcSSSfont` for subsubsection entries, `\mtcPfont` for paragraph entries, `\mtcSPfont` for subparagraph entries.

★ **version 12**

- 1993/12/16
  - Use `\kern` in place of `\vspace*`, and added penalties (`\nopagebreak`) to avoid a page break just before last `\mtc@rule`.
  - Also added a `samepage` environnement.
  - Removed old commented out lines from previous versions.

★ **version 13**

- 1993/12/17
  - Added `minilof` and `minilot` stuff. For MS-DOS, uncomment the definition of `\SHORTEXT`.

★ **version 14**

- 1994/01/03
  - Corrected space under `minitoc/lof/lot` and added a `\raggedright` setting to avoid “underfull” warnings.
  - Corrected some spacing problems (avoiding ~’s). `\mtifont` is changed from `\normalsize\bf` to `\large\bf`.
  - Some modifications suggested by Donald ARSENEAU (thanks): `\@newread` becomes `\newread`, not outer version of `\newread`; `\empty` replaced by `\relax` in the spare definition of `\reset@font`.
  - Removed the setting of `\clubpenalty` and `\widowpenalty` to 10 000 (done by `\samepage`), and `\noindent`.
  - Simplified processing of optional argument in `\minitoc`, `\minilof` and `\minilot`.

★ **version 15**

- 1994/01/27
  - Added `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` for books, `\secttoc`, `\sectlof` and `\sectlot` for articles, with some commands and parameters parallel to those for mini-tables.

- 1994/01/27
  - Added `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` for books, `\secttoc`, `\sectlof` and `\sectlot` for articles, with some commands and parameters parallel to those for mini-tables.
- ★ **version 16**
  - 1994/02/02
    - Bug fixes (typos).
- ★ **version 17**
  - 1994/06/23
    - ‘n’ (null) synonym of ‘e’ (empty) in the optional argument of `\minitoc`, `\dominitoc`, and siblings.
    - Compatibility with “ $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$ ”. Thanks to Denis ROEGEL (who found the problem) and Frank MITTELBACH (who gave the hints to solve).
- ★ **version 18**
  - 1994/06/26
    - Make `\minitoc` really compatible with  $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$ .
    - Introduce the language files as options. Many thanks to Michel GOOSSENS (via Frank MITTELBACH) who was inspired by the code of the `babel` package (by Johannes BRAAMS).
- ★ **version 19**
  - 1994/08/16
    - Added stuff for numbering of chapters (parts, sections) not starting at 1. `\firstchapteris` etc. commands added.
    - `\mtcrule`, `\nomtcrule` etc. commands added.
    - Corrected a bug in `\c@mti`.
    - Corrected `mtcswedish.sty` (Jan Michel RYNNING).
    - Corrected appendix in articles.
- ★ **version 20**
  - 1994/08/25
    - Corrected spacing before and after minitocs and siblings.
    - Added the `\mtcpagenumbers` and `\nomtcpagenumbers` commands (and siblings) to make minitocs with/without page numbers. Default: with page numbers.
    - Corrected (difficult bug) appendix in articles.
    - Corrected vertical spacing.
    - Corrected a problem with chapters numbered with uppercase roman numbers.
- ★ **version 21**
  - 1994/09/07

- Corrected typos in `minitoc.sty` and `minitoc.tex`.

**★ version 22**

- 1994/10/10
  - Corrected typos in `minitoc.sty`.

**★ version 23**

- 1994/11/08
  - Added a missing line in `\sectlof`.
  - Works with document classes resetting chapter (or section) number at each part (thanks to Denis ROEGEL).
  - Added the notion of “absolute numbering” for the mini-tables.
  - Removed stuff for `\firstchapteris` and co. These commands are obsolete.
  - Removed appendix stuff.

**★ version 24**

- 1994/12/21
  - The `\protect` commands have been removed from the `.toc`, `.lot` and `.lot` files, so some internal macros have been corrected to be compatible with the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> release of December 1994. Thanks to Denis ROEGEL who did the work.

**★ version 25**

- 1996/09/13
  - Updated `mtcnorsk.sty` and added `mtcnynorsk.sty` on a suggestion from Dag LANGMYHR.

**★ version 26**

- 1996/11/14
  - Language specific files are now named `<language>.mld` (replacing `mtc<language>.sty`) because they are not packages and it makes shorter names.
  - Added `breton`, `estonian`, `germanb`, `greek`, `irish`, `russianb`, `scottish`, `lower` and `upper sorbian`; renamed “esperanto” by “esperant” like in the `babel` package.

**★ version 27**

- 1996/12/20
  - Corrections for starred sectionning commands.
  - `english.mld` loaded as default language.
  - Added `vietnam.mld` and `arab.mld`.
  - Renamed `minitocoff.sty` into `mtcoff.sty` to keep the name short.

**★ version 28**

- 1997/10/29
  - Added the afrikaan(s), brazil, and ethiopia(n) languages.
  - Added autoconfiguration of extensions.
  - Added the `shorttext` package option.
  - Added *coffee* stuff.
  - Added `\addstarred` stuff (for starred chapter stuff).
  - Fixed bug in `parttocs`.
- 1998/06/15
  - A typo corrected by Donald ARSENEAU: `{\let@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}\}` should probably be `{\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}\}` (a backslash was missing after `\let`). Thanks to him.
  - Added the bahasa language.
- 1998/12/03
  - Added the `tight` and `loose` package options.
- ★ **version 29**
  - 1999/03/16
    - Added the bicig, buryat, mongol and russianc languages.
  - 1999/06/28
    - Added the armenian language (from `ArmTeX`).
  - 1999/07/23
    - Added the dotted/undotted package options (default: dotted).
  - 1999/07/29
    - Added the lithuanian language.
- ★ **version 30**
  - 1999/12/06
    - Added the basque, ngermanb, serbian, ukraineb, and welsh languages.
    - Corrected a bug in `\sltnam` definition (`mlt` should be `s1t`).
- ★ **version 31**
  - 2000/04/04
    - Added compatibility with the `hyperref` package, thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, who has also simplified some code and fixed the infamous `\chapter*` bug.
- ★ **version 32**
  - 2000/08/08
    - Added very (too) numerous new commands for the mini-table features: `\beforeparttoc`, `\beforepartlof`, `\beforepartlot`, `\afterparttoc`, `\afterpartlof`, `\afterpartlot`, `\thispageparttocstyle`, `\thispagepartlofstyle`, and `\thispagepartlotstyle`.
    - Documentation improved by Stefan ULRICH.



- `\nomtcrule` corrected.

### ★ version 33

- 2000/12/07
  - Added new adjustment commands: `\mtcaddchapter`, `\mtcaddsection`, and `\mtcaddpart`. These commands add stuff in the `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files for the `\chapter*` (`\section*` and `\part*`) problem. From a suggestion by Karl F. EVERITT.
- 2000/12/08
  - Corrected a feature in `\mtcaddchapter` and co. with a blank optional argument.

### ★ version 34

- 2000/12/13
  - Added in the documentation a section for use with the `tocbibind` package.
  - Added `.mld` files for alternate names of languages: so, `american.mld` just loads `english.mld`, which contains the real definitions.

### ★ version 35

- 2001/01/09
  - Added macros to test if a file is “empty” (i.e., empty, blank or inexistent) or “non empty” (i.e., useful). I used some code from Stephan P. von BECHTOLSHEIM.
  - Added the `checkfiles/nocheckfiles` package options.
  - Replaced `\The@chapter` by `\The@mtc`.
- 2001/02/26
  - Added `bulgarian.mld`, `hebrew.mld`, `icelandic.mld`, `latin.mld`, and `samin.mld`.
- 2001/03/09
  - Added `\mtcselectlanguage`.
- 2001/06/01
  - Fixed the `estonian` package option (missing).
- 2001/07/04
  - Added the `interlingua` language.

### ★ version 36

- 2002/02/11
  - Corrected an interaction with `\tableofcontents` which creates a `\chapter*` or a `\section*`, perturbing `mtc/stc` counters (problem signalled by Frank MITTELBACH).
- 2002/02/18

- Corrected a spacing problem with empty titles (problem signalled by Frank MITTELBACH).
  - Workaround for the `\parttoc-\chapter*` problem.
- 2002/02/19
  - Added `\mtcskip` and `\mtcskipamount`.
- 2002/02/27
  - Fixed test for empty files.
- 2002/03/13
  - Added the bangla language.
- 2002/03/15
  - Reduced depth of `\mtc@strutbox`.
- ★ **version 37**
- 2003/01/24
  - Version #37 dropped.
- ★ **version 38**
- 2003/01/24
  - `pt` becomes `\@pt` and `0pt` becomes `\z@`.
  - `\hrule` and `\vrule` replaced by `\rule` (L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X).
  - Added `mtc@zrule` for zero-dims rules.
  - Added the frenchb language (synonym of french).
- 2003/01/30
  - Changed the test for empty titles.
  - Added the `flsection` and `flsectionb` package options.
- 2003/01/31
  - The `tight` and `loose` package options are applied to `\parttoc` (Thomas LEONHARDT).
- 2003/02/07
  - Package options `flsection` and `flsectionb` removed and replaced by the `insection` package option (like `flsectionb`).
- 2003/02/11
  - Corrected numbering of SLF, SLT.
- 2003/02/20
  - Added frenchle and frenchpro languages (synonyms of french).
  - Corrected secttocs, at least.
- 2003/03/18
  - Corrected some vertical spacings and struts (I added some mods by Frank MITTELBACH, many thanks to him.). A lot of cleaning remains to do, but the release seems to be needed now.
- ★ **version 39**

- 2003/04/09
  - Modern font commands for compatibility with the `memoir` class.
  - `\nomtcpagenumbers` and `memoir` class.
- 2003/06/08
  - Added `\@filesfalse` and `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` for the `notoccite` package (requested by Donald ARSENEAU); added the `notoccite` package option (loads the `notoccite` package).
- 2004/09/08
  - Added language options and `.mld` files for dialects: `canadian (english)`, `acadian`, `acadien`, `canadien (french)`, `naustrian`, `ngerman (ngermanb)`.
  - Added comments in `.mld` files using special fonts.
  - Documentation: added a paragraph about making a TOC for appendices, eventually not listed in the main TOC.
- 2004/09/17
  - Corrections in the documentation; corrections about rules.

#### ★ version 40

- 2004/12/09
  - Added the `japanese` and `castillan` languages.
  - Removed the test on the presence of the `multicol` package in `minitoc.tex`, because `multicol` is a required package.
  - Added a figure in `minitoc.tex` about the need of three compilations.
  - Added some infos in `minitoc.bug`.
  - Added a paragraph about a problem with the `appendix` package.
- 2004/12/13
  - Updated `fminitoc.bib` and `minitoc.bib`.
- 2004/12/14
  - Added the `hints` package option. This option is still experimental; your advice is welcome.
- 2004/12/20
  - Added `fminitoc.pdf` (french documentation in PDF format).

#### ★ version 41

- 2005/01/05
  - Corrections in documentation.
  - Message added if some sectionning commands are not available.
  - Replaced `\typeout` commands in `minitoc.sty` by the `\PackageInfo` or `\PackageWarning` commands; with the line number when useful (`\@gobble` if no line number). Hence, the package is less verbose (`\PackageInfo` writes only in the `.log` file, not on the terminal).
- 2005/01/06
  - Added the `\mtcsetfont` (Benjamin BAYART) and `\mtcsetttitlefont` commands, with a much simpler syntax.

- 2005/01/10
  - Added bibliography.
- 2005/01/11
  - $\mathcal{AMS}$  classes: `amsart` and `amsproc` are incompatible with `minitoc`, `amsbook` needs precautions.
- 2005/01/12
  - Added `\mtcsetformat`.
- 2005/01/18
  - Added `\mtcsettitle`.
  - Added a hint for recommending the `insection` package option.
- 2005/01/19
  - Added a hint about the presence of `\dominitoc` and `co`.
  - Added a hint about coherence of `\dominitoc/\minitoc` and `co`.
  - Improved documentation about hints.
- 2005/01/20
  - Added a hint about using short extensions with more than 99 parts or 99 chapters or 99 sections.
- 2005/01/25
  - `\ptifont: \Huge\bfseries` becomes `\LARGE\bfseries`.
- 2005/01/26
  - Added `\mtcsetpagenumbers`.
- 2005/01/28
  - Added many new language files: `serbianc.mld`, `chinese1.mld`, `chinese2.mld`, `hangul1.mld`, `hangul2.mld`, `hangul3.mld`, `hangul4.mld`, `hanja1.mld`, `hanja2.mld`, `japanese2.mld`, `japanese3.mld`, `japanese4.mld`, `japanese5.mld`, `thai.mld`.
- 2005/02/02
  - Added `\mtcsetrules`.
- 2005/02/03
  - Added `\plfrule`, `\noplfrule`, `\mlfrule`, `\nomlfrule`, `\slfrule`, `\noslfrule`, `\pltrule`, `\nopltrule`, `\mltrule`, `\nomltrule`, `\sltrule`, `\nosltrule`.
- 2005/02/04
  - Added the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
- 2005/02/08
  - Added `latvian.mld`, `letton.mld`, `greek-mono.mld`, `greek-polydemo.mld`, `greek-polykatha.mld`, `polish2.mld`, `russian2m.mld`, and `russian2o.mld` as new language files.
- 2005/02/09
  - Added the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.

- 2005/02/10
  - Added tests on the `mtchideinmain*` environments.
- 2005/02/14
  - Added `\mtcfixindex`.

**★ version 42**

- 2005/02/14
  - Replaced “language” by “langue” in the french documentation.
- 2005/02/15
  - Fixed a minor typo.
- 2005/02/16
  - Upgraded `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2005/02/21
  - Added `\mtcsettitle`, forgotten to be inserted in v41.

**★ version 43**

- 2005/02/21
  - Version 43: consolidation of v40, v41 and v42.
- 2005/02/24
  - Fixed a big bug in `\mtcsetformat`.
  - Fixed a bug in `mtcoeff.sty` about `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2005/03/02
  - Fixed the `\mtcset...` macros.
  - Moved history to the end of package code.
  - Added the INSTALL file and a chapter about installation.
- 2005/03/07
  - Fixed a typo (Benjamin BAYART).
  - Completed the hint about coherence of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and `co`.
- 2005/03/08
  - Added a hint about coherence of `\minitoc` and `\tableofcontents`.
- 2005/03/09
  - Added comments about fonts.
- 2005/03/10
  - Corrections in documentation.
- 2005/03/11
  - Added `\mtcsetfeature`.
- 2005/03/14
  - Added `bulgarianb.mld` (upper bulgarian).
- 2005/03/15

- Added `*[-\baselineskip]` after the `\\` after the top rule of each part level mini-table.
- 2005/03/16
  - Corrections in the arguments of `\mtcsetfeature`.
- 2005/03/18
  - Removed `\markboth` for `minitocs (...)` and `secttocs (...)`.
- 2005/03/21
  - Added `spanish2.mld`.
- 2005/03/22
  - Added a hint for the abstract package.
- 2005/04/07
  - Corrected the `stc@verse` environment.
  - Added `finnish2.mld`, `latin2.mld`, and `magyar2.mld`.
- 2005/04/08
  - Renamed `portuges.mld` as `portugues.mld`.
- 2005/04/12
  - Correction in `\mtcskip`.
  - First version in `.dtx` format.
- 2005/04/14
  - Removed `\ypart`, `\ychapter`, `\ysection`, and stuff; unused.
- 2005/05/11
  - Corrected a typo in `\@dosectlot`.
  - Added `\mtcfixglossary`.
  - Print the documentation with “oneside” to have all marginal notes on left. Added the (extended to 54 floats) code of `morefloats.sty` (Don HOSEK) to allow more marginpars and floats.
  - Added `minitoc.ist` to format the index correctly.
- 2005/05/26
  - Fixed rules in `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlots`.
- 2005/05/30
  - Fixed chapter-level entries in `parttocs`, when page numbers must be removed.
  - Added a hint about the `sectsty` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/06/01
  - Added a hint about attempts to insert empty mini-tables.
  - Added a hint about the use of obsolete commands.
  - The mini-lists of figures or tables should not be printed empty even if `tocdepth < 1`.
- 2005/06/02

- Added the notion of depth for mini-tables of figures/tables.
  - Added `\mtcsetdepth`.
  - The `hints` option is the default and no more considered as experimental.
- 2005/06/03
  - Added an error message in `\mtcsetdepth` if the counter is not available.
- 2005/06/06
  - Added `portuges.mld`, which loads `portugues.mld`.
- 2005/06/07
  - Added three variants for the malayalam language: `malayalam-keli.mld`, `malayalam-rachana.mld`, and `malayalam-rachana2.mld`.
- 2005/06/14
  - Added method for bilingual documentation.
- 2005/06/15
  - Added `fminitoc.ist` to format correctly the index in french.
- 2005/06/16
  - Changed “Liste des Tables” by “Liste des Tableaux” in `french.mld`, and in the french documentation, to stick to the choices of the `babel` package.
- 2005/06/17
  - The file `fminitoc.dtx` is now generated by `minitoc.ins`.
- 2005/06/21
  - Added “OUT”, “NON”, “oui”, “non”, “O”, and “o” as true/false keywords.
  - Compacted the code about detection of short/long extensions.
- 2005/06/22
  - Added “VRAI”, “FAUX”, “vrai”, “faux”, “V”, and “v” as true/false keywords.
- 2005/06/23
  - Correctly set the `\iffTR` flag to have the names of months in the right language in the bibliography.
- 2005/06/29
  - Set the flag `\mtcoffwarn@true` in `mtcoff.sty` if a command `\mtcadd...` is found.
- 2005/07/01
  - Added `castillian.mld`.
  - Renamed `portugues.mld` as `portuguese.mld`.
- 2005/07/11
  - Added `brazilian.mld`, `british.mld`, `UKenglish.mld`, and `USenglish.mld`.

- 2005/07/12
  - Suppressed “General:” in the changes history.
- 2005/07/13
  - Replaced some `\PackageWarning` commands by `\PackageInfo`.
- 2005/07/18
  - Restoring the correspondence of each language option with a `.mld` file.
- 2005/07/20
  - Improving the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/07/21
  - Removing unused some flags `\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@act@` and `\if@mtc@setrules@act@`.
  - Added the `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, and `\decrementstc` commands.
- 2005/07/22
  - Corrected a bug in `mtcoeff.sty`.
  - Improved some messages in `mtcoeff.sty`.
  - Added a test on the version of the `placeins` package.
- 2005/08/23
  - Added a note about `\FloatBarrier`.
- 2005/08/24
  - Added a note about an alignment problem in the `minitocs`. Updated `minitoc.bug`.
  - Made two versions of the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments, depending of the presence of the corresponding depth counter.
  - The `memoir` class is incompatible if too recent.
- 2005/08/25
  - Added a comment about the position of the `\do...` preparation commands.
  - Corrections in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/08/26
  - Added `guarani.mld`.
- 2005/08/29
  - Added `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`, and `\incrementstc`.
  - Added an optional argument to `\adjustptc`, `\adjustmtc`, and `\adjuststc`.
  - Added the `k-tight` and `k-loose` package options.
- 2005/09/02
  - Added a patch for the recent version of the `memoir` class.



- 2005/09/06
  - Added `spanish3.mld`.
- 2005/09/08
  - Use `\mtcselectlanguage` in language options and in “secondary” `.mld` files.
- 2005/09/09
  - Added `\mtcloadmlo` to be used in some `.mld` files to load a `.mlo` file.
- 2005/09/12
  - Added a test to forbid direct calls of `\mtcloadmlo` by the user.
- 2005/09/13
  - Added `farsi1.mld`, `farsi1.mlo`, `farsi2.mld`, and `farsi2.mlo`.
  - Added a note about the rubber script.
- 2005/09/15
  - Added `mtcglo.ist` to format the glossary.
- 2005/09/16
  - Removed the page numbers in the glossary. Done in the `*mk` scripts.

★ version 44

- 2005/09/26
  - Changes history (glossary) typeset in `RaggedRight`.
- 2005/09/27
  - Added `germanb2.mld`, `ngermanb2.mld`, `norsk2.mld`, and `nynorsk2.mld`.
- 2005/09/28
  - New method for history: embedded lists on 3 levels.
  - Removed `mtcglo.ist`.
- 2005/09/29
  - Cleaned the `*mk` scripts.
  - Added the `listfiles` package option.
- 2005/09/30
  - Corrected typos.
  - Added the name of the `.maf` file in the message of the `listfiles` package option.
  - Improved the cleaning in the `*mk` scripts, using a `.maf` file.
- 2005/10/03
  - Load the patch for `memoir.cls` only if necessary; do not load it if `memoir.cls` is dated after 2005/09/25.
  - Added a remark in the FAQ chapter (and `minitoc.bug`) about precautions to take with the starred sectionning commands.
- 2005/10/04
  - Added the `nolistfiles` package option.

- Added a hint about the `caption`, `caption2`, `ccaption`, and `mcaption` packages (they must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/10/05
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Fixed some marginal notes in the commented code.
- 2005/10/06
  - Minor corrections in the documentation.
  - Use the `xargs` Unix command in the `*mk` scripts to remove the auxiliary files.
- 2005/10/07
  - Minor corrections in the documentation.
  - Added a short intro to the “Frequently Asked Questions” chapter and to `minitoc.bug`.
- 2005/11/02
  - Minor corrections in the documentation.
- 2005/11/04
  - Minor corrections in the documentation.
- 2005/11/07
  - Begin adding the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/08
  - Added the french L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Companion [153].
- 2005/11/09
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Adding `minitoc.pre` in `minitoc.l`.
  - Adding a note about the need of running `imk` before `emk` or `fmk`.
- 2005/11/10
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Added a note about a problem with `minitoc`, `hyperref` and `memoir`.
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/14
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Improve the notes about the `memoir` class.
- 2005/11/15
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Improve the notes about the `memoir` class.
  - Added `\plfSfont`, `\pltSfont`, `\mlfSfont`, `\mltSfont`, `\slfSfont`, and `\sltSfont` for subfigures and subtables entries in the mini-tables.
- 2005/11/16
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.

- Fixed a bug about fonts for subfigures and subtables entries in the mini-tables.
  - Added `bicig2.mld`, `bi the.mld`, `manju.mld`, `xalx.mld`, and `khalkha.mld`.
- 2005/11/17
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Added testing via internal *quarks* commands in `\mtcsetfont`.
- 2005/11/18
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
- 2005/11/21
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/22
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/23
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/24
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/25
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Changed “table” into “tableau” in the french doc, where necessary.
  - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/28
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
- 2005/11/29
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Fixed typos in the bibliography.
  - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/30
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Avoid some warnings “Token not allowed” from `pdftex`.
- 2005/12/01
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/12/02
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Reordering a long sequence of citations.
  - Added `mailto:` in the mailing URLs.

- 2005/12/05
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Added a hint about the `varsects` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/12/06
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Correcting an hyperlink in the bibliography (for the `xr` package).
  - Attempting to avoid broken URLs, using `quote`, footnotes and `\par`.
- 2005/12/07
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Updating the bibliography.
  - Corrections of layout (some headers, a table).
  - In the warning message of the hint about a number of mini-tables greater than 99 (if short extensions), give the effective number.
  - Reduce the width of some info, warning or error messages.
- 2005/12/08
  - Corrections of layout (some headers).
- 2005/12/09
  - Corrections of french quotes.
  - Added some PDF options.
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Corrected an URL to the  $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$  in the bibliography.
- 2005/12/19
  - Made some messages shorter (mainly by removing stars).
- 2005/12/21
  - Correction of typos.
  - Added some labels.
  - Added a chapter with the (explained) messages. Not yet sorted.
  - The documentation needs 4  $\text{\LaTeX}$  runs.
- 2005/12/22
  - Made some messages shorter.
  - Corrections in the list of messages.
  - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/12/23
  - Improving the placement of floats on pages of floats: to the top.
- 2006/01/03
  - Corrections in the documentation (thanks to Markus GLEISZNER).
  - Added `addsec.tex`
- 2006/01/04
  - Corrected the flag `\ifundottedmtc`.

- Correction to make `addsec.tex` work.
- 2006/01/05
  - Added “\*” as keyword for the first argument of `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` (asked by Markus GLEISZNER).
  - Removed “\MessageBreak” from the index.
- 2006/01/06
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Corrected the bibliography entry about `BangTeX`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Used the `afterpage` package in the documentation to fix a float positionning problem.
- 2006/01/09
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Fixing a float positionning problem.
- 2006/01/10
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added the bahasam language.
  - Added the albanian language.
  - Added the hebrew2 language.
- 2006/01/11
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Updated the documentation for the albanian, bahasa, bahasam, and hebrew2 languages.
  - Updated `french.mld` (removing abusive uppercase letters).
  - Corrected the `italian.mld` file. Added the `italian2` language.
  - Added the australian and newzealand languages (english).
  - Renamed the bahasa language as `bahasai`; bahasa is synonym of `bahasai`.
  - Added the malay and meyalu languages, synonyms of `bahasam`.
  - Added the indon and indonesian languages, synonyms of `bahasai`.
- 2006/01/12
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Updated the acknowledgements.
  - Added references to the new bibliographic entries.
- 2006/01/13
  - Fixed an instability in page breaks in the documentation of `japanese3.mld`.
  - Added comments in some `.mld` files.
  - Added `magyar3.mld`.
  - Updated `lithuanian.mld`.
- 2006/01/16

- Correction in `\mtcaddsection`.
- 2006/01/17
  - Correction in `\mtcfixindex` and `\mtcfixglossary`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Limitation of the initial depth of displayed bookmarks.
- 2006/01/18
  - Added some comments in point 34 of the FAQ (and in `minitoc.bug`) about the initialization of fonts.
  - Added `romanian2.mld` and `romanian3.mld`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/01/19
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Load some packages before `hyperref`.
  - Added `spanish4.mld`.
- 2006/01/23
  - Corrected the table about default titles.
  - Corrected the keywords for `\mtcsetfont`.
  - Added `lowersorbian.mld`, `uppersorbian.mld`, and `ukrainian.mld`.
- 2006/01/24
  - Updated documentation for `lowersorbian.mld`, `uppersorbian.mld`, and `ukrainian.mld`.
- 2006/01/25
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/01/26
  - Added a hint about the KOMA-Script classes, and an entry in the FAQ chapter (and in `minitoc.bug`).
- 2006/01/27
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added a note in documentation of `serbian.mld` and `serbianc.mld`.
- 2006/01/30
  - Added `ethiopian2.mld` (for Omega).
- 2006/01/31
  - Simplifications in the “Messages” chapter.
  - Corrections in the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2006/02/01
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added the “Postface” chapter.
- 2006/02/02
  - Corrections in the “Postface” chapter.

- Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/06
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added `dblacnt.sty` for the “The pdfTeX Program” entry in the bibliography. Its author’s first name needs a double accent (Hàn Thê THÀNH).
- 2006/02/07
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/09
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/02/10
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/13
  - Added `malayalam-omega.mld` and `malayalam-omega.mlo`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/14
  - Added `kannada.mld`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/15
  - Corrections in `russianb.mld` and `spanish.mld`.
  - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
  - Place `\mtcfixglossary` before `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2006/02/16
  - Added a citation from Donald ARSENEAU.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Updated the acknowledgments.
- 2006/02/17
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Updated the jargon.
- 2006/02/20
  - Added `u8hangul.mld`, `u8hangul.mlo`, `u8hanja.mld`, and `u8hanja.mlo`.
- 2006/02/21
  - Renamed languages `u8hangul` and `u8hanja.mld` into `hangul-u8` and `hanja-u8`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/22
  - Added a hint about repeated preparation commands.

- Moved up the declaration of some flags relative to the `hints` option.
  - Added `\mtcprepare`.
- 2006/02/23
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/24
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/27
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added `minitoc.pre` to class 6.
- 2006/02/28
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Corrected the position of tables in the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Corrected `irish.mld`, `lsorbian.mld` and `usorbian.mld`.
  - Added `polski.mld`.
- 2006/03/01
  - Hints about the `jura` class and the `alphanum` package, incompatible with `minitoc`.
- 2006/03/02
  - Use bibliographic styles with an URL field, built with the help of `urlbst` [99].
- 2006/03/06
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/08
  - Corrections in `magyar.mld`, `magyar2.mld`, and `magyar3.mld`.
  - Added `russian-cca.mld`, `russian-cca1.mld`, and `russian-lh.mld`, with their `.mlo` files.
- 2006/03/09
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/10
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added `russian-lhcyralt.mld`, `russian-lhcyrkoi.mld`, and `russian-lhcyrwin.mld`, with their `.mlo` files.
- 2006/03/13
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/03/14
  - Added `mtcmess.sty`.
- 2006/03/16
  - The messages are now numbered.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/20



- Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/03/21
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/22
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/28
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/29
  - Added FAQ 37 about `.mld` files and `babel`.
  - Added `french1.mld` and `french2.mld`.
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/30
  - Added `english1.mld` and `english2.mld`.

## ★ version 45

- 2006/03/31
  - Suppression of the PostScript versions of the documentation.
  - Added `arab2.mld`, `bicig3.mld`, `buryat2.mld`, `xalx2.mld`, and `xalx3.mld`.
- 2006/04/03
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/04
  - Added `swedish2.mld`.
  - The `insection` package option loads also the `flafter` package.
- 2006/04/05
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added `lamed.eps` and `lamed.pdf` as images for the Lamed logo (built from `lamed.tex`).
  - Reordering of the chapters in the user's manual (part I).
- 2006/04/06
  - Use `sectsty.sty` to better format section titles.
- 2006/04/07
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added `\ifmtcsecondpart` to check if the document has exactly 2 parts.
- 2006/04/10
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/11
  - Corrections in the documentation.

- 2006/04/12
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/13
  - In the `insection` package option, load the `flafter` package *before* the `placeins` package.
  - Added a figure about the float barriers.
- 2006/04/27
  - Added notes in FAQ 20, about the use with the `appendix` package.
  - Added comments about the `insection` option.
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Begin correction of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
- 2006/05/02
  - Added notes in `minitoc.bug`, point 20, about the use with the `appendix` package.
  - End correction of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
  - Analogous corrections in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/03
  - Added notes about the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
  - Added `hide1.tex` and `hide2.tex`.
  - Added a hint about the `fncychap` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
  - Added a hint about the `quotchap` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/04
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added a hint about the `romannum` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
  - Added a hint about the `sfheaders` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
  - Added a hint about the `alnumsec` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/05/05
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/05/24
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Renamed `hide.tex` to `hide1.tex`.
  - Update the bibliography.

- 2006/05/30
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Use `\MakeUpperCase` in `\markboth` for page styles.
- 2006/05/31
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added a hint about the `captcont` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added `uighur.mld`, `uighur2.mld`, and `uighur3.mld` (as synonyms for the `bicig` variants).
- 2006/06/01
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added description of `MonTeX` in the jargon.
  - Added a comment about the `imk` script in `INSTALL` and the “Installation” chapter.
  - Added an entry about “package” in the jargon.
  - Added the `apx.tex` example file.
  - Added FAQ 44 and the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` commands.
- 2006/06/02
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added the `gaps.tex` example file.
- 2006/06/05
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/06/06
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/06/08
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Spacing correction in `french2.mld`.

# Index

## Symbols

|                        |                                              |                             |                                                                                                                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| .lof                   | 189                                          | \@doparttoc                 | 1554, 1620                                                                                                                 |
| .log                   | 175                                          | \@doparttoc@used@false      | 72                                                                                                                         |
| .lot                   | 189                                          | \@doparttoc@used@true       | 1578                                                                                                                       |
| .maf@.maf              | 47, 305, 332                                 | \@dosectlof                 | 2168, 2231                                                                                                                 |
| .mld                   | 33, 39, 64, 155, 351, 354, 355               | \@dosectlof@used@false      | 85                                                                                                                         |
| .mlo                   | 39, 155, 302, 351, 355                       | \@dosectlof@used@true       | 2205                                                                                                                       |
| .toc                   | 189                                          | \@dosectlot                 | 2172, 2232                                                                                                                 |
| \@@dominilof           | 892, 926                                     | \@dosectlot@used@false      | 86                                                                                                                         |
| \@@dominilot           | 909, 926                                     | \@dosectlot@used@true       | 2222                                                                                                                       |
| \@@dominitoc           | 860, 875, 926                                | \@dosecttoc                 | 2164, 2230                                                                                                                 |
| \@@dopartlof           | 1602, 1620                                   | \@dosecttoc@used@false      | 84                                                                                                                         |
| \@@dopartlot           | 1619, 1620                                   | \@dosecttoc@used@true       | 2188                                                                                                                       |
| \@@doparttoc           | 1585, 1620                                   | \@dotsep                    | 2806, 2819, 2824, 2829, 2834, 2839, 2844, 2849, 2854, 2859                                                                 |
| \@@dosectlof           | 2212, 2230                                   | \@dottedtocline             | 629, 701, 768, 783, 829, 841, 844, 847, 852, 855, 858, 1370, 1446, 1520, 1536, 1957, 2026, 2092, 2106                      |
| \@@dosectlot           | 2229, 2230                                   | \@ensure@R                  | 5800, 5803, 5806, 5810, 5813, 5816, 5820, 5823, 5826                                                                       |
| \@@dosecttoc           | 2195, 2230                                   | \@fileswfalse               | 633, 705, 772, 1377, 1450, 1524, 1962, 2030, 2097                                                                          |
| \@M                    | 354, 783, 806, 819, 1536, 2106, 2137         | \@firstchapteris@used@false | 88                                                                                                                         |
| \@Undottedtocline      | 801, 3355, 4545                              | \@firstchapteris@used@true  | 527                                                                                                                        |
| \@Undottedtoclinep     | 814, 829, 841, 844, 847, 852, 855, 858, 4545 | \@firstoftwo                | 186                                                                                                                        |
| \@afterheading         | 1255, 1269, 1283, 4627, 4635                 | \@firstpartis@used@false    | 87                                                                                                                         |
| \@afterindenttrue      | 353, 805, 818                                | \@firstpartis@used@true     | 1204                                                                                                                       |
| \@centercr             | 567, 1304, 1895                              | \@firstsectionis@used@false | 89                                                                                                                         |
| \@chapter              | 1, 290, 785, 3725, 4301, 4601, 4603          | \@firstsectionis@used@true  | 1866                                                                                                                       |
| \@dominilof            | 865, 927                                     | \@gobble                    | 4427, 4430, 4431, 4545                                                                                                     |
| \@dominilof@used@false | 79                                           | \@gobbletwo                 | 4367, 4412                                                                                                                 |
| \@dominilof@used@true  | 901                                          | \@hangfrom                  | 2127                                                                                                                       |
| \@dominilot            | 870, 928                                     | \@ifclasslater              | 178                                                                                                                        |
| \@dominilot@used@false | 80                                           | \@ifclassloaded             | 158, 3581, 3669, 3676, 3686, 3704                                                                                          |
| \@dominilot@used@true  | 918                                          | \@ifnextchar                | 578, 649, 716, 864, 869, 874, 1315, 1389, 1462, 1566–1568, 1906, 1973, 2039, 2176–2178, 2448, 4348, 4354, 4360, 4366, 4601 |
| \@dominitoc            | 860, 926                                     | \@ifpackagelater            | 3659                                                                                                                       |
| \@dominitoc@used@false | 78                                           |                             |                                                                                                                            |
| \@dominitoc@used@true  | 884                                          |                             |                                                                                                                            |
| \@dopartlof            | 1558, 1621                                   |                             |                                                                                                                            |
| \@dopartlof@used@false | 73                                           |                             |                                                                                                                            |
| \@dopartlof@used@true  | 1595                                         |                             |                                                                                                                            |
| \@dopartlot            | 1562, 1622                                   |                             |                                                                                                                            |
| \@dopartlot@used@false | 74                                           |                             |                                                                                                                            |
| \@dopartlot@used@true  | 1612                                         |                             |                                                                                                                            |

- \@ifpackageloaded ..... 120,  
133–156, 3564, 3569, 3575, 3599,  
3605, 3610, 3693, 4239
- \@ifpackagewith ..... 3610, 3693
- \@ifundefined .. 2448, 2913, 2982, 3241,  
3281, 3359, 3375, 3709, 3725, 3741,  
4298, 4301, 4304
- \@input .... 1016, 1082, 1141, 3321, 3334
- \@inputcheck ..... 208,  
339, 1002, 1012, 1032, 1069, 1078,  
1095, 1128, 1137, 1154, 1703, 1704,  
1713, 1732, 1764, 1765, 1774, 1792,  
1824, 1825, 1834, 1852, 2300, 2301,  
2310, 2326, 2359, 2360, 2369, 2385,  
2418, 2419, 2428, 2444
- \@longextensions@false . 315, 320, 3372
- \@longextensions@true ..... 317, 4495
- \@m@mchapter ..... 4599
- \@makechapterhead .... 4626, 4631, 4633
- \@makephead@c ..... 1283
- \@makephead@l ..... 1255
- \@makephead@r ..... 1269
- \@minilof@used@false ..... 76
- \@minilof@used@true ..... 651
- \@minilot@used@false ..... 77
- \@minilot@used@true ..... 718
- \@minitoc@used@false ..... 75
- \@minitoc@used@true ..... 580
- \@mkboth ..... 498, 1330, 1404, 1478
- \@mtc@FEfalse ..... 219, 232
- \@mtc@FEtrue ..... 209, 223, 230
- \@mtc@Himlof@false ..... 3175, 3206
- \@mtc@Himlof@true ..... 3182, 3200
- \@mtc@Himlot@false ... 3208, 3223, 3239
- \@mtc@Himlot@true ..... 3215, 3233
- \@mtc@Himtoc@false ... 3160, 3173, 3190
- \@mtc@Himtoc@true ..... 3167
- \@mtc@LIfalse ..... 213, 217, 219
- \@mtc@LItrue ..... 208, 223
- \@mtc@abstract@loaded@false ... 3556
- \@mtc@abstract@loaded@true .... 3694
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@false ..... 45
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@true .... 146
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@false ..... 44
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@true ..... 145
- \@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@false ..... 47
- \@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@true .... 148
- \@mtc@captcontLoaded@false ..... 46
- \@mtc@captcontLoaded@true ..... 147
- \@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@false .... 29
- \@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@true .... 152
- \@mtc@captionIILoaded@false ..... 28
- \@mtc@captionIILoaded@true ..... 151
- \@mtc@captionLoaded@a@false ..... 27
- \@mtc@captionLoaded@a@true ..... 150
- \@mtc@captionLoaded@false ..... 26
- \@mtc@captionLoaded@true ..... 149
- \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@false ..... 31
- \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@true .... 154
- \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@false ..... 30
- \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@true ..... 153
- \@mtc@chapter@def@false ..... 59, 60
- \@mtc@chapter@def@true ..... 60
- \@mtc@chapter@undef@false ..... 66
- \@mtc@chapter@undef@true ..... 65, 66
- \@mtc@checkfilesfalse ..... 3368
- \@mtc@checkfilestrue ..... 210, 3367
- \@mtc@empty@minilof@false ..... 52
- \@mtc@empty@minilof@true ..... 661
- \@mtc@empty@minilot@false ..... 53
- \@mtc@empty@minilot@true ..... 728
- \@mtc@empty@minitoc@false ..... 51
- \@mtc@empty@minitoc@true ..... 590
- \@mtc@empty@partlof@false ..... 49
- \@mtc@empty@partlof@true .. 1401, 1475
- \@mtc@empty@partlot@false ..... 50
- \@mtc@empty@parttoc@false ..... 48
- \@mtc@empty@parttoc@true ..... 1327
- \@mtc@empty@sectlof@false ..... 55
- \@mtc@empty@sectlof@true ..... 1985
- \@mtc@empty@sectlot@false ..... 56
- \@mtc@empty@sectlot@true ..... 2051
- \@mtc@empty@secttoc@false ..... 54
- \@mtc@empty@secttoc@true ..... 1918
- \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@false ..... 37
- \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@true .... 138
- \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@false ..... 36
- \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@true ..... 137
- \@mtc@hints@false ..... 3555
- \@mtc@hints@given@false ..... 19
- \@mtc@hints@given@true ..... 875, 892,  
909, 1569, 1586, 1603, 2179, 2196,  
2213, 2468, 3565, 3570, 3576, 3582,  
3588, 3594, 3600, 3606, 3613, 3629,  
3644, 3660, 3670, 3677, 3682, 3687,  
3696, 3705, 3716, 3732, 3749, 3796,  
3805, 3813, 3821, 3831, 3839, 3847,  
3857, 3865, 3882, 3890, 3898, 3908,  
3916, 3924, 3934, 3942, 3961, 3970,  
3979, 3990, 3999, 4008, 4019, 4028,  
4037, 4046, 4054, 4062, 4076, 4084,  
4092, 4100, 4108, 4116, 4124, 4132,  
4140, 4148, 4156, 4164, 4170, 4175,  
4180, 4185, 4190, 4195, 4200, 4205,  
4210, 4215, 4220, 4225
- \@mtc@hints@true ..... 17, 3554
- \@mtc@hints@w@false 18, 3709, 3725, 3741

- \@mtc@hints@w@true . . . 3711, 3713, 3715,  
3727, 3729, 3731, 3744, 3746, 3748,  
3796
- \@mtc@hyper@used@false . . . . . 118
- \@mtc@hyper@used@true . . . . . 121
- \@mtc@insellang@false . . . . . 3321, 3352
- \@mtc@listfiles@false . . . . . 3383, 3385
- \@mtc@listfiles@true . . . . . 3384
- \@mtc@lof@used@false . . . . . 3558, 3760
- \@mtc@lof@used@true . . . . . 3767, 3776
- \@mtc@lot@used@false . . . . . 3559, 3761
- \@mtc@lot@used@true . . . . . 3770, 3779
- \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@false . . . . . 33
- \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@true . . . . . 156
- \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@false . . . . . 32
- \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@true . . . . . 155
- \@mtc@memoirLoaded@false . . . . . 22, 162
- \@mtc@memoirLoaded@true . . . . . 158
- \@mtc@memoirnew@false . . . . . 23, 165
- \@mtc@memoirnew@true . . . . . 167
- \@mtc@notoccite@false . . . . . 112
- \@mtc@notoccite@true . . . . . 3371
- \@mtc@part@def@false . . . . . 57, 58
- \@mtc@part@def@true . . . . . 58
- \@mtc@part@undef@false . . . . . 64
- \@mtc@part@undef@true . . . . . 63, 64
- \@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false . . . . . 21, 4244
- \@mtc@placeinsLoaded@true . . . . . 4243
- \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@false . . . . . 39
- \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@true . . . . . 140
- \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@false . . . . . 38
- \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@true . . . . . 139
- \@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@false . . . . . 41
- \@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@true . . . . . 142
- \@mtc@romannumLoaded@false . . . . . 40
- \@mtc@romannumLoaded@true . . . . . 141
- \@mtc@sect@floats@false . . . . . 20
- \@mtc@sect@floats@true . . . . . 3783–3786
- \@mtc@section@def@false . . . . . 61, 62
- \@mtc@section@def@true . . . . . 62
- \@mtc@section@undef@false . . . . . 68
- \@mtc@section@undef@true . . . . . 67, 68
- \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@false . . . . . 25
- \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@true . . . . . 134
- \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@false . . . . . 24
- \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@true . . . . . 133
- \@mtc@setdepth@false . . . . . 3127
- \@mtc@setdepth@true . . . . . 3122, 3125
- \@mtc@setfeature@false . . . . . 3075, 3091
- \@mtc@setfeature@true . . . . . 3069, 3073
- \@mtc@setfont@false . . . . . 2581, 2598,  
2636–2639, 2642, 2643, 2646, 2647,  
2650–2655, 2658–2661, 2664–2667,  
2670–2676, 2679–2683, 2686–2690
- \@mtc@setfont@true . . . . . 2576, 2579, 2634
- \@mtc@setformat@false . . . . . 2867, 2883
- \@mtc@setformat@true . . . . . 2861, 2865
- \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false . . . . . 2911, 2936,  
2956
- \@mtc@setpagenumbers@true . . . . . 2933
- \@mtc@setrules@false . . . . . 2980, 3005, 3026
- \@mtc@setrules@true . . . . . 3002
- \@mtc@settitle@false . . . . . 2748
- \@mtc@settitle@true . . . . . 2743, 2746
- \@mtc@settitlefont@false . . . . . 2712
- \@mtc@settitlefont@true . . . . . 2707, 2710
- \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@false . . . . . 43
- \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@true . . . . . 144
- \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@false . . . . . 42
- \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@true . . . . . 143
- \@mtc@spn@ok@false . . . . . 2953
- \@mtc@spn@ok@true . . . . . 2951
- \@mtc@sru@ok@false . . . . . 3023
- \@mtc@sru@ok@true . . . . . 3021
- \@mtc@ss@insection@false . . . . . 3375
- \@mtc@ss@insection@true . . . . . 3380
- \@mtc@toc@used@false . . . . . 3557, 3759
- \@mtc@toc@used@true . . . . . 3764, 3773
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@false . . . . . 35
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@true . . . . . 136
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@false . . . . . 34
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@true . . . . . 135
- \@mtcfixglossary@false . . . . . 3259, 3261
- \@mtcfixglossary@true . . . . . 3263, 3265, 3267
- \@mtcfixindex@false . . . . . 3299, 3301
- \@mtcfixindex@true . . . . . 3303, 3305, 3307
- \@mtcpatchmemoir@false . . . . . 157
- \@mtcpatchmemoir@true . . . . . 174
- \@namedef . . . . . 2513, 2522, 2531, 2565, 2779
- \@nameuse . . . . . 2513, 2578, 2596, 2709, 2745,  
2880, 2882, 2949, 2966, 3001, 3036,  
3088, 3090, 3124
- \@nobreakfalse . . . . . 491, 638, 710, 777, 1382,  
1455, 1529, 1967, 2033, 2100
- \@part . . . . . 1, 245, 1541, 3709, 4298
- \@partlof@used@false . . . . . 70
- \@partlof@used@true . . . . . 1391
- \@partlot@used@false . . . . . 71
- \@partlot@used@true . . . . . 1465
- \@parttoc@used@false . . . . . 69
- \@parttoc@used@true . . . . . 1317
- \@plus . . . . . 803, 816
- \@pnumwidth . . . . . 826, 2788, 2817, 2822, 2827,  
2832, 2837, 2842, 2847, 2852, 2857
- \@resetfont . . . . . 1157, 1177
- \@schapter . . . . . 1, 790, 3725, 4301
- \@secondoftwo . . . . . 186
- \@sect 1, 278, 2110, 2117, 2156, 3741, 4304

- \@sectlof@used@false ..... 82
- \@sectlof@used@true ..... 1975
- \@sectlot@used@false ..... 83
- \@sectlot@used@true ..... 2041
- \@secttoc@used@false ..... 81
- \@secttoc@used@true ..... 1908
- \@spart ..... 1, 245, 1541, 3709, 4298
- \@sssect ..... 1, 278, 3741, 4304
- \@svsec ..... 2127
- \@svsechd ..... 2127
- \@tempdima ..... 356, 808, 809, 821, 822
- \@tempskipa ..... 2127
- \@tocfile ..... 581, 586, 589, 635, 652, 657, 660, 707, 719, 724, 727, 774, 1316, 1323, 1370, 1390, 1397, 1446, 1463, 1471, 1520, 1907, 1914, 1957, 1974, 1981, 2026, 2040, 2047, 2092
- \@tocrmarg 352, 804, 817, 2797, 2818, 2823, 2828, 2833, 2838, 2843, 2848, 2853, 2858
- \@topnewpage .... 1255, 1269, 1283, 4631
- \@undottedtocline ..... 348, 629, 701, 768, 1370, 1446, 1520, 1957, 2026, 2092
- \@width ..... 536
- \@xssect ..... 2127
- \\ . 567, 626, 639, 697, 711, 764, 778, 1304
- \\@mainaux ..... 97
- \~ ..... 7006, 7010, 7014
  
- \\_ 4957, 4958, 4960, 4961, 4966, 4967, 4969, 4970, 4975, 4976, 4978, 4979, 5774, 5776, 5778, 5781, 5783, 5785, 5788, 5790, 5792, 5801, 5804, 5807, 5811, 5814, 5817, 5821, 5824, 5827, 6956, 6958, 6962, 6964, 6968, 6970
  
- A**
- \a@tok ..... 4727
- abstract ..... **48, 65**
- abstract (environment) ..... 1
- acadian.mld ..... **355**
- acadien.mld ..... **356**
- \accent ..... 5118
- add.bib ..... **157**
- add.tex ..... **46, 157**
- \addcoffeeline ..... 3355, 4545
- \addcontentsline . 1, 255, 282–285, 293–296, 500, 785, 1543–1545, 2110, 2117, 2127, 3259, 3299, 4518, 4564, 4640, 4643, 4647, 4650
- addsec.tex ..... **46, 157**
- \addst@rred ..... 500, 519, 795
- \addstarredchapter ..... 1, 795, 4564
- \addstarredpart ..... 1, 795, 4564
- \addstarredsection . . 1, 519, 795, 4564
- \addtocontents . 1, 790, 1541, 2156, 3161, 3175, 3208, 3355
- \addtocounter . 242, 530–532, 1016, 1082, 1141, 1207–1209, 1730, 1790, 1850, 1868–1870, 2324, 2383, 2442
- addtotoc ..... **48, 65**
- \advspace ..... 13, 14
- \adjustmtc ..... 1, 292, 523, 4328
- \adjustptc ..... 1, 255, 1197, 4328
- \adjuststc ..... 1, 281, 1863, 4328
- afrikaan.mld ..... **356**
- afrikaans.mld ..... **356**
- \afterminilof ..... 459, 711, 4477
- \afterminilot ..... 459, 778, 4477
- \afterminitoc ..... 459, 639, 4477
- \afterpartlof ..... 452, 1457, 4468
- \afterpartlot ..... 452, 1531, 4468
- \afterparttoc ..... 452, 1384, 4468
- \aftersectlof ..... 462, 2038, 4486
- \aftersectlot ..... 462, 2102, 4486
- \aftersecttoc .... 462, 1969, 2035, 4486
- albanian.mld ..... **357**
- \alef .. 5777, 5779, 5784, 5786, 5791, 5793
- \alloc@ ..... 299
- alnumsec ..... **48, 70, 183, 326**
- alphanum ..... **48, 69**
- american.mld ..... **357**
- amsart ..... **48**
- amsart.cls ..... **61**
- amsbook ..... **47**
- amsbook.cls ..... **61**
- amsproc ..... **48**
- amsproc.cls ..... **61**
- appendices (environment) ..... 1
- appendix ..... **47, 58**
- \appendix ..... 1
- \appendixmtc ..... 4367
- apx.tex ..... **62, 157**
- arab.mld ..... **357, 358**
- arab2.mld ..... **358**
- \arabic 936, 1043, 1102, 2271, 3161, 3175, 3208
- arabic.mld ..... **358**
- armenian.mld ..... **359**
- article ..... **188**
- \AtBeginDocument 91, 117, 133, 135, 137, 139, 141, 143, 145, 147, 149, 151, 153, 155, 492, 1191, 1855, 2787, 3175, 3208, 3359, 3556, 3709, 4294, 4501

- \AtEndDocument . . . 97, 3556, 3782, 4293, 4294, 4502  
 australian.mld . . . . . **359**  
 austrian.mld . . . . . **359**  
 \ayin . . . . . 5775, 5782, 5789
- B**
- bahasa.mld . . . . . **360**  
 bahasai.mld . . . . . **360, 396**  
 bahasam.mld . . . . . **361, 407, 410**  
 bangla.mld . . . . . **361**  
 bangtex . . . . . **361**  
 basque.mld . . . . . **362**  
 \bcg . . . 4846–4848, 4850–4852, 4854–4856  
 \beforeminilof . . . . . 446, 665, 4477  
 \beforeminilot . . . . . 446, 732, 4477  
 \beforeminitoc . . . . . 446, 594, 4477  
 \beforepartlof . . . . . 439, 1403, 4468  
 \beforepartlot . . . . . 439, 1477, 4468  
 \beforeparttoc . . . . . 439, 1329, 4468  
 \beforesectlof . . . . . 449, 1987, 4486  
 \beforesectlot . . . . . 449, 2053, 4486  
 \beforesecttoc . . . . . 449, 1920, 4486  
 \bet . . . . . 5779, 5786, 5793  
 \bfseries 545, 554, 1220, 1229, 1233, 1243, 1875, 1883  
 \bibliography . . . . . 1  
 bicig.mld . . . . . **362, 433, 434**  
 bicig2.mld . . . . . **363, 433**  
 bicig3.mld . . . . . **363**  
 \bigskipamount . . . . . 1, 11, 4316  
 bithe.mld . . . . . **364, 410**  
 book . . . . . **188, 190**  
 brazil.mld . . . . . **365**  
 brazilian.mld . . . . . **365**  
 breton.mld . . . . . **365**  
 british.mld . . . . . **366**  
 bulgarian.mld . . . . . **366**  
 bulgarianb.mld . . . . . **367**  
 buryat.mld . . . . . **368**  
 buryat2.mld . . . . . **368**
- C**
- \c@lofdepth . . . . . 492, 1191, 1855  
 \c@lotdepth . . . . . 492, 1191, 1855  
 \c@minilofdepth . . . . . 697  
 \c@minilotdepth . . . . . 764  
 \c@minitocdepth . . . . . 626, 4316  
 \c@mtc . . 500, 4266, 4270, 4283, 4287, 4323  
 \c@mti . . 556, 594, 665, 732, 875, 892, 909  
 \c@partlofdepth . . . . . 1442  
 \c@partlotdepth . . . . . 1516  
 \c@parttocdepth . . . . . 1367, 4316  
 \c@ptc . . 500, 4261, 4265, 4278, 4282, 4323  
 \c@pti 1245, 1283, 1336, 1410, 1484, 1569, 1586, 1603  
 \c@secnumdepth . . 2127, 2140, 2149, 4619, 4637  
 \c@sectlofdepth . . . . . 2021  
 \c@sectlotdepth . . . . . 2087  
 \c@secttocdepth . . . . . 1954, 4316  
 \c@stc . . 500, 4271, 4275, 4288, 4292, 4323  
 \c@sti 1884, 1922, 1990, 2056, 2179, 2196, 2213  
 \c@tocdepth . . . . 350, 626, 697, 764, 802, 815, 1367, 1442, 1443, 1516, 1517, 1954, 2021, 2087  
 canadian.mld . . . . . **369**  
 canadien.mld . . . . . **369**  
 captcont . . . . . **48, 71, 183, 326**  
 caption . . . . . **48, 67, 184, 326**  
 caption2 . . . . . **48, 67, 184, 327**  
 castillan.mld . . . . . **369**  
 castillian.mld . . . . . **370**  
 catalan.mld . . . . . **370**  
 catalog . . . . . **157**  
 ccaption . . . . . **48, 67, 184, 327**  
 \centering . . . . . 1291  
 \cftpagenumbersoff . . 369–373, 380–383, 392–397, 399, 401, 403, 405, 407, 409  
 \cftpagenumberon . . . 363–367, 375–378, 385–390, 398, 400, 402, 404, 406, 408  
 \ch@pt@c . . . 4600, 4604, 4606, 4612, 4614  
 \chapbegin . . . . . 860  
 chapter . . . . . **178**  
 \chapter . . . . . 1, 171, 262, 289, 290, 439, 452, 508, 519, 578, 649, 716, 795, 936, 1658, 3244, 3265, 3284, 3305, 3709, 3725, 4301, 4495  
 \chapter@mtcck . . 2624, 2651, 2659, 2665, 2671, 2680, 2687  
 \chapterbegin 790, 1016, 1082, 1141, 4341  
 \chapterend 790, 1016, 1082, 1141, 4341  
 \chaptermark . . . . . 4624  
 \chapternumberline . . . . . 4641, 4644  
 \chardef . . . . . 299  
 checkfiles . . . . . **26, 29, 55**  
 chinese1.mld . . . . . **370**  
 chinese1.mlo . . . . . **370**  
 chinese2.mld . . . . . **371**  
 chinese2.mlo . . . . . **371**  
 \cite . . . . . 1  
 \cleardoublepage . . . . . 443, 456  
 \closeout . . . 238, 241, 313, 926–928, 940, 971, 1016, 1047, 1082, 1106, 1141, 1620–1622, 1640, 1654, 1727, 1751,



- 1787, 1811, 1847, 2230–2232, 2252,  
2271, 2321, 2347, 2380, 2406, 2439,  
4253, 4256
- \coffee ..... 968, 1658, 2255
- \coffefont .. 555, 801, 814, 1177, 4411
- \coffeeline ..... 3355, 4545
- \columnrule ..... 2070
- \columnwidth ..... 523, 594, 645, 665,  
732, 1213, 1353, 1422, 1500, 1863,  
1937, 2004, 2073, 2077, 2486
- \contentsline ..... 1, 255, 281, 292,  
860, 1016, 1082, 1141, 1157, 1719,  
1780, 1840, 2314, 2373, 2432
- \copy ..... 304, 308
- \count@ ..... 4316
- croatian.mld ..... **371**
- \cyr .. 4955, 4957, 4960, 4964, 4966, 4969,  
4973, 4975, 4978, 4987, 4989, 4991,  
4994, 4996, 4998, 5001, 5003, 5005,  
6587, 6590, 6593, 6596, 6600, 6602,  
6605, 6609, 6611, 6614, 6743, 6745,  
6749, 6751, 6752, 6755, 6757, 6954,  
6955, 6957, 6960, 6961, 6963, 6966,  
6967, 6969
- \CYRa .. 6590, 6594, 6597, 6600, 6603, 6606,  
6609, 6612, 6615
- \cyra .. 4955, 4958, 4961, 4964, 4967, 4970,  
4973, 4976, 4979, 4987, 4991, 4994,  
4998, 5001, 5005, 6587, 6743, 6746,  
6749, 6752, 6755, 6758, 6956, 6958,  
6962, 6964, 6968, 6970
- \CYRb ..... 6597, 6606, 6615
- \cyrb .. 4961, 4970, 4979, 4991, 4998, 5005,  
6746, 6752, 6758, 6958, 6964, 6970
- \CYRc .. 6594, 6597, 6603, 6606, 6612, 6615
- \cyrc .. 4961, 4970, 4979, 4991, 4998, 5005,  
6746, 6752, 6758, 6956, 6958, 6962,  
6964, 6968, 6970
- \cyrd .. 4955, 4964, 4973, 4987, 4994, 5001,  
6587, 6743, 6749, 6755
- \CYRe ..... 6590, 6600, 6609
- \cyre .. 4955, 4958, 4961, 4964, 4967, 4970,  
4973, 4976, 4979, 4987, 4994, 5001,  
6587, 6745, 6746, 6751, 6752, 6757,  
6758, 6955, 6957, 6961, 6963, 6967,  
6969
- \CYRF ..... 4989, 4996, 5003
- \cyrf ..... 4958, 4967, 4976
- \CYRg ..... 6590, 6600, 6609
- \cyr g .. 4958, 4967, 4976, 4989, 4996, 5003
- \cyrhrdsn .. 4955, 4957, 4960, 4964, 4966,  
4969, 4973, 4975, 4978, 4987, 4994,  
5001
- \CYRi .. 6590, 6593, 6594, 6596, 6597, 6600,  
6602, 6603, 6605, 6606, 6609, 6611,  
6612, 6614, 6615
- \cyri .. 4955, 4957, 4958, 4960, 4961, 4964,  
4966, 4967, 4969, 4970, 4973, 4975,  
4976, 4978, 4979, 4987, 4989, 4991,  
4994, 4996, 4998, 5001, 5003, 5005,  
6587, 6745, 6746, 6751, 6752, 6757,  
6758, 6958, 6964, 6970
- \cyrii .. 6954–6957, 6960–6963, 6966–6969
- \CYRishrt ..... 6594, 6603, 6612
- \cyrishrt ..... 6956, 6962, 6968
- \cyrje ..... 6743, 6749, 6755
- \CYRk .. 6593, 6596, 6602, 6605, 6611, 6614
- \cyrk .. 4957, 4960, 4966, 4969, 4975, 4978,  
6745, 6751, 6757, 6955, 6957, 6961,  
6963, 6967, 6969
- \CYRl .. 6590, 6594, 6597, 6600, 6603, 6606,  
6609, 6612, 6615
- \cyr l .. 4961, 4970, 4979, 4991, 4998, 5005,  
6745, 6746, 6751, 6752, 6757, 6758,  
6955–6958, 6961–6964, 6967–6970
- \cyr m ..... 6954, 6960, 6966
- \CYRn ..... 6590, 6600, 6609
- \cyr n .. 4955, 4958, 4961, 4964, 4967, 4970,  
4973, 4976, 4979, 4987, 4994, 5001,  
6587
- \CYRO ..... 6590, 6600, 6609
- \CYRo .. 6593, 6596, 6602, 6605, 6611, 6614
- \cyro ..... 6587
- \CYRP .. 6955, 6957, 6961, 6963, 6967, 6969
- \CYRp .. 6593, 6596, 6602, 6605, 6611, 6614
- \cyrp .. 4957, 4960, 4966, 4969, 4975, 4978
- \CYRr ..... 6594, 6603, 6612
- \cyrr .. 4955, 4958, 4964, 4967, 4973, 4976,  
4987, 4989, 4994, 4996, 5001, 5003,  
6587, 6743, 6749, 6755, 6955–6957,  
6961–6963, 6967–6969
- \CYRS .. 4955, 4957, 4960, 4964, 4966, 4969,  
4973, 4975, 4978, 4987, 4994, 5001,  
6587, 6593, 6596, 6602, 6605, 6611,  
6614, 6743, 6745, 6749, 6751, 6755,  
6757
- \CYRs .. 6593, 6594, 6596, 6602, 6603, 6605,  
6611, 6612, 6614
- \cyrs .. 4957, 4960, 4966, 4969, 4975, 4978,  
6954, 6956, 6960, 6962, 6966, 6968
- \cyrsftsn ..... 6958, 6964, 6970
- \CYRT .. 4991, 4998, 5005, 6746, 6752, 6758
- \CYRt .. 6594, 6597, 6603, 6606, 6612, 6615
- \cyrt .. 4958, 4961, 4967, 4970, 4976, 4979,  
6954, 6956, 6958, 6960, 6962, 6964,  
6966, 6968, 6970
- \cyr u .. 4958, 4967, 4976, 4989, 4996, 5003

\CYRv ..... 6590, 6600, 6609  
 \CYRyu ..... 6594, 6603, 6612  
 \cyryu ..... 6956, 6962, 6968  
 \CYRZ ..... 6954, 6960, 6966  
 \cyrzh . 4955, 4964, 4973, 4987, 4994, 5001,  
           6587, 6743, 6749, 6755  
 \cz ... 6489, 6490, 6493, 6494, 6497, 6498  
 czech.mld ..... **372**

**D**

danish.mld ..... **372**  
 \DeclareOption . 3363, 3367, 3369, 3371,  
           3372, 3375, 3383, 3386, 3554  
 \decrementmtc ..... 1, 523, 4328  
 \decrementptc ..... 1, 1197, 4328  
 \decrementstc ..... 1, 1863, 4328  
 \df@mtic ..... 594, 665, 732  
 \df@mtilf ..... 556, 561, 672, 892  
 \df@mtilt ..... 556, 561, 739, 909  
 \df@mtitc ..... 556, 561, 601, 875  
 \df@pti ..... 1336, 1410, 1484  
 \df@ptilf ..... 1298, 1416, 1586  
 \df@ptilt ..... 1298, 1490, 1603  
 \df@ptitc ..... 1298, 1342, 1569  
 \df@sti ..... 1922, 1990, 2056  
 \df@stilf ..... 1889, 1996, 2196  
 \df@stilt ..... 1889, 2062, 2213  
 \df@stitc ..... 1889, 1929, 2179  
 \dimen@ ..... 4316  
 \do@mtilf 556, 561, 667–672, 674, 684, 688  
 \do@mtilt 556, 561, 734–739, 741, 751, 755  
 \do@mtitc ..... 556, 561, 594, 665, 732  
 \do@ptilf ..... 1298, 1410, 1422  
 \do@ptilt ..... 1298, 1484, 1500  
 \do@ptitc ..... 1298, 1336, 1353  
 \do@stilf ..... 1889, 1990, 2004  
 \do@stilt ..... 1889, 2056, 2070  
 \do@stitc ..... 1889, 1922, 1937  
 \dominilof . 1, 649, 860, 865, 896, 2448,  
           3838, 3914, 4354  
 \dominilof@ ..... 869, 892  
 \dominilot . 1, 716, 860, 870, 913, 2448,  
           3846, 3922, 4354  
 \dominilot@ ..... 874, 909  
 \dominitoc . 1, 578, 860, 879, 2448, 3830,  
           3906, 4354  
 \dominitoc@ ..... 860, 864, 875  
 \dopartlof 1, 1554, 1566, 1590, 2448, 3812,  
           3888, 4348  
 \dopartlof@ ..... 1567, 1586  
 \dopartlot 1, 1554, 1566, 1607, 2448, 3820,  
           3896, 4348  
 \dopartlot@ ..... 1568, 1603

\doparttoc 1, 1554, 1566, 1573, 2448, 3804,  
           3880, 4348  
 \doparttoc@ ..... 1566, 1569  
 \dosectlof 1, 20, 2168, 2176, 2200, 2448,  
           3791, 3864, 3940, 4360  
 \dosectlof@ ..... 2177, 2196  
 \dosectlot 1, 20, 2172, 2176, 2217, 2448,  
           3792, 3872, 3948, 4360  
 \dosectlot@ ..... 2178, 2213  
 \dosecttoc 1, 2164, 2176, 2183, 2448, 3856,  
           3932, 4360  
 \dosecttoc@ ..... 2176, 2179  
 dutch.mld ..... **373**

**E**

\e@mti .. 556, 594, 665, 732, 875, 892, 909  
 \e@pti 1245, 1252, 1336, 1410, 1484, 1569,  
           1586, 1603  
 \e@sti 1884, 1922, 1990, 2056, 2179, 2196,  
           2213  
 emk ..... **157**  
 \empty ..... 440–442, 446–451, 453–455,  
           459–464, 466–468, 472–477, 4378,  
           4413, 4416, 4417, 4468–4494, 4523,  
           4532, 4541, 4551, 4553, 4555–4561  
 \endlist ..... 577, 1314, 1905  
 \endmtc@verse ..... 577  
 \endptc@verse ..... 1304  
 \endstc@verse ..... 1905  
 english.mld **357, 359, 366, 369, 373, 411, 434,**  
           **436**  
 english1.mld ..... **374**  
 english2.mld ..... **375**  
 \enlargethispage ..... 1  
 abstract ..... 1  
 appendices ..... 1  
 filecontents ..... 4655  
 mtc@verse . 567, 620, 639, 691, 711, 758,  
           778, 2821, 2836, 2851  
 mtchideinmainlof ..... 1, 3175, 4550  
 mtchideinmainlot ..... 1, 3208, 4550  
 mtchideinmaintoc ..... 1, 3161, 4550  
 ptc@verse . 1304, 1367, 1370, 1441, 1446,  
           1515, 1520, 2816, 2831, 2846  
 samepage ..... 594, 639, 665, 711, 732,  
           778, 1336, 1384, 1410, 1457, 1484,  
           1531, 1922, 1969, 1990, 2035, 2056,  
           2102  
 stc@verse . 1895, 1954, 1957, 2021, 2026,  
           2087, 2092, 2826, 2841, 2856  
 tabular . 594, 665, 732, 1353, 1422, 1500,  
           1937, 2004, 2070  
 esperant.mld ..... **375, 376**  
 esperanto.mld ..... **376**

- estonian.mld . . . . . **376**  
 \eth@doaltchar . . . 5275, 5276, 5278, 5279,  
     5283, 5284, 5286, 5287, 5291, 5292,  
     5294, 5295  
 ethiopia.mld . . . . . **377**  
 ethiopian2.mld . . . . . **378**  
 ethopia.mld . . . . . **377**  
 ethopian.mld . . . . . **377**  
 \ExecuteOptions . . . . . 4237  
 \ExecuteOptions{english} . . . . . 4237
- F**
- F . . . . . **207**  
 \f@rhdr . . . . 4608, 4614, 4616, 4624, 4652  
 \f@rtoc . . . . 4607, 4612, 4641, 4644, 4647, 4650,  
     4652  
 \fake@starttoc . . . . . 478  
 \fakelistoffigures 478, 3771, 3969, 3998,  
     4027, 4328  
 \fakelistoftables 478, 3771, 3978, 4007,  
     4036, 4328  
 \faketableofcontents . . 478, 3771, 3960,  
     3989, 4018, 4328  
 farsi1.mld . . . . . **378**  
 farsi1.mlo . . . . . **378**  
 farsi2.mld . . . . . **379**  
 farsi2.mlo . . . . . **379**  
 \figure . . . . . 1059, 1754, 2350  
 \figure@mtcck . . . 2630, 2636, 2646, 2652,  
     2666, 2673, 2689  
 filecontents (environment) . . . . . 4655  
 \finalmem . . . 5775, 5777, 5782, 5784, 5789,  
     5791  
 \finalnun . . . . . 5774, 5781, 5788  
 finnish.mld . . . . . **379**  
 finnish2.mld . . . . . **380**  
 \firstchapteris . . . . 1, 523, 4219, 4427  
 \firstpartis . . . . . 1, 1197, 4214, 4427  
 \firstsectionis . . . . 1, 1863, 4224, 4427  
 \FloatBarrier . . . . . 1  
 fminitoc.bib . . . . . **157**  
 fminitoc.dtx . . . . . **155, 157**  
 fminitoc.ist . . . . . **157**  
 fminitoc.lan . . . . . **157**  
 fminitoc.pdf . . . . . **157**  
 fmk . . . . . **157**  
 fncychap . . . . . **48, 70, 182, 324**  
 franc.sty . . . . . **157**  
 francais.mld . . . . . **380**  
 frbib.sty . . . . . **157**  
 french.mld . . . . . **369, 380, 382, 383**  
 french1.mld . . . . . **381**  
 french2.mld . . . . . **382**  
 frenchb.mld . . . . . **382**
- frenchle.mld . . . . . **383**  
 frenchpro.mld . . . . . **383**  
 frnew.sty . . . . . **157**  
 frplain1.bst . . . . . **157**
- G**
- galician.mld . . . . . **383**  
 gaps . . . . . **71**  
 gaps.tex . . . . . **71, 157**  
 german.mld . . . . . **359, 384**  
 germanb.mld . . . . . **384**  
 germanb2.mld . . . . . **385**  
 \gobbleopt@ . . . . . 4347, 4348–4366  
 greek-mono.mld . . . . . **386**  
 greek-polydemo.mld . . . . . **387**  
 greek-polykatha.mld . . . . . **388**  
 greek.mld . . . . . **385**  
 guarani.mld . . . . . **389**
- H**
- hangul-u8.mld . . . . . **392**  
 hangul-u8.mlo . . . . . **392**  
 hangul1.mld . . . . . **389**  
 hangul1.mlo . . . . . **389**  
 hangul2.mld . . . . . **390**  
 hangul2.mlo . . . . . **390**  
 hangul3.mld . . . . . **390**  
 hangul3.mlo . . . . . **390**  
 hangul4.mld . . . . . **391**  
 hanja-u8.mld . . . . . **393**  
 hanja-u8.mlo . . . . . **393**  
 hanja1.mld . . . . . **392**  
 hanja1.mlo . . . . . **392**  
 hanja2.mld . . . . . **393**  
 hanja2.mlo . . . . . **393**  
 \hb@xt@ . . . . . 826  
 \hebalef 5805, 5808, 5815, 5818, 5825, 5828  
 \hebayin . . . . . 5802, 5812, 5822  
 \hebbet . . . . . 5808, 5818, 5828  
 \hebfinalmem 5802, 5805, 5812, 5815, 5822,  
     5825  
 \hebfinalnun . . . . . 5801, 5811, 5821  
 \hebkafe . . . . . 5801, 5811, 5821  
 \heblamed . . . . . 5808, 5818, 5828  
 \hebmeme 5804, 5807, 5814, 5817, 5824, 5827  
 \hebnun . . . . . 5802, 5812, 5822  
 \hebresh 5804, 5805, 5807, 5814, 5815, 5817,  
     5824, 5825, 5827  
 hebrew.mld . . . . . **394**  
 hebrew2.mld . . . . . **394**  
 \hebshin 5804, 5807, 5814, 5817, 5824, 5827  
 \hebtav 5801, 5804, 5807, 5808, 5811, 5814,  
     5817, 5818, 5821, 5824, 5827, 5828  
 \hebtet . . . . . 5808, 5818, 5828

- `\hebvav` 5801, 5805, 5808, 5811, 5815, 5818, 5821, 5825, 5828  
`\hebyod` 5802, 5804, 5805, 5807, 5812, 5814, 5815, 5817, 5822, 5824, 5825, 5827  
`hide1.tex` ..... 63, 157  
`hide2.tex` ..... 63, 157  
`hints` ..... 47, 52, 179, 333  
`\hline` ... 617, 688, 755, 1353, 1422, 1500, 1937, 2004, 2070  
`\hrule` ..... 536, 2489–2491, 2498–2500, 2507–2509  
`hungarian.mld` ..... 395  
`hyperref` ..... 47, 57, 67, 181
- I**
- `icelandic.mld` ..... 396  
`\if@dominilof@used@` 75, 892, 3825, 3902  
`\if@dominilot@used@` 75, 909, 3825, 3902  
`\if@dominitoc@used@` 75, 860, 875, 3825, 3902  
`\if@dopartlof@used@` 69, 1586, 3799, 3876  
`\if@dopartlot@used@` 69, 1603, 3799, 3876  
`\if@doparttoc@used@` 69, 1569, 3799, 3876  
`\if@dosectlof@used@` ... 81, 2196, 3783, 3851, 3928  
`\if@dosectlot@used@` ... 81, 2213, 3783, 3851, 3928  
`\if@dosecttoc@used@` 81, 2179, 3851, 3928  
`\if@filesw` ..... 103, 487  
`\if@firstchapteris@used@` 87, 523, 4217  
`\if@firstpartis@used@` .. 87, 1197, 4212  
`\if@firstsectionis@used@` ... 87, 4222  
`\if@longextensions` ..... 581  
`\if@longextensions@` 313, 581, 652, 719, 940, 971, 1047, 1106, 1316, 1390, 1463, 1631, 1645, 1742, 1802, 1907, 1974, 2040, 2243, 2271, 2338, 2397, 3372, 4041, 4249, 4495  
`\if@mainmatter` ..... 4620, 4638  
`\if@minilof@used@` . 75, 650, 3825, 3902, 3983  
`\if@minilot@used@` . 75, 717, 3825, 3902, 3983  
`\if@minitoc@used@` . 75, 579, 3825, 3902, 3983  
`\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@` ..... 3556  
`\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@` . 21, 145, 4119  
`\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@` 21, 145, 4119  
`\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@` . 21, 147, 4127  
`\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@` 21, 147, 4127  
`\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@` 21, 151, 4143  
`\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@` .. 21, 151, 4143  
`\if@mtc@captionLoaded@` .. 21, 149, 4135  
`\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@` 21, 149, 4135  
`\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@` . 21, 153, 4151  
`\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@` 21, 153, 4151  
`\if@mtc@chapter@def@` ... 59, 3825, 3902, 3983, 4041  
`\if@mtc@chapter@undef@` . 65, 1861, 2447  
`\if@mtc@checkfiles` ..... 208, 3367  
`\if@mtc@empty@minilof@` .. 48, 657, 4187  
`\if@mtc@empty@minilot@` .. 53, 724, 4192  
`\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@` .. 48, 586, 4182  
`\if@mtc@empty@partlof@` ..... 48, 4172  
`\if@mtc@empty@partlot@` ..... 48, 4177  
`\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@` ..... 48, 4167  
`\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@` ..... 48, 4202  
`\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@` ..... 48, 4207  
`\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@` ..... 54, 4197  
`\if@mtc@FE` . 208, 586, 594, 657, 665, 724, 732, 1323, 1336, 1397, 1410, 1471, 1484, 1914, 1922, 1981, 1990, 2047, 2056  
`\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@` . 21, 137, 4087  
`\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@` 21, 137, 4087  
`\if@mtc@Himlof@` ..... 3175  
`\if@mtc@Himlot@` ..... 3208  
`\if@mtc@Himtoc@` ..... 3160, 3161  
`\if@mtc@hints@` ..... 17, 875, 892, 909, 1569, 1586, 1603, 2179, 2196, 2213, 2467, 3554, 3758, 4294  
`\if@mtc@hints@giben@` ..... 17  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` ... 19, 3564, 3569, 3575, 3581, 3599, 3605, 3610, 3669, 3676, 3686, 3693, 3704, 3709, 3725, 3741, 3788, 3799, 3825, 3851, 3876, 3902, 3928, 3954, 3983, 4012, 4071, 4079, 4087, 4095, 4103, 4111, 4119, 4127, 4135, 4143, 4151, 4159, 4227  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@true` ..... 4041  
`\if@mtc@hints@w@` . 17, 3709, 3725, 3741, 3788  
`\if@mtc@hyper@used@` .. 117, 3709, 3725, 3741  
`\if@mtc@insellang@` ..... 3321, 3334  
`\if@mtc@LI` ..... 208  
`\if@mtc@listfiles@` ..... 3383, 4293  
`\if@mtc@lof@used@` ... 3556, 3758, 3762, 3771, 3965, 3994, 4023  
`\if@mtc@lot@used@` ... 3556, 3758, 3762, 3771, 3974, 4003, 4032  
`\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@` . 21, 155, 4159  
`\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@` 21, 155, 4159  
`\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@` ... 21, 157, 361  
`\if@mtc@memoirnew@` ..... 21, 157  
`\if@mtc@notoccite@` ... 112, 3371, 4246

- `\if@mtc@part@def@` 57, 3799, 3876, 3954, 4041  
`\if@mtc@part@undef@` ..... 63  
`\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@` 21, 3788, 4239  
`\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@` . 21, 139, 4095  
`\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@` 21, 139, 4095  
`\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@` . 21, 141, 4103  
`\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@` 21, 141, 4103  
`\if@mtc@sect@floats@` ... 20, 3783, 3788  
`\if@mtc@section@def@` ... 61, 1861, 2446, 3783, 3851, 3928, 4012, 4041  
`\if@mtc@section@undef@` ..... 67  
`\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@` . 21, 133, 4071  
`\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@` 21, 133, 4071  
`\if@mtc@setdepth@` ... 3122, 3124, 3141  
`\if@mtc@setfeature@` . 3069, 3090, 3108  
`\if@mtc@setfont@` 2576, 2578, 2596, 2614, 2692  
`\if@mtc@setformat@` ..... 2861, 2897  
`\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@` ... 2911, 2951  
`\if@mtc@setrules@` ..... 2980, 3001  
`\if@mtc@setttitle@` ... 2743, 2745, 2763  
`\if@mtc@setttitlefont@` 2707, 2709, 2727  
`\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@` 21, 143, 4111  
`\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@` . 21, 143, 4111  
`\if@mtc@spn@ok@` ..... 2911, 2951  
`\if@mtc@sru@ok@` ..... 2980, 3021  
`\if@mtc@ss@insection@` 3375, 3610, 4239  
`\if@mtc@toc@used@` ... 3556, 3758, 3762, 3771, 3956, 3985, 4014  
`\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@` . 21, 135, 4079  
`\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@` 21, 135, 4079  
`\if@mtcfixglossary@` ..... 3259  
`\if@mtcfixindex@` ..... 3299  
`\if@mtcpatchmemoir@` ..... 157, 176  
`\if@partlof@used@` 69, 1390, 3799, 3876, 3954  
`\if@partlot@used@` 69, 1463, 3799, 3876, 3954  
`\if@parttoc@used@` 69, 1316, 3799, 3876, 3954  
`\if@sectlof@used@` 81, 1974, 3783, 3851, 3928, 4012  
`\if@sectlot@used@` 81, 2040, 3783, 3851, 3928, 4012  
`\if@secttoc@used@` 81, 1907, 3851, 3928, 4012  
`\if@setrules@false` ..... 3021  
`\if@twocolumn` ..... 1255, 1269, 1283  
`\ifanappendix` ..... 4639  
`\ifartopt` ..... 4625  
`\ifdim` ..... 2134  
`\IfFileExists` 177, 225, 2448, 3321, 3334, 4249  
`\ifheadnameref` ..... 4652  
`\ifktightmtc` 1, 115, 567, 1304, 1895, 4495  
`ifmtarg` ..... **185**  
`\ifmtc@lof@used@` .... 3954, 3983, 4012  
`\ifmtc@lot@used@` .... 3954, 3983, 4012  
`\ifmtc@toc@used@` .... 3954, 3983, 4012  
`\ifmtcoffwarn@` ..... 4501, 4518, 4564  
`\ifmtcsecondpart` . 90, 91, 97, 4495, 5427  
`\iftightmtc` 1, 115, 567, 1304, 1895, 3363, 4495  
`\ifundottedmtc` . 348, 831, 834, 837, 839, 849, 3369, 4495  
`\ignorespaces` ..... 785  
`imk` ..... **157**  
`\in` ..... 6915, 6919, 6923  
`\incrementmtc` ..... 1, 523, 4328  
`\incrementptc` ..... 1, 1197, 4328  
`\incrementstc` ..... 1, 1863, 4328  
`indon.mld` ..... **396**  
`indonesian.mld` ..... **396**  
`\input` ..... 313, 4308  
`\InputIfFileExists` ..... 3323, 3336  
`insection` ..... **27, 48**  
`\insertchapterspace` ..... 4629  
`INSTALL` ..... **155**  
`\interlinepenalty` . 354, 806, 819, 2137  
`interlingua.mld` ..... **397**  
`irish.mld` ..... **397**  
`italian.mld` ..... **398**  
`italian2.mld` ..... **398**  
`\itemindent` 567, 623, 694, 761, 1304, 1365, 1439, 1513, 1897, 1898, 1952, 2019, 2085  
`\itemsep` ..... 567, 1304, 1896  

**J**

`japanese.mld` ..... **399**  
`japanese.mlo` ..... **399**  
`japanese2.mld` ..... **399**  
`japanese2.mlo` ..... **399**  
`japanese3.mld` ..... **400**  
`japanese3.mlo` ..... **400**  
`japanese4.mld` ..... **400**  
`japanese4.mlo` ..... **400**  
`japanese5.mld` ..... **401**  
`japanese5.mlo` ..... **401**  
`\jobname` ..... 313, 2448, 4249, 4308  
`jura` ..... **48, 69**  

**K**

`k-loose` ..... **37**  
`k-tight` ..... **37, 57, 181, 203, 232**

- \kaf . . . . . 5774, 5781, 5788
- kanlel.sty . . . . . **401**
- kannada.mld . . . . . **401**
- khalkha.mld . . . . . **402**
- \kiftightmtc . . . . . 3363
- \ktightmtcfalse . . . . . 1, 116, 3366, 4497
- \ktightmtctrue . . . . . 1, 3365
- L**
- \l@chapter . . . 292, 783, 1375, 1376, 2478, 2480, 4421
- \l@chapter@SVPN . . . . . 1375, 1376
- \l@coffee . . . . . 3355, 4547
- \l@listof . . . . . 2477, 4495
- \l@mti . . . 556, 561, 594, 665, 732, 875, 892, 909
- \l@paragraph . . . . . 2484, 4425
- \l@part . . . . . 255, 2479, 4420
- \l@pchapter . . . . . 1536
- \l@psect . . . . . 1536
- \l@pti . . . 1245, 1255, 1298, 1336, 1410, 1484, 1569, 1586, 1603
- \l@schapter . . . . . 2106
- \l@section . . . . . 281, 2477, 2481, 4422
- \l@starchapter . . . . . 2477, 4420
- \l@starparagraph . . . . . 2477, 4420
- \l@starpart . . . . . 2477, 4420
- \l@starsection . . . . . 2477, 4420
- \l@starsubparagraph . . . . . 2477, 4420
- \l@starsubsection . . . . . 2477, 4420
- \l@starsubsubsection . . . . . 2477, 4420
- \l@sti . . . 1884, 1889, 1922, 1990, 2056, 2179, 2196, 2213
- \l@subparagraph . . . . . 2485, 4426
- \l@subsection . . . . . 2482, 4423
- \l@subsubsection . . . . . 2483, 4424
- \l@xchapter . . . . . 292, 783, 4367
- \l@xpart . . . . . 255, 1536, 4367
- \l@xsect . . . . . 281, 2106, 4367
- \labelsep . . . 624, 695, 762, 1366, 1440, 1514, 1953, 2020, 2086
- \labelwidth . . . 623, 694, 761, 1365, 1439, 1513, 1952, 2019, 2085
- \lamed . . . . . 5779, 5786, 5793
- lamed.eps . . . . . **157**
- lamed.pdf . . . . . **157**
- lamed.tex . . . . . **157**
- \LARGE . . . . . 1243
- \Large . . . . . 1229
- \large . . . . . 554, 1883
- latin.mld . . . . . **402**
- latin2.mld . . . . . **403**
- latvian.mld . . . . . **403, 404**
- \leftmargin . . . 575, 576, 621, 692, 759, 1312, 1313, 1363, 1437, 1511, 1903, 1904, 1950, 2017, 2083
- letton.mld . . . . . **404**
- \list . . . . . 567, 1304, 1896
- listfiles . . . . . **47**
- \listoffigures . . 1, 272, 3762, 3968, 3997, 4026
- \listoftables . . . 1, 272, 3762, 3977, 4006, 4035
- \listparindent . . 567, 624, 695, 762, 1304, 1366, 1440, 1514, 1898, 1953, 2020, 2086
- lithuanian.mld . . . . . **404**
- \localgreek . . . 5548, 5551, 5555, 5559, 5562, 5566, 5570, 5573, 5577, 5588, 5591, 5595, 5599, 5602, 5606, 5610, 5613, 5617, 5628, 5631, 5635, 5639, 5642, 5646, 5650, 5653, 5657
- \locallatvian . . . 6049–6051, 6053–6055, 6057–6059
- \localpolish . . . . 6381–6383, 6385–6387, 6389–6391
- \localrussian . . . 6507, 6510, 6514, 6518, 6521, 6525, 6529, 6532, 6536, 6547, 6550, 6554, 6558, 6561, 6565, 6569, 6572, 6576
- \localspanish . . . 6834–6836, 6838–6840, 6842–6844
- lofdepth . . . . . **29, 199**
- loose . . . . . **37**
- lotdepth . . . . . **29, 199**
- lowersorbian.mld . . . . . **405**
- lsorbian.mld . . . . . **405**
- M**
- M . . . . . **204**
- M@gettitle . . . . . 4652
- magyar.mld . . . . . **395, 406**
- magyar2.mld . . . . . **406**
- magyar3.mld . . . . . **407**
- \MakeUppercase . . 593, 664, 731, 1330, 1404, 1478, 1922, 1988, 2054
- malay.mld . . . . . **407**
- malayalam-keli.mld . . . . . **407**
- malayalam-omega.mld . . . . . **408**
- malayalam-omega.mlo . . . . . **408**
- malayalam-rachana.mld . . . . . **408**
- malayalam-rachana2.mld . . . . . **409**
- manju.mld . . . . . **410**
- mcaption . . . . . **48, 67, 184, 327**
- \mdseries . . . . . 544, 555, 1219, 1232, 1234, 1874
- \mem . . . . . 5776, 5778, 5783, 5785, 5790, 5792
- memoir . . . . . **47, 60, 67, 177, 185, 194**

- \MessageBreak ..... 4580
- meyalu.mld ..... **410**
- mini-art.tex ..... **157**
- \minilof .. 1, 649, 3837, 3915, 3996, 4354
- \minilof@ ..... 649, 650, 829
- \minilof@mtcck ..... 2618, 2657
- minilofdepth ..... **199, 209**
- \minilot .. 1, 716, 3845, 3923, 4005, 4354
- \minilot@ ..... 716, 717, 829
- \minilot@mtcck ..... 2621, 2663
- minilotdepth ..... **212**
- \minitoc .. 1, 578, 3829, 3907, 3987, 4354
- minitoc-ex.tex ..... **157**
- minitoc.bib ..... **157**
- minitoc.bug ..... **47, 52, 157**
- minitoc.dtx ..... **155, 157**
- minitoc.ins ..... **39, 155, 157**
- minitoc.ist ..... **157**
- minitoc.l ..... **155, 157**
- minitoc.lan ..... **157**
- minitoc.pdf ..... **157**
- minitoc.pre ..... **157**
- minitoc.sty ..... **155**
- minitoc.sum ..... **157**
- \minitoc@ ..... 578, 579, 829
- \minitoc@mtcck ..... 2615, 2649
- minitocdepth ..... **29, 201, 205**
- minutes ..... **202**
- mlf ..... **207**
- \MLF@ ..... 1080, 1082
- \MLF@contentsline ..... 1043, 1082
- \MLF@explist ..... 1041, 1068
- \MLF@line ..... 1079, 1080
- \MLF@list ..... 1038, 1041, 1068, 1082
- \MLF@lof ..... 1041, 1069, 1082
- \MLF@loop ..... 1038, 1069
- \MLF@next ..... 865, 1038, 1068
- \mlf@pgno ..... 417, 418
- \MLF@read ..... 1069, 1078, 1082
- \mlf@rule 523, 665, 713, 2496, 2499, 2502
- \mlf@setform ..... 701, 2836
- \MLF@test ..... 1080, 1082
- \mlfdotsep ..... 2806, 2839
- \mlffont ..... 1, 544, 665, 4390
- \mlflofrmarg ..... 2797
- \mlfname ..... 1047
- \mlfpagenumbers 398, 411, 417, 430, 4450
- \mlfpnumwidth ..... 2788, 2837
- \mlfrule ..... 2486, 4432
- \mlfSfont ..... 1, 544, 4390
- \mlftitle 1, 664, 674, 684, 688, 4655, 4673, 4694, 4715, 4733, 4754, 4783, 4800, 4817, 4835, 4851, 4867, 4883, 4899, 4916, 4937, 4965, 4995, 5016, 5032, 5067, 5105, 5124, 5141, 5158, 5175, 5198, 5224, 5241, 5262, 5282, 5313, 5352, 5369, 5390, 5413, 5440, 5469, 5484, 5501, 5516, 5534, 5562, 5566, 5602, 5642, 5672, 5783, 5813, 5845, 5870, 5887, 5905, 5923, 5997, 5998, 6018, 6035, 6054, 6076, 6093, 6117, 6134, 6151, 6172, 6195, 6212, 6236, 6265, 6280, 6299, 6315, 6330, 6346, 6367, 6386, 6404, 6425, 6442, 6460, 6493, 6521, 6561, 6601, 6626, 6694, 6711, 6728, 6750, 6770, 6787, 6808, 6823, 6839, 6860, 6877, 6894, 6918, 6955, 6983, 7010, 7031, 7046, 7061, 7076
- \mlftocrmarg ..... 2801, 2838
- mlt ..... **210**
- \MLT@ ..... 1139, 1141
- \MLT@contentsline ..... 1102, 1141
- \MLT@explist ..... 1100, 1127
- \MLT@line ..... 1138, 1139
- \MLT@list ..... 1097, 1100, 1127, 1141
- \MLT@loop ..... 1097, 1128
- \MLT@lot ..... 1100, 1128, 1141
- \MLT@next ..... 870, 1097, 1127
- \mlt@pgno ..... 423, 424
- \MLT@read ..... 1128, 1137, 1141
- \mlt@rule 523, 732, 780, 2505, 2508, 2511
- \mlt@setform ..... 768, 2851
- \MLT@test ..... 1139, 1141
- \mltdotsep ..... 2806
- \mltfont ..... 1, 544, 732, 4390
- \mlttitle ..... 4695
- \mltlofrmarg ..... 2797
- \mltname ..... 1106
- \mltpagenumbers 404, 411, 417, 423, 430, 4450
- \mltpnumwidth ..... 2788
- \mltrule ..... 2486, 4432
- \mltSfont ..... 1, 544, 4390
- \mltttitle 1, 731, 741, 751, 755, 4655, 4674, 4716, 4734, 4755, 4784, 4801, 4818, 4836, 4852, 4868, 4884, 4900, 4917, 4938, 4968, 4997, 5017, 5033, 5068, 5106, 5125, 5142, 5159, 5176, 5199, 5225, 5242, 5263, 5285, 5315, 5353, 5370, 5391, 5414, 5441, 5470, 5485, 5502, 5517, 5535, 5606, 5646, 5673, 5785, 5816, 5846, 5871, 5888, 5906, 5924, 6019, 6036, 6055, 6077, 6094, 6118, 6135, 6152, 6173, 6196, 6213, 6237, 6266, 6281, 6300, 6316, 6331, 6347, 6368, 6387, 6405, 6426, 6443, 6461, 6478, 6479, 6494, 6525, 6565,

- 6604, 6627, 6695, 6712, 6729, 6752,
- 6771, 6788, 6809, 6824, 6840, 6861,
- 6878, 6895, 6919, 6957, 6984, 7011,
- 7032, 7047, 7062, 7077
- \mlttocrmarg ..... 2804
- \mm ... 6167–6169, 6171–6173, 6175–6177,
- 6190–6192, 6194–6196, 6198–6200,
- 6207–6209, 6211–6213, 6215–6217
- \mnr ... 5011–5013, 5015–5017, 5019–5021,
- 5027–5029, 5031–5033, 5035–5037,
- 6231–6233, 6235–6237, 6239–6241,
- 7041–7043, 7045–7047, 7049–7051,
- 7056–7058, 7060–7062, 7064–7066
- mongol.mld ..... 410
- mtc ..... **201, 204**
- \MTC@ ..... 1014, 1018
- \mtc@While ..... 194, 196, 201
- \mtc@addtomaf ..... 4249
- \mtc@arg@dotinterval ..... 2780
- \mtc@arg@numwidth ..... 2786
- \mtc@arg@pagenumwidth ..... 2784
- \mtc@arg@tocrightmargin ..... 2782
- \mtc@BBR ... 299, 620, 626, 691, 697, 758,
- 764, 1362, 1367, 1436, 1441, 1510,
- 1515, 1949, 1954, 2016, 2021, 2082,
- 2087
- \mtc@Body ..... 208
- \mtc@bottom@rule ... 639, 645, 711, 778
- \mtc@ck ..... 4518
- \mtc@CkFile ... 208, 586, 657, 724, 1323,
- 1397, 1471, 1914, 1981, 2047
- \mtc@CkStr 208, 594, 665, 732, 1336, 1410,
- 1484, 1922, 1990, 2056
- \MTC@contentsline ..... 936, 1016
- \mtc@dot ..... 1157
- \mtc@EndWhile ..... 183, 208
- \MTC@explist ..... 933, 1001
- \mtc@featparam@abbrev 3071, 3090, 3108
- \mtc@featparam@third ..... 3090, 3108
- \mtc@featureparam@after ..... 3062
- \mtc@featureparam@before ..... 3060
- \mtc@featureparam@pagestyle ... 3064
- \mtc@fparam@abbrev .. 2863, 2882, 2897
- \mtc@glofix@level 3241, 3260, 3269–3271,
- 3277
- \mtc@hints@@chapter ..... 3725, 4301
- \mtc@hints@@part ..... 3709, 4298
- \mtc@hints@@schapter ..... 3725, 4301
- \mtc@hints@@sect ..... 3741, 4304
- \mtc@hints@@sparm ..... 3709, 4298
- \mtc@hints@@ssect ..... 3741, 4304
- \mtc@hints@begindoc . 3556, 3781, 4294
- \mtc@hints@chapter .. 3709, 3725, 4301
- \mtc@hints@checklongext ..... 4041
- \mtc@hints@enddoc 3556, 3782, 4227, 4294
- \mtc@hints@part ..... 3709, 4298
- \mtc@hints@section .. 3709, 3741, 4304
- \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile .. 112, 629,
- 701, 768, 1370, 1446, 1520, 1957,
- 2026, 2092
- \mtc@hstrut . 299, 1433, 1507, 2012, 2078
- \mtc@hstrutbox ..... 299
- \mtc@ifmtarg .... 183, 218, 255, 281, 292
- \mtc@ifix@level 3281, 3300, 3309–3311,
- 3317
- \mtc@level@abbrev ... 2596, 2613, 2692
- \MTC@line ..... 1012, 1014
- \MTC@list ..... 929, 933, 1001, 1016
- \MTC@loop ..... 929, 1002
- \mtc@ltypetable@minilof ..... 3055
- \mtc@ltypetable@minilot ..... 3054
- \mtc@ltypetable@minitoc ..... 3053
- \mtc@ltypetable@partlof ..... 3052
- \mtc@ltypetable@partlot ..... 3051
- \mtc@ltypetable@parttoc ..... 3050
- \mtc@ltypetable@sectlof ..... 3057
- \mtc@ltypetable@sectlot ..... 3058
- \mtc@ltypetable@secttoc ..... 3056
- \mtc@maf ..... 4249, 4293
- \mtc@maf@long ..... 4249
- \mtc@maf@short ..... 4249
- \mtc@markboth .. 498, 593, 664, 731, 1330,
- 1404, 1478, 1922, 1988, 2054
- \mtc@mta@abbrev ..... 2578, 2613, 2692
- \mtc@mtade@abbrev ..... 3124, 3141
- \mtc@mtatf@abbrev ..... 2709, 2727
- \mtc@mtati@abbrev ..... 2745, 2763
- \mtc@mtf@abbrev ..... 2863, 2897
- \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev ..... 3071, 3108
- \mtc@mttpn@abbrev ..... 2932, 2951
- \mtc@mttru@abbrev ..... 3001, 3021
- \MTC@next ..... 860, 929, 1001
- \mtc@noX ..... 2968, 2970, 3021
- \mtc@onebackchap ..... 243
- \mtc@onebackchapter ..... 242
- \mtc@onebackpart ..... 242
- \mtc@onebacksect ..... 244, 272
- \mtc@onebacksection ..... 242
- \mtc@param ..... 1157
- \mtc@pgno ..... 411, 412, 629, 701, 768
- \mtc@pns@abbrev ..... 2932, 2951
- \mtc@pns@abbrevX ..... 2967
- \MTC@read ..... 1002, 1012, 1016
- \mtc@restorelofdepth ..... 3195, 4556
- \mtc@restorelotdepth .. 3228, 3240, 4556
- \mtc@restoretocdepth . 3161, 3191, 3207,
- 3224, 4556
- \mtc@Rline ..... 208



- \mtc@rule 523, 594, 645, 2487, 2490, 2493
- \mtc@rusw@abbrev ..... 3001, 3021
- \mtc@rusw@abbrevX ..... 3037
- \mtc@savelofdepth .... 3194, 3201, 4556
- \mtc@savelotdepth .... 3227, 3234, 4556
- \mtc@savetocdepth 3161, 3185, 3218, 4556
- \mtc@schapter ..... 790
- \mtc@sectlevel@chapter ..... 2565
- \mtc@sectlevel@figure ..... 2572
- \mtc@sectlevel@paragraph ..... 2569
- \mtc@sectlevel@section ..... 2566
- \mtc@sectlevel@subfigure ..... 2574
- \mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph ... 2570
- \mtc@sectlevel@subsection ..... 2567
- \mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection ... 2568
- \mtc@sectlevel@subtable ..... 2575
- \mtc@sectlevel@table ..... 2573
- \mtc@setform ..... 629, 2821
- \mtc@string 299, 1016, 1082, 1141, 1157,  
1177, 1718, 1779, 1839, 2313, 2372,  
2431, 4367
- \mtc@strut 299, 629, 701, 768, 1370, 1446,  
1520, 1957, 2026, 2092
- \mtc@strutbox ..... 299
- \mtc@sv@fakelistoffigures ..... 3771
- \mtc@sv@fakelistoftables ..... 3771
- \mtc@sv@faketableofcontents ... 3771
- \mtc@sv@listoffigures ..... 3762
- \mtc@sv@listoftables ..... 3762
- \mtc@sv@lofdepth ..... 3175
- \mtc@sv@lotdepth ..... 3208
- \mtc@sv@tableofcontents ..... 3762
- \mtc@sv@tocdepth .... 3161, 3175, 3208
- \mtc@svchapter ..... 290
- \mtc@svf@tocdepth ..... 3175
- \mtc@svpart ..... 245, 1541
- \mtc@svsection ..... 278
- \mtc@svspart ..... 245
- \mtc@svss ..... 278
- \mtc@svt@tocdepth ..... 3208
- \MTC@test ..... 1014, 1016
- \mtc@tmp@name ..... 2613, 2692
- \mtc@tmpde@name ..... 3141
- \mtc@tmpfeat@name ..... 3108
- \mtc@tmpfm@name ..... 2897
- \mtc@tmppn@name ..... 2951, 3021
- \mtc@tmptf@name ..... 2727
- \mtc@tmpti@name ..... 2763
- \MTC@toc ..... 933, 1002, 1016
- \mtc@toks ..... 299,  
952, 1059, 1118, 1157, 1177, 1657,  
1754, 1814, 2255, 2350, 2409, 2692,  
2727, 2763, 3141
- \mtc@typetable@minilof ..... 2517
- \mtc@typetable@minilot ..... 2518
- \mtc@typetable@minitoc ..... 2516
- \mtc@typetable@partlof ..... 2514
- \mtc@typetable@partlot ..... 2515
- \mtc@typetable@parttoc ..... 2513
- \mtc@typetable@sectlof ..... 2520
- \mtc@typetable@sectlot ..... 2521
- \mtc@typetable@secttoc ..... 2519
- \mtc@typetitle@minilof ..... 2526
- \mtc@typetitle@minilot ..... 2527
- \mtc@typetitle@minitoc ..... 2525
- \mtc@typetitle@partlof ..... 2523
- \mtc@typetitle@partlot ..... 2524
- \mtc@typetitle@parttoc ..... 2522
- \mtc@typetitle@sectlof ..... 2529
- \mtc@typetitle@sectlot ..... 2530
- \mtc@typetitle@secttoc ..... 2528
- \mtc@v ..... 299,  
613, 617, 684, 688, 751, 755, 1353,  
1422, 1500, 1937, 2004, 2070
- \mtc@verse ..... 567
- mtc@verse (environment) 567, 620, 639, 691,  
711, 758, 778, 2821, 2836, 2851
- \mtc@While ..... 183, 208
- \mtc@WhileBody ..... 183
- \mtc@WhileCondition ..... 183
- \mtc@WhileNext ..... 183
- \mtc@WhilePreCondition ..... 183
- \MTC@WriteCoffeeline .. 968, 1177, 1668,  
2255
- \MTC@WriteContentsLine ... 1628, 2238,  
2333, 2392
- \MTC@WriteContentsline ..... 953,  
985, 1059, 1118, 1157, 1658, 1682,  
1754, 1814, 2255, 2286, 2350, 2409
- \mtc@xifmtarg ..... 183
- \mtc@YN@F ..... 2542
- \mtc@YN@f ..... 2541
- \mtc@YN@FALSE ..... 2538
- \mtc@YN@false ..... 2537
- \mtc@YN@FAUX ..... 2540
- \mtc@YN@faux ..... 2539
- \mtc@YN@N ..... 2536
- \mtc@YN@n ..... 2535
- \mtc@YN@NO ..... 2534
- \mtc@YN@no ..... 2533
- \mtc@YN@NON ..... 2543
- \mtc@YN@non ..... 2544
- \mtc@YN@O ..... 2562
- \mtc@YN@o ..... 2563
- \mtc@YN@OFF ..... 2532
- \mtc@YN@off ..... 2531
- \mtc@YN@ON ..... 2547
- \mtc@YN@on ..... 2546

- \mtc@YN@OUI . . . . . 2560
- \mtc@YN@oui . . . . . 2561
- \mtc@YN@T . . . . . 2555
- \mtc@YN@t . . . . . 2554
- \mtc@YN@TRUE . . . . . 2553
- \mtc@YN@true . . . . . 2552
- \mtc@YN@TRUEV . . . . . 2559
- \mtc@YN@v . . . . . 2558
- \mtc@YN@VRAI . . . . . 2557
- \mtc@YN@vrai . . . . . 2556
- \mtc@YN@Y . . . . . 2551
- \mtc@YN@y . . . . . 2550
- \mtc@YN@YES . . . . . 2549
- \mtc@YN@yes . . . . . 2548
- \mtc@zrule . 299, 620, 642, 691, 714, 758,  
781, 1362, 1384, 1436, 1457, 1510,  
1531, 1949, 1969, 2016, 2035, 2082,  
2102
- \mtcaddchapter . . . . . 1, 292, 4518
- \mtcaddpart . . . . . 1, 255, 4518
- \mtcaddsection . . . . . 1, 281, 4518
- \mtcArabTok . . . . 4727–4730, 4732–4734,  
4736–4738
- \mtcdotsep . . . . . 2806, 2824
- \mtcEnglishIIpart . . . . 5210, 5219–5221
- \mtcfixglossary 1, 3245, 3250, 3252, 3259,  
4562
- \mtcfixindex . . 1, 3285, 3290, 3292, 3299,  
4563
- \mtcfont . . . . . 1, 544, 594, 4390
- \mtcFrenchIIpart . . . . 5425, 5435–5437
- \mtcgapafterheads 15, 1255, 1269, 1283,  
4326
- \mtcgapbeforeheads 15, 1255, 1269, 1283,  
4326
- mtchideinmainlof (environment) . 1, 3175,  
4550
- mtchideinmainlot (environment) . 1, 3208,  
4550
- mtchideinmaintoc (environment) . 1, 3161,  
4550
- \mtcindent 9, 523, 567, 620, 691, 758, 4316
- \mtcloadmlo 3334, 4431, 5082, 5093, 5331,  
5340, 5689, 5702, 5714, 5726, 5735,  
5747, 5759, 5768, 5937, 5949, 5961,  
5973, 5986, 6182, 6640, 6650, 6658,  
6666, 6674, 6682, 6906
- \mtclofr marg . . . . . 2797
- mtcmess.sty . . . . . 155
- \mtcname . . . . . 940, 971
- mtcuff . . . . . 50, 53
- mtcuff.sty . . . . . 155
- \mtcuffwarn@false . . . . . 4501
- \mtcuffwarn@true 4518, 4527, 4536, 4564,  
4569, 4574
- \mtcPackage . . . . . 179
- \mtcPackageError 2583, 2600, 2700, 2714,  
2736, 2750, 2772, 2869, 2885, 2904,  
2939, 2958, 3008, 3027, 3077, 3094,  
3116, 3129, 3144, 3155, 3164, 3170,  
3179, 3187, 3197, 3203, 3212, 3220,  
3230, 3236, 3248, 3273, 3288, 3313,  
3326, 3339, 3348, 4580
- \mtcPackageInfo . . . 2, 117, 159, 165, 167,  
169, 249, 262, 264, 270, 289, 313,  
324, 326, 588, 659, 726, 878, 895,  
912, 941, 945, 974, 978, 1008, 1048,  
1052, 1075, 1107, 1111, 1134, 1325,  
1399, 1473, 1572, 1589, 1606, 1632,  
1636, 1646, 1650, 1709, 1743, 1747,  
1770, 1803, 1807, 1830, 1916, 1983,  
2049, 2182, 2199, 2216, 2244, 2248,  
2275, 2279, 2306, 2339, 2343, 2365,  
2398, 2402, 2424, 2448, 2695, 2730,  
2766, 2899, 2971, 2974, 3041, 3044,  
3111, 3150, 3324, 3337, 3561, 3571,  
3577, 3583, 3589, 3595, 3601, 3671,  
3688, 3697, 4232, 4250, 4580, 4597
- \mtcPackageWarning 525, 1004, 1071, 1130,  
1202, 1705, 1766, 1826, 1864, 2302,  
2361, 2420, 4519, 4528, 4537, 4565,  
4570, 4575, 4580
- \mtcPackageWarningNoLine 246, 266, 330,  
340, 344, 3243, 3251, 3283, 3291,  
3373, 3566, 3607, 3614, 3630, 3645,  
3661, 3678, 3683, 3706, 3717, 3720,  
3733, 3736, 3750, 3753, 3790, 3802,  
3810, 3818, 3828, 3836, 3844, 3854,  
3862, 3870, 3879, 3887, 3895, 3905,  
3913, 3921, 3931, 3939, 3947, 3957,  
3966, 3975, 3986, 3995, 4004, 4015,  
4024, 4033, 4047, 4055, 4063, 4073,  
4081, 4089, 4097, 4105, 4113, 4121,  
4129, 4137, 4145, 4153, 4161, 4168,  
4173, 4178, 4183, 4188, 4193, 4198,  
4203, 4208, 4213, 4218, 4223, 4228,  
4503, 4580
- \mtcpagenumbers . . . 362, 411, 430, 4450
- \mtcPfont . . . . . 1, 544, 4390
- \mtcpnumwidth . . . . . 2788, 2822
- \mtcprepare . . . . . 1, 2448, 4366
- \mtcprepare@ . . . . . 2448
- \mtcrule . . . . . 2486, 4432
- \mtcsecondpartfalse 90, 95, 101, 109, 4499
- \mtcsecondparttrue . . . . . 93, 99, 106
- \mtcselectlanguage 1, 3321, 3386, 4430,  
4655, 4657, 4661, 4682, 4703, 4742,

- 4763, 4767, 4771, 4925, 4946, 5041,  
5045, 5050, 5055, 5250, 5300, 5378,  
5449, 5453, 5457, 5832, 5854, 5858,  
6006, 6063, 6160, 6221, 6225, 6245,  
6249, 6253, 6413, 6927, 6931, 6935,  
6939, 6992, 7019  
`\mtcsetdepth` . . . 1, 3123, 3130, 3145, 3151,  
3156, 4412  
`\mtcsetfeature` . . . 1, 478, 3069, 3078, 3095,  
3112, 3117, 4412  
`\mtcsetfont` . . . 1, 2576, 2577, 2584, 2601,  
2696, 2701, 4412  
`\mtcsetformat` . . . 1, 629, 701, 768, 2816,  
2861, 2870, 2886, 2900, 2905, 4412  
`\mtcsetpagenumber@` . . . . . 2931  
`\mtcsetpagenumbers` . . . 1, 2913, 2940, 2959,  
4412  
`\mtcsetpagenumbers@` . . . . . 2913, 2931  
`\mtcsetrules` . . . 1, 2982, 3009, 3028, 4412  
`\mtcsetrules@` . . . . . 2982, 3000  
`\mtcsetttitle` . . . 1, 2743, 2744, 2751, 2767,  
2773, 3159, 4412  
`\mtcsetttitlefont` . . . 1, 2707, 2708, 2715,  
2731, 4412  
`\mtcSfont` . . . . . 1, 544, 4390  
`\mtcskip` . . . . . 1, 9, 4328  
`\mtcskipamount` . . . . . 1, 9, 4316  
`\mtcSPfont` . . . . . 1, 544, 4390  
`\mtcSSfont` . . . . . 1, 544, 4390  
`\mtcSSSfont` . . . . . 1, 544, 4390  
`\mtcsv@listoffigures` . . . . . 272  
`\mtcsv@listoftables` . . . . . 272  
`\mtcsv@tableofcontents` . . . . . 272  
`\mtctitle` 1, 593, 594, 665, 732, 4655, 4672,  
4693, 4714, 4732, 4753, 4782, 4799,  
4816, 4834, 4850, 4866, 4882, 4898,  
4915, 4936, 4963, 4993, 5015, 5031,  
5066, 5104, 5123, 5140, 5157, 5174,  
5197, 5223, 5240, 5261, 5281, 5312,  
5351, 5368, 5389, 5412, 5439, 5468,  
5483, 5500, 5515, 5533, 5559, 5599,  
5639, 5671, 5781, 5810, 5844, 5869,  
5886, 5904, 5922, 5996, 6017, 6034,  
6053, 6075, 6092, 6116, 6133, 6150,  
6171, 6194, 6211, 6235, 6264, 6279,  
6298, 6314, 6329, 6345, 6366, 6385,  
6403, 6424, 6441, 6459, 6477, 6492,  
6518, 6558, 6599, 6625, 6693, 6710,  
6727, 6748, 6769, 6786, 6807, 6822,  
6838, 6859, 6876, 6893, 6917, 6954,  
6982, 7009, 7030, 7045, 7060, 7075  
`\mtctocrmarg` . . . . . 2798, 2823  
`\mtifont` . . . . . 1, 544, 594, 665, 732, 4390  
`\mz` . . . . . 6489, 6490, 6493, 6494, 6497, 6498
- N**
- `\n@mti` . . . 556, 594, 665, 732, 875, 892, 909  
`\n@pti` 1245, 1252, 1336, 1410, 1484, 1569,  
1586, 1603  
`\n@sti` 1884, 1922, 1990, 2056, 2179, 2196,  
2213  
`naustrian.mld` . . . . . **411**  
`needspace` . . . . . **52**  
`\NeedsTeXFormat` . . . . . 2, 4312, 4582, 4593  
`\newbox` . . . . . 302, 306  
`\newcommand` 255, 281, 292, 530, 1207, 1868,  
2577, 2708, 2744, 2862, 2913, 2931,  
2982, 3000, 3070, 3123, 3161, 3162,  
3194, 3195, 3227, 3228, 3260, 3300,  
3358, 4332–4334, 4518, 4527, 4536,  
4562, 4563, 4583, 4585, 4587, 4589  
`\newcounter` 494, 496, 528, 534, 1191, 1197,  
1855, 1867, 1871  
`\newif` . . . . . 17–57, 59, 61, 63,  
65, 67, 69–90, 112, 115, 116, 118,  
157, 208–210, 315, 348, 2576, 2707,  
2743, 2861, 2911, 2912, 2980, 2981,  
3069, 3122, 3160, 3175, 3208, 3259,  
3299, 3321, 3375, 3383, 3556–3559,  
4495–4499, 4501  
`\newlength` . . . . . 9, 1216, 1873  
`\newread` . . . . . 299, 342  
`\newwrite` . . . . . 8, 487  
`newzealand.mld` . . . . . **411**  
`ngerman.mld` . . . . . **411**  
`ngermanb.mld` . . . . . **411**  
`ngermanb2.mld` . . . . . **412**  
`nocheckfiles` . . . . . **29, 49**  
`nohints` . . . . . **47**  
`\noindent` 610, 681, 748, 1351, 1425, 1499,  
1938, 2005, 2071  
`nolistfiles` . . . . . **47**  
`\nomlfpagenumbers` . . . 398, 411, 417, 4450  
`\nomlfrule` . . . . . 2486, 4432  
`\nomltpagenumbers` . . . 404, 411, 417, 423,  
4450  
`\nomltrule` . . . . . 2486, 4432  
`\nomtcpagenumbers` . . . . . 362, 411, 4450  
`\nomtcrule` . . . . . 2486, 4432  
`\noplfpagenumbers` . . . . . 398, 422, 4450  
`\noplfrule` . . . . . 2486, 4432  
`\nomltpagenumbers` . . . . . 404, 428, 4450  
`\nomltrule` . . . . . 2486, 4432  
`\noptcpagenumbers` . . . . . 384, 416, 4450  
`\noptcrule` . . . . . 2486, 4432  
`\normalcolor` . . . . . 826  
`\normalfont` . . . . . 826  
`\normalsize` . . . . . 1232–1234  
`norsk.mld` . . . . . **413**

- norsk2.mld ..... 413  
 \noslfpagenumbers ..... 398, 420, 4450  
 \noslfrule ..... 2486, 4432  
 \nosltpagenumbers ..... 404, 426, 4450  
 \nosltrule ..... 2486, 4432  
 \nostcpagenumbers ..... 374, 414, 4450  
 \nostcrule ..... 2486, 4432  
 notoccite ..... 46, 180  
 \numberline ..... 2127  
 \nun ..... 5775, 5782, 5789  
 nynorsk.mld ..... 414  
 nynorsk2.mld ..... 414
- O**
- \openin ..... 1002, 1069, 1128  
 \openout ..... 236, 240, 313, 488,  
     940, 971, 1016, 1047, 1082, 1106,  
     1141, 1641, 1655, 1728, 1752, 1788,  
     1812, 1848, 2253, 2271, 2322, 2348,  
     2381, 2407, 2440, 4254
- P**
- \PackageError ..... 4580  
 \PackageInfo ..... 4580  
 \PackageWarning ..... 4580  
 \PackageWarningNoLine ..... 4580  
 \pagebreak 644, 715, 782, 1387, 1460, 1534,  
     1972, 2038, 2105  
 \paragraph ..... 953, 1658, 2255  
 \paragraph@mtcck ..... 2628  
 \parsep ..... 567, 1304, 1900  
 \parskip 9, 1304, 1345, 1419, 1493, 1932,  
     1999, 2065  
 part ..... 178  
 \part . . 1, 245, 503, 795, 1628, 1739, 1799,  
     3249, 3263, 3289, 3303, 3709, 4298  
 \part@mtcck 2623, 2650, 2658, 2664, 2670,  
     2679, 2686  
 \partbegin 1, 1541, 1729, 1789, 1849, 4341  
 \partend . . 1541, 1718, 1779, 1839, 4341  
 \partlof . 1, 1245, 1315, 1389, 3811, 3889,  
     3967, 4348  
 \partlof@ ..... 839, 1389, 1390  
 \partlof@mtcck ..... 2617, 2641  
 partlofdepth ..... 228, 238  
 \partlot . 1, 1245, 1315, 1462, 3819, 3897,  
     3976, 4348  
 \partlot@ ..... 839, 1462, 1463  
 \partlot@mtcck ..... 2620, 2645  
 partlotdepth ..... 228, 241  
 \partopsep ..... 571, 1304, 1899  
 \parttoc . 1, 1245, 1315, 3803, 3881, 3958,  
     4348  
 \parttoc@ ..... 839, 1315, 1316  
 \parttoc@mtcck ..... 2614, 2635  
 parttocdepth ..... 29, 229, 235  
 \pchapter ..... 1536, 1658, 4367  
 placeins ..... 47, 48, 177  
 plainurl.bst ..... 157  
 \PLF@ ..... 1775, 1779  
 \PLF@contentsline . . 1739, 1778, 1779  
 \PLF@explist ..... 1737, 1763  
 \PLF@line ..... 1773, 1775  
 \PLF@list ..... 1734, 1737, 1763, 1779  
 \PLF@lof ..... 1737, 1764, 1779  
 \PLF@loop ..... 1734, 1764  
 \PLF@next ..... 1558, 1734, 1763  
 \plf@pgno ..... 421, 422, 1446  
 \PLF@read ..... 1764, 1773, 1779  
 \plf@rule . . 523, 1422, 1457, 2495, 2498,  
     2501  
 \plf@setform ..... 1446, 2831  
 \PLF@test ..... 1775, 1777, 1779  
 \PLF@WriteContentsLine ..... 1739  
 \plfdotsep ..... 2806, 2834, 2854, 2859  
 \plffont ..... 1, 1218, 1231, 1419, 4378  
 \plfname ..... 1739, 1742  
 \plfpagenumbers . . . 398, 421, 430, 4450  
 \plfpnumwidth . . 2788, 2832, 2852, 2857  
 \plfrule ..... 2486, 4432  
 \plfsfont ..... 1, 1218, 1231, 4378  
 \plftitle 1, 1404, 1410, 1422, 4655, 4669,  
     4690, 4711, 4729, 4750, 4779, 4796,  
     4813, 4831, 4847, 4863, 4879, 4895,  
     4912, 4933, 4956, 4988, 5012, 5028,  
     5063, 5101, 5120, 5137, 5154, 5171,  
     5190, 5220, 5237, 5258, 5274, 5307,  
     5348, 5365, 5386, 5405, 5436, 5465,  
     5480, 5497, 5512, 5530, 5551, 5555,  
     5591, 5631, 5668, 5776, 5803, 5841,  
     5866, 5883, 5901, 5919, 5993, 5994,  
     6014, 6031, 6050, 6072, 6089, 6113,  
     6130, 6147, 6168, 6191, 6208, 6232,  
     6261, 6276, 6295, 6311, 6334, 6350,  
     6363, 6382, 6400, 6421, 6438, 6456,  
     6489, 6510, 6550, 6592, 6622, 6690,  
     6707, 6724, 6744, 6766, 6783, 6804,  
     6819, 6835, 6856, 6873, 6890, 6914,  
     6961, 6979, 7006, 7027, 7042, 7057,  
     7072  
 \plftocrmarg . . . 2797, 2833, 2853, 2858  
 \PLT@ ..... 1835, 1839  
 \PLT@contentsline . . 1799, 1838, 1839  
 \PLT@explist ..... 1797, 1823  
 \PLT@line ..... 1833, 1835  
 \PLT@list ..... 1794, 1797, 1823, 1839  
 \PLT@loop ..... 1794, 1824  
 \PLT@lot ..... 1797, 1824, 1839

- \PLT@next ..... 1562, 1794, 1823, 2172
- \plt@pgno ..... 427, 428, 1520
- \PLT@read ..... 1824, 1833, 1839
- \plt@rule 523, 1500, 1532, 2504, 2507, 2510
- \plt@setform ..... 1520, 2846
- \PLT@test ..... 1835, 1837, 1839
- \PLT@WriteContentsLine ..... 1799
- \pltdotsep ..... 2806, 2849
- \pltfont ..... 1, 1218, 1231, 1493, 4378
- \pltname ..... 1799, 1802
- \pltpagenumbers .... 404, 427, 430, 4450
- \pltppnumwidth ..... 2788, 2847
- \pltrule ..... 2486, 4432
- \pltSfont ..... 1, 1218, 1231, 4378
- \plttitle 1, 1478, 1484, 1500, 4655, 4670,
  - 4691, 4712, 4730, 4751, 4780, 4797,
  - 4814, 4832, 4848, 4864, 4880, 4896,
  - 4913, 4934, 4959, 4990, 5013, 5029,
  - 5064, 5102, 5121, 5138, 5155, 5172,
  - 5193, 5221, 5238, 5259, 5277, 5309,
  - 5349, 5366, 5387, 5408, 5437, 5466,
  - 5481, 5498, 5513, 5531, 5595, 5635,
  - 5669, 5778, 5806, 5842, 5867, 5884,
  - 5902, 5920, 6015, 6032, 6051, 6073,
  - 6090, 6114, 6131, 6148, 6169, 6192,
  - 6209, 6233, 6262, 6277, 6296, 6312,
  - 6335, 6351, 6364, 6383, 6401, 6422,
  - 6439, 6457, 6474, 6475, 6490, 6514,
  - 6554, 6595, 6623, 6691, 6708, 6725,
  - 6746, 6767, 6784, 6805, 6820, 6836,
  - 6857, 6874, 6891, 6915, 6963, 6980,
  - 7007, 7028, 7043, 7058, 7073
- \plttocrmarg ..... 2797, 2848
- pmk ..... **157**
- polish.mld ..... **415**
- polish2.mld ..... **415**
- polski.mld ..... **416**
- portuges.mld ..... **416**
- portuguese.mld ..... **416, 417**
- \printindex ..... 1
- \ProcessOptions ..... 4238
- \ProcessOptions\* ..... 4238
- \protect ..... 1
- \ProvidesFile ... 4309, 4656, 4660, 4664,
  - 4681, 4685, 4702, 4706, 4723, 4741,
  - 4745, 4762, 4766, 4770, 4774, 4791,
  - 4808, 4825, 4843, 4859, 4875, 4891,
  - 4907, 4924, 4928, 4945, 4949, 4982,
  - 5008, 5024, 5040, 5044, 5048, 5053,
  - 5058, 5075, 5085, 5096, 5113, 5132,
  - 5149, 5166, 5183, 5206, 5232, 5249,
  - 5253, 5270, 5298, 5303, 5325, 5334,
  - 5343, 5360, 5377, 5381, 5398, 5421,
  - 5448, 5452, 5456, 5460, 5477, 5492,
  - 5509, 5524, 5542, 5582, 5622, 5662,
  - 5680, 5692, 5705, 5717, 5729, 5738,
  - 5750, 5762, 5771, 5796, 5831, 5835,
  - 5853, 5857, 5861, 5878, 5895, 5913,
  - 5931, 5940, 5952, 5964, 5976, 5989,
  - 6005, 6009, 6026, 6043, 6062, 6066,
  - 6084, 6101, 6108, 6125, 6142, 6159,
  - 6163, 6180, 6186, 6203, 6220, 6224,
  - 6228, 6244, 6248, 6252, 6256, 6273,
  - 6288, 6307, 6323, 6342, 6358, 6375,
  - 6394, 6412, 6416, 6433, 6486, 6501,
  - 6541, 6581, 6618, 6634, 6643, 6653,
  - 6661, 6669, 6677, 6685, 6702, 6719,
  - 6736, 6761, 6778, 6795, 6816, 6831,
  - 6847, 6868, 6885, 6902, 6909, 6926,
  - 6930, 6934, 6938, 6942, 6949, 6973,
  - 6991, 6995, 7002, 7018, 7022, 7039,
  - 7054, 7069
- \ProvidesFiles ..... 6450, 6468
- \ProvidesPackage ... 2, 4312, 4581, 4594
- \psect ..... 1536, 4367
- ptc ..... **187, 229, 242**
- \PTC@ ..... 1714, 1718
- \PTC@contentsline ... 1628, 1717, 1718
- \PTC@explist ..... 1626, 1702
- \PTC@line ..... 1712, 1714
- \PTC@list ..... 1623, 1626, 1702, 1718
- \PTC@loop ..... 1623, 1703
- \PTC@next ..... 1554, 1623, 1702
- \ptc@pgno ..... 415, 416, 1370
- \PTC@read ..... 1703, 1712, 1718
- \ptc@rule . 1213, 1353, 1384, 1531, 2486,
  - 2489, 2492
- \ptc@setform ..... 1370, 2816
- \ptc@spart ..... 1541
- \PTC@test ..... 1714, 1716
- \PTC@toc ..... 1626, 1703, 1718
- \ptc@verse ..... 1304
- ptc@verse (environment) 1304, 1367, 1370,
  - 1441, 1446, 1515, 1520, 2816, 2831,
  - 2846
- \ptcCfont ..... 1, 1231, 4378
- \ptcdotsep ..... 2806, 2819
- \ptcfont ..... 1, 1218, 1231, 1345, 4378
- \ptcindent 1216, 1304, 1362, 1436, 1510,
  - 4320
- \ptcname ..... 1628, 1645
- \ptcpagenumbers .... 384, 415, 430, 4450
- \ptcPfont ..... 1, 1218, 1231, 4378
- \ptcpnumwidth ..... 2788, 2817
- \ptcrule ..... 2486, 4432
- \ptcSfont ..... 1, 1218, 1231, 4378
- \ptcSPfont ..... 1, 1218, 1231, 4378
- \ptcSSfont ..... 1, 1218, 1231, 4378

- `\ptcSSSfont` . . . . . 1, 1218, 1231, 4378  
`\ptctitle` 1, 1330, 1336, 1353, 4655, 4668,  
4689, 4710, 4728, 4749, 4778, 4795,  
4812, 4830, 4846, 4862, 4878, 4894,  
4911, 4932, 4954, 4986, 5011, 5027,  
5062, 5100, 5119, 5136, 5153, 5170,  
5187, 5219, 5236, 5257, 5273, 5306,  
5347, 5364, 5385, 5402, 5435, 5464,  
5479, 5496, 5511, 5529, 5548, 5588,  
5628, 5667, 5774, 5800, 5840, 5865,  
5882, 5900, 5918, 5992, 6013, 6030,  
6049, 6071, 6088, 6112, 6129, 6146,  
6167, 6190, 6207, 6231, 6260, 6275,  
6294, 6310, 6333, 6349, 6362, 6381,  
6399, 6420, 6437, 6455, 6473, 6488,  
6507, 6547, 6586, 6589, 6621, 6689,  
6706, 6723, 6742, 6765, 6782, 6800,  
6802, 6818, 6834, 6852, 6854, 6872,  
6889, 6913, 6960, 6978, 7005, 7026,  
7041, 7056, 7071  
`\ptctocmarg` . . . . . 2797, 2818  
`\ptifont` 1, 1218, 1231, 1255, 1269, 1283,  
1353, 1422, 1500, 4378
- Q**
- `quotchap` . . . . . **48, 70, 182, 325**
- R**
- `\r@mti` . . 556, 594, 665, 732, 875, 892, 909  
`\r@pti` 1245, 1269, 1336, 1410, 1484, 1569,  
1586, 1603  
`\r@sti` 1884, 1922, 1990, 2056, 2179, 2196,  
2213  
`\raggedright` . . 604, 675, 742, 1263, 1345,  
1419, 1493, 1932, 1999, 2065  
`\read` . . . 211, 299, 1012, 1078, 1137, 1713,  
1774, 1834, 2310, 2369, 2428  
README . . . . . **157**  
`\refstepcounter` . . . . . 2127, 4621  
`\removelastskip` . . . . . 12  
`\renewcommand` . . . . . 4599  
report . . . . . **188, 190**  
`\RequirePackage` 2, 178, 4239, 4246, 4315,  
4596  
`\reset@font` . . . . 339, 606, 613, 617, 677,  
684, 688, 744, 751, 755, 1161, 1166,  
1179, 1184, 1347, 1355, 1359, 1421,  
1428, 1432, 1495, 1502, 1506, 1934,  
1942, 1946, 2001, 2008, 2013, 2067,  
2074, 2079  
`\resh` . . 5776–5778, 5783–5785, 5790–5792  
`\rightmargin` . . . 576, 622, 693, 760, 1313,  
1364, 1438, 1512, 1904, 1951, 2018,  
2084
- `\rmfamily` . 544, 545, 554, 555, 1219, 1220,  
1229, 1232–1234, 1243, 1874, 1875,  
1883  
rmk . . . . . **157**  
`\Roman` . 5189, 5192, 5195, 5218, 5404, 5407,  
5410, 5434  
romanian.mld . . . . . **417**  
romanian2.mld . . . . . **418**  
romanian3.mld . . . . . **418**  
romannum . . . . . **48, 70, 183, 325**  
rubber@rubber . . . . . **56**  
`\rule` . . . . . 303, 307, 311, 648, 1214, 1872,  
2492–2494, 2501–2503, 2510–2512  
russian-cca.mld . . . . . **423**  
russian-cca.mlo . . . . . **423**  
russian-cca1.mld . . . . . **423**  
russian-cca1.mlo . . . . . **423**  
russian-lh.mld . . . . . **424**  
russian-lh.mlo . . . . . **424**  
russian-lhcyralt.mld . . . . . **424**  
russian-lhcyralt.mlo . . . . . **424**  
russian-lhcyrkoi.mld . . . . . **425**  
russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo . . . . . **425**  
russian-lhcyrwin.mld . . . . . **425**  
russian-lhcyrwin.mlo . . . . . **425**  
russian.mld . . . . . **419**  
russian2m.mld . . . . . **419**  
russian2o.mld . . . . . **420**  
russianb.mld . . . . . **421**  
russianc.mld . . . . . **422**
- S**
- samepage . . . . . **234, 237, 240**  
samepage (environment) 594, 639, 665, 711,  
732, 778, 1336, 1384, 1410, 1457,  
1484, 1531, 1922, 1969, 1990, 2035,  
2056, 2102  
samin.mld . . . . . **426**  
`\schapter` . . . . . 1, 2106  
scottish.mld . . . . . **426**  
scrartcl . . . . . **47**  
scrbook . . . . . **47**  
scrreprt . . . . . **47**  
`\sectbegin` . 2156, 2313, 2372, 2431, 4341  
`\sectend` . . 2156, 2313, 2372, 2431, 4341  
section . . . . . **48, 178, 179**  
`\section` . . . . . 1, 262, 278,  
795, 953, 1658, 2117, 2238, 2333,  
2392, 3709, 3741, 4304  
`\section@mtcck` . . 2625, 2672, 2681, 2688  
`\sectlof` . 1, 1973, 3792, 3863, 3941, 4025,  
4360  
`\sectlof@` . . . . . 849, 1973, 1974  
`\sectlof@mtcck` . . . . . 2619, 2678

- sectlofdepth ..... **253, 260**  
 \sectlot . 1, 2039, 3792, 3871, 3949, 4034,  
     4360  
 \sectlot@ ..... 849, 2039, 2040  
 \sectlot@mtcck ..... 2622, 2685  
 sectlotdepth ..... **253, 263**  
 sectsty ..... **48, 65, 177, 182, 324**  
 \secttoc . 1, 1906, 3855, 3933, 4016, 4360  
 \secttoc@ ..... 849, 1906, 1907  
 \secttoc@mtcck ..... 2616, 2669  
 secttocdepth ..... **29, 253, 257**  
 \selectlanguage ..... 6105, 6946, 6999  
 serbian.mld ..... **427**  
 serbianc.mld ..... **427**  
 \setcounter . 1, 1191, 1197, 1554, 1558,  
     1562, 1855, 3141, 3161, 3175, 3208,  
     3359  
 sfheaders ..... **48, 70, 183, 325**  
 \sh ..... 5011, 5015, 5019  
 \shin . 5776, 5778, 5783, 5785, 5790, 5792  
 shortext ..... **48, 54**  
 \sxt@@n ..... 299  
 \SLF@ ..... 2370, 2372  
 \SLF@contentsline ..... 2333, 2372  
 \SLF@explist ..... 2331, 2358  
 \SLF@line ..... 2368  
 \SLF@list ..... 2328, 2331, 2358, 2372  
 \SLF@lof ..... 2331, 2359, 2372  
 \SLF@loop ..... 2328, 2359  
 \SLF@next ..... 2168, 2328, 2358  
 \slf@pgno ..... 419, 420, 2026  
 \SLF@read ..... 2359, 2368, 2372  
 \slf@rule 523, 2004, 2036, 2497, 2500, 2503  
 \slf@setform ..... 2026, 2841  
 \SLF@test ..... 2368, 2372  
 \slfdotsep ..... 2806, 2844  
 \slffont ..... 1, 1874, 1999, 4401  
 \slflotrmarg ..... 2797  
 \slfname ..... 2333, 2338  
 \slfpagenumbers .... 398, 419, 430, 4450  
 \slfpnumwidth ..... 2788, 2842  
 \slfrule ..... 2486, 4432  
 \slfSfont ..... 1, 1874, 4401  
 \slftitle 1, 1988, 1990, 2004, 4655, 4677,  
     4698, 4719, 4737, 4758, 4787, 4804,  
     4821, 4839, 4855, 4871, 4887, 4903,  
     4920, 4941, 4974, 5002, 5020, 5036,  
     5071, 5109, 5128, 5145, 5162, 5179,  
     5202, 5228, 5245, 5266, 5290, 5319,  
     5356, 5373, 5394, 5417, 5444, 5473,  
     5488, 5505, 5520, 5538, 5573, 5577,  
     5613, 5653, 5676, 5790, 5823, 5849,  
     5874, 5891, 5909, 5927, 6001, 6002,  
     6022, 6039, 6058, 6080, 6097, 6121,  
     6138, 6155, 6176, 6199, 6216, 6240,  
     6269, 6284, 6303, 6319, 6338, 6354,  
     6371, 6390, 6408, 6429, 6446, 6464,  
     6497, 6532, 6572, 6610, 6630, 6698,  
     6715, 6732, 6756, 6774, 6791, 6812,  
     6827, 6843, 6864, 6881, 6898, 6922,  
     6967, 6987, 7014, 7035, 7050, 7065,  
     7080  
 \slftocrmarg ..... 2802, 2843  
 slovak.mld ..... **428**  
 slovene.mld ..... **428**  
 \slshape ..... 555  
 \SLT@ ..... 2429, 2431  
 \SLT@contentsline ..... 2392, 2431  
 \SLT@explist ..... 2390, 2417  
 \SLT@line ..... 2427  
 \SLT@list ..... 2387, 2390, 2417, 2431  
 \SLT@loop ..... 2387, 2418  
 \SLT@lot ..... 2390, 2418, 2431  
 \SLT@next ..... 2175, 2387, 2417  
 \slt@pgno ..... 425, 426, 2092  
 \SLT@read ..... 2418, 2427, 2431  
 \slt@rule 523, 2072, 2103, 2506, 2509, 2512  
 \slt@setform ..... 2092, 2856  
 \SLT@test ..... 2427, 2431  
 \sltdotsep ..... 2806  
 \sltfont ..... 1, 1874, 2065, 4401  
 \sltlotrmarg ..... 2797  
 \sltname ..... 2392, 2397  
 \sltpagenumbers .... 404, 425, 430, 4450  
 \sltpnumwidth ..... 2788  
 \sltrule ..... 2486, 4432  
 \sltSfont ..... 1, 1874, 4401  
 \sltttitle 1, 2054, 2056, 2070, 4655, 4678,  
     4699, 4720, 4738, 4759, 4788, 4805,  
     4822, 4840, 4856, 4872, 4888, 4904,  
     4921, 4942, 4977, 5004, 5021, 5037,  
     5072, 5110, 5129, 5146, 5163, 5180,  
     5203, 5229, 5246, 5267, 5293, 5321,  
     5357, 5374, 5395, 5418, 5445, 5474,  
     5489, 5506, 5521, 5539, 5617, 5657,  
     5677, 5792, 5826, 5850, 5875, 5892,  
     5910, 5928, 6023, 6040, 6059, 6081,  
     6098, 6122, 6139, 6156, 6177, 6200,  
     6217, 6241, 6270, 6285, 6304, 6320,  
     6339, 6355, 6372, 6391, 6409, 6430,  
     6447, 6465, 6482, 6483, 6498, 6536,  
     6576, 6613, 6631, 6699, 6716, 6733,  
     6758, 6775, 6792, 6813, 6828, 6844,  
     6865, 6882, 6899, 6923, 6969, 6988,  
     7015, 7036, 7051, 7066, 7081  
 \slttocrmarg ..... 2805  
 spanish.mld ..... **369, 370, 429**  
 spanish2.mld ..... **430**

- spanish3.mld ..... **430**  
spanish4.mld ..... **431**  
\spart ..... 1  
\starchapter ..... 860, 971, 1682  
\starpagraph ..... 985, 1682, 2286  
\starpart ..... 1643  
\starsection ..... 985, 1682, 2117, 2271  
\starsubparagraph ..... 985, 1682, 2286  
\starsubsection ..... 985, 1682, 2286  
\starsubsubsection ..... 985, 1682, 2286  
stc ..... **189, 253**  
\STC@ ..... 2311, 2313  
\STC@contentsline ..... 2238, 2313  
\STC@explist ..... 2236, 2299  
\STC@line ..... 2309, 2311  
\STC@list ..... 2233, 2236, 2299, 2313  
\STC@loop ..... 2233, 2300  
\STC@next ..... 2164, 2233, 2299  
\stc@pgno ..... 413, 414, 1957  
\STC@read ..... 2300, 2309, 2313  
\stc@rule . 1863, 1937, 1969, 2035, 2070,  
2102, 2488, 2491, 2494  
\stc@sect ..... 2156  
\stc@setform ..... 1957, 2826  
\STC@test ..... 2311, 2313  
\STC@toc ..... 2236, 2300, 2313  
\stc@verse ..... 1895  
stc@verse (environment) 1895, 1954, 1957,  
2021, 2026, 2087, 2092, 2826, 2841,  
2856  
\stcdotsep ..... 2806, 2829  
\stcfont ..... 1, 1874, 1932, 4401  
\stcindent 1863, 1903, 1949, 2016, 2082,  
4316  
\stclotrmarg ..... 2797  
\stcname ..... 2238, 2243, 2271  
\stcpagenumbers .... 374, 413, 430, 4450  
\stcPfont ..... 1, 1874, 4401  
\stcpnumwidth ..... 2788, 2827  
\stcPSfont ..... 1  
\stcrule ..... 2486, 4432  
\stcSPfont ..... 1874, 4401  
\stcSSfont ..... 1, 1874, 4401  
\stcSSSfont ..... 1, 1874, 4401  
\stctitle 1, 1922, 1937, 4655, 4676, 4697,  
4718, 4736, 4757, 4786, 4803, 4820,  
4838, 4854, 4870, 4886, 4902, 4919,  
4940, 4972, 5000, 5019, 5035, 5070,  
5108, 5127, 5144, 5161, 5178, 5201,  
5227, 5244, 5265, 5289, 5318, 5355,  
5372, 5393, 5416, 5443, 5472, 5487,  
5504, 5519, 5537, 5570, 5610, 5650,  
5675, 5788, 5820, 5848, 5873, 5890,  
5908, 5926, 6000, 6021, 6038, 6057,  
6079, 6096, 6120, 6137, 6154, 6175,  
6198, 6215, 6239, 6268, 6283, 6302,  
6318, 6337, 6353, 6370, 6389, 6407,  
6428, 6445, 6463, 6481, 6496, 6529,  
6569, 6608, 6629, 6697, 6714, 6731,  
6754, 6773, 6790, 6811, 6826, 6842,  
6863, 6880, 6897, 6921, 6966, 6986,  
7013, 7034, 7049, 7064, 7079  
\stctocrmarg ..... 2799, 2828  
\stepcounter 245, 278, 290, 500, 939, 971,  
1046, 1105, 1541, 1630, 1644, 1683,  
1741, 1801, 2241, 2271, 2336, 2395  
\stifont . 1, 1874, 1937, 2004, 2070, 4401  
subfig ..... **29, 296**  
\subfigure ..... 1059, 1754, 2350  
\subfigure@mtcck 2632, 2637, 2647, 2653,  
2667, 2674, 2690  
\subparagraph ..... 953, 1658, 2255  
\subparagraph@mtcck ..... 2629  
\subsection ..... 953, 1658, 2255  
\subsection@mtcck ..... 2626  
\subsubsection ..... 953, 1658, 2255  
\subsubsection@mtcck ..... 2627  
\subtable ..... 1118, 1814, 2409  
\subtable@mtcck . 2633, 2639, 2643, 2655,  
2661, 2676, 2683  
\sv@chapter ..... 785  
\sv@minilof@ ..... 829  
\sv@minilot@ ..... 829  
\sv@minitoc@ ..... 829  
\sv@part ..... 1541  
\sv@partlof@ ..... 839  
\sv@partlot@ ..... 839  
\sv@parttoc@ ..... 839  
\sv@sect ..... 2110, 2116  
\sv@sectlof@ ..... 849  
\sv@sectlot@ ..... 849  
\sv@secttoc@ ..... 849  
\sv@spart ..... 1541  
swedish.mld ..... **431**  
swedish2.mld ..... **432**
- ## T
- T ..... **210**  
\table ..... 1118, 1814, 2409  
\table@mtcck 2631, 2638, 2642, 2654, 2660,  
2675, 2682  
\tableofcontents 1, 272, 3762, 3959, 3988,  
4017  
tabular (environment) 594, 665, 732, 1353,  
1422, 1500, 1937, 2004, 2070  
\tav ... 5774, 5776, 5778, 5779, 5781, 5783,  
5785, 5786, 5788, 5790, 5792, 5793  
\tet ..... 5779, 5786, 5793



- \textbf . . . . . 1182
  - \tf@mtc . . . . . 8, 208, 313, 926, 936, 940,  
971, 1016, 1047, 1082, 1106, 1141,  
1157, 1177, 1620, 1628, 1654, 1655,  
1727, 1728, 1739, 1751, 1752, 1787,  
1788, 1799, 1811, 1812, 1847, 1848,  
2230, 2238, 2252, 2253, 2283, 2284,  
2321, 2322, 2333, 2347, 2348, 2380,  
2381, 2392, 2406, 2407, 2439, 2440,  
2449, 4367
  - thai.mld . . . . . **432**
  - thai.mlo . . . . . **432**
  - thaicjk.ldf . . . . . **432**
  - \The@mtc . . . . . 523, 582, 584, 653, 655, 720, 722
  - \thechapter . . . . . 4641, 4644
  - \themtc . . . . . 523, 936, 940, 971, 1044, 1047,  
1103, 1106
  - \Thepart . . . . . 1197, 1316, 1390, 1463
  - \theptc . . . . . 1197, 1628, 1647, 1648, 1651,  
1652, 1739, 1744, 1745, 1748, 1749,  
1799, 1804, 1805, 1808, 1809
  - \thestc . . . . . 1907, 1974, 2040,  
2096, 2238, 2245, 2246, 2249, 2250,  
2271, 2333, 2340, 2341, 2344, 2345,  
2392, 2399, 2400, 2403, 2404
  - \thispageminilofstyle . . . . . 465, 663, 4477
  - \thispageminilotstyle . . . . . 465, 730, 4477
  - \thispageminitocstyle . . . . . 465, 592, 4477
  - \thispagepartlofstyle . . . . . 465, 1404, 4468
  - \thispagepartlotstyle . . . . . 465, 1478, 4468
  - \thispageparttocstyle . . . . . 465, 1330, 4468
  - \thispagesectlofstyle . . . . . 465, 1987, 4486
  - \thispagesectlotstyle . . . . . 465, 2053, 4486
  - \thispagesecttocstyle . . . . . 465, 1920, 4486
  - \thispagestyle . . . . . 465
  - tight . . . . . **37, 57, 181, 203, 232**
  - \tightmtcfalse . . . . . 1, 115, 3364, 4496
  - \tightmtctrue . . . . . 1, 3363
  - titlesec . . . . . **48**
  - titletoc . . . . . **48**
  - tocbibind . . . . . **45, 47**
  - tocdepth . . . . . **205, 209, 212**
  - \toclevel@chapter . . . . . 126
  - \toclevel@paragraph . . . . . 130
  - \toclevel@part . . . . . 125
  - \toclevel@section . . . . . 127
  - \toclevel@starchapter . . . . . 126
  - \toclevel@starparagraph . . . . . 130
  - \toclevel@starpart . . . . . 125
  - \toclevel@starsection . . . . . 127
  - \toclevel@starsubparagraph . . . . . 131
  - \toclevel@starsubsection . . . . . 128
  - \toclevel@starsubsubsection . . . . . 129
  - \toclevel@subparagraph . . . . . 131
  - \toclevel@subsection . . . . . 128
  - \toclevel@subsubsection . . . . . 129
  - \toclevel@xchapter . . . . . 123
  - \toclevel@xpart . . . . . 122
  - \toclevel@xsect . . . . . 124
  - tocloft . . . . . **47, 59**
  - TODO . . . . . **157**
  - \topsep . . . . . 567, 1304
  - turkish.mld . . . . . **433**
- U**
- uighur.mld . . . . . **433**
  - uighur2.mld . . . . . **433**
  - uighur3.mld . . . . . **434**
  - UKenglish.mld . . . . . **434**
  - ukraine.mld . . . . . **434**
  - ukrainian.mld . . . . . **434**
  - undotted . . . . . **57**
  - \undottedmtcfalse . . . . . 348, 3370, 4498
  - \undottedmtctrue . . . . . 3369
  - \unhcopy . . . . . 305, 309
  - \unpenalty . . . . . 312
  - unsrt . . . . . **46**
  - upporsorbian.mld . . . . . **435**
  - \upshape . . . . . 544, 545, 554, 1219, 1220, 1229,  
1232–1234, 1243, 1874, 1875, 1883
  - USenglish.mld . . . . . **436**
  - \usepackage . . . . . 1, 4514
  - usorbian.mld . . . . . **436**
- V**
- \value . . . . . 98, 4041, 5187, 5190, 5193, 5210,  
5402, 5405, 5408, 5425
  - varsects . . . . . **48, 67, 182, 324**
  - \vav . . . . . 5774, 5777, 5779, 5781, 5784, 5786,  
5788, 5791, 5793
  - vietnam.mld . . . . . **436, 437**
  - vietnam.sty . . . . . **436**
  - vietnamese.mld . . . . . **437**
- W**
- welsh.mld . . . . . **437**
  - while.tip . . . . . **185**
  - \write . . . . . 313, 1157, 1177
- X**
- \xalx . . . . . 6621–6623, 6625–6627, 6629–6631,  
7071–7073, 7075–7077, 7079–7081
  - xalx.mld . . . . . **402, 438**
  - xalx2.mld . . . . . **438**
  - xalx3.mld . . . . . **439**
  - xchapter . . . . . **191**
  - \xchapter . . . . . 783, 1043, 1102, 4367
  - xpart . . . . . **188**
  - \xpart . . . . . 1197, 1740, 1800, 4367

xsect . . . . . **189**  
\xsect . . . . . 2106, 2335, 2394, 4367

**Y**

\yod . . . 5775–5778, 5782–5785, 5789–5792